man pages section 9: DDI and DKI Kernel Functions
Contents

Preface ...................................................................................................................................................19

Introduction .........................................................................................................................................23
Intro(9F) .............................................................................................................................................24

Kernel Functions for Drivers ..............................................................................................................53
adjmsg(9F) ...........................................................................................................................................54
allocb(9F) ...........................................................................................................................................55
allocb_tmpl(9F) ...................................................................................................................................58
anocancel(9F) .....................................................................................................................................59
aphysio(9F) .........................................................................................................................................60
ASSERT(9F) .........................................................................................................................................62
atomic_add(9F) ...................................................................................................................................63
atomic_and(9F) ...................................................................................................................................65
atomic_bits(9F) ...................................................................................................................................67
atomic_cas(9F) ...................................................................................................................................68
atomic_dec(9F) ...................................................................................................................................69
atomic_inc(9F) ...................................................................................................................................71
atomic_ops(9F) ...................................................................................................................................73
atomic_or(9F) .....................................................................................................................................74
atomic_swap(9F) .................................................................................................................................76
backq(9F) ...........................................................................................................................................77
bcanput(9F) .......................................................................................................................................78
bcmp(9F) ............................................................................................................................................79
bcopy(9F) ............................................................................................................................................80
bioclone(9F) .......................................................................................................................................82
biodone(9F) .......................................................................................................................................85
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>bioerror(9F)</td>
<td>87</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>biofini(9F)</td>
<td>88</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bioinit(9F)</td>
<td>89</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>biomodified(9F)</td>
<td>90</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bioreset(9F)</td>
<td>91</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>biosize(9F)</td>
<td>92</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>biowait(9F)</td>
<td>93</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bp_copyin(9F)</td>
<td>94</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bp_copyout(9F)</td>
<td>95</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bp_mapin(9F)</td>
<td>96</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bp_mapout(9F)</td>
<td>97</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>btop(9F)</td>
<td>98</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>btopr(9F)</td>
<td>99</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bufcall(9F)</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bzero(9F)</td>
<td>103</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>canput(9F)</td>
<td>104</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>canputnext(9F)</td>
<td>105</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>clrbuf(9F)</td>
<td>106</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cmn_err(9F)</td>
<td>107</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>condvar(9F)</td>
<td>113</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>copyb(9F)</td>
<td>117</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>copyin(9F)</td>
<td>119</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>copymsg(9F)</td>
<td>121</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>copyout(9F)</td>
<td>123</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>csx_AccessConfigurationRegister(9F)</td>
<td>125</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>csx_ConvertSize(9F)</td>
<td>127</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>csx_ConvertSpeed(9F)</td>
<td>128</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>csx_CS_DDI_Info(9F)</td>
<td>129</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>csx_DeregisterClient(9F)</td>
<td>131</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>csx_DuplicateHandle(9F)</td>
<td>132</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>csx_Error2Text(9F)</td>
<td>134</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>csx_Event2Text(9F)</td>
<td>135</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>csx_FreeHandle(9F)</td>
<td>136</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>csx_GetB(9F)</td>
<td>137</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>csx_GetFirstClient(9F)</td>
<td>138</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>csx_GetFirstTuple(9F)</td>
<td>140</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
csx_GetHandleOffset(9F) .............................................................................................................. 143
csx_GetMappedAddr(9F) .................................................................................................................. 144
csx_GetStatus(9F) ........................................................................................................................... 145
csx_GetTupleData(9F) .................................................................................................................... 148
csx_MakeDeviceNode(9F) ................................................................................................................ 150
csx_MapLogSocket(9F) ...................................................................................................................... 152
csx_MapMemPage(9F) ........................................................................................................................ 153
csx_ModifyConfiguration(9F) .......................................................................................................... 154
csx_ModifyWindow(9F) ..................................................................................................................... 157
csx_Parse_CISTPL_BATTERY(9F) ....................................................................................................... 159
csx_Parse_CISTPL_BYTEORDER(9F) ................................................................................................ 161
csx_Parse_CISTPL_CFTABLE_ENTRY(9F) ........................................................................................... 163
csx_Parse_CISTPL_CONFIG(9F) ......................................................................................................... 168
csx_Parse_CISTPL_DATE(9F) ............................................................................................................... 170
csx_Parse_CISTPL_DEVICE(9F) ........................................................................................................... 171
csx_Parse_CISTPL_DEVICEGEO(9F) ................................................................................................ 174
csx_Parse_CISTPL_DEVICEGEO_A(9F) .............................................................................................. 176
csx_Parse_CISTPL_FORMAT(9F) ......................................................................................................... 178
csx_Parse_CISTPL_FUNCE(9F) ............................................................................................................ 180
csx_Parse_CISTPL_FUNCID(9F) ............................................................................................................ 187
csx_Parse_CISTPL_GEOMETRY(9F) .................................................................................................... 189
csx_Parse_CISTPL_JEDEC_C(9F) ....................................................................................................... 191
csx_Parse_CISTPL_LINKTARGET(9F) ................................................................................................. 193
csx_Parse_CISTPL_LONGLINK_A(9F) ................................................................................................. 195
csx_Parse_CISTPL_LONGLINK_MFC(9F) ............................................................................................. 197
csx_Parse_CISTPL_MANFID(9F) ......................................................................................................... 199
csx_Parse_CISTPL_ORG(9F) ............................................................................................................... 200
csx_Parse_CISTPL_SPCL(9F) ............................................................................................................... 201
csx_Parse_CISTPL_SWIL(9F) .............................................................................................................. 203
csx_Parse_CISTPL_VERS_1(9F) ......................................................................................................... 204
csx_Parse_CISTPL_VERS_2(9F) ......................................................................................................... 205
csx_Put8(9F) ..................................................................................................................................... 207
csx_RegisterClient(9F) ..................................................................................................................... 209
csx_ReleaseConfiguration(9F) .......................................................................................................... 213
csx_RepGet8(9F) ................................................................................................................................ 215
Contents

csx_RepPut8(9F) ............................................................................................................................... 217
csx_RequestConfiguration(9F) ........................................................................................................... 219
csx_RequestIO(9F) ............................................................................................................................ 225
csx_RequestIRQ(9F) ............................................................................................................................ 230
csx_RequestSocketMask(9F) ................................................................................................................ 232
csx_RequestWindow(9F) ..................................................................................................................... 234
csx_ResetFunction(9F) ....................................................................................................................... 240
csx_SetEventMask(9F) ......................................................................................................................... 241
csx_SetHandleOffset(9F) ..................................................................................................................... 243
csx_ValidateCIS(9F) .......................................................................................................................... 244
datamsg(9F) ....................................................................................................................................... 245
DB_BASE(9F) ....................................................................................................................................... 246
ddi_add_event_handler(9F) ................................................................................................................ 247
ddi_add_intr(9F) .................................................................................................................................. 249
ddi_add_softintr(9F) ........................................................................................................................... 252
ddi_binding_name(9F) ......................................................................................................................... 259
ddi_btop(9F) ...................................................................................................................................... 260
ddi_can_receive_sig(9F) ...................................................................................................................... 261
ddi_cb_register(9F) ............................................................................................................................ 262
ddi_check_acc_handle(9F) .................................................................................................................. 271
ddi_copyin(9F) ................................................................................................................................... 273
ddi_copyout(9F) .................................................................................................................................. 276
ddi_create_minor_node(9F) .................................................................................................................. 279
ddi_cred(9F) ...................................................................................................................................... 281
ddi_device_copy(9F) ........................................................................................................................... 283
ddi_device_zero(9F) ............................................................................................................................ 285
ddi_devid_compare(9F) ....................................................................................................................... 286
ddi_dev_is_needed(9F) ......................................................................................................................... 290
ddi_dev_is_sid(9F) .............................................................................................................................. 292
ddi_dev_nintrs(9F) ............................................................................................................................. 293
ddi_dev_nregs(9F) .............................................................................................................................. 294
ddi_dev_resize(9F) ............................................................................................................................... 295
ddi_dev_report_fault(9F) ..................................................................................................................... 296
ddi_dma_addr_bind_handle(9F) .......................................................................................................... 299
ddi_dma_addr_setup(9F) ..................................................................................................................... 303
ddi_dma_alloc_handle(9F) .................................................................................................................. 305
ddi_dma_buf_bind_handle(9F) .....................................................................................................307
ddi_dma_buf_setup(9F) ..................................................................................................................311
ddi_dma_burstsizes(9F) ................................................................................................................313
ddi_dma_coff(9F) ..........................................................................................................................314
ddi_dma_curwin(9F) .......................................................................................................................315
ddi_dma_devalign(9F) ....................................................................................................................316
ddi_dmae(9F) .....................................................................................................................................317
ddi_dma_free(9F) ..............................................................................................................................321
ddi_dma_free_handle(9F) .............................................................................................................322
ddi_dma_get_attr(9F) ....................................................................................................................323
ddi_dma_getwin(9F) .......................................................................................................................324
ddi_dma_htoc(9F) ..........................................................................................................................326
ddi_dma_mem_alloc(9F) ..................................................................................................................327
ddi_dma_mem_free(9F) ....................................................................................................................330
ddi_dma_movwin(9F) .......................................................................................................................331
ddi_dma_nextcookie(9F) ..................................................................................................................333
ddi_dma_nextseg(9F) ......................................................................................................................335
ddi_dma_nextwin(9F) .......................................................................................................................337
ddi_dma_numwin(9F) .......................................................................................................................339
ddi_dma_segtocookie(9F) ...............................................................................................................340
ddi_dma_set_sbus64(9F) ................................................................................................................342
ddi_dma_setup(9F) ..........................................................................................................................344
ddi_dma_sync(9F) ............................................................................................................................346
ddi_dma_unbind_handle(9F) ..........................................................................................................348
ddi_driver_major(9F) .....................................................................................................................349
ddi_driver_name(9F) .......................................................................................................................350
ddi_enter_critical(9F) ....................................................................................................................351
ddi_ffs(9F) ......................................................................................................................................352
ddi_fm_acc_err_clear(9F) ...............................................................................................................353
ddi_fm_acc_err_get(9F) ....................................................................................................................354
ddi_fm_ereport_post(9F) ................................................................................................................356
ddi_fm_handler_register(9F) .........................................................................................................358
ddi_fm_init(9F) ..............................................................................................................................360
ddi_fm_service_impact(9F) .............................................................................................................362
ddi_get8(9F) ....................................................................................................................................363
ddi_get_cred(9F) .............................................................................................................................365
Contents

ddi_get_devstate(9F) ................................................................. 366
ddi_get_driver_private(9F) .......................................................... 368
ddi_get_eventcookie(9F) ............................................................ 369
ddi_get_iminor(9F) .................................................................. 370
ddi_get_instance(9F) ............................................................... 371
ddi_get_kt_did(9F) ................................................................. 372
ddi_get_lbolt(9F) .................................................................. 373
ddi_get_parent(9F) ................................................................. 374
ddi_get_pid(9F) ..................................................................... 375
ddi_get_time(9F) .................................................................. 376
ddi_in_panic(9F) ..................................................................... 377
ddi_intr_add_handler(9F) ........................................................ 378
ddi_intr_add_softint(9F) ....................................................... 380
ddi_intr_alloc(9F) .................................................................. 387
ddi_intr_dup_handler(9F) ....................................................... 390
ddi_intr_enable(9F) ............................................................... 395
ddi_intr_get_cap(9F) .............................................................. 398
ddi_intr_get_hilevel_pri(9F) ................................................... 400
ddi_intr_get_nintrs(9F) .......................................................... 402
ddi_intr_get_pending(9F) ...................................................... 404
ddi_intr_get_pri(9F) .............................................................. 406
ddi_intr_get_supported_types(9F) .......................................... 408
ddi_intr_hilevel(9F) ............................................................... 410
ddi_intr_set_mask(9F) ............................................................ 412
ddi_intr_set_nreq(9F) ........................................................... 414
ddi_io_get8(9F) ................................................................... 416
ddi_iomin(9F) ..................................................................... 418
ddi_iopb_alloc(9F) .............................................................. 419
ddi_io_put8(9F) ................................................................... 421
ddi_io_rep_get8(9F) .............................................................. 423
ddi_io_rep_put8(9F) ............................................................... 425
ddi_log_sysevent(9F) ............................................................. 427
ddi_map_regs(9F) ................................................................. 431
ddi_mem_alloc(9F) ............................................................... 433
ddi_mem_get8(9F) ................................................................. 435
ddi_mem_put8(9F) ................................................................. 437
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function Name</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ddi_mem_rep_get8(9F)</td>
<td>439</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ddi_mem_rep_put8(9F)</td>
<td>441</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ddi_mmap_get_model(9F)</td>
<td>443</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ddi_model_convert_from(9F)</td>
<td>445</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ddi_node_name(9F)</td>
<td>447</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ddi_no_info(9F)</td>
<td>448</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ddi_poke(9F)</td>
<td>449</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ddi_periodic_add(9F)</td>
<td>451</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ddi_periodic_delete(9F)</td>
<td>454</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ddi_poke(9F)</td>
<td>456</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ddi_prop_create(9F)</td>
<td>458</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ddi_prop_exists(9F)</td>
<td>463</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ddi_prop_get_int(9F)</td>
<td>465</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ddi_prop_lookup(9F)</td>
<td>467</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ddi_prop_op(9F)</td>
<td>472</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ddi_prop_update(9F)</td>
<td>476</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ddi_put8(9F)</td>
<td>480</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ddi_regs_map_free(9F)</td>
<td>482</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ddi_regs_map_setup(9F)</td>
<td>483</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ddi_remove_event_handler(9F)</td>
<td>485</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ddi_remove_minor_node(9F)</td>
<td>486</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ddi_removing_power(9F)</td>
<td>487</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ddi_rep_get8(9F)</td>
<td>489</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ddi_report_dev(9F)</td>
<td>491</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ddi_rep_put8(9F)</td>
<td>492</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ddi_root_node(9F)</td>
<td>494</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ddi_semgap(9F)</td>
<td>495</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ddi_slaveonly(9F)</td>
<td>498</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ddi_soft_state(9F)</td>
<td>499</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ddi_strtol(9F)</td>
<td>504</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ddi_strtoll(9F)</td>
<td>506</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ddi_strtoul(9F)</td>
<td>508</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ddi_umem_alloc(9F)</td>
<td>510</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ddi_umem_iosetup(9F)</td>
<td>512</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ddi_umem_lock(9F)</td>
<td>514</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>delay(9F)</td>
<td>516</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Contents

devmap_default_access(9F) ................................................................. 518
devmap_devmem_setup(9F) .................................................................. 521
devmap_do_ctxmgmt(9F) .................................................................... 524
devmap_set_ctx_timeout(9F) ............................................................ 527
devmap_setup(9F) ............................................................................ 528
devmap_unload(9F) .......................................................................... 530
disksort(9F) .................................................................................. 532
dlbindack(9F) ............................................................................... 533
drv_getparm(9F) ........................................................................... 535
drv_hztousec(9F) .......................................................................... 537
drv_priv(9F) ................................................................................ 538
drv_usectohz(9F) ........................................................................ 539
drv_usecwait(9F) ......................................................................... 540
dupb(9F) ...................................................................................... 541
dupmsg(9F) .................................................................................. 545
enableok(9F) .............................................................................. 546
esballocl(9F) ............................................................................... 547
esbbcall(9F) .............................................................................. 549
flushband(9F) ............................................................................. 550
flushq(9F) .................................................................................. 551
freeb(9F) .................................................................................... 553
freemsg(9F) .............................................................................. 554
freerbuf(9F) ............................................................................... 555
freezestr(9F) .............................................................................. 556
gterror(9F) ................................................................................ 557
gethrtime(9F) .............................................................................. 558
getmajor(9F) ............................................................................... 559
getminor(9F) ............................................................................. 560
get_pktiopt(9F) .......................................................................... 561
getq(9F) ..................................................................................... 563
getrbuf(9F) ............................................................................... 564
gld(9F) ...................................................................................... 565
hat_getkpfnum(9F) ................................................................... 568
hook_alloc(9F) ........................................................................... 569
hook_free(9F) ............................................................................ 570
id32_alloc(9F) ........................................................................... 571
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>inb(9F)</td>
<td>573</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>insq(9F)</td>
<td>575</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IOC_CONVERT_FROM(9F)</td>
<td>577</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kmem_alloc(9F)</td>
<td>578</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kmem_cache_create(9F)</td>
<td>580</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kstat_create(9F)</td>
<td>585</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kstat_delete(9F)</td>
<td>587</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kstat_install(9F)</td>
<td>588</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kstat_named_init(9F)</td>
<td>589</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kstat_queue(9F)</td>
<td>590</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ldi_add_event_handler(9F)</td>
<td>592</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ldi_aread(9F)</td>
<td>594</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ldi_devmap(9F)</td>
<td>595</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ldi_dump(9F)</td>
<td>596</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ldi_get_dev(9F)</td>
<td>597</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ldi_get_eventcookie(9F)</td>
<td>598</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ldi_get_size(9F)</td>
<td>599</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ldi_ident_from_dev(9F)</td>
<td>600</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ldi_ioctl(9F)</td>
<td>601</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ldi_open_by_dev(9F)</td>
<td>603</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ldi_poll(9F)</td>
<td>606</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ldi_prop_exists(9F)</td>
<td>608</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ldi_prop_get_int(9F)</td>
<td>610</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ldi_prop_lookup_int_array(9F)</td>
<td>612</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ldi_putmsg(9F)</td>
<td>617</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ldi_read(9F)</td>
<td>618</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ldi_remove_event_handler(9F)</td>
<td>619</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ldi_strategy(9F)</td>
<td>620</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>linkb(9F)</td>
<td>621</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mac(9F)</td>
<td>622</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mac_hcksum_get(9F)</td>
<td>625</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mac_iso_get(9F)</td>
<td>627</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mac_prop_info_set_perm(9F)</td>
<td>628</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>makecom(9F)</td>
<td>630</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>makedevice(9F)</td>
<td>632</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>max(9F)</td>
<td>633</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Contents

13

net_instance_unregister(9F) ................................................................. 683
net_ispartialchecksum(9F) ................................................................. 684
net_isvalidchecksum(9F) ................................................................. 685
net_kstat_create(9F) ........................................................................ 686
net_kstat_delete(9F) ........................................................................ 688
net_lifgetnext(9F) ........................................................................... 689
net_netidtozonid(9F) ....................................................................... 691
net_phygetnext(9F) ......................................................................... 692
net_phylookup(9F) ........................................................................... 694
net_protocol_lookup(9F) .................................................................. 695
net_protocol_notify_register(9F) ...................................................... 696
net_protocol_release(9F) ................................................................. 698
net_protocol_walk(9F) ..................................................................... 699
net_routeto(9F) ............................................................................... 700
net_zoneidtonetid(9F) ..................................................................... 701
nochpoll(9F) .................................................................................. 702
nodev(9F) ..................................................................................... 703
noenable(9F) .................................................................................. 704
nulldev(9F) .................................................................................... 705
nvlist_add_boolean(9F) ................................................................. 706
nvlist_alloc(9F) ............................................................................. 709
nvlist_lookup_boolean(9F) ............................................................. 715
nvlist_next_nvpair(9F) ................................................................... 719
nvlist_remove(9F) ........................................................................... 721
nvpair_value_byte(9F) ................................................................. 722
OTHERQ(9F) .................................................................................. 724
outb(9F) ....................................................................................... 725
pci_config_get8(9F) ....................................................................... 727
pci_config_setup(9F) ..................................................................... 729
pci_ereport_setup(9F) .................................................................... 730
pci_report_pmcap(9F) ..................................................................... 733
pci_save_config_regs(9F) ............................................................. 735
physio(9F) .................................................................................... 737
pm_busy_component(9F) ............................................................... 739
pm_power_has_changed(9F) ........................................................... 741
pm_raise_power(9F) ....................................................................... 744
pm_trans_check(9F) ............................................................................................................................................... 748
pollwakeup(9F) .................................................................................................................................................... 750
priv_getbyname(9F) ........................................................................................................................................... 751
priv_policy(9F) .................................................................................................................................................... 753
proc_signal(9F) .................................................................................................................................................. 755
ptob(9F) ............................................................................................................................................................... 757
pullupmsg(9F) ...................................................................................................................................................... 758
put(9F) ................................................................................................................................................................. 760
putbq(9F) ............................................................................................................................................................. 761
putcttl(9F) ......................................................................................................................................................... 762
putctl(9F) ............................................................................................................................................................ 763
putnext(9F) .......................................................................................................................................................... 765
putnextcttl(9F) ................................................................................................................................................... 766
putnextctl(9F) .................................................................................................................................................... 767
putq(9F) ............................................................................................................................................................... 769
qassociate(9F) ..................................................................................................................................................... 770
qbufcall(9F) ........................................................................................................................................................ 772
qenable(9F) ........................................................................................................................................................ 774
qprocson(9F) ....................................................................................................................................................... 775
qreply(9F) ............................................................................................................................................................ 776
qsize(9F) ............................................................................................................................................................... 778
qtimeout(9F) ......................................................................................................................................................... 779
qunbufcall(9F) .................................................................................................................................................... 780
quntimeout(9F) .................................................................................................................................................... 781
qwait(9F) ............................................................................................................................................................... 782
qwriter(9F) ........................................................................................................................................................... 784
RD(9F) ................................................................................................................................................................. 785
rmalloc(9F) ........................................................................................................................................................... 786
rmallocmap(9F) .................................................................................................................................................... 789
rmalloc_wait(9F) .................................................................................................................................................. 791
rmfree(9F) ............................................................................................................................................................ 792
rmvb(9F) ............................................................................................................................................................... 793
rmvq(9F) ............................................................................................................................................................... 795
rwlock(9F) ............................................................................................................................................................. 797
SAMESTR(9F) ....................................................................................................................................................... 800
scsi_abort(9F) ...................................................................................................................................................... 801
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>scsi_alloc_consistent_buf(9F)</td>
<td>802</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>scsi_cname(9F)</td>
<td>804</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>scsi_destroy_pkt(9F)</td>
<td>806</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>scsi_dmaget(9F)</td>
<td>807</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>scsi_errmsg(9F)</td>
<td>809</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>scsi_ext_sense_fields(9F)</td>
<td>812</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>scsi_find_sense_descr(9F)</td>
<td>814</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>scsi_free_consistent_buf(9F)</td>
<td>815</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>scsi_get_device_type_scsi_options(9F)</td>
<td>816</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>scsi_hba_attach_setup(9F)</td>
<td>818</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>scsi_hba_init(9F)</td>
<td>821</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>scsi_hba_lookup_capstr(9F)</td>
<td>822</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>scsi_hba_pkt_alloc(9F)</td>
<td>824</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>scsi_hba_pkt_comp(9F)</td>
<td>826</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>scsi_hba_probe(9F)</td>
<td>827</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>scsi_hba_tran_alloc(9F)</td>
<td>828</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>scsi_ifgetcap(9F)</td>
<td>829</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>scsi_init_pkt(9F)</td>
<td>833</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>scsi_log(9F)</td>
<td>837</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>scsi_pktalloc(9F)</td>
<td>838</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>scsi_poll(9F)</td>
<td>840</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>scsi_probe(9F)</td>
<td>841</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>scsi_reset(9F)</td>
<td>843</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>scsi_reset_notify(9F)</td>
<td>845</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>scsi_sense_key(9F)</td>
<td>846</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>scsi_setup_cdb(9F)</td>
<td>847</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>scsi_slave(9F)</td>
<td>848</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>scsi_sync_pkt(9F)</td>
<td>850</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>scsi_transport(9F)</td>
<td>851</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>scsi_unprobe(9F)</td>
<td>852</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>scsi_validate_sense(9F)</td>
<td>853</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>scsi_vu_errmsg(9F)</td>
<td>854</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>semaphore(9F)</td>
<td>857</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sprintf(9F)</td>
<td>859</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>stoi(9F)</td>
<td>861</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>strchr(9F)</td>
<td>862</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Function</td>
<td>Page</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------------------------</td>
<td>------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>strcmp</td>
<td>863</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>strncpy</td>
<td>864</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>strlen</td>
<td>866</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>strlog</td>
<td>867</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>strcat</td>
<td>869</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>strqset</td>
<td>870</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STRUCTDECL</td>
<td>871</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>swab</td>
<td>876</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>taskq</td>
<td>877</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>testb</td>
<td>880</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>timeout</td>
<td>882</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>u8_strcmp</td>
<td>884</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>u8_textprep_str</td>
<td>888</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>u8_validate</td>
<td>892</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>uconv_u16tou32</td>
<td>896</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>uiomove</td>
<td>902</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>unbufcall</td>
<td>904</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>unlinkb</td>
<td>905</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>untimeout</td>
<td>906</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ureadc</td>
<td>908</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>usb_alloc_request</td>
<td>909</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>usb_client_attach</td>
<td>912</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>usb_clr_feature</td>
<td>915</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>usb_create_pm_components</td>
<td>917</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>usb_get_addr</td>
<td>919</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>usb_get_alt_if</td>
<td>920</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>usb_get_cfg</td>
<td>924</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>usb_get_current_frame_number</td>
<td>927</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>usb_get_dev_data</td>
<td>929</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>usb_get_max_pkts_per_isoc_request</td>
<td>933</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>usb_get_status</td>
<td>935</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>usb_get_string_descr</td>
<td>937</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>usb_handle_remote_wakeup</td>
<td>939</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>usb_lookup_ep_data</td>
<td>940</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>usb_parse_data</td>
<td>942</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>usb_pipe_bulk_xfer</td>
<td>944</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Function</td>
<td>Page</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------------------------------------------</td>
<td>------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>usb_pipe_close(9F)</td>
<td>947</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>usb_pipe_ctrl_xfer(9F)</td>
<td>950</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>usb_pipe_drain_reqs(9F)</td>
<td>956</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>usb_pipe_get_max_bulk_transfer_size(9F)</td>
<td>959</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>usb_pipe_get_state(9F)</td>
<td>961</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>usb_pipe_intr_xfer(9F)</td>
<td>963</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>usb_pipe_isoc_xfer(9F)</td>
<td>968</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>usb_pipe_open(9F)</td>
<td>974</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>usb_pipe_reset(9F)</td>
<td>978</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>usb_pipe_set_private(9F)</td>
<td>981</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>usb_register_hotplug_cbs(9F)</td>
<td>983</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>uwritec(9F)</td>
<td>985</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>va_arg(9F)</td>
<td>986</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vsprintf(9F)</td>
<td>988</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WR(9F)</td>
<td>991</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Preface

Both novice users and those familiar with the SunOS operating system can use online man pages to obtain information about the system and its features. A man page is intended to answer concisely the question "What does it do?" The man pages in general comprise a reference manual. They are not intended to be a tutorial.

Overview

The following contains a brief description of each man page section and the information it references:

- Section 1 describes, in alphabetical order, commands available with the operating system.
- Section 1M describes, in alphabetical order, commands that are used chiefly for system maintenance and administration purposes.
- Section 2 describes all of the system calls. Most of these calls have one or more error returns. An error condition is indicated by an otherwise impossible returned value.
- Section 3 describes functions found in various libraries, other than those functions that directly invoke UNIX system primitives, which are described in Section 2.
- Section 4 outlines the formats of various files. The C structure declarations for the file formats are given where applicable.
- Section 5 contains miscellaneous documentation such as character-set tables.
- Section 6 contains available games and demos.
- Section 7 describes various special files that refer to specific hardware peripherals and device drivers. STREAMS software drivers, modules and the STREAMS-generic set of system calls are also described.
- Section 9 provides reference information needed to write device drivers in the kernel environment. It describes two device driver interface specifications: the Device Driver Interface (DDI) and the Driver/Kernel Interface (DKI).
- Section 9E describes the DDI/DKI, DDI-only, and DKI-only entry-point routines a developer can include in a device driver.
- Section 9F describes the kernel functions available for use by device drivers.
- Section 9S describes the data structures used by drivers to share information between the driver and the kernel.
Below is a generic format for man pages. The man pages of each manual section generally follow this order, but include only needed headings. For example, if there are no bugs to report, there is no BUGS section. See the intro pages for more information and detail about each section, and man(1) for more information about man pages in general.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>NAME</th>
<th>This section gives the names of the commands or functions documented, followed by a brief description of what they do.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>SYNOPSIS</td>
<td>This section shows the syntax of commands or functions. When a command or file does not exist in the standard path, its full path name is shown. Options and arguments are alphabetized, with single letter arguments first, and options with arguments next, unless a different argument order is required. The following special characters are used in this section:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[ ]</td>
<td>Brackets. The option or argument enclosed in these brackets is optional. If the brackets are omitted, the argument must be specified.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>. . .</td>
<td>Ellipses. Several values can be provided for the previous argument, or the previous argument can be specified multiple times, for example, &quot;filename...&quot;.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Separator. Only one of the arguments separated by this character can be specified at a time.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>{ }</td>
<td>Braces. The options and/or arguments enclosed within braces are interdependent, such that everything enclosed must be treated as a unit.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PROTOCOL</td>
<td>This section occurs only in subsection 3R to indicate the protocol description file.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DESCRIPTION</td>
<td>This section defines the functionality and behavior of the service. Thus it describes concisely what the command does. It does not discuss OPTIONS or cite EXAMPLES. Interactive commands, subcommands, requests, macros, and functions are described under USAGE.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IOCTL</td>
<td>This section appears on pages in Section 7 only. Only the device class that supplies appropriate parameters to the ioctl(2) system call is called ioctl and generates its own</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
heading. `ioctl` calls for a specific device are listed alphabetically (on the man page for that specific device). `ioctl` calls are used for a particular class of devices all of which have an `io` ending, such as `mtio(7I)`.

OPTIONS

This section lists the command options with a concise summary of what each option does. The options are listed literally and in the order they appear in the SYNOPSIS section. Possible arguments to options are discussed under the option, and where appropriate, default values are supplied.

OPERANDS

This section lists the command operands and describes how they affect the actions of the command.

OUTPUT

This section describes the output – standard output, standard error, or output files – generated by the command.

RETURN VALUES

If the man page documents functions that return values, this section lists these values and describes the conditions under which they are returned. If a function can return only constant values, such as 0 or –1, these values are listed in tagged paragraphs. Otherwise, a single paragraph describes the return values of each function. Functions declared void do not return values, so they are not discussed in RETURN VALUES.

ERRORS

On failure, most functions place an error code in the global variable `errno` indicating why they failed. This section lists alphabetically all error codes a function can generate and describes the conditions that cause each error. When more than one condition can cause the same error, each condition is described in a separate paragraph under the error code.

USAGE

This section lists special rules, features, and commands that require in-depth explanations. The subsections listed here are used to explain built-in functionality:

- Commands
- Modifiers
- Variables
- Expressions
- Input Grammar
EXAMPLES  This section provides examples of usage or of how to use a command or function. Wherever possible a complete example including command-line entry and machine response is shown. Whenever an example is given, the prompt is shown as example%, or if the user must be superuser, example#. Examples are followed by explanations, variable substitution rules, or returned values. Most examples illustrate concepts from the SYNOPSIS, DESCRIPTION, OPTIONS, and USAGE sections.

ENVIRONMENT VARIABLES  This section lists any environment variables that the command or function affects, followed by a brief description of the effect.

EXIT STATUS  This section lists the values the command returns to the calling program or shell and the conditions that cause these values to be returned. Usually, zero is returned for successful completion, and values other than zero for various error conditions.

FILES  This section lists all file names referred to by the man page, files of interest, and files created or required by commands. Each is followed by a descriptive summary or explanation.

ATTRIBUTES  This section lists characteristics of commands, utilities, and device drivers by defining the attribute type and its corresponding value. See attributes(5) for more information.

SEE ALSO  This section lists references to other man pages, in-house documentation, and outside publications.

DIAGNOSTICS  This section lists diagnostic messages with a brief explanation of the condition causing the error.

WARNINGS  This section lists warnings about special conditions which could seriously affect your working conditions. This is not a list of diagnostics.

NOTES  This section lists additional information that does not belong anywhere else on the page. It takes the form of an aside to the user, covering points of special interest. Critical information is never covered here.

BUGS  This section describes known bugs and, wherever possible, suggests workarounds.
Introduction
Section 9F describes the kernel functions available for use by device drivers. See Intro(9E) for an overview of device driver interfaces.

In this section, the information for each driver function is organized under the following headings:

- **NAME** summarizes the function's purpose.
- **SYNOPSIS** shows the syntax of the function's entry point in the source code. #include directives are shown for required headers.
- **INTERFACE LEVEL** describes any architecture dependencies.
- **ARGUMENTS** describes any arguments required to invoke the function.
- **DESCRIPTION** describes general information about the function.
- **RETURN VALUES** describes the return values and messages that can result from invoking the function.
- **CONTEXT** indicates from which driver context (user, kernel, interrupt, or high-level interrupt) the function can be called.
- A driver function has **user context** if it was directly invoked because of a user thread. The read(9E) entry point of the driver, invoked by a read(2) system call, has user context.
- A driver function has **kernel context** if it was invoked by some other part of the kernel. In a block device driver, the strategy(9E) entry point may be called by the page daemon to write pages to the device. The page daemon has no relation to the current user thread, so in this case strategy(9E) has kernel context.
- **Interrupt context** is kernel context, but also has an interrupt level associated with it. Driver interrupt routines have interrupt context.
  
  Note that a mutex acquired in user or kernel context that can also be acquired in interrupt context means that the user or kernel context thread holding that mutex is subject to all the restrictions imposed by interrupt context, for the duration of the ownership of that mutex. Please see the mutex(9F) man page for a more complete discussion of proper mutex handling for drivers.
- **High-level interrupt context** is a more restricted form of interrupt context. If a driver interrupt priority returned from ddi_intr_get_pri(9F) is greater than the priority returned from ddi_intr_get_hilevel_pri(9F) this indicates the interrupt handler will run in high-level interrupt context. These interrupt routines are only allowed to call ddi_intr_trigger_softint(9F), mutex_enter(9F), and mutex_exit(9F). Furthermore, mutex_enter(9F) and mutex_exit(9F) may only be called on mutexes initialized with the interrupt priority returned by ddi_intr_get_pri(9F).
- **SEE ALSO** indicates functions that are related by usage and sources, and which can be referred to for further information.
- **EXAMPLES** shows how the function can be used in driver code.
Every driver MUST include `<sys/ddi.h>` and `<sys/sunddi.h>`, in that order, and as the last files the driver includes.

### Streams Kernel Function Summary

The following table summarizes the STREAMS functions described in this section.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Routine</th>
<th>Type</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>adjmsg</code></td>
<td>DDI/DKI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>allocb</code></td>
<td>DDI/DKI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>allocb_tmpl</code></td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>backq</code></td>
<td>DDI/DKI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>bcanput</code></td>
<td>DDI/DKI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>bcanputnext</code></td>
<td>DDI/DKI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>bufcall</code></td>
<td>DDI/DKI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>canput</code></td>
<td>DDI/DKI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>canputnext</code></td>
<td>DDI/DKI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>clrbuf</code></td>
<td>DDI/DKI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>cpyb</code></td>
<td>DDI/DKI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>copymsg</code></td>
<td>DDI/DKI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>DB_BASE</code></td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>DB_LIM</code></td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>DB_REF</code></td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>DB_TYPE</code></td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>datamsg</code></td>
<td>DDI/DKI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>dupb</code></td>
<td>DDI/DKI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>dupmsg</code></td>
<td>DDI/DKI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>enableok</code></td>
<td>DDI/DKI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>esballoc</code></td>
<td>DDI/DKI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>esbcall</code></td>
<td>DDI/DKI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>flushband</code></td>
<td>DDI/DKI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>flushq</code></td>
<td>DDI/DKI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>freeb</code></td>
<td>DDI/DKI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Routine</td>
<td>Type</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------------</td>
<td>----------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>freemsg</td>
<td>DDI/DKI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>freezeestr</td>
<td>DDI/DKI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>getq</td>
<td>DDI/DKI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IOC_CONVER_FROM</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>insq</td>
<td>DDI/DKI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>linkb</td>
<td>DDI/DKI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MBLKHEAD</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MBLKIN</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MBLKL</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MBLKSIZE</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MBLKTAIL</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mcopyin</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mcopymsg</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mcopyout</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>merror</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mexchange</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mioc2ack</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>miocack</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mexchange</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>miocpullup</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mkiocb</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>msgdsize</td>
<td>DDI/DKI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>msgpullup</td>
<td>DDI/DKI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>msgsize</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mt-streams</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>noenable</td>
<td>DDI/DKI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OTHERQ</td>
<td>DDI/DKI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pullupmsg</td>
<td>DDI/DKI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Routine</td>
<td>Type</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>put</td>
<td>DDI/DKI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>putbq</td>
<td>DDI/DKI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>putctl</td>
<td>DDI/DKI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>putctll</td>
<td>DDI/DKI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>putnext</td>
<td>DDI/DKI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>putnextctl</td>
<td>DDI/DKI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>putq</td>
<td>DDI/DKI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>qassociate</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>qbufcall</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>qenable</td>
<td>DDI/DKI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>qprocon</td>
<td>DDI/DKI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>qprocsoff</td>
<td>DDI/DKI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>qreply</td>
<td>DDI/DKI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>qsize</td>
<td>DDI/DKI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>qtimeout</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>qunbufcall</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>quntimeout</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>qwait</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>qwait_sig</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>qwriter</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RD</td>
<td>DDI/DKI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rmvb</td>
<td>DDI/DKI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rmvq</td>
<td>DDI/DKI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SAMESTR</td>
<td>DDI/DKI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>strlog</td>
<td>DDI/DKI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>strqget</td>
<td>DDI/DKI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>strqset</td>
<td>DDI/DKI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>testb</td>
<td>DDI/DKI</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
The following table summarizes the functions not specific to STREAMS.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Routine</th>
<th>Type</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>unbufcall</td>
<td>DDI/DKI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>unfreezestr</td>
<td>DDI/DKI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>unlinkb</td>
<td>DDI/DKI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WR</td>
<td>DDI/DKI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ASSERT</td>
<td>DDI/DKI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>anocancel</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>aphysio</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>atomic_add</td>
<td>DDI/DKI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>atomic_and</td>
<td>DDI/DKI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>atomic_bits</td>
<td>DDI/DKI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>atomic_cas</td>
<td>DDI/DKI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>atomic_dec</td>
<td>DDI/DKI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>atomic_inc</td>
<td>DDI/DKI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>atomic_ops</td>
<td>DDI/DKI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>atomic_or</td>
<td>DDI/DKI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>atomic_swap</td>
<td>DDI/DKI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bcmp</td>
<td>DDI/DKI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bcopy</td>
<td>DDI/DKI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bioclone</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>biodone</td>
<td>DDI/DKI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>biofini</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bioinit</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>biomodified</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>biosize</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bioerror</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Routine</td>
<td>Type</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------------------------------------</td>
<td>---------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bioreset</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>biowait</td>
<td>DDI/DKI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bp_copyin</td>
<td>DDI/DKI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bp_copyout</td>
<td>DDI/DKI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bp_mapin</td>
<td>DDI/DKI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bp_mapout</td>
<td>DDI/DKI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>btop</td>
<td>DDI/DKI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>btopr</td>
<td>DDI/DKI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bzero</td>
<td>DDI/DKI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cmn_err</td>
<td>DDI/DKI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>condvar</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>copyin</td>
<td>DDI/DKI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>copyout</td>
<td>DDI/DKI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>csx_AccessConfigurationRegister</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>csx_ConvertSize</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>csx_ConvertSpeed</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>csx_CS_DDI_Info</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>csx_DeregisterClient</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>csx_DupHandle</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>csx_Error2Text</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>csx_Event2Text</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>csx_FreeHandle</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>csx_Get8</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>csx_GetFirstClient</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>csx_GetFirstTuple</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>csx_GetHandleOffset</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>csx_GetMappedAddr</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>csx_GetStatus</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Routine</td>
<td>Type</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------------------------------</td>
<td>---------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>csx_GetTupleData</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>csx_MakeDeviceNode</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>csx_MapLogSocket</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>csx_MapMemPage</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>csx_ModifyConfiguration</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>csx_ModifyWindow</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>csx_Parse_CISTPL_BATTERY</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>csx_Parse_CISTPL_BYTEORDER</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>csx_Parse_CISTPL_CFTABLE_ENTRY</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>csx_Parse_CISTPL_CONFIG</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>csx_Parse_CISTPL_DATE</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>csx_Parse_CISTPL_DEVICE</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>csx_Parse_CISTPL_DEVICEGEO</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>csx_Parse_CISTPL_DEVICEGEO_A</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>csx_Parse_CISTPL_FORMAT</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>csx_Parse_CISTPL_FUNCE</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>csx_Parse_CISTPL_FUNCID</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>csx_Parse_CISTPL_GEOMETRY</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>csx_Parse_CISTPL_JEDEC_C</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>csx_Parse_CISTPL_LINKTARGET</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>csx_Parse_CISTPL_LONGLINK_A</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>csx_Parse_CISTPL_LONGLINK_MFC</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>csx_Parse_CISTPL_MANFID</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>csx_Parse_CISTPL_ORG</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>csx_Parse_CISTPL_SPCL</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>csx_Parse_CISTPL_SWIL</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>csx_Parse_CISTPL_VERS_1</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>csx_Parse_CISTPL_VERS_2</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Routine</td>
<td>Type</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------------------------</td>
<td>-----------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>csx_ParseTuple</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>csx_Put8</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>csx_RegisterClient</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>csx_ReleaseConfiguration</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>csx_RepGet8</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>csx_RepPut8</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>csx_RequestConfiguration</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>csx_RequestIO</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>csx_RequestIRQ</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>csx_RequestSocketMask</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>csx_RequestWindow</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>csx_ResetFunction</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>csx_SetEventMask</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>csx_SetHandleOffset</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>csx.ValidateCIS</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cv_broadcast</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cv_destroy</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cv_init</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cv_signal</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cv_timedwait</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cv_wait</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cv_wait_sig</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ddi_add_event_handler</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ddi_add_intr</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ddi_add_softintr</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ddi_binding_name</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ddi_btop</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ddi_btopr</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Routine</td>
<td>Type</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------------------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ddi_can_receive_sig</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ddi_check_acc_handle</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ddi_copyin</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ddi_copyout</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ddi_create_minor_node</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ddi_cred</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ddi_dev_is_sid</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ddi_dev_nintrs</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ddi_dev_nregs</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ddi_dev_regsize</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ddi_device_copy</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ddi_device_zero</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ddi_devmap_segmmap</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ddi_dma_addr_bind_handle</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ddi_dma_addr_setup</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ddi_dma_alloc_handle</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ddi_dma_buf_bind_handle</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ddi_dma_buf_setup</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ddi_dma_burstsizes</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ddi_dma_coff</td>
<td>Solaris SPARC DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ddi_dma_curwin</td>
<td>Solaris SPARC DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ddi_dma_devalign</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ddi_dma_free</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ddi_dma_free_handle</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ddi_dma_getwin</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ddi_dma_get_attr</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ddi_dma_htoc</td>
<td>Solaris SPARC DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ddi_dma_mem_alloc</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Routine</td>
<td>Type</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------------------</td>
<td>----------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ddi_dma_mem_free</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ddi_dma_movwin</td>
<td>Solaris SPARC DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ddi_dma_nextcookie</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ddi_dma_nextseg</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ddi_dma_nextwin</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ddi_dma_numwin</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ddi_dma_segtocookie</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ddi_dma_set_sbus64</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ddi_dma_setup</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ddi_dma_sync</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ddi_dma_unbind_handle</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ddi_dmae</td>
<td>Solaris x86 DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ddi_dmae_1stparty</td>
<td>Solaris x86 DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ddi_dmae_alloc</td>
<td>Solaris x86 DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ddi_dmae_disable</td>
<td>Solaris x86 DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ddi_dmae_enable</td>
<td>Solaris x86 DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ddi_dmae_getattr</td>
<td>Solaris x86 DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ddi_dmae_getcnt</td>
<td>Solaris x86 DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ddi_dmae_getlim</td>
<td>Solaris x86 DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ddi_dmae_prog</td>
<td>Solaris x86 DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ddi_dmae_release</td>
<td>Solaris x86 DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ddi_dmae_stop</td>
<td>Solaris x86 DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ddi_driver_major</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ddi_driver_name</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ddi_enter_critical</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ddi_exit_critical</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ddi_ffs</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ddi_fls</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Routine</td>
<td>Type</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------------------------</td>
<td>-----------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ddi_fm_acc_err_clear</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ddi_fm_acc_err_get</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ddi_fm_ereport_post</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ddi_fm_handler_register</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ddi_fm_init</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ddi_fm_service_impact</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ddi_get16</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ddi_get32</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ddi_get64</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ddi_get8</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ddi_get_cred</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ddi_get_devstate</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ddi_get_driver_private</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ddi_get_eventcookie</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ddi_get_iblock_cookie</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ddi_get_iminor</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ddi_get_instance</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ddi_get_kt_did</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ddi_get_lbolt</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ddi_get_name</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ddi_get_parent</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ddi_get_pid</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ddi_get_soft_iblock_cookie</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ddi_get_soft_state</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ddi_getb</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ddi_getl</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ddi_getll</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ddi_getlongprop</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Routine</td>
<td>Type</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------------------</td>
<td>--------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ddi_getlongprop_buf</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ddi_getprop</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ddi_getproplen</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ddi_getw</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ddi_intr_add_handler</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ddi_intr_add_softint</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ddi_intr_alloc</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ddi_intr_block_disable</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ddi_intr_block_enable</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ddi_intr_clr_mask</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ddi_intr_dup_handler</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ddi_intr_disable</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ddi_intr_enable</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ddi_intr_free</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ddi_intr_get_cap</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ddi_intr_get_hilevel_pri</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ddi_intr_get_navail</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ddi_intr_get_nintrs</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ddi_intr_get_pending</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ddi_intr_get_pri</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ddi_intr_get_softint_pri</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ddi_intr_get_supported_types</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ddi_intr_remove_handler</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ddi_intr_remove_softint</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ddi_intr_set_cap</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ddi_intr_set_mask</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ddi_intr_set_pri</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ddi_intr_set_softint_pri</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Routine</td>
<td>Type</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------------------------</td>
<td>--------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ddi_intr_trigger_softint</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ddi_io_get16</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ddi_io_get32</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ddi_io_get8</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ddi_io_getb</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ddi_io_getl</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ddi_io_getw</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ddi_io_put16</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ddi_io_put32</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ddi_io_put8</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ddi_io_putb</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ddi_io_putl</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ddi_io_putw</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ddi_io_rep_get16</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ddi_io_rep_get32</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ddi_io_rep_get8</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ddi_io_rep_getb</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ddi_io_rep_getl</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ddi_io_rep_getw</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ddi_io_rep_put16</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ddi_io_rep_put32</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ddi_io_rep_put8</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ddi_io_rep_putb</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ddi_io_rep_putl</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ddi_io_rep_putw</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ddi_iomin</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ddi_iopb_alloc</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ddi_iopb_free</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Routine</td>
<td>Type</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------------------</td>
<td>---------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ddi_log_sysevent</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ddi_map_regs</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ddi_mapdev</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ddi_mapdev_intercept</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ddi_mapdev_nointercept</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ddi_mapdev_set_device_acc_attr</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ddi_mem_alloc</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ddi_mem_free</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ddi_mem_get16</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ddi_mem_get32</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ddi_mem_get64</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ddi_mem_get8</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ddi_mem_getb</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ddi_mem_getl</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ddi_mem_getll</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ddi_mem_getw</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ddi_mem_put16</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ddi_mem_put32</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ddi_mem_put64</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ddi_mem_put8</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ddi_mem_putb</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ddi_mem_putl</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ddi_mem_putll</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ddi_mem_putw</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ddi_mem_rep_get16</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ddi_mem_rep_get32</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ddi_mem_rep_get64</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ddi_mem_rep_get8</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Routine</td>
<td>Type</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------------------</td>
<td>-------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ddi_mem_rep_getb</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ddi_mem_rep_getl</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ddi_mem_rep_getll</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ddi_mem_rep_getw</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ddi_mem_rep_put16</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ddi_mem_rep_put32</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ddi_mem_rep_put64</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ddi_mem_rep_put8</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ddi_mem_rep_putb</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ddi_mem_rep_putl</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ddi_mem_rep_putll</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ddi_mem_rep_putw</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ddi_mmap_get_model</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ddi_model_convert_from</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ddi_modopen</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ddi_no_info</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ddi_node_name</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ddi.peek16</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ddi.peek32</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ddi.peek64</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ddi.peek8</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ddi.peekc</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ddi.peekd</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ddi.peekl</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ddi.peeks</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ddi_periodic_add</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ddi_periodic_delete</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ddi_poke16</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Routine</td>
<td>Type</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------------------------</td>
<td>--------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ddi_poke32</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ddi_poke64</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ddi_poke8</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ddi_pokec</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ddi_poked</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ddi_pokel</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ddi_pokes</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ddi_prop_create</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ddi_prop_exists</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ddi_prop_free</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ddi_prop_get_int</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ddi_prop_lookup</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ddi_prop_lookup_byte_array</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ddi_prop_lookup_int_array</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ddi_prop_lookup_string</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ddi_prop_lookup_string_array</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ddi_prop_modify</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ddi_prop_op</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ddi_prop_remove</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ddi_prop_remove_all</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ddi_prop_undefine</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ddi_prop_update</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ddi_prop_update_byte_array</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ddi_prop_update_int</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ddi_prop_update_int_array</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ddi_prop_update_string</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ddi_prop_update_string_array</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ddi_ptob</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Routine</td>
<td>Type</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------------------</td>
<td>--------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ddi_put16</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ddi_put32</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ddi_put64</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ddi_put8</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ddi_putb</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ddi_putl</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ddi_putll</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ddi_putw</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ddi_regs_map_free</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ddi_regs_map_setup</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ddi_remove_event_handler</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ddi_remove_intr</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ddi_remove_minor_node</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ddi_remove_softintr</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ddi_removing_power</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ddi_rep_get16</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ddi_rep_get32</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ddi_rep_get64</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ddi_rep_get8</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ddi_rep_getb</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ddi_rep_getl</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ddi_rep_getll</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ddi_rep_getw</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ddi_rep_put16</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ddi_rep_put32</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ddi_rep_put64</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ddi_rep_put8</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ddi_rep_putb</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Routine</td>
<td>Type</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------------------</td>
<td>-----------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ddi_rep_putl</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ddi_rep_putll</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ddi_rep_putw</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ddi_report_dev</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ddi_root_node</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ddi_segmap</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ddi_segmap_setup</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ddi_set_driver_private</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ddi_slaveonly</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ddi_soft_state</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ddi_soft_state_fini</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ddi_soft_state_free</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ddi_soft_state_init</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ddi_soft_state_zalloc</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ddi_strloll</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ddi_strloul</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ddi_trigger_softintr</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ddi_umem_alloc</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ddi_umem_free</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ddi_umem_iosetup</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ddi_umem_lock</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ddi_unmap_regs</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>delay</td>
<td>DDI/DKI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>devmap_default_access</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>devmap_devmem_setup</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>devmap_do_ctxmgt</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>devmap_load</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>devmap_set_ctx_timeout</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Routine</td>
<td>Type</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------------------</td>
<td>-----------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>devmap_setup</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>devmap_umem_setup</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>devmap_unload</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>disksort</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dlbindack</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>drv_getparm</td>
<td>DDI/DKI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>drv_hztousec</td>
<td>DDI/DKI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>drv_priv</td>
<td>DDI/DKI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>drv_usectohz</td>
<td>DDI/DKI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>drv_usecwait</td>
<td>DDI/DKI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>free_pktiopb</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>freerbuf</td>
<td>DDI/DKI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>get_pktiopb</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>geterror</td>
<td>DDI/DKI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gethrtime</td>
<td>DDI/DKI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>getmajor</td>
<td>DDI/DKI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>getminor</td>
<td>DDI/DKI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>getrbuf</td>
<td>DDI/DKI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gld</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hat_getkpfnum</td>
<td>DKI only</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>id32_alloc</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>inb</td>
<td>Solaris x86 DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>inl</td>
<td>Solaris x86 DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>inw</td>
<td>Solaris x86 DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kiconv</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kiconv_close</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kiconv_open</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kiconvstr</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Routine</td>
<td>Type</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------------------------</td>
<td>---------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kmem_alloc</td>
<td>DDI/DKI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kmem_cache_create</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kmem_free</td>
<td>DDI/DKI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kmem_zalloc</td>
<td>DDI/DKI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kstat_create</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kstat_delete</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kstat_install</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kstat_named_init</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kstat_queue</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kstat_runq_back_to_waitq</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kstat_runq_enter</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kstat_runq_exit</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kstat_waitq_enter</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kstat_waitq_exit</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kstat_waitq_to_runq</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ldi_add_event_handler</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ldi_aread</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ldi_devmap</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ldi_dump</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ldi_ev_finalize</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ldi_ev_get_cookie</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ldi_ev_get_type</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ldi_ev_notify</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ldi_ev_register_callbacks</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ldi_ev_remove_callbacks</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ldi_get_dev</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ldi_get_eventcookie</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ldi_get_size</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Routine</td>
<td>Type</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------------------------</td>
<td>---------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ldi_ident_from_dev</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ldi_ioctl</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ldi_open_by_dev</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ldi_poll</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ldi_prop_exists</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ldi_prop_get_int</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ldi_prop_get_lookup_int_array</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ldi_putmsg</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ldi_read</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ldi_remove_event_handler</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ldi_strategy</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>makecom_g0</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>makecom_g0_s</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>makecom_g1</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>makecom_g5</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>makedevice</td>
<td>DDI/DKI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>max</td>
<td>DDI/DKI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>membar_ops</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>memchr</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>minphys</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mod_info</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mod_install</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mod_remove</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mutex_destroy</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mutex_enter</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mutex_exit</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mutex_init</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Routine</td>
<td>Type</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------------------</td>
<td>---------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mutex_owned</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mutex_tryenter</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nochpoll</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nodev</td>
<td>DDI/DKI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nulldev</td>
<td>DDI/DKI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>numtos</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nvlist_add_boolean</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nvlist_alloc</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nvlist_lookup_boolean</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nvlist_lookup_nvpair</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nvlist_next_nvpair</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nvlist_remove</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nvlist_value_byte</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>outb</td>
<td>Solaris x86 DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>outl</td>
<td>Solaris x86 DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>outw</td>
<td>Solaris x86 DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pci_config_get16</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pci_config_get32</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pci_config_get64</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pci_config_get8</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pci_config_getb</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pci_config_getl</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pci_config_getw</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pci_config_put16</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pci_config_put32</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pci_config_put64</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pci_config_put8</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pci_config_putb</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Routine</td>
<td>Type</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------------------------</td>
<td>--------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pci_config_putl</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pci_config_putw</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pci_config_setup</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pci_config_teardown</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pci_ereport_setup</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pci_report_pmcap</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pci_save_config_regs</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>physio</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pm_busy_component</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pm_power_has_changed</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pm_raise_power</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pm_trans_check</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pollwakeup</td>
<td>DDI/DKI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pci_config_teardown</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>proc_signal</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>proc_unref</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ptoe</td>
<td>DDI/DKI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>repinsb</td>
<td>Solaris x86 DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>repinsd</td>
<td>Solaris x86 DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>repinsw</td>
<td>Solaris x86 DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>repoutsb</td>
<td>Solaris x86 DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>repoutsd</td>
<td>Solaris x86 DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>repoutsw</td>
<td>Solaris x86 DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rmalloc</td>
<td>DDI/DKI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rmalloc_wait</td>
<td>DDI/DKI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Routine</td>
<td>Type</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------------------------</td>
<td>---------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rmallocmap</td>
<td>DDI/DKI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rmallocmap_wait</td>
<td>DDI/DKI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rmfree</td>
<td>DDI/DKI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rmfreemap</td>
<td>DDI/DKI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rw_destroy</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rw_downgrade</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rw_enter</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rw_exit</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rw_init</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rw_read_locked</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rw_tryenter</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rw_tryupgrade</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>scsi_abort</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>scsi_alloc_consistent_buf</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>scsi_cname</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>scsi_destroy_pkt</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>scsi_dmafree</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>scsi_dmaget</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>scsi_dname</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>scsi_errno</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>scsi_ext_sense_fields</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>scsi_find_sense_descr</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>scsi_free_consistent_buf</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>scsi_get_device_type_scsi_options</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>scsi_get_device_type_string</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>scsi_hba_attach</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>scsi_hba_attach_setup</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>scsi_hba_detach</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Routine</td>
<td>Type</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------------------</td>
<td>--------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>scsi_hba_fini</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>scsi_hba_init</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>scsi_hba_lookup_capstr</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>scsi_hba_pkt_alloc</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>scsi_hba_pkt_free</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>scsi_hba_probe</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>scsi_hba_tran_alloc</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>scsi_hba_tran_free</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>scsi_ifgetcap</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>scsi_ifsetcap</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>scsi_init_pkt</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>scsi_log</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>scsi_mname</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>scsi_pktalloc</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>scsi_pktfree</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>scsi_poll</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>scsi_probe</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>scsi_resalloc</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>scsi_reset</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>scsi_reset_notify</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>scsi_resfree</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>scsi_rname</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>scsi_sense_key</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>scsi_setup_cdb</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>scsi_slave</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>scsi_sname</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>scsi_sync_pkt</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>scsi_transport</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Routine</td>
<td>Type</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------------------</td>
<td>------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>scsi_unprobe</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>scsi_unslave</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>scsi_validate_sense</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>scsi_vu_errmsg</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sema_destroy</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sema_init</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sema_p</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sema_p_sig</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sema_tryp</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sema_v</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sprintf</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>stoi</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>strchr</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>strcmp</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>strcpy</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>strlen</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>strncmp</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>strncpy</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STRUCT_DECL</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>swab</td>
<td>DDI/DKI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>taskq</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>timeout</td>
<td>DDI/DKI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>u8_strcmp</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>u8_textprep_str</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>u8_validate</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>uconv_u16to32</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>uiomove</td>
<td>DDI/DKI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>utimeout</td>
<td>DDI/DKI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Routine</td>
<td>Type</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------------------------------</td>
<td>-----------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ureadc</td>
<td>DDI/DKI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>usb_alloc_request</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>usb_client_attach</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>usb_clr_feature</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>usb_create_pm_components</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>usb_get_addr</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>usb_get_alt_if</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>usb_get_cfg</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>usb_get_current_frame_number</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>usb_get_dev_data</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>usb_get_max_pkts_per_ioc_request</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>usb_get_status</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>usb_get_string_desc</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>usb_handle_remote_wakeup</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>usb_lookup_ep_data</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>usb_parse_data</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>usb_pipe_bulk_xfer</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>usb_pipe_close</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>usb_pipe_ctrl_xfer</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>usb_pipe_drain_reqs</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>usb_pipe_get_max_bulk_transfer_size</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>usb_pipe_get_state</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>usb_pipe_intr_xfer</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>usb_pipe_isoc_xfer</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>usb_pipe_open</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>usb_pipe_reset</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>usb_pipe_set_private</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>usb_register_hotplug_cbs</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Routine</td>
<td>Type</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------------------</td>
<td>---------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>usb_reset_device</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>uwritec</td>
<td>DDI/DKI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>va_arg</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>va_end</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>va_start</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vcmn_err</td>
<td>DDI/DKI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vsprintf</td>
<td>Solaris DDI</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

See Also  Intro(9F), mutex(9F)
REFERENCE

Kernel Functions for Drivers
adjmsg(9F)

Name       adjmsg – trim bytes from a message

Synopsis   #include <sys/stream.h>

```
int adjmsg(mblk_t *mp, ssize_t len);
```

Interface Level  Architecture independent level 1 (DDI/DKI).

Parameters    

- `mp`        Pointer to the message to be trimmed.
- `len`       The number of bytes to be removed.

Description   

The `adjmsg()` function removes bytes from a message. `|len|` (the absolute value of `len`) specifies the number of bytes to be removed. The `adjmsg()` function only trims bytes across message blocks of the same type.

The `adjmsg()` function finds the maximal leading sequence of message blocks of the same type as that of `mp` and starts removing bytes either from the head of that sequence or from the tail of that sequence. If `len` is greater than 0, `adjmsg()` removes bytes from the start of the first message block in that sequence. If `len` is less than 0, it removes bytes from the end of the last message block in that sequence.

The `adjmsg()` function fails if `|len|` is greater than the number of bytes in the maximal leading sequence it finds.

The `adjmsg()` function may remove any except the first zero-length message block created during adjusting. It may also remove any zero-length message blocks that occur within the scope of `|len|`.

Return Values   

The `adjmsg()` function returns:

- 1        Successful completion.
- 0        An error occurred.

Context       The `adjmsg()` function can be called from user, interrupt, or kernel context.

See Also       STREAMS Programming Guide
`allocb` – allocate a message block

**Synopsis**
```
#include <sys/stream.h>

mblk_t *allocb(size_t size, uint_t pri);
```

**Interface Level**
Architecture independent level 1 (DDI/DKI).

**Description**
The `allocb()` function tries to allocate a STREAMS message block. Buffer allocation fails only when the system is out of memory. If no buffer is available, the `bufcall(9F)` function can help a module recover from an allocation failure.

A STREAMS message block is composed of three structures. The first structure is a message block (`mblk_t`). See `msgb(9S)`. The `mblk_t` structure points to a data block structure (`dblk_t`). See `datab(9S)`. Together these two structures describe the message type (if applicable) and the size and location of the third structure, the data buffer. The data buffer contains the data for this message block. The allocated data buffer is at least double-word aligned, so it can hold any C data structure.

The fields in the `mblk_t` structure are initialized as follows:
- `b_cont` set to NULL
- `b_rptr` points to the beginning of the data buffer
- `b_wptr` points to the beginning of the data buffer
- `b_datap` points to the `dblk_t` structure

The fields in the `dblk_t` structure are initialized as follows:
- `db_base` points to the first byte of the data buffer
- `db_lim` points to the last byte + 1 of the data buffer
- `db_type` set to `M_DATA`

The following figure identifies the data structure members that are affected when a message block is allocated.
The allocb() function can be called from user, interrupt, or kernel context.

**Examples**

**EXAMPLE 1 allocb() Code Sample**

Given a pointer to a queue (q) and an error number (err), the send_error() routine sends an M_ERROR type message to the stream head.

If a message cannot be allocated, NULL is returned, indicating an allocation failure (line 8). Otherwise, the message type is set to M_ERROR (line 10). Line 11 increments the write pointer (bp->b_wptr) by the size (one byte) of the data in the message.

A message must be sent up the read side of the stream to arrive at the stream head. To determine whether q points to a read queue or to a write queue, the q->q_flag member is tested to see if QREADR is set (line 13). If it is not set, q points to a write queue, and in line 14 the RD(9F) function is used to find the corresponding read queue. In line 15, the putnext(9F) function is used to send the message upstream, returning 1 if successful.

```c
1 send_error(q, err)
2 queue_t *q;
3 unsigned char err;
4 {
5 mblk_t *bp;
6
7 if ((bp = allocb(1, BPRI_HI)) == NULL) /* allocate msg. block */
8 return(0);
9
10 bp->b_datap->db_type = M_ERROR; /* set msg type to M_ERROR */
11 *bp->b_wptr++ = err; /* increment write pointer */
```

**Parameters**

- **size**: The number of bytes in the message block.
- **pri**: Priority of the request (no longer used).

**Return Values**

Upon success, allocb() returns a pointer to the allocated message block of type M_DATA. On failure, allocb() returns a NULL pointer.
EXAMPLE 1 allocb() Code Sample  (Continued)

13  if (!(q->q_flag & QREADR)) /* if not read queue */
14   q = RD(q); /* get read queue */
15  putnext(q,bp); /* send message upstream */
16  return(1);
17 }

See Also  RD(9F), bufcall(9F), esballoc(9F), esbbcall(9F), putnext(9F), testb(9F), datab(9S), msgb(9S)

Writing Device Drivers

STREAMS Programming Guide

Notes  The pri argument is no longer used, but is retained for compatibility with existing drivers.
**Name**
allocb_tmpl – allocate a message block using a template

**Synopsis**
```
#include <sys/stream.h>

mblk_t *allocb_tmpl(size_t size, const mblk_t *tmpl);
```

**Interface Level**
Solaris DDI specific (Solaris DDI)

**Parameters**
- `size` The number of bytes in the message block.
- `tmpl` The template message block.

**Description**
The `allocb_tmpl()` function tries to allocate a STREAMS message block using `allocb(9F)`. If the allocation is successful, the `db_type` field in the data block structure (dblk_t, see `datab(9S)`), as well as some implementation-private data, are copied from the `dblk_t` associated with `tmpl`.

The `allocb_tmpl()` function should be used when a new STREAMS message block is allocated. This block is then used to contain data derived from another STREAMS message block. The original message is used as the `tmpl` argument.

**Return Values**
- Upon success, `allocb_tmpl()` returns a pointer to the allocated message block of the same type as `tmpl`. On failure, `allocb_tmpl()` returns a NULL pointer.

**Context**
The `allocb_tmpl()` function can be called from user, interrupt, or kernel context.

**See Also**
`allocb(9F), datab(9S), msgb(9S)`

*Writing Device Drivers*

*STREAMS Programming Guide*
Name  anocancel – prevent cancellation of asynchronous I/O request

Synopsis  
#include <sys/ddi.h>
#include <sys/sunddi.h>

int anocancel();

Interface Level  Solaris DDI specific (Solaris DDI).

Description  anocancel() should be used by drivers that do not support canceling asynchronous I/O requests. anocancel() is passed as the driver cancel routine parameter to aphysio(9F).

Return Values  anocancel() returns ENXIO.

See Also  aread(9E), awrite(9E), aphysio(9F)

Writing Device Drivers
### Synopsis

```c
#include <sys/types.h>
#include <sys/buf.h>
#include <sys/uio.h>
#include <sys/aio_req.h>
#include <sys/ddi.h>
#include <sys/sunddi.h>

int aphysio(int (*strat)(struct buf *), int (*cancel)(struct buf *),
            dev_t dev, int rw, void (*mincnt)(struct buf *),
            struct aio_req *aio_reqp);
```

### Parameters

- **strat**: Pointer to device strategy routine.
- **cancel**: Pointer to driver cancel routine. Used to cancel a submitted request. The driver must pass the address of the function `anocancel(9F)` because cancellation is not supported.
- **dev**: The device number.
- **rw**: Read/write flag. This is either `B_READ` when reading from the device or `B_WRITE` when writing to the device.
- **mincnt**: Routine which bounds the maximum transfer unit size.
- **aio_reqp**: Pointer to the `aio_req(9S)` structure which describes the user I/O request.

### Interface Level

Solaris DDI specific (Solaris DDI).

### Description

`aphysio()` performs asynchronous I/O operations between the device and the address space described by `aio_reqp->aio_uio`.

Prior to the start of the transfer, `aphysio()` verifies the requested operation is valid. It then locks the pages involved in the I/O transfer so they can not be paged out. The device strategy routine, `strat`, is then called one or more times to perform the physical I/O operations.

`aphysio()` does not wait for each transfer to complete, but returns as soon as the necessary requests have been made.

`aphysio()` calls `mincnt` to bound the maximum transfer unit size to a sensible default for the device and the system. Drivers which do not provide their own local `mincnt` routine should call `aphysio()` with `minphys(9F)`. `minphys(9F)` is the system `mincnt` routine. `minphys(9F)` ensures the transfer size does not exceed any system limits.

If a driver supplies a local `mincnt` routine, this routine should perform the following actions:

- If `bp->b_bcount` exceeds a device limit, `physio()` returns `ENOTSUP`.
- Call `aminphys(9F)` to ensure that the driver does not circumvent additional system limits. If `aminphys(9F)` does not return 0, return `ENOTSUP`.

**Return Values**
aphysio() returns:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Value</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td>Upon success.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>non-zero</td>
<td>Upon failure.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Context**
aphysio() can be called from user context only.

**See Also**
`aread(9E), awrite(9E), strategy(9E), anocancel(9F), biodone(9F), biowait(9F), minphys(9F), physio(9F), aio_req(9S), buf(9S), uio(9S)`

**Writing Device Drivers**

**Warnings**
It is the driver's responsibility to call `biodone(9F)` when the transfer is complete.

**Bugs**
Cancellation is not supported in this release. The address of the function `anocancel(9F)` must be used as the `cancel` argument.
#include <sys/debug.h>

void ASSERT(EX);

Implementation (DDI/DKI).

boolean expression.

The ASSERT() macro checks to see if the expression EX is true. If it is not, then ASSERT() causes an error message to be logged to the console and the system to panic. ASSERT() works only if the preprocessor symbol DEBUG is defined.

Context The ASSERT() macro can be used from user, interrupt, or kernel context.

See Also Writing Device Drivers
Name: atomic_add, atomic_add_8, atomic_add_char, atomic_add_16, atomic_add_short, atomic_add_32, atomic_add_int, atomic_add_long, atomic_add_64, atomic_add_ptr, atomic_add_8_nv, atomic_add_char_nv, atomic_add_16_nv, atomic_add_short_nv, atomic_add_32_nv, atomic_add_int_nv, atomic_add_long_nv, atomic_add_64_nv, atomic_add_ptr_nv – atomic add operations

Synopsis: #include <sys/atomic.h>

void atomic_add_8(volatile uint8_t * target, int8_t delta);
void atomic_add_char(volatile uchar_t * target, signed char delta);
void atomic_add_16(volatile uint16_t * target, int16_t delta);
void atomic_add_short(volatile ushort_t * target, short delta);
void atomic_add_32(volatile uint32_t * target, int32_t delta);
void atomic_add_int(volatile uint_t * target, int delta);
void atomic_add_long(volatile ulong_t * target, long delta);
void atomic_add_64(volatile uint64_t * target, int64_t delta);
void atomic_add_ptr(volatile void * target, ssize_t delta);

uint8_t atomic_add_8_nv(volatile uint8_t * target, int8_t delta);
uchar_t atomic_add_char_nv(volatile uchar_t * target, signed char delta);
uint16_t atomic_add_16_nv(volatile uint16_t * target, int16_t delta);
ushort_t atomic_add_short_nv(volatile ushort_t * target, short delta);
uint32_t atomic_add_32_nv(volatile uint32_t * target, int32_t delta);
uint_t atomic_add_int_nv(volatile uint_t * target, int delta);
ulong_t atomic_add_long_nv(volatile ulong_t * target, long delta);
uint64_t atomic_add_64_nv(volatile uint64_t * target, int64_t delta);
void * atomic_add_ptr_nv(volatile void * target, ssize_t delta);

Description: These functions enable the addition of delta to the value stored in target to occur in an atomic manner.

Return Values: The * _nv() variants of these functions return the new value of target.

Errors: No errors are defined.

Context: These functions can be called from user, interrupt, or kernel context.

Attributes: See attributes(5) for descriptions of the following attributes:
atomic_add(9F)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ATTRIBUTE TYPE</th>
<th>ATTRIBUTE VALUE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Interface Stability</td>
<td>Evolving</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

See Also  atomic_and(9F), atomic_bits(9F), atomic_cas(9F), atomic_dec(9F), atomic_inc(9F), atomic_or(9F), atomic_swap(9F), membar_ops(9F), attributes(5), atomic_ops(3C)

Notes  The *_nv() variants are substantially more expensive on some platforms than the versions that do not return values. Do not use them unless you need to know the new value atomically (for example, when decrementing a reference count and checking whether it went to zero).
# Name
atomic_and, atomic_and_8, atomic_and_u8, atomic_and_16, atomic_and_u16, atomic_and_32, atomic_and_u32, atomic_and_64, atomic_and_u64, atomic_and_u8_nv, atomic_and_u16_nv, atomic_and_u32_nv, atomic_and_u64_nv

## Synopsis
```c
#include <sys/atomic.h>

void atomic_and_8(volatile uint8_t *target, uint8_t bits);
void atomic_and_u8(volatile uchar_t *target, uchar_t bits);
void atomic_and_16(volatile uint16_t *target, uint16_t bits);
void atomic_and_u16(volatile ushort_t *target, ushort_t bits);
void atomic_and_32(volatile uint32_t *target, uint32_t bits);
void atomic_and_u32(volatile uint_t *target, uint_t bits);
void atomic_and_64(volatile uint64_t *target, uint64_t bits);

uint8_t atomic_and_8_nv(volatile uint8_t *target, uint8_t bits);
uchar_t atomic_and_u8_nv(volatile uchar_t *target, uchar_t bits);
uint16_t atomic_and_16_nv(volatile uint16_t *target, uint16_t bits);
ushort_t atomic_and_u16_nv(volatile ushort_t *target, ushort_t bits);
uint32_t atomic_and_32_nv(volatile uint32_t *target, uint32_t bits);
uint_t atomic_and_u32_nv(volatile uint_t *target, uint_t bits);
ulong_t atomic_and_64_nv(volatile ulong_t *target, ulong_t bits);
uint64_t atomic_and_u64_nv(volatile uint64_t *target, uint64_t bits);
```

## Description
These functions enable the bitwise AND of `bits` to the value stored in `target` to occur in an atomic manner.

## Return Values
The *._nv() variants of these functions return the new value of `target`.

## Errors
No errors are defined.

## Context
These functions can be called from user, interrupt, or kernel context.

## Attributes
See attributes(5) for descriptions of the following attributes:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ATTRIBUTE TYPE</th>
<th>ATTRIBUTE VALUE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Interface Stability</td>
<td>Committed</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
atomic_and(9F)

See Also  atomic_add(9F), atomic_bits(9F), atomic_cas(9F), atomic_dec(9F), atomic_inc(9F),
atomic_or(9F), atomic_swap(9F), membar_ops(9F), attributes(5), atomic_ops(3C)

Notes  The *_nv() variants are substantially more expensive on some platforms than the versions
that do not return values. Do not use them unless you need to know the new value atomically.
# atomic_set_long_excl, atomic_clear_long_excl – atomic set and clear bit operations

## Synopsis

```c
#include <sys/atomic.h>

int atomic_set_long_excl(volatile ulong_t *target, uint_t bit);
int atomic_clear_long_excl(volatile ulong_t *target, uint_t bit);
```

## Description

The `atomic_set_long_excl()` and `atomic_clear_long_excl()` functions perform an exclusive atomic bit set or clear operation on `target`. The value of `bit` specifies the number of the bit to be modified within `target`. Bits are numbered from zero to one less than the maximum number of bits in a `long`. If the value of `bit` falls outside of this range, the result of the operation is undefined.

## Return Values

The `atomic_set_long_excl()` and `atomic_clear_long_excl()` functions return 0 if `bit` was successfully set or cleared. They return -1 if `bit` was already set or cleared.

## Errors

No errors are defined.

## Context

These functions can be called from user, interrupt, or kernel context.

## Attributes

See `attributes(5)` for descriptions of the following attributes:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ATTRIBUTE TYPE</th>
<th>ATTRIBUTE VALUE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Interface Stability</td>
<td>Evolving</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## See Also

`atomic_add(9F), atomic_and(9F), atomic_cas(9F), atomic_dec(9F), atomic_inc(9F), atomic_or(9F), atomic_swap(9F), membar_ops(9F), attributes(5), atomic_ops(3C)`
atomic_cas(9F)

Name  atomic_cas, atomic_cas_8, atomic_cas_uchar, atomic_cas_16, atomic_cas_ushort, atomic_cas_32, atomic_cas_uint, atomic_cas_ulong, atomic_cas_64, atomic_cas_ptr – atomic compare and swap operations

Synopsis  #include <sys/atomic.h>

    uint8_t atomic_cas_8(volatile uint8_t *target, uint8_t cmp, uint8_t newval);
    uchar_t atomic_cas_uchar(volatile uchar_t *target, uchar_t cmp, uchar_t newval);
    uint16_t atomic_cas_16(volatile uint16_t *target, uint16_t cmp, uint16_t newval);
    ushort_t atomic_cas_ushort(volatile ushort_t *target, ushort_t cmp, ushort_t newval);
    uint32_t atomic_cas_32(volatile uint32_t *target, uint32_t cmp, uint32_t newval);
    uint_t atomic_cas_uint(volatile uint_t *target, uint_t cmp, uint_t newval);
    ulong_t atomic_cas_ulong(volatile ulong_t *target, ulong_t cmp, ulong_t newval);
    uint64_t atomic_cas_64(volatile uint64_t *target, uint64_t cmp, uint64_t newval);
    void *atomic_cas_ptr(volatile void *target, void *cmp, void *newval);

Description  These functions enable a compare and swap operation to occur atomically. The value stored in target is compared with cmp. If these values are equal, the value stored in target is replaced with newval. The old value stored in target is returned by the function whether or not the replacement occurred.

Return Values  These functions return the old of *target.

Errors  No errors are defined.

Context  These functions can be called from user, interrupt, or kernel context.

Attributes  See attributes(5) for descriptions of the following attributes:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ATTRIBUTE TYPE</th>
<th>ATTRIBUTE VALUE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Interface Stability</td>
<td>Evolving</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

See Also  atomic_add(9F), atomic_and(9F), atomic_bits(9F), atomic_dec(9F), atomic_inc(9F), atomic_or(9F), atomic_swap(9F), membar_ops(9F), attributes(5), atomic_ops(3C)
**atomic_dec**

**atomic_dec**, **atomic_dec_8**, **atomic_dec_uchar**, **atomic_dec_16**, **atomic_dec_ushort**, **atomic_dec_32**, **atomic_dec_uint**, **atomic_dec_ulong**, **atomic_dec_64**, **atomic_dec_ptr**, **atomic_dec_8_nv**, **atomic_dec_uchar_nv**, **atomic_dec_16_nv**, **atomic_dec_ushort_nv**, **atomic_dec_32_nv**, **atomic_dec_uint_nv**, **atomic_dec_ulong_nv**, **atomic_dec_64_nv**, **atomic_dec_ptr_nv** — atomic decrement operations

```c
#include <sys/atomic.h>

void atomic_dec_8(volatile uint8_t *target);
void atomic_dec_uchar(volatile uchar_t *target);
void atomic_dec_16(volatile uint16_t *target);
void atomic_dec_ushort(volatile ushort_t *target);
void atomic_dec_32(volatile uint32_t *target);
void atomic_dec_uint(volatile uint_t *target);
void atomic_dec_ulong(volatile ulong_t *target);
void atomic_dec_64(volatile uint64_t *target);
void atomic_dec_ptr(volatile void *target);
uint8_t atomic_dec_8_nv(volatile uint8_t *target);
uchar_t atomic_dec_uchar_nv(volatile uchar_t *target);
uint16_t atomic_dec_16_nv(volatile uint16_t *target);
ushort_t atomic_dec_ushort_nv(volatile ushort_t *target);
uint32_t atomic_dec_32_nv(volatile uint32_t *target);
uint_t atomic_dec_uint_nv(volatile uint_t *target);
ulong_t atomic_dec_ulong_nv(volatile ulong_t *target);
uint64_t atomic_dec_64_nv(volatile uint64_t *target);
void *atomic_dec_ptr_nv(volatile void *target);
```

**Description**

These functions enable the decrementing (by one) of the value stored in `target` to occur in an atomic manner.

**Return Values**

The `_nv()` variants of these functions return the new value of `target`.

**Errors**

No errors are defined.

**Context**

These functions can be called from user, interrupt, or kernel context.

**Attributes**

See `attributes(5)` for descriptions of the following attributes:
See Also  atomic_add(9F), atomic_and(9F), atomic_bits(9F), atomic_cas(9F), atomic_inc(9F), atomic_or(9F), atomic_swap(9F), membar_ops(9F), attributes(5), atomic_ops(3C)

Notes  The *_nv() variants are substantially more expensive on some platforms than the versions that do not return values. Do not use them unless you need to know the new value atomically (for example, when decrementing a reference count and checking whether it went to zero).
### Name
atomic_inc, atomic_inc_8, atomic_inc_uchar, atomic_inc_16, atomic_inc_ushort, atomic_inc_32, atomic_inc_uint, atomic_inc_ulong, atomic_inc_64, atomic_inc_ptr, atomic_inc_8_nv, atomic_inc_uchar_nv, atomic_inc_16_nv, atomic_inc_ushort_nv, atomic_inc_32_nv, atomic_inc_uint_nv, atomic_inc_ulong_nv, atomic_inc_64_nv, atomic_inc_ptr_nv - atomic increment operations

### Synopsis
```
#include <sys/atomic.h>

void atomic_inc_8(volatile uint8_t *target);
void atomic_inc_uchar(volatile uchar_t *target);
void atomic_inc_16(volatile uint16_t *target);
void atomic_inc_ushort(volatile ushort_t *target);
void atomic_inc_32(volatile uint32_t *target);
void atomic_inc_uint(volatile uint_t *target);
void atomic_inc_ulong(volatile ulong_t *target);
void atomic_inc_64(volatile uint64_t *target);
void atomic_inc_ptr(volatile void *target);

uint8_t atomic_inc_8_nv(volatile uint8_t *target);
uchar_t atomic_inc_uchar_nv(volatile uchar_t *target);
uint16_t atomic_inc_16_nv(volatile uint16_t *target);
ushort_t atomic_inc_ushort_nv(volatile ushort_t *target);
uint32_t atomic_inc_32_nv(volatile uint32_t *target);
uint_t atomic_inc_uint_nv(volatile uint_t *target);
ulong_t atomic_inc_ulong_nv(volatile ulong_t *target);
uint64_t atomic_inc_64_nv(volatile uint64_t *target);
void *atomic_inc_ptr_nv(volatile void *target);
```

### Description
These functions enable the incrementing (by one) of the value stored in `target` to occur in an atomic manner.

### Return Values
The `_nv()` variants of these functions return the new value of `target`.

### Errors
No errors are defined.

### Context
These functions can be called from user, interrupt, or kernel context.

### Attributes
See attributes(5) for descriptions of the following attributes:
## atomic_inc(9F)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ATTRIBUTE TYPE</th>
<th>ATTRIBUTE VALUE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Interface Stability</td>
<td>Evolving</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### See Also

atomic_add(9F), atomic_and(9F), atomic_bits(9F), atomic_cas(9F), atomic_dec(9F), atomic_or(9F), atomic_swap(9F), membar_ops(9F), attributes(5), atomic_ops(3C)

### Notes

The `_nv()` variants are substantially more expensive on some platforms than the versions that do not return values. Do not use them unless you need to know the new value *atomically*. 
Name  atomic_ops – atomic operations

Synopsis  
#include <sys/atomic.h>

Description  This collection of functions provides atomic memory operations. There are 8 different classes of atomic operations:

- **atomic_add**: These functions provide an atomic addition of a signed value to a variable.
- **atomic_and**: These functions provide an atomic logical ‘and’ of a value to a variable.
- **atomic_bits**: These functions provide atomic bit setting and clearing within a variable.
- **atomic_cas**: These functions provide an atomic comparison of a value with a variable. If the comparison is equal, then swap in a new value for the variable, returning the old value of the variable in either case.
- **atomic_dec**: These functions provide an atomic decrement on a variable.
- **atomic_inc**: These functions provide an atomic increment on a variable.
- **atomic_or**: These functions provide an atomic logical ‘or’ of a value to a variable.
- **atomic_swap**: These functions provide an atomic swap of a value with a variable, returning the old value of the variable.

Attributes  See attributes(5) for descriptions of the following attributes:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ATTRIBUTE TYPE</th>
<th>ATTRIBUTE VALUE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Interface Stability</td>
<td>Evolving</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

See Also  atomic_add(9F), atomic_and(9F), atomic_bits(9F), atomic_cas(9F), atomic_dec(9F), atomic_inc(9F), atomic_or(9F), atomic_swap(9F), membar_ops(9F), attributes(5)

Notes  Atomic instructions ensure global visibility of atomically-modified variables on completion. In a relaxed store order system, this does not guarantee that the visibility of other variables will be synchronized with the completion of the atomic instruction. If such synchronization is required, memory barrier instructions must be used. See membar_ops(9F).

Atomic instructions can be expensive, since they require synchronization to occur at a hardware level. This means they should be used with care to ensure that forcing hardware level synchronization occurs a minimum number of times. For example, if you have several variables that need to be incremented as a group, and each needs to be done atomically, then do so with a mutex lock protecting all of them being incremented rather than using the atomic_inc(9F) operation on each of them.
atomic_or(9F)

Name atomic_or, atomic_or_8, atomic_or_uchar, atomic_or_16, atomic_or_ushort, atomic_or_32, atomic_or_uint, atomic_or_ulong, atomic_or_64, atomic_or_8_nv, atomic_or_uchar_nv, atomic_or_16_nv, atomic_or_ushort_nv, atomic_or_32_nv, atomic_or_uint_nv, atomic_or_ulong_nv, atomic_or_64_nv – atomic OR operations

Synopsis #include <sys/atomic.h>

void atomic_or_8(volatile uint8_t *target, uint8_t bits);
void atomic_or_uchar(volatile uchar_t *target, uchar_t bits);
void atomic_or_16(volatile uint16_t *target, uint16_t bits);
void atomic_or_ushort(volatile ushort_t *target, ushort_t bits);
void atomic_or_32(volatile uint32_t *target, uint32_t bits);
void atomic_or_uint(volatile uint_t *target, uint_t bits);
void atomic_or_ulong(volatile ulong_t *target, ulong_t bits);
void atomic_or_64(volatile uint64_t *target, uint64_t bits);

uint8_t atomic_or_8_nv(volatile uint8_t *target, uint8_t bits);
uchar_t atomic_or_uchar_nv(volatile uchar_t *target, uchar_t bits);
uint16_t atomic_or_16_nv(volatile uint16_t *target, uint16_t bits);
ushort_t atomic_or_ushort_nv(volatile ushort_t *target, ushort_t bits);
uint32_t atomic_or_32_nv(volatile uint32_t *target, uint32_t bits);
uint_t atomic_or_uint_nv(volatile uint_t *target, uint_t bits);
ulong_t atomic_or_ulong_nv(volatile ulong_t *target, ulong_t bits);
uint64_t atomic_or_64_nv(volatile uint64_t *target, uint64_t bits);

Description These functions enable the bitwise OR of bits to the value stored in target to occur in an atomic manner.

Return Values The *_nv() variants of these functions return the new value of target.

Errors No errors are defined.

Context These functions can be called from user, interrupt, or kernel context.

Attributes See attributes(5) for descriptions of the following attributes:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ATTRIBUTE TYPE</th>
<th>ATTRIBUTE VALUE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Interface Stability</td>
<td>Committed</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
The *nv() variants are substantially more expensive on some platforms than the versions that do not return values. Do not use them unless you need to know the new value atomically.

**See Also**  
atomic_add(9F), atomic_and(9F), atomic_bits(9F), atomic_cas(9F), atomic_dec(9F), atomic_inc(9F), atomic_swap(9F), membar_ops(9F), attributes(5), atomic_ops(3C)

**Notes**  
The *nv() variants are substantially more expensive on some platforms than the versions that do not return values. Do not use them unless you need to know the new value atomically.
atomic_swap

Name:
atomic_swap, atomic_swap_8, atomic_swap_uchar, atomic_swap_16, atomic_swap_ushort,
atomic_swap_32, atomic_swap_uint, atomic_swap_ulong, atomic_swap_64,
atomic_swap_ptr – atomic swap operations

Synopsis:
#include <sys/atomic.h>

uint8_t atomic_swap_8(volatile uint8_t *target, uint8_t newval);
uchar_t atomic_swap_uchar(volatile uchar_t *target, uchar_t newval);
uint16_t atomic_swap_16(volatile uint16_t *target, uint16_t newval);
ushort_t atomic_swap_ushort(volatile ushort_t *target, ushort_t newval);
uint32_t atomic_swap_32(volatile uint32_t *target, uint32_t newval);
uint_t atomic_swap_uint(volatile uint_t *target, uint_t newval);
ulong_t atomic_swap_ulong(volatile ulong_t *target, ulong_t newval);
uint64_t atomic_swap_64(volatile uint64_t *target, uint64_t newval);
void *atomic_swap_ptr(volatile void *target, void *newval);

Description:
These functions enable a swap operation to occur atomically. The value stored in target is
replaced with newval. The old value is returned by the function.

Return Values:
These functions return the old of *target.

Errors:
No errors are defined.

Context:
These functions can be called from user, interrupt, or kernel context.

Attributes:
See attributes(5) for descriptions of the following attributes:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ATTRIBUTE TYPE</th>
<th>ATTRIBUTE VALUE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Interface Stability</td>
<td>Evolving</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

See Also:
atomic_add(9F), atomic_and(9F), atomic_bits(9F), atomic_dec(9F), atomic_inc(9F),
atomic_or(9F), atomic_cas(9F), membar_ops(9F), attributes(5), atomic_ops(3C)
backq(9F)

Name
backq — get pointer to the queue behind the current queue

Synopsis
#include <sys/stream.h>

queue_t *backq(queue_t *cq);

Interface Level
Architecture independent level 1 (DDI/DKI).

Parameters
cq — The pointer to the current queue. queue_t is an alias for the queue(9S) structure.

Description
The backq() function returns a pointer to the queue preceding cq (the current queue). If cq is a read queue, backq() returns a pointer to the queue downstream from cq, unless it is the stream end. If cq is a write queue, backq() returns a pointer to the next queue upstream from cq, unless it is the stream head.

Return Values
If successful, backq() returns a pointer to the queue preceding the current queue. Otherwise, it returns NULL.

Context
The backq() function can be called from user, interrupt, or kernel context.

See Also
queue(9S)

Writing Device Drivers

STREAMS Programming Guide
**bcanput(9F)**

**Name**
bcanput – test for flow control in specified priority band

**Synopsis**
```
#include <sys/stream.h>

int bcanput(queue_t *q, unsigned char pri);
```

**Interface Level**
Architecture independent level 1 (DDI/DKI).

**Parameters**
- `q` Pointer to the message queue.
- `pri` Message priority.

**Description**
The `bcanput()` function searches through the stream (starting at `q`) until it finds a queue containing a service routine where the message can be enqueued, or until it reaches the end of the stream. If found, the queue containing the service routine is tested to see if there is room for a message of priority `pri` in the queue.

If `pri` is 0, `bcanput()` is equivalent to a call with `canput(9F)`.

`canputnext(q)` and `bcanputnext(q, pri)` should always be used in preference to `canput(q→q_next)` and `bcanput(q→q_next, pri)` respectively.

**Return Values**
- 1 If a message of priority `pri` can be placed on the queue.
- 0 If the priority band is full.

**Context**
The `bcanput()` function can be called from user, interrupt, or kernel context.

**See Also**
`bcanputnext(9F), canput(9F), canputnext(9F), putbq(9F), putnext(9F)`

**Writing Device Drivers**

**STREAMS Programming Guide**

**Warnings**
Drivers are responsible for both testing a queue with `bcanput()` and refraining from placing a message on the queue if `bcanput()` fails.
**Name**
bcmp – compare two byte arrays

**Synopsis**
#include <sys/types.h>
#include <sys/ddi.h>

```c
int bcmp(const void *s1, const void *s2, size_t len);
```

**Interface Level**
Architecture independent level 1 (DDI/DKI).

**Parameters**
- `s1` Pointer to the first character string.
- `s2` Pointer to the second character string.
- `len` Number of bytes to be compared.

**Description**
The `bcmp()` function compares two byte arrays of length `len`.

**Return Values**
The `bcmp()` function returns 0 if the arrays are identical, or 1 if they are not.

**Context**
The `bcmp()` function can be called from user, interrupt, or kernel context.

**See Also**
`strcmp(9F)`

**Notes**
Unlike `strcmp(9F)`, `bcmp()` does not terminate when it encounters a null byte.

**Writing Device Drivers**
bcopy(9F)

Name  bcopy – copy data between address locations in the kernel

Synopsis  #include <sys/types.h>
          #include <sys/sunddi.h>

          void bcopy(const void *from, void *to, size_t bcount);

Interface Level  Architecture independent level 1 (DDI/DKI).

Parameters  from  Source address from which the copy is made.
           to  Destination address to which copy is made.
           bcount  The number of bytes moved.

Description  The bcopy() function copies bcount bytes from one kernel address to another. If the input and output addresses overlap, the command executes, but the results may not be as expected.

Note that bcopy() should never be used to move data in or out of a user buffer, because it has no provision for handling page faults. The user address space can be swapped out at any time, and bcopy() always assumes that there will be no paging faults. If bcopy() attempts to access the user buffer when it is swapped out, the system will panic. It is safe to use bcopy() to move data within kernel space, since kernel space is never swapped out.

Context  The bcopy() function can be called from user, interrupt, or kernel context.

Examples  EXAMPLE 1  Copying data between address locations in the kernel:

An I/O request is made for data stored in a RAM disk. If the I/O operation is a read request, the data is copied from the RAM disk to a buffer (line 8). If it is a write request, the data is copied from a buffer to the RAM disk (line 15). bcopy() is used since both the RAM disk and the buffer are part of the kernel address space.

        """""""""""""""""
        1 #define RAMDNBLK 1000 /* blocks in the RAM disk */
        2 #define RAMDBSIZ 512 /* bytes per block */
        3 char ramdblks[RAMDNBLK][RAMDBSIZ]; /* blocks forming RAM */
        /* disk */
                ...
        4
        5 if (bp->b_flags & B_READ) /* if read request, copy data */
        6     /* from RAM disk data block */
        7     /* to system buffer */
        8     bcopy(&ramdblks[bp->b_blkno][0], bp->b_un.b_addr,
        9         bp->b_bcount);
        10 else /* else write request, */
        """"""""""""""""""
Copying data between address locations in the kernel:

(Continued)

```c
/* copy data from a */
/* system buffer to RAM disk */
/* data block */
bcopy(bp->b_un.b_addr, &ramdblks[bp->b_blkno][0],
     bp->b_bcount);
```

See Also  
`copyin(9F), copyout(9F)`

Writing Device Drivers

Warnings  
The *from* and *to* addresses must be within the kernel space. No range checking is done. If an address outside of the kernel space is selected, the driver may corrupt the system in an unpredictable way.
bioclone(9F)

Name  bioclone – clone another buffer

Synopsis  
#include <sys/ddi.h> #include <sys/sunddi.h>

struct buf *bioclone(struct buf *bp, off_t off, size_t len, dev_t dev, daddr_t blkno, 
    int (*iodone) (struct buf *), struct buf *bp_mem, int sleepflag);

Interface Level  Solaris DDI specific (Solaris DDI).

Parameters  

bp  Pointer to the buf(9S) structure describing the original I/O request.

off  Offset within original I/O request where new I/O request should start.

len  Length of the I/O request.

dev  Device number.

blkno  Block number on device.

iodone  Specific biodone(9F) routine.

bp_mem  Pointer to a buffer structure to be filled in or NULL.

sleepflag  Determines whether caller can sleep for memory. Possible flags are KM_SLEEP to allow sleeping until memory is available, or KM_NOSLEEP to return NULL immediately if memory is not available.

Description  The bioclone() function returns an initialized buffer to perform I/O to a portion of another buffer. The new buffer will be set up to perform I/O to the range within the original I/O request specified by the parameters off and len. An offset 0 starts the new I/O request at the same address as the original request. off + len must not exceed b_bcount, the length of the original request. The device number dev specifies the device to which the buffer is to perform I/O. blkno is the block number on device. It will be assigned to the b_blkno field of the cloned buffer structure. iodone lets the driver identify a specific biodone(9F) routine to be called by the driver when the I/O is complete. bp_mem determines from where the space for the buffer should be allocated. If bp_mem is NULL, bioclone() will allocate a new buffer using getrbuf(9F). If sleepflag is set to KM_SLEEP, the driver may sleep until space is freed up. If sleepflag is set to KM_NOSLEEP, the driver will not sleep. In either case, a pointer to the allocated space is returned or NULL to indicate that no space was available. After the transfer is completed, the buffer has to be freed using freerbuf(9F). If bp_mem is not NULL, it will be used as the space for the buffer structure. The driver has to ensure that bp_mem is initialized properly either using getrbuf(9F) or bioinit(9F).

If the original buffer is mapped into the kernel virtual address space using bp_mapin(9F) before calling bioclone(), a clone buffer will share the kernel mapping of the original buffer. An additional bp_mapin() to get a kernel mapping for the clone buffer is not necessary.
The driver has to ensure that the original buffer is not freed while any of the clone buffers is still performing I/O. The `biodone()` function has to be called on all clone buffers before it is called on the original buffer.

**Return Values**  
The `bioclone()` function returns a pointer to the initialized buffer header, or `NULL` if no space is available.

**Context**  
The `bioclone()` function can be called from user, interrup, or interrupt context. Drivers must not allow `bioclone()` to sleep if called from an interrupt routine.

**Examples**  
**EXAMPLE 1** Using `bioclone()` for Disk Striping

A device driver can use `bioclone()` for disk striping. For each disk in the stripe, a clone buffer is created which performs I/O to a portion of the original buffer.

```c
static int
stripe_strategy(struct buf *bp)
{
    ...
    bp_orig = bp;
    bp_1 = bioclone(bp_orig, 0, size_1, dev_1, blkno_1,
        stripe_done, NULL, KM_SLEEP);
    fragment++;
    ...
    bp_n = bioclone(bp_orig, offset_n, size_n, dev_n,
        blkno_n, stripe_done, NULL, KM_SLEEP);
    fragment++;
    /* submit bp_1 ... bp_n to device */
    xxstrategy(bp_n);
    return (0);
}
```

```c
static uint_t
xxintr(caddr_t arg)
{
    ...
    /*
     * get bp of completed subrequest. biodone(9F) will
     * call stripe_done()
     */
    biodone(bp);
    return (0);
}
```

```c
static int
stripe_done(struct buf *bp)
{
    ...
```
EXAMPLE 1  Using bioclone() for Disk Striping  

(Continued)

freerbuf(bp);
fragment--;
if (fragment == 0) {
    /* get bp_orig */
    biodone(bp_orig);
}
return (0);
}

See Also  biodone(9F), bp_mapin(9F), freerbuf(9F), getrbuf(9F), buf(9S)

Writing Device Drivers
biodone() function notifies blocked processes waiting for the I/O to complete, sets the B_DONE flag in the b_flags field of the buf(9S) structure, and releases the buffer if the I/O is asynchronous. biodone() is called by either the driver interrupt or strategy(9E) routines when a buffer I/O request is complete.

The biodone() function provides the capability to call a completion routine if bp describes a kernel buffer. The address of the routine is specified in the b_iodone field of the buf(9S) structure. If such a routine is specified, biodone() calls it and returns without performing any other actions. Otherwise, it performs the steps above.

The biodone() function can be called from user, interrupt, or kernel context.

Generally, the first validation test performed by any block device strategy(9E) routine is a check for an end-of-file (EOF) condition. The strategy(9E) routine is responsible for determining an EOF condition when the device is accessed directly. If a read(2) request is made for one block beyond the limits of the device (line 10), it will report an EOF condition. Otherwise, if the request is outside the limits of the device, the routine will report an error condition. In either case, report the I/O operation as complete (line 27).

```
1  #define RAMDNBLK 1000  /* Number of blocks in RAM disk */
2  #define RAMDBSIZ 512   /* Number of bytes per block */
3  char ramdblks[RAMDNBLK][RAMDBSIZ]; /* Array containing RAM disk */
4
5  static int
6  ramdstrategy(struct buf *bp)
7  {
8      daddr_t blkno = bp->b_blkno; /* get block number */
9
10     if ((blkno < 0) || (blkno >= RAMDNBLK)) {
11        /*
12         * If requested block is outside RAM disk
13         * limits, test for EOF which could result
14         * from a direct (physio) request.
15         */
16        if ((blkno == RAMDNBLK) && (bp->b_flags & B_READ)) {
```
17     /*
18     * If read is for block beyond RAM disk
19     * limits, mark EOF condition.
20     */
21     bp->b_resid = bp->b_bcount; /* compute return value */
22
23 } else { /* I/O attempt is beyond */
24     bp->b_error = ENXIO; /* limits of RAM disk */
25     bp->b_flags |= B_ERROR; /* return error */
26 }
27     biodone(bp); /* mark I/O complete (B_DONE) */
28 /*
29     * Wake any processes awaiting this I/O
30     * or release buffer for asynchronous
31     * (B_ASYNC) request.
32     */
33     return (0);
34 }

See Also read(2), strategy(9E), biowait(9F), ddi_add_intr(9F), delay(9F), timeout(9F), untimout(9F), buf(9S)

Writing Device Drivers

Warnings After calling biodone(), bp is no longer available to be referred to by the driver. If the driver makes any reference to bp after calling biodone(), a panic may result.

Notes Drivers that use the b_iiodone field of the buf(9S) structure to specify a substitute completion routine should save the value of b_iiodone before changing it, and then restore the old value before calling biodone() to release the buffer.
bioerror(9F)

Name  bioerror – indicate error in buffer header

Synopsis

```c
#include <sys/types.h>
#include <sys/buf.h>
#include <sys/ddi.h>

void bioerror(struct buf *bp, int error);
```

Interface Level  Solaris DDI specific (Solaris DDI)

Parameters

- `bp`  Pointer to the `buf(9S)` structure describing the transfer.
- `error`  Error number to be set, or zero to clear an error indication.

Description  If `error` is non-zero, `bioerror()` indicates an error has occurred in the `buf(9S)` structure. A subsequent call to `geterror(9F)` will return `error`.

If `error` is 0, the error indication is cleared and a subsequent call to `geterror(9F)` will return 0.

Context  `bioerror()` can be called from any context.

See Also  `strategy(9E), geterror(9F), getrbuf(9F), buf(9S)`
biofini(9F)

Name  biofini - uninitialize a buffer structure

Synopsis  
```c
#include <sys/ddi.h>
#include <sys/sunddi.h>

void biofini(struct buf *bp);
```

Interface Level  Solaris DDI specific (Solaris DDI).

Parameters  
```c
bp  Pointer to the buffer header structure.
```

Description  The biofini() function uninitializes a buf(9S) structure. If a buffer structure has been allocated and initialized using `kmem_alloc(9F)` and bioinit(9F) it needs to be uninitialized using biofini() before calling kmem_free(9F). It is not necessary to call biofini() before freeing a buffer structure using freerbuf(9F) because freerbuf() will call biofini() directly.

Context  The biofini() function can be called from any context.

Examples  
```c
EXAMPLE 1  Usingbiofini()

struct buf *bp = kmem_alloc(biosize(), KM_SLEEP);
bioinit(bp);
/* use buffer */
biofini(bp);

kmem_free(bp, biosize());
```

See Also  bioinit(9F), bioreset(9F), biosize(9F), freerbuf(9F), kmem_alloc(9F), kmem_free(9F), buf(9S)

Writing Device Drivers
**Name**
bioinit – initialize a buffer structure

**Synopsis**
```c
#include <sys/ddi.h>
#include <sys/sunddi.h>

void bioinit(struct buf *bp);
```

**Interface Level**
Solaris DDI specific (Solaris DDI).

**Parameters**
- `bp` Pointer to the buffer header structure.

**Description**
The `bioinit()` function initializes a `buf(9S)` structure. A buffer structure contains state information which has to be initialized if the memory for the buffer was allocated using `kmem_alloc(9F)`. This is not necessary for a buffer allocated using `getrbuf(9F)` because `getrbuf()` will call `bioinit()` directly.

**Context**
The `bioinit()` function can be called from any context.

**Examples**
```c
EXAMPLE 1 Using bioinit()

struct buf *bp = kmem_alloc(biosize(), KM_SLEEP);
bioinit(bp);
/* use buffer */
```

**See Also**
- `biofini(9F), bioreset(9F), biosize(9F), getrbuf(9F), kmem_alloc(9F), buf(9S)`

*Writing Device Drivers*
Name  biomodified – check if a buffer is modified

Synopsis  #include <sys/ddi.h>
#include <sys/sunddi.h>

int biomodified(struct buf *bp);

Interface Level  Solaris DDI specific (Solaris DDI).

Parameters  bp  Pointer to the buffer header structure.

Description  The biomodified() function returns status to indicate if the buffer is modified. The
biomodified() function is only supported for paged- I/O request, that is the B_PAGEIO flag
must be set in the b_flags field of the buf(9S) structure. The biomodified() function will
check the memory pages associated with this buffer whether the Virtual Memory system's
modification bit is set. If at least one of these pages is modified, the buffer is indicated as
modified. A filesystem will mark the pages unmodified when it writes the pages to the backing
store. The biomodified() function can be used to detect any modifications to the memory
pages while I/O is in progress.

A device driver can use biomodified() for disk mirroring. An application is allowed to mmap
a file which can reside on a disk which is mirrored by multiple submirrors. If the file system
writes the file to the backing store, it is written to all submirrors in parallel. It must be ensured
that the copies on all submirrors are identical. The biomodified() function can be used in the
device driver to detect any modifications to the buffer by the user program during the time the
buffer is written to multiple submirrors.

Return Values  The biomodified() function returns the following values:

1  Buffer is modified.
0  Buffer is not modified.
-1  Buffer is not used for paged I/O request.

Context  biomodified() can be called from any context.

See Also  bp_mapin(9F), buf(9S)

Writing Device Drivers
**Name**
bioreset – reuse a private buffer header after I/O is complete

**Synopsis**
```c
#include <sys/buf.h>
#include <sys/ddi.h>

void bioreset(struct buf *bp);
```

**Interface Level**
Solaris DDI specific (Solaris DDI)

**Parameters**
bp Pointer to the buf(9S) structure.

**Description**
bioreset() is used by drivers that allocate private buffers with getrbuf(9F) or kmem_alloc(9F) and want to reuse them in multiple transfers before freeing them with freerbuf(9F) or kmem_free(9F). bioreset() resets the buffer header to the state it had when initially allocated by getrbuf() or initialized by bioinit(9F).

**Context**
bioreset() can be called from any context.

**See Also**
strategy(9E), bioinit(9F), biofini(9F), freerbuf(9F), getrbuf(9F), kmem_alloc(9F), kmem_free(9F), buf(9S)

**Notes**
bp must not describe a transfer in progress.
biosize(9F)

Name  biosize – returns size of a buffer structure

Synopsis  #include <sys/ddi.h>
          #include <sys/sunddi.h>

          size_tbiosize(void)

Interface Level  Solaris DDI specific (Solaris DDI).

Description  The biosize() function returns the size in bytes of the buf(9S) structure. The biosize() function is used by drivers in combination with kmem_alloc(9F) and bioinit(9F) to allocate buffer structures embedded in other data structures.

Context  The biosize() function can be called from any context.

See Also  biofini(9F), bioinit(9F), getrbuf(9F), kmem_alloc(9F), buf(9S)

Writing Device Drivers
biowait(9F)

Name

biowait – suspend processes pending completion of block I/O

Synopsis

#include <sys/types.h>
#include <sys/buf.h>

int biowait(struct buf *bp);

Interface Level

Architecture independent level 1 (DDI/DKI).

Parameters

bp Pointer to the buf structure describing the transfer.

Description

Drivers allocating their own buf structures with getbuf(9F) can use the biowait() function to suspend the current thread and wait for completion of the transfer.

Drivers must call biodone(9F) when the transfer is complete to notify the thread blocked by biowait(). biodone() is usually called in the interrupt routine.

Return Values

0 Upon success

non-zero Upon I/O failure. biowait() calls geterror(9F) to retrieve the error number which it returns.

Context

biowait() can be called from user context only.

See Also

biodone(9F), geterror(9F), getbuf(9F), buf(9S)

Writing Device Drivers
Name  bp_copyin – copy from a buf(9S) into a driver buffer

Synopsis  #include <sys/types.h>
#include <sys/buf.h>

    int bp_copyin(struct buf *bp, void *driverbuf, offset_t offset,
                  size_t size);

Interface Level  Architecture independent level 1 (DDI/DKI).

Parameters  

    bp  Pointer to the buffer header structure to copy from.
    driverbuf  Driver buffer to copy to.
    offset  Offset into bp where to start copying.
    size  Size of copy.

Description  The bp_copyin() function copies size bytes into the memory associated with bp to the
destination driver buffer driverbuf. The offset only applies to bp.

Return Values  Under normal conditions, 0 is returned to indicate a successful copy. Otherwise, -1 is returned
if bp references invalid pages.

Context  The bp_copyin() function can be called from user or kernel context only.

See Also  bp_copyout(9F), bp_mapin(9F), bp_mapout(9F), ddi_copyout(9F), buf(9S)
Name  bp_copyout – copy from a driver buffer into a buf(9S)

Synopsis  

```c
#include <sys/types.h>
#include <sys/buf.h>

int bp_copyout(void *driverbuf, struct buf *bp, offset_t offset,
                size_t size);
```

Interface Level  Architecture independent level 1 (DDI/DKI).

Parameters  

- `bp`  Pointer to the buffer header structure to copy to.
- `driverbuf`  Driver buffer to copy from.
- `offset`  Offset into `bp` where to start copying.
- `size`  Size of copy.

Description  The `bp_copyout()` function copies `size` bytes starting from the driver buffer `driverbuf` to `offset` bytes into the memory associated with `bp`. The `offset` only applies to `bp`.

Return Values  Under normal conditions, 0 is returned to indicate a successful copy. Otherwise, -1 is returned if `bp` references invalid pages.

Context  The `bp_copyout()` function can be called from user or kernel context only.

See Also  `bp_copyin(9F), bp_mapin(9F), bp_mapout(9F), ddi_copyout(9F), buf(9S)`
bp_mapin – allocate virtual address space

#include <sys/types.h>
#include <sys/buf.h>

void bp_mapin(struct buf *bp);

Interface Level Architecture independent level 1 (DDI/DKI).

Parameters bp  Pointer to the buffer header structure.

Description bp_mapin() is used to map virtual address space to a page list maintained by the buffer header during a paged- I/O request. bp_mapin() allocates system virtual address space, maps that space to the page list, and returns the starting address of the space in the bp->b_un.b_addr field of the buf(9S) structure. Virtual address space is then deallocated using the bp_mapout(9F) function.

If a null page list is encountered, bp_mapin() returns without allocating space and no mapping is performed.

Context  bp_mapin() can be called from user and kernel contexts.

See Also  bp_mapout(9F), buf(9S)

Writing Device Drivers
### Name
bp_mapout – deallocate virtual address space

### Synopsis
```c
#include <sys/types.h>
#include <sys/buf.h>

void bp_mapout(struct buf *bp);
```

### Interface Level
Architecture independent level 1 (DDI/DKI).

### Parameters
- **bp**: Pointer to the buffer header structure.

### Description
bp_mapout() deallocates system virtual address space allocated by a previous call to bp_mapin(9F). bp_mapout() should only be called on buffers which have been allocated and are owned by the device driver. It must not be called on buffers passed to the driver through the strategy(9E) entry point (for example a filesystem). Because bp_mapin(9F) does not keep a reference count, bp_mapout() will wipe out any kernel mapping that a layer above the device driver might rely on.

### Context
bp_mapout() can be called from user context only.

### See Also
strategy(9E), bp_mapin(9F), buf(9S)

*Writing Device Drivers*
Name btop – convert size in bytes to size in pages (round down)

Synopsis #include <sys/ddi.h>

unsigned long btop(unsigned long numbytes);

Interface Level Architecture independent level 1 (DDI/DKI).

Parameters numbytes Number of bytes.

Description The btop() function returns the number of memory pages that are contained in the specified number of bytes, with downward rounding in the case that the byte count is not a page multiple. For example, if the page size is 2048, then btop(4096) returns 2, and btop(4097) returns 2 as well. btop(0) returns 0.

Return Values The return value is always the number of pages. There are no invalid input values, and therefore no error return values.

Context The btop() function can be called from user, interrupt, or kernel context.

See Also btopr(9F), ddi_btop(9F), ptob(9F)

Writing Device Drivers
Name  btopr – convert size in bytes to size in pages (round up)

Synopsis  #include <sys/ddi.h>

    unsigned long btopr(unsigned long numbytes);

Interface Level  Architecture independent level 1 (DDI/DKI).

Parameters  numbytes    Number of bytes.

Description  The btopr() function returns the number of memory pages contained in the specified number of bytes memory, rounded up to the next whole page. For example, if the page size is 2048, then btopr(4096) returns 2, and btopr(4097) returns 3.

Return Values  The return value is always the number of pages. There are no invalid input values, and therefore no error return values.

Context  The btopr() function can be called from user, interrupt, or kernel context.

See Also  btop(9F), ddi_btopr(9F), ptob(9F)

Writing Device Drivers
bufcall(9F)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>bufcall – call a function when a buffer becomes available</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Synopsis</td>
<td>#include &lt;sys/types.h&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>#include &lt;sys/stream.h&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>bufcall_id_t bufcall(size_t size, uint_t pri, void (*func)(void *arg), void * arg);</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Interface Level</td>
<td>Architecture independent level 1 (DDI/DKI).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Parameters</td>
<td>size Number of bytes required for the buffer.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>pri Priority of the allocb(9F) allocation request (not used).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>func Function or driver routine to be called when a buffer becomes available.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>arg Argument to the function to be called when a buffer becomes available.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Description</td>
<td>The bufcall() function serves as a timeout(9F) call of indeterminate length. When a buffer allocation request fails, bufcall() can be used to schedule the routine func, to be called with the argument arg when a buffer becomes available. func may call allocb() or it may do something else.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Return Values</td>
<td>If successful, bufcall() returns a bufcall ID that can be used in a call to unbufcall() to cancel the request. If the bufcall() scheduling fails, func is never called and 0 is returned.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Context</td>
<td>The bufcall() function can be called from user, interrupt, or kernel context.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Examples</td>
<td>EXAMPLE 1 Calling a function when a buffer becomes available:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>The purpose of this srv(9E) service routine is to add a header to all M_DATA messages. Service routines must process all messages on their queues before returning, or arrange to be rescheduled.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>While there are messages to be processed (line 13), check to see if it is a high priority message or a normal priority message that can be sent on (line 14). Normal priority message that cannot be sent are put back on the message queue (line 34). If the message was a high priority one, or if it was normal priority and canputnext(9F) succeeded, then send all but M_DATA messages to the next module with putnext(9F) (line 16).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>For M_DATA messages, try to allocate a buffer large enough to hold the header (line 18). If no such buffer is available, the service routine must be rescheduled for a time when a buffer is available. The original message is put back on the queue (line 20) and bufcall (line 21) is used to attempt the rescheduling. It will succeed if the rescheduling succeeds, indicating that qenable will be called subsequently with the argument q once a buffer of the specified size (sizeof (struct hdr)) becomes available. If it does, qenable(9F) will put q on the list of queues to have their service routines called. If bufcall() fails, timeout(9F) (line 22) is used to try again in about a half second.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
EXAMPLE 1 Calling a function when a buffer becomes available: (Continued)

If the buffer allocation was successful, initialize the header (lines 25–28), make the message type M_PROTO (line 29), link the M_DATA message to it (line 30), and pass it on (line 31).

Note that this example ignores the bookkeeping needed to handle bufcall() and timeout(9F) cancellation for ones that are still outstanding at close time.

```c
struct hdr {
    unsigned int h_size;
    int h_version;
};

void xxxsrv(q)
    queue_t *q;
{
    mblk_t *bp;
    mblk_t *mp;
    struct hdr *hp;

    while ((mp = getq(q)) != NULL) { /* get next message */
        if (mp->b_datap->db_type >= QPCTL || /* if high priority */
            canputnext(q)) { /* normal & can be passed */
            if (mp->b_datap->db_type != M_DATA)
                putnext(q, mp); /* send all but M_DATA */
            else {
                bp = allocb(sizeof(struct hdr), BPRI_LO);
                if (bp == NULL) { /* if unsuccessful */
                    putbq(q, mp); /* put it back */
                    if (!bufcall(sizeof(struct hdr), BPRI_LO, qenable, q)) /* try to reschedule */
                        timeout(qenable, q, drv_usectohz(500000));
                    return (0);
                }

                hp = (struct hdr *)bp->b_wptr;
                hp->h_size = msgdsize(mp); /* initialize header */
                hp->h_version = 1;
                bp->b_wptr += sizeof(struct hdr);
                bp->b_datap->db_type = M_PROTO; /* make M_PROTO */
                bp->b_cont = mp; /* link it */
                putnext(q, bp); /* pass it on */
            }
        } else { /* normal priority, canputnext failed */
            putbq(q, mp); /* put back on the message queue */
            return (0);
        }
    }
```

Kernel Functions for Drivers 101
EXAMPLE 1 Calling a function when a buffer becomes available:  (Continued)

    return (0);
38  }

See Also  

    srv(9E), allocb(9F), canputnext(9F), esballoc(9F), esbbcall(9F), putnext(9F),
    qenable(9F), testb(9F), timeout(9F), unbufcall(9F)

Writing Device Drivers

STREAMS Programming Guide

Warnings  Even when func is called by bufcall(), allocb(9F) can fail if another module or driver had
allocated the memory before func was able to call allocb(9F).
bzero – clear memory for a given number of bytes

#include <sys/types.h>
#include <sys/ddi.h>

void bzero(void *addr, size_t bytes);

Interface Level
Architecture independent level 1 (DDI/DKI).

Parameters
- addr   Starting virtual address of memory to be cleared.
- bytes  The number of bytes to clear starting at addr.

Description
The bzero() function clears a contiguous portion of memory by filling it with zeros.

Context
The bzero() function can be called from user, interrupt, or kernel context.

See Also
bcopy(9F), clrbuf(9F), kmem_zalloc(9F)

Writing Device Drivers

Warnings
The address range specified must be within the kernel space. No range checking is done. If an address outside of the kernel space is selected, the driver may corrupt the system in an unpredictable way.
# canput(9F)

## Name
canput – test for room in a message queue

## Synopsis
```
#include <sys/stream.h>

int canput(queue_t *q);
```

## Interface Level
Architecture independent level 1 (DDI/DKI).

## Parameters
- `q`  
  Pointer to the message queue.

## Description
canput() searches through the stream (starting at q) until it finds a queue containing a service routine where the message can be enqueued, or until it reaches the end of the stream. If found, the queue containing the service routine is tested to see if there is room for a message in the queue.

```
canputnext(q) and bcanputnext(q, pri) should always be used in preference to
        canput(q→q_next) and bcanput(q→q_next, pri) respectively.
```

## Return Values
- 1  
  If the message queue is not full.
- 0  
  If the queue is full.

## Context
canput() can be called from user or interrupt context.

## See Also
canput(9F), bcanputnext(9F), canputnext(9F), putbq(9F), putnext(9F)

*Writing Device Drivers*

*STREAMS Programming Guide*

## Warnings
Drivers are responsible for both testing a queue with canput() and refraining from placing a message on the queue if canput() fails.
### canputnext(9F)

#### Name
`canputnext`, `bcanputnext` – test for room in next module’s message queue

#### Synopsis
```c
#include <sys/stream.h>

int canputnext(queue_t *q);
int bcanputnext(queue_t *q, unsigned char pri);
```

#### Interface Level
Architecture independent level 1 (DDI/DKI).

#### Parameters
- **q**: Pointer to a message queue belonging to the invoking module.
- **pri**: Minimum priority level.

#### Description
The invocation `canputnext(q)` is an atomic equivalent of the `canput(q→q_next)` routine. That is, the STREAMS framework provides whatever mutual exclusion is necessary to insure that dereferencing `q` through its `q_next` field and then invoking `canput(9F)` proceeds without interference from other threads.

`bcanputnext(q, pri)` is the equivalent of the `bcanput(q→q_next, pri)` routine.

`canputnext(q)` and `bcanputnext(q, pri)` should always be used in preference to `canput(q→q_next)` and `bcanput(q→q_next, pri)` respectively.

See `canput(9F)` and `bcanput(9F)` for further details.

#### Return Values
- **1**: If the message queue is not full.
- **0**: If the queue is full.

#### Context
The `canputnext()` and `bcanputnext()` functions can be called from user, interrupt, or kernel context.

#### Warnings
Drivers are responsible for both testing a queue with `canputnext()` or `bcanputnext()` and refraining from placing a message on the queue if the queue is full.

#### See Also
- `bcanput(9F)`, `canput(9F)`
- *Writing Device Drivers*
- *STREAMS Programming Guide*
Name  clrbuf – erase the contents of a buffer

Synopsis  
```c
#include <sys/types.h>
#include <sys/buf.h>

void clrbuf(struct buf *bp);
```

Interface Level  Architecture independent level 1 (DDI/DKI).

Parameters  
bp  Pointer to the `buf(9S)` structure.

Description  The `clrbuf()` function zeros a buffer and sets the `b_resid` member of the `buf(9S)` structure to 0. Zeros are placed in the buffer starting at `bp→b_un.b_addr` for a length of `bp→b_bcount` bytes. `b_un.b_addr` and `b_bcount` are members of the `buf(9S)` data structure.

Context  The `clrbuf()` function can be called from user, interrupt, or kernel context.

See Also  `getrbuf(9F), buf(9S)`

*Writing Device Drivers*
### Name

`cmn_err`, `vcmn_err`, `zcmn_err` – display an error message or panic the system

### Synopsis

```c
#include <sys/cmn_err.h>
#include <sys/ddi.h>
#include <sys/sunddi.h>

void cmn_err(int level, char *format...);
#include <sys/varargs.h>

void vcmn_err(int level, char *format, va_list ap);
#include <sys/types.h>

void zcmn_err(zoneid_t zoneid, int level, char *format...);
```

### Interface Level

Architecture independent level 1 (DDI/DKI).

### Parameters

- **cmn_err()**
  - `level` A constant indicating the severity of the error condition.
  - `format` Message to be displayed.

- **vcmn_err()**
  - The `vcmn_err()` function takes `level` and `format` as described for `cmn_err()`, but its third argument is different:
  - `ap` Variable argument list passed to the function.

- **zcmn_err()**
  - The `zcmn_err()` function works exactly like `cmn_err()`, but includes an additional argument:
  - `zoneid` Zone to which log messages should be directed. See `zones(5)`.

### Description

- **cmn_err()**
  - The `cmn_err()` function displays a specified message on the console. `cmn_err()` can also panic the system. When the system panics, it attempts to save recent changes to data, display a “panic message” on the console, attempt to write a core file, and halt system processing. See the `CE_PANIC level` below.

  - `level` is a constant indicating the severity of the error condition. The four severity levels are:
    - **CE_CONT** Used to continue another message or to display an informative message not associated with an error. Note that multiple `CE_CONT` messages without a newline may or may not appear on the system console or in the system log as a
A single line message may be produced by constructing the message with `sprintf(9F)` or `vprintf(9F)` before calling `cmn_err()`.  

**CE_NOTE**  
Used to display a message preceded with NOTICE. This message is used to report system events that do not necessarily require user action, but may interest the system administrator. For example, a message saying that a sector on a disk needs to be accessed repeatedly before it can be accessed correctly might be noteworthy.  

**CE_WARN**  
Used to display a message preceded with WARNING. This message is used to report system events that require immediate attention, such as those where if an action is not taken, the system may panic. For example, when a peripheral device does not initialize correctly, this level should be used.  

**CE_PANIC**  
Used to display a message preceded with “panic”, and to panic the system. Drivers should specify this level only under the most severe conditions or when debugging a driver. A valid use of this level is when the system cannot continue to function. If the error is recoverable, or not essential to continued system operation, do not panic the system.  

**format** is the message to be displayed. It is a character string which may contain plain characters and conversion specifications. By default, the message is sent both to the system console and to the system log.  

Each conversion specification in **format** is introduced by the `%` character, after which the following appear in sequence:  

- An optional decimal digit specifying a minimum field width for numeric conversion. The converted value will be right-justified and padded with leading zeroes if it has fewer characters than the minimum.  

- An optional `l` (`ll`) specifying that a following `d`, `D`, `o`, `0`, `x`, `X`, or `u` conversion character applies to a `long` (`long long`) integer argument. An `l` (`ll`) before any other conversion character is ignored.  

A character indicating the type of conversion to be applied:  

- `d`, `D`, `0`, `x`, `X`, `u`  
  The integer argument is converted to signed decimal (`d`, `D`), unsigned octal (`0`), unsigned hexadecimal (`x`, `X`), or unsigned decimal (`u`), respectively, and displayed. The letters `abcdef` are used for `x` and `X` conversion.  

- `c`  
  The character value of the argument is displayed.  

- `b`  
  The `%b` conversion specification allows bit values to be displayed meaningfully. Each `%b` takes an integer value and a format string from the argument list. The first character of the format string should be the output base encoded as a control character. This base is used to display the integer argument. The remaining groups of characters in the format string consist of
abitnumber (between 1 and 32, also encoded as a control character) and the next characters (up to the next control character or '\0') give the name of the bit field. The string corresponding to the bit fields set in the integer argument is displayed after the numerical value. See EXAMPLE section.

\textbf{p} The argument is taken to be a pointer; the value of the pointer is displayed in unsigned hexadecimal. The display format is equivalent to \%lx. To avoid lint warnings, cast pointers to type \texttt{void *} when using the \%p format specifier.

\textbf{s} The argument is taken to be a string (character pointer), and characters from the string are displayed until a null character is encountered. If the character pointer is NULL, the string \texttt{<null string>} is used in its place.

\textbf{\%} Copy a \%; no argument is converted.

The first character in \texttt{format} affects where the message will be written:

\texttt{!} The message goes only to the system log.

\texttt{^} The message goes only to the console.

\texttt{?} If level is also CE\_CONT, the message is always sent to the system log, but is only written to the console when the system has been booted in verbose mode. See \texttt{kernel(1M)}. If neither condition is met, the '?' character has no effect and is simply ignored.

Refer to \texttt{syslogd(1M)} to determine where the system log is written.

The \texttt{cmn\_err()} function sends log messages to the log of the global zone. \texttt{cmn\_err()} appends a \n to each \texttt{format}, except when level is CE\_CONT.

\texttt{vcmn\_err()} The \texttt{vcmn\_err()} function is identical to \texttt{cmn\_err()} except that its last argument, \texttt{ap}, is a pointer to a variable list of arguments. \texttt{ap} contains the list of arguments used by the conversion specifications in \texttt{format}. \texttt{ap} must be initialized by calling \texttt{va\_start(9F)}. \texttt{va\_end(9F)} is used to clean up and must be called after each traversal of the list. Multiple traversals of the argument list, each bracketed by \texttt{va\_start(9F)} and \texttt{va\_end(9F)}, are possible.

\texttt{zcmn\_err()} With the exception of its first argument (\texttt{zoneid}), \texttt{zcmn\_err()} is identical to \texttt{cmn\_err()}. \texttt{zoneid} is the numeric ID of the zone to which the message should be directed. Note that \texttt{zoneid} only has an effect if the message is sent to the system log. Using \texttt{zoneid} will cause messages to be sent to the log associated with the specified local zone rather than the log in the global zone. This is accomplished by the message being received and processed by the \texttt{syslogd(1M)} process running in the specified zone instead of the one running in the global zone. You can retrieve a process zone ID from its credential structure using \texttt{crgetzoneid(9F)}.

**Return Values** None. However, if an unknown level is passed to \texttt{cmn\_err()}, the following panic error message is displayed:

\texttt{panic: unknown level in cmn\_err (level=level, msg=\texttt{format})}
The `cmn_err()` function can be called from user, kernel, interrupt, or high-level interrupt context.

**Examples**

**EXAMPLE 1** Using `cmn_err()`

This first example shows how `cmn_err()` can record tracing and debugging information only in the system log (lines 17); display problems with a device only on the system console (line 23); or display problems with the device on both the system console and in the system log (line 28).

```c
struct reg {
    uchar_t data;
    uchar_t csr;
};

struct xxstate {
    ...
    dev_info_t *dip;
    struct reg *regp;
    ...
};

dev_t dev;
struct xxstate *xsp;

#ifdef DEBUG /* in debugging mode, log function call */
    cmn_err(CE_CONT, "!%s%d: xxopen function called.",
            ddi_binding_name(xsp->dip), getminor(dev));
#endif /* end DEBUG */

/* display device power failure on system console */
if ((xsp->regp->csr & POWER) == OFF)
    cmn_err(CE_NOTE, "%s%d: xxopen: Power OFF.",
            ddi_binding_name(xsp->dip), getminor(dev));

/* display warning if device has bad VTOC */
if (xsp->regp->csr & BADVTOC)
    cmn_err(CE_WARN, "%s%d: xxopen: Bad VTOC.",
            ddi_binding_name(xsp->dip), getminor(dev));
```

**EXAMPLE 2** Using the `%b` conversion specification

This example shows how to use the `%b` conversion specification. Because of the leading '?' character in the format string, this message will always be logged, but it will only be displayed when the kernel is booted in verbose mode.

```c
    cmn_err(CE_CONT, $?reg=0x%b\n", regval, "\020\3Intr\2Err\1Enable");
```
EXAMPLE 3  Using \texttt{regval}

When \texttt{regval} is set to (decimal) 13, the following message would be displayed:

\begin{verbatim}
reg=0xd<Intr,.Enable>
\end{verbatim}

EXAMPLE 4  Error Routine

This example shows an error reporting routine which accepts a variable number of arguments and displays a single line error message both in the system log and on the system console. Note the use of \texttt{vsprintf()} to construct the error message before calling \texttt{cmn_err()}.

\begin{verbatim}
#include <sys/varargs.h>
#include <sys/ddi.h>
#include <sys/sunddi.h>
#define MAX_MSG 256;

void xxerror(dev_info_t *dip, int level, const char *fmt,...)
{
    va_list ap;
    int instance;
    char buf[MAX_MSG], *name;

    instance = ddi_get_instance(dip);
    name = ddi_binding_name(dip);

    /* format buf using fmt and arguments contained in ap */

    va_start(ap, fmt);
    vsprintf(buf, fmt, ap);
    va_end(ap);

    /* pass formatted string to cmn_err(9F) */

    cmn_err(level, "%s%d: %s", name, instance, buf);
}
\end{verbatim}

EXAMPLE 5  Log to Current Zone

This example shows how messages can be sent to the log of the zone in which a thread is currently running, when applicable. Note that most hardware-related messages should instead be sent to the global zone using \texttt{cmn_err()}.

\begin{verbatim}
zcmn_err(crgetzoneid(ddi_get_cred())), CE_NOTE, "out of processes0);
\end{verbatim}

\textbf{See Also}  \texttt{dmesg(1M), kernel(1M), printf(3C), zones(5), ddi_binding_name(9F), ddi_cred(9F), sprintf(9F), va_arg(9F), va_end(9F), va_start(9F), vsprintf(9F)}
Writing Device Drivers

Warnings  The `cmn_err()` function with the `CE_CONT` argument can be used by driver developers as a driver code debugging tool. However, using `cmn_err()` in this capacity can change system timing characteristics.

Notes  Messages of arbitrary length can be generated using `cmn_err()`, but if the call to `cmn_err()` is made from high-level interrupt context and insufficient memory is available to create a buffer of the specified size, the message will be truncated to `LOG_MSGSIZE` bytes (see `<sys/log.h>`). For this reason, callers of `cmn_err()` that require complete and accurate message generation should post down from high-level interrupt context before calling `cmn_err()`.
condvar(9F)

Name condvar, cv_init, cv_destroy, cv_wait, cv_signal, cv_broadcast, cv_wait_sig, cv_timedwait, cv_timedwait_sig – condition variable routines

Synopsis #include <sys/ksynch.h>

void cv_init(kcondvar_t *cvp, char *name, kcv_type_t type, void *arg);
void cv_destroy(kcondvar_t *cvp);
void cv_wait(kcondvar_t *cvp, kmutex_t *mp);
void cv_signal(kcondvar_t *cvp);
void cv_broadcast(kcondvar_t *cvp);
int cv_wait_sig(kcondvar_t *cvp, kmutex_t *mp);
clock_t cv_timedwait(kcondvar_t *cvp, kmutex_t *mp, clock_t timeout);
clock_t cv_timedwait_sig(kcondvar_t *cvp, kmutex_t *mp, clock_t timeout);

Interface Level Solaris DDI specific (Solaris DDI).

Parameters
cvp A pointer to an abstract data type kcondvar_t.
mp A pointer to a mutual exclusion lock (kmutex_t), initialized by mutex_init(9F) and held by the caller.
name Descriptive string. This is obsolete and should be NULL. (Non-NULL strings are legal, but they're a waste of kernel memory.)
type The constant CV_DRIVER.
arg A type-specific argument, drivers should pass as arg as NULL.
timeout A time, in absolute ticks since boot, when cv_timedwait() or cv_timedwait_sig() should return.

Description Condition variables are a standard form of thread synchronization. They are designed to be used with mutual exclusion locks (mutexes). The associated mutex is used to ensure that a condition can be checked atomically and that the thread can block on the associated condition variable without missing either a change to the condition or a signal that the condition has changed. Condition variables must be initialized by calling cv_init(), and must be deallocated by calling cv_destroy().

The usual use of condition variables is to check a condition (for example, device state, data structure reference count, etc.) while holding a mutex which keeps other threads from changing the condition. If the condition is such that the thread should block, cv_wait() is called with a related condition variable and the mutex. At some later point in time, another
thread would acquire the mutex, set the condition such that the previous thread can be unblocked, unblock the previous thread with `cv_signal()` or `cv_broadcast()`, and then release the mutex.

`cv_wait()` suspends the calling thread and exits the mutex atomically so that another thread which holds the mutex cannot signal on the condition variable until the blocking thread is blocked. Before returning, the mutex is reacquired.

`cv_signal()` signals the condition and wakes one blocked thread. All blocked threads can be unblocked by calling `cv_broadcast()`. `cv_signal()` and `cv_broadcast()` can be called by a thread even if it does not hold the mutex passed into `cv_wait()`, though holding the mutex is necessary to ensure predictable scheduling.

The function `cv_wait_sig()` is similar to `cv_wait()` but returns 0 if a signal (for example, by `kill(2)`) is sent to the thread. In any case, the mutex is reacquired before returning.

The function `cv_timedwait()` is similar to `cv_wait()`, except that it returns −1 without the condition being signaled after the timeout time has been reached.

The function `cv_timedwait_sig()` is similar to `cv_timedwait()` and `cv_wait_sig()`, except that it returns −1 without the condition being signaled after the timeout time has been reached, or 0 if a signal (for example, by `kill(2)`) is sent to the thread.

For both `cv_timedwait()` and `cv_timedwait_sig()`, time is in absolute clock ticks since the last system reboot. The current time may be found by calling `ddi_get_lbolt(9F)`.

Return Values

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Return Value</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td>For <code>cv_wait_sig()</code> and <code>cv_timedwait_sig()</code> indicates that the condition was not necessarily signaled and the function returned because a signal (as in <code>kill(2)</code>) was pending.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>−1</td>
<td>For <code>cv_timedwait()</code> and <code>cv_timedwait_sig()</code> indicates that the condition was not necessarily signaled and the function returned because the timeout time was reached.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&gt;0</td>
<td>For <code>cv_wait_sig()</code>, <code>cv_timedwait()</code> or <code>cv_timedwait_sig()</code> indicates that the condition was met and the function returned due to a call to <code>cv_signal()</code> or <code>cv_broadcast()</code>, or due to a premature wakeup (see NOTES).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Context

These functions can be called from user, kernel or interrupt context. In most cases, however, `cv_wait()`, `cv_timedwait()`, `cv_wait_sig()`, and `cv_timedwait_sig()` should not be called from interrupt context, and cannot be called from a high-level interrupt context.

If `cv_wait()`, `cv_timedwait()`, `cv_wait_sig()`, or `cv_timedwait_sig()` are used from interrupt context, lower-priority interrupts will not be serviced during the wait. This means that if the thread that will eventually perform the wakeup becomes blocked on anything that requires the lower-priority interrupt, the system will hang.
For example, the thread that will perform the wakeup may need to first allocate memory. This memory allocation may require waiting for paging I/O to complete, which may require a lower-priority disk or network interrupt to be serviced. In general, situations like this are hard to predict, so it is advisable to avoid waiting on condition variables or semaphores in an interrupt context.

**Examples**

**EXAMPLE 1  Waiting for a Flag Value in a Driver’s Unit**
Here the condition being waited for is a flag value in a driver’s unit structure. The condition variable is also in the unit structure, and the flag word is protected by a mutex in the unit structure.

```c
mutex_enter(&un->un_lock);
while (un->un_flag & UNIT_BUSY)
    cv_wait(&un->un_cv, &un->un_lock);
un->un_flag |= UNIT_BUSY;
mutex_exit(&un->un_lock);
```

**EXAMPLE 2  Unblocking Threads Blocked by the Code in Example 1**
At some later point in time, another thread would execute the following to unblock any threads blocked by the above code.

```c
mutex_enter(&un->un_lock);
un->un_flag &= ~UNIT_BUSY;
cv_broadcast(&un->un_cv);
mutex_exit(&un->un_lock);
```

**Notes**
It is possible for `cv_wait()`, `cv_wait_sig()`, `cv_timedwait()`, and `cv_timedwait_sig()` to return prematurely, that is, not due to a call to `cv_signal()` or `cv_broadcast()`. This occurs most commonly in the case of `cv_wait_sig()` and `cv_timedwait_sig()` when the thread is stopped and restarted by job control signals or by a debugger, but can happen in other cases as well, even for `cv_wait()`. Code that calls these functions must always recheck the reason for blocking and call again if the reason for blocking is still true.

If your driver needs to wait on behalf of processes that have real-time constraints, use `cv_timedwait()` rather than `delay(9F)`. The `delay()` function calls `timeout(9F)`, which can be subject to priority inversions.

Not all threads can receive signals from user level processes. In cases where such reception is impossible (such as during execution of `close(9E)` due to `exit(2)`), `cv_wait_sig()` behaves as `cv_wait()`, and `cv_timedwait_sig()` behaves as `cv_timedwait()`. To avoid unkillable processes, users of these functions may need to protect against waiting indefinitely for events that might not occur. The `ddi_can_receive_sig(9F)` function is provided to detect when signal reception is possible.
See Also  kill(2), ddi_can_receive_sig(9F), ddi_get_lbolt(9F), mutex(9F), mutex_init(9F)

Writing Device Drivers
# Synopsis

```c
#include <sys/stream.h>

mblk_t *copyb(mblk_t *bp);
```

## Interface Level

Architecture independent level 1 (DDI/DKI).

## Parameters

- `bp`  
  Pointer to the message block from which data is copied.

## Description

The `copyb()` function allocates a new message block, and copies into it the data from the block that `bp` denotes. The new block will be at least as large as the block being copied. `copyb()` uses the `b_rptr` and `b_wptr` members of `bp` to determine how many bytes to copy.

## Return Values

- **Successful**: `copyb()` returns a pointer to the newly allocated message block containing the copied data. Otherwise, it returns a `NULL` pointer.
- **Context**: The `copyb()` function can be called from user, interrupt, or kernel context.

## Examples

**EXAMPLE1** Using `copyb`

For each message in the list, test to see if the downstream queue is full with the `canputnext(9F)` function (line 21). If it is not full, use `copyb` to copy a header message block, and `dupmsq(9F)` to duplicate the data to be retransmitted. If either operation fails, reschedule a timeout at the next valid interval.

Update the new header block with the correct destination address (line 34), link the message to it (line 35), and send it downstream (line 36). At the end of the list, reschedule this routine.

```c
1 struct retrans {
2     mblk_t *r_mp;
3     int r_address;
4     queue_t *r_outq;
5     struct retrans *r_next;
6 };
7
8 struct protoheader {
9     ... h_address;
10     ...
11 };
12 mblk_t *header;
13
14 void
15 retransmit(struct retrans *ret)
16 {
```
EXAMPLE 1  Using copyb  (Continued)

17    mblk_t *bp, *mp;
18    struct protoheader *php;
19
20    while (ret) {
21        if (!canputnext(ret->r_outq)) { /* no room */
22            ret = ret->r_next;
23            continue;
24        }
25        bp = copyb(header); /* copy header msg. block */
26        if (bp == NULL)
27            break;
28        mp = dupmsg(ret->r_mp); /* duplicate data */
29        if (mp == NULL) { /* if unsuccessful */
30            freeb(bp); /* free the block */
31            break;
32        }
33        php = (struct protoheader *)bp->b_rptr;
34        php->h_address = ret->r_address; /* new header */
35        bp->bp_cont = mp; /* link the message */
36        putnext(ret->r_outq, bp); /* send downstream */
37        ret = ret->r_next;
38    }
39    /* reschedule */
40    (void) timeout(retransmit, (caddr_t)ret, RETRANS_TIME);
41 }

See Also  allocb(9F), canputnext(9F), dupmsg(9F)

Writing Device Drivers

STREAMS Programming Guide
copyin – copy data from a user program to a driver buffer

Synopsis

```
#include <sys/types.h>
#include <sys/ddi.h>

int copyin(const void *userbuf, void *driverbuf, size_t cn);
```

This interface is obsolete. `ddi_copyin(9F)` should be used instead.

Parameters

- **userbuf**: User program source address from which data is transferred.
- **driverbuf**: Driver destination address to which data is transferred.
- **cn**: Number of bytes transferred.

Description

`copyin()` copies data from a user program source address to a driver buffer. The driver developer must ensure that adequate space is allocated for the destination address. Addresses that are word-aligned are moved most efficiently. However, the driver developer is not obligated to ensure alignment. This function automatically finds the most efficient move according to address alignment.

Return Values

Under normal conditions, a 0 is returned indicating a successful copy. Otherwise, a −1 is returned if one of the following occurs:

- Paging fault; the driver tried to access a page of memory for which it did not have read or write access.
- Invalid user address, such as a user area or stack area.
- Invalid address that would have resulted in data being copied into the user block.
- Hardware fault; a hardware error prevented access to the specified user memory. For example, an uncorrectable parity or ECC error occurred.

If a −1 is returned to the caller, driver entry point routines should return `EFAULT`.

Context

`copyin()` can be called from user context only.

Examples

**Example 1** A `ioctl()` Routine

A driver `ioctl(9E)` routine (line 10) can be used to get or set device attributes or registers. In the `XX_GETREGS` condition (line 17), the driver copies the current device register values to a user data area (line 18). If the specified argument contains an invalid address, an error code is returned.

```c
1 struct device {
2     /* layout of physical device registers */
3     int control; /* physical device control word */
```
EXAMPLE 1 An ioctl() Routine (Continued)

3    int status; /* physical device status word */
4    short recv_char; /* receive character from device */
5    short xmit_char; /* transmit character to device */
6 }
7
8 extern struct device xx_addr[]; /* phys. device regs. location */
9 ...
10 xx_ioctl(dev_t dev, int cmd, int arg, int mode,
11    cred_t *cred_p, int *rval_p)
12 ...
13 {
14    register struct device *rp = &xx_addr[getminor(dev) >> 4];
15    switch (cmd) {
16 ...
17    case XX_GETREGS: /* copy device regs. to user program */
18        if (copyin(arg, rp, sizeof(struct device)))
19            return(EFAULT);
20        break;
21 ...
22    }
23 ...
24 }

Attributes See attributes(5) for a description of the following attributes:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ATTRIBUTE TYPE</th>
<th>ATTRIBUTE VALUE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Stability Level</td>
<td>Obsolete</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

See Also attributes(5), ioctl(9E), bcopy(9F), copyout(9F), ddi_copyin(9F), ddi_copyout(9F), uiomove(9F).

Writing Device Drivers

Notes Driver writers who intend to support layered ioctl's in their ioctl(9E) routines should use ddi_copyin(9F) instead.

Driver defined locks should not be held across calls to this function.

copyin() should not be used from a streams driver. See M_COPYIN and M_COPYOUT in STREAMS Programming Guide.

copyin(9F)
**Name**
copymsg — copy a message

**Synopsis**
#include <sys/stream.h>

mblk_t *copymsg(mblk_t *mp);

**Interface Level**
Architecture independent level 1 (DDI/DKI).

**Parameters**
- **mp** Pointer to the message to be copied.

**Description**
The `copymsg()` function forms a new message by allocating new message blocks, and copying
the contents of the message referred to by `mp` (using the `copyb(9F)` function). It returns a
pointer to the new message.

**Return Values**
If the copy is successful, `copymsg()` returns a pointer to the new message. Otherwise, it returns
a NULL pointer.

**Context**
The `copymsg()` function can be called from user, interrupt, or kernel context.

**Examples**
**EXAMPLE 1**: Using copymsg

The routine `lctouc()` converts all the lowercase ASCII characters in the message to
uppercase. If the reference count is greater than one (line 8), then the message is shared, and
must be copied before changing the contents of the data buffer. If the call to the `copymsg()`
function fails (line 9), return NULL (line 10), otherwise, free the original message (line 11). If
the reference count was equal to 1, the message can be modified. For each character (line 16)
in each message block (line 15), if it is a lowercase letter, convert it to an uppercase letter (line
18). A pointer to the converted message is returned (line 21).

```
1 mblk_t *lctouc(mp)
2 mblk_t *mp;
3 {
4   mblk_t *cmp;
5   mblk_t *tmp;
6   unsigned char *cp;
7   if (mp->b_datap->db_ref > 1) {
8     if ((cmp = copymsg(mp)) == NULL)
9       return (NULL);
10     freemsg(mp);
11   } else {
12     cmp = mp;
13   }
14 }
15   for (tmp = cmp; tmp; tmp = tmp->b_cont) {
16     for (cp = tmp->b_rptr; cp < tmp->b_wptr; cp++) {
17       if ((cp <= 'z') && (*cp >= 'a'))
```
EXAMPLE 1  : Using copymsg  (Continued)

18   *cp -= 0x20;
19   }
20  }
21   return(cmp);
22 }

See Also allocb(9F), copyb(9F), msgb(9S)

Writing Device Drivers

STREAMS Programming Guide
**copyout**

**Name**  
copyout – copy data from a driver to a user program

**Synopsis**  
```c
#include <sys/types.h>
#include <sys/ddi.h>

int copyout(const void *driverbuf, void *userbuf, size_t cn);
```

**Interface Level**  
This interface is obsolete. `ddi_copyout(9F)` should be used instead.

**Parameters**  
- `driverbuf`  
  Source address in the driver from which the data is transferred.
- `userbuf`  
  Destination address in the user program to which the data is transferred.
- `cn`  
  Number of bytes moved.

**Description**  
copyout() copies data from driver buffers to user data space.

Addresses that are word-aligned are moved most efficiently. However, the driver developer is not obligated to ensure alignment. This function automatically finds the most efficient move algorithm according to address alignment.

**Return Values**  
Under normal conditions, a 0 is returned to indicate a successful copy. Otherwise, a −1 is returned if one of the following occurs:

- Paging fault; the driver tried to access a page of memory for which it did not have read or write access.
- Invalid user address, such as a user area or stack area.
- Invalid address that would have resulted in data being copied into the user block.
- Hardware fault; a hardware error prevented access to the specified user memory. For example, an uncorrectable parity or ECC error occurred.

If a −1 is returned to the caller, driver entry point routines should return EFAULT.

**Context**  
copyout() can be called from user context only.

**Examples**  
**EXAMPLE 1**  
An ioctl() Routine

A driver ioctl(9E) routine (line 10) can be used to get or set device attributes or registers. In the XX_GETREGS condition (line 17), the driver copies the current device register values to a user data area (line 18). If the specified argument contains an invalid address, an error code is returned.

```c
1 struct device {   /* layout of physical device registers */
2     int   control;  /* physical device control word */
3     int   status;   /* physical device status word */
4     short recv_char; /* receive character from device */
5     short xmit_char; /* transmit character to device */
```
EXAMPLE 1  An ioctl() Routine  (Continued)

6 }
7
8 extern struct device xx_addr[]; /* phys. device regs. location */
9 ...  
10 xx_ioctl(dev_t dev, int cmd, int arg, int mode,
11     cred_t *cred_p, int *rval_p)
12 ...  
13 {
14     register struct device *rp = &xx_addr[getminor(dev) >> 4];
15     switch (cmd) {
16         case XX_GETREGS: /* copy device regs. to user program */
17             if (copyout(rp, arg, sizeof(struct device)))
18                 return(EFAULT);
19             break;
20         ...  
21     }
22     ...  
23     ...  
24 }

Attributes  See attributes(5) for a description of the following attributes:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ATTRIBUTE TYPE</th>
<th>ATTRIBUTE VALUE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Stability Level</td>
<td>Obsolete</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

See Also  attributes(5), ioctl(9E), bcopy(9F), copyin(9F), ddi_copyin(9F), ddi_copyout(9F),
          uiomove(9F)

Writing Device Drivers

Notes  Driver writers who intend to support layered ioctls in their ioctl(9E) routines should use
       ddi_copyout(9F) instead.

Driver defined locks should not be held across calls to this function.

copyout() should not be used from a streams driver. See M_COPYIN and M_COPYOUT in
STREAMS Programming Guide.
#csx_AccessConfigurationRegister– read or write a PC Card Configuration Register

**Name**

`csx_AccessConfigurationRegister` – read or write a PC Card Configuration Register

**Synopsis**

```
#include <sys/pccard.h>

int32_t csx_AccessConfigurationRegister(client_handle_t ch, access_config_reg_t *acr);
```

**Interface Level**

Solaris DDI Specific (Solaris DDI)

**Parameters**

- `ch` Client handle returned from `csx_RegisterClient(9F)`.
- `acr` Pointer to an `access_config_reg_t` structure.

**Description**

This function allows a client to read or write a PC Card Configuration Register.

**Structure Members**

The structure members of `access_config_reg_t` are:

```c
uint32_t Socket; /* socket number*/
uint32_t Action; /* register access operation*/
uint32_t Offset; /* config register offset*/
uint32_t Value; /* value read or written*/
```

The fields are defined as follows:

- **Socket**
  
  Not used in Solaris, but for portability with other Card Services implementations, it should be set to the logical socket number.

- **Action**
  
  May be set to `CONFIG_REG_READ` or `CONFIG_REG_WRITE`. All other values in the `Action` field are reserved for future use. If the `Action` field is set to `CONFIG_REG_WRITE`, the `Value` field is written to the specified configuration register. Card Services does not read the configuration register after a write operation. For that reason, the `Value` field is only updated by a `CONFIG_REG_READ` request.

- **Offset**
  
  Specifies the byte offset for the desired configuration register from the PC Card configuration register base specified in `csx_RequestConfiguration(9F)`.

- **Value**
  
  Contains the value read from the PC Card Configuration Register for a read operation. For a write operation, the `Value` field contains the value to write to the configuration register. As noted above, on return from a write request, the `Value` field is the value written to the PC Card and not any changed value that may have resulted from the write request (that is, no read after write is performed).

A client must be very careful when writing to the COR (Configuration Option Register) at offset 0. This has the potential to change the type of interrupt request generated by the PC Card or place the card in the reset state. Either request may have undefined results. The client should read the register to determine the appropriate setting for the interrupt mode (Bit 6) before writing to the register.
If a client wants to reset a PC Card, the `csx_ResetFunction(9F)` function should be used. Unlike `csx_AccessConfigurationRegister()`, the `csx_ResetFunction(9F)` function generates a series of event notifications to all clients using the PC Card, so they can re-establish the appropriate card state after the reset operation is complete.

### Return Values

- **CS_SUCCESS**: Successful operation.
- **CS_BAD_ARGS**: Specified arguments are invalid. Client specifies an Offset that is out of range or neither CONFIG_REG_READ or CONFIG_REG_WRITE is set.
- **CS_UNSUPPORTED_MODE**: Client has not called `csx_RequestConfiguration(9F)` before calling this function.
- **CS_BAD_HANDLE**: Client handle is invalid.
- **CS_NO_CARD**: No PC card in socket.
- **CS_UNSUPPORTED_FUNCTION**: No PCMCIA hardware installed.

### Context

This function may be called from user or kernel context.

### See Also

- `csx_ParseTuple(9F)`, `csx_RegisterClient(9F)`, `csx_RequestConfiguration(9F)`, `csx_ResetFunction(9F)`

**PCCard 95 Standard, PCMCIA/JEIDA**
**Name**
csx_ConvertSize – convert device sizes

**Synopsis**
#include <sys/pccard.h>

int32_t csx_ConvertSize(convert_size_t *cs);

**Interface Level**
Solaris DDI Specific (Solaris DDI)

**Parameters**
cs Pointer to a convert_size_t structure.

**Description**

csx_ConvertSize() is a Solaris-specific extension that provides a method for clients to convert from one type of device size representation to another, that is, from devsize format to bytes and vice versa.

**Structure Members**
The structure members of convert_size_t are:

- uint32_t Attributes;
- uint32_t bytes;
- uint32_t devsize;

The fields are defined as follows:

**Attributes**
This is a bit-mapped field that identifies the type of size conversion to be performed. The field is defined as follows:

- CONVERT_BYTES_TO_DEVSIZE Converts bytes to devsize format.
- CONVERT_DEVSIZE_TO_BYTES Converts devsize format to bytes.

**bytes**
If CONVERT_BYTES_TO_DEVSIZE is set, the value in the bytes field is converted to a devsize format and returned in the devsize field.

**devsize**
If CONVERT_DEVSIZE_TO_BYTES is set, the value in the devsize field is converted to a bytes value and returned in the bytes field.

**Return Values**
- CS_SUCCESS Successful operation.
- CS_BAD_SIZE Invalid bytes or devsize.
- CS_UNSUPPORTED_FUNCTION No PCMCIA hardware installed.

**Context**
This function may be called from user or kernel context.

**See Also**
csx_ModifyWindow(9F), csx_RequestWindow(9F)

PCCard 95 Standard, PCMCIA/JEIDA
## Name
csx_ConvertSpeed – convert device speeds

## Synopsis
```
#include <sys/pccard.h>

int32_t csx_ConvertSpeed(convert_speed_t *cs);
```

## Interface Level
Solaris DDI Specific (Solaris DDI)

## Parameters
- `cs` Pointer to a `convert_speed_t` structure.

## Description
This function is a Solaris-specific extension that provides a method for clients to convert from one type of device speed representation to another, that is, from `devspeed` format to `nS` and vice versa.

## Structure Members
The structure members of `convert_speed_t` are:
```
uint32_t Attributes;
uint32_t nS;
uint32_t devspeed;
```

The fields are defined as follows:

- **Attributes**
  This is a bit-mapped field that identifies the type of speed conversion to be performed. The field is defined as follows:
  - `CONVERT_NS_TO_DEVSPEED` Converts `nS` to `devspeed` format
  - `CONVERT_DEVSPEED_TO_NS` Converts `devspeed` format to `nS`

- **nS**
  If `CONVERT_NS_TO_DEVSPEED` is set, the value in the `nS` field is converted to a `devspeed` format and returned in the `devspeed` field.

- **devspeed**
  If `CONVERT_DEVSPEED_TO_NS` is set, the value in the `devspeed` field is converted to an `nS` value and returned in the `nS` field.

## Return Values
- **CS_SUCCESS** Successful operation.
- **CS_BAD_SPEED** Invalid `nS` or `devspeed`.
- **CS_BAD_ATTRIBUTE** Bad Attributes value.
- **CS_UNSUPPORTED_FUNCTION** No PCMCIA hardware installed.

## Context
This function may be called from user or kernel context.

## See Also
- `csx_ModifyWindow(9F)`, `csx_RequestWindow(9F)`

**PC Card 95 Standard, PCMCIA/JEIDA**
#include <sys/pccard.h>

int32_t csx_CS_DDI_Info(cs_ddi_info_t *cdi);

SolarisDDISpecific(SolarisDDI)
cdi

This function is a Solaris-specific extension that is used by clients that need to provide the
xx_getinfo driver entry point (see getinfo(9E)). It provides a method for clients to obtain DDI
information based on their socket number and client driver name.

The structure members of cs_ddi_info_t are:

- uint32_t Socket; /* socket number */
- char* driver_name; /* unique driver name */
- dev_info_t *dip; /* dip */
- int32_t instance; /* instance */

The fields are defined as follows:

Socket This field must be set to the physical socket number that the client is
interested in getting information about.

driver_name This field must be set to a string containing the name of the client driver to
get information about.

If csx_CS_DDI_Info() is used in a client's xx_getinfo function, then the client will typically
extract the Socket value from the *arg argument and it must set the driver_name field to the
same string used with csx_RegisterClient(9F).

If the driver_name is found on the Socket, the csx_CS_DDI_Info() function returns both the
dev_info pointer and the instance fields for the requested driver instance.

CS_SUCCESS Successful operation.
CS_BAD_SOCKET Client not found on Socket.
CS_UNSUPPORTED_FUNCTION No PCMCIA hardware installed.

This function may be called from user or kernel context.

EXAMPLE 1 : Using csx_CS_DDI_Info

The following example shows how a client might call the csx_CS_DDI_Info() in the client's
xx_getinfo function to return the dip or the instance number:
EXAMPLE 1: Using csx_CS_DDI_Info (Continued)

static int
pcepp_getinfo(dev_info_t *dip, ddi_info_cmd_t cmd, void *arg,
   void **result)
{
    int error = DDI_SUCCESS;
    pcepp_state_t *pps;
    cs_ddi_info_t cs_ddi_info;

    switch (cmd) {
      case DDI_INFO_DEVT2DEVINFO:
        cs_ddi_info.Socket = getminor((dev_t)arg) & 0x3f;
        cs_ddi_info.driver_name = pcepp_name;
        if (csx_CS_DDI_Info(&cs_ddi_info) != CS_SUCCESS)
          return (DDI_FAILURE);
        if (!(pps = ddi_get_soft_state(pcepp_soft_state_p,
            cs_ddi_info.instance))) {
          *result = NULL;
        } else {
          *result = pps->dip;
        }
        break;

      case DDI_INFO_DEVT2INSTANCE:
        cs_ddi_info.Socket = getminor((dev_t)arg) & 0x3f;
        cs_ddi_info.driver_name = pcepp_name;
        if (csx_CS_DDI_Info(&cs_ddi_info) != CS_SUCCESS)
          return (DDI_FAILURE);
        *result = (void *)cs_ddi_info.instance;
        break;

      default:
        error = DDI_FAILURE;
        break;
    }

    return (error);
}

See Also getinfo(9E), csx_RegisterClient(9F), ddi_get_instance(9F)

PC Card 95 Standard, PCMCIA/JEIDA
csx_DeregisterClient – remove client from Card Services list

**Synopsis**
```
#include <sys/pccard.h>

int32_t csx_DeregisterClient(client_handle_t ch);
```

**Interface Level**
Solaris DDI Specific (Solaris DDI)

**Parameters**
- `ch` Client handle returned from `csx_RegisterClient(9F)`.

**Description**
This function removes a client from the list of registered clients maintained by Card Services. The Client Handle returned by `csx_RegisterClient(9F)` is passed in the `client_handle_t` argument.

The client must have returned all requested resources before this function is called. If any resources have not been released, `CS_IN_USE` is returned.

**Return Values**
- `CS_SUCCESS` Successful operation.
- `CS_BAD_HANDLE` Client handle is invalid.
- `CS_IN_USE` Resources not released by this client.
- `CS_UNSUPPORTED_FUNCTION` No PCMCIA hardware installed.

**Context**
This function may be called from user or kernel context.

**See Also**
- `csx_RegisterClient(9F)`

*PC Card 95 Standard, PCMCIA/JEIDA*

**Warnings**
Clients should be prepared to receive callbacks until Card Services returns from this request successfully.
csx_DupHandle(9F)

**Name**  csx_DupHandle – duplicate access handle

**Synopsis**  #include <sys/pccard.h>

```c
int32_t csx_DupHandle(acc_handle_t handle1, acc_handle_t *handle2, uint32_t flags);
```

**Interface Level**  Solaris DDI Specific (Solaris DDI)

**Parameters**

- `handle1`  The access handle returned from csx_RequestIO(9F) or csx_RequestWindow(9F) that is to be duplicated.
- `handle2`  A pointer to the newly-created duplicated data access handle.
- `flags`  The access attributes that will be applied to the new handle.

**Description**  This function duplicates the handle, `handle1`, into a new handle, `handle2`, that has the access attributes specified in the `flags` argument. Both the original handle and the new handle are active and can be used with the common access functions.

Both handles must be explicitly freed when they are no longer necessary.

The `flags` argument is bit-mapped. The following bits are defined:

- `WIN_ACC_NEVER_SWAP`  Host endian byte ordering
- `WIN_ACC_BIG_ENDIAN`  Big endian byte ordering
- `WIN_ACC_LITTLE_ENDIAN`  Little endian byte ordering
- `WIN_ACC_STRICT_ORDER`  Program ordering references
- `WIN_ACC_UNORDERED_OK`  May re-order references
- `WIN_ACC_MERGING_OK`  Merge stores to consecutive locations
- `WIN_ACC_LOADCACHING_OK`  May cache load operations
- `WIN_ACC_STORECACHING_OK`  May cache store operations

`WIN_ACC_BIG_ENDIAN` and `WIN_ACC_LITTLE_ENDIAN` describe the endian characteristics of the device as big endian or little endian, respectively. Even though most of the devices will have the same endian characteristics as their busses, there are examples of devices with an I/O processor that has opposite endian characteristics of the busses. When `WIN_ACC_BIG_ENDIAN` or `WIN_ACC_LITTLE_ENDIAN` is set, byte swapping will automatically be performed by the system if the host machine and the device data formats have opposite endian characteristics. The implementation may take advantage of hardware platform byte swapping capabilities. When `WIN_ACC_NEVER_SWAP` is specified, byte swapping will not be invoked in the data access functions. The ability to specify the order in which the CPU will reference data is provided by the following `flags` bits. Only one of the following bits may be specified:

- `WIN_ACC_STRICT_ORDER`  The data references must be issued by a CPU in program order. Strict ordering is the default behavior.
The CPU may re-order the data references. This includes all kinds of re-ordering (that is, a load followed by a store may be replaced by a store followed by a load).

The CPU may merge individual stores to consecutive locations. For example, the CPU may turn two consecutive byte stores into one halfword store. It may also batch individual loads. For example, the CPU may turn two consecutive byte loads into one halfword load. Setting this bit also implies re-ordering.

The CPU may cache the data it fetches and reuse it until another store occurs. The default behavior is to fetch new data on every load. Setting this bit also implies merging and re-ordering.

The CPU may keep the data in the cache and push it to the device (perhaps with other data) at a later time. The default behavior is to push the data right away. Setting this bit also implies load caching, merging, and re-ordering.

These values are advisory, not mandatory. For example, data can be ordered without being merged or cached, even though a driver requests unordered, merged and cached together.

### Return Values

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Value</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>CS_SUCCESS</td>
<td>Successful operation.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CS_FAILURE</td>
<td>Error in flags argument or handle could not be duplicated for some reason.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CS_UNSUPPORTED_FUNCTION</td>
<td>No PCMCIA hardware installed.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Context

This function may be called from user or kernel context.

### See Also

- csx_Get8(9F)
- csx_GetMappedAddr(9F)
- csx_Put8(9F)
- csx_RepGet8(9F)
- csx_RepPut8(9F)
- csx_RequestIO(9F)
- csx_RequestWindow(9F)

*PC Card 95 Standard, PCMCIA/JEIDA*
#include <sys/pccard.h>

int32_t csx_Error2Text(error2text_t *er);

Solaris DDI Specific (Solaris DDI)

This function is a Solaris-specific extension that provides a method for clients to convert Card Services error return codes to text strings.

The structure members of error2text_t are:

uint32_t item; /*the error code*/
char test[CS_ERROR_MAX_BUFSIZE]; /*the error code*/

A pointer to the text for the Card Services error return code in the item field is returned in the text field if the error return code is found. The client is not responsible for allocating a buffer to hold the text. If the Card Services error return code specified in the item field is not found, the text field will be set to a string of the form:

"{unknown Card Services return code}"

CS_SUCCESS Successful operation.
CS_UNSUPPORTED_FUNCTION No PCMCIA hardware installed.

This function may be called from user or kernel context.

EXAMPLE 1 : Using the csxError2Text function

if ((ret = csx_RegisterClient(&client_handle, &client_reg)) != CS_SUCCESS)
{
   error2text_t error2text;
   error2text.item = ret;
   csx_Error2Text(&error2text);
   cmn_err(CE_CONT, "RegisterClient failed %s (0x%llx)",
            error2text.text, ret);
}

See Also csx_Event2Text(9F)

PC Card 95 Standard, PCMCIA/JEIDA
Name csx_Event2Text – convert events to text strings

Synopsis #include <sys/pccard.h>

```c
int32_t csx_Event2Text(event2text_t *ev);
```

Interface Level Solaris DDI Specific (Solaris DDI)

Parameters

- `ev` Pointer to an event2text_t structure.

Description This function is a Solaris-specific extension that provides a method for clients to convert Card Services events to text strings.

Structure Members The structure members of event2text_t are:

- `event_t event; /*the event code*/`
- `char text[CS_EVENT_MAX_BUFSIZE] /*the event code*/`

The fields are defined as follows:

- `event` The text for the event code in the event field is returned in the `text` field.
- `text` The text string describing the name of the event.

Return Values

- `CS_SUCCESS` Successful operation.
- `CS_UNSUPPORTED_FUNCTION` No PCMCIA hardware installed.

Context This function may be called from user or kernel context.

Examples EXAMPLE 1 Using csx_Event2Text()

```c
xx_event(event_t event, int priority, event_callback_args_t *eca)
{
    event2text_t event2text;

    event2text.event = event;
    csx_Event2Text(&event2text);
    cmn_err(CE_CONT, "event %s (0x%x)", event2text.text, (int)event);
}
```

See Also csx_event_handler(9E), csx_Error2Text(9F)

PC Card 95 Standard, PCMCIA/JEIDA
Name    csx_FreeHandle – free access handle

Synopsis  #include <sys/pccard.h>

        int32_t csx_FreeHandle(acc_handle_t *handle);

Interface Level  Solaris DDI Specific (Solaris DDI)

Parameters  handle    The access handle returned from csx_RequestIO(9F), csx_RequestWindow(9F),
              or csx_DupHandle(9F).

Description  This function frees the handle, handle. If the handle was created by the csx_DupHandle(9F)
              function, this function will free the storage associated with this handle, but will not modify any
              resources that the original handle refers to. If the handle was created by a common access
              setup function, this function will release the resources associated with this handle.

Return Values  CS_SUCCESS          Successful operation.
              CS_UNSUPPORTED_FUNCTION   No PCMCIA hardware installed.

Context    This function may be called from user or kernel context.

See Also    csx_DupHandle(9F), csx_RequestIO(9F), csx_RequestWindow(9F)

              PC Card95 Standard, PCMCIA/JEIDA
Name csx_Get8, csx_Get16, csx_Get32, csx_Get64 – read data from device address

Synopsis #include <sys/pccard.h>

```c
uint8_t csx_Get8(acc_handle_t handle, uint32_t offset);
uint16_t csx_Get16(acc_handle_t handle, uint32_t offset);
uint32_t csx_Get32(acc_handle_t handle, uint32_t offset);
uint64_t csx_Get64(acc_handle_t handle, uint64_t offset);
```

Interface Level Solaris DDI Specific (Solaris DDI)

Parameters

- `handle` The access handle returned from `csx_RequestIO(9F), csx_RequestWindow(9F), or csx_DupHandle(9F).`
- `offset` The offset in bytes from the base of the mapped resource.

Description These functions generate a read of various sizes from the mapped memory or device register.

The `csx_Get8()`, `csx_Get16()`, `csx_Get32()`, and `csx_Get64()` functions read 8 bits, 16 bits, 32 bits, and 64 bits of data, respectively, from the device address represented by the handle, `handle`, at an offset in bytes represented by the offset, `offset`.

Data that consists of more than one byte will automatically be translated to maintain a consistent view between the host and the device based on the encoded information in the data access handle. The translation may involve byte swapping if the host and the device have incompatible endian characteristics.

Return Values These functions return the value read from the mapped address.

Context These functions may be called from user, kernel, or interrupt context.

See Also `csx_DupHandle(9F), csx_GetMappedAddr(9F), csx_Put8(9F), csx_RepGet8(9F), csx_RepPut8(9F), csx_RequestIO(9F), csx_RequestWindow(9F)`

PC Card 95 Standard, PCMCIA/JEIDA
csx_GetFirstClient, csx_GetNextClient – return first or next client

Synopsis  #include <sys/pccard.h>

```c
int32_t csx_GetFirstClient(get_firstnext_client_t *fnc);
int32_t csx_GetNextClient(get_firstnext_client_t *fnc);
```

Interface Level  Solaris DDI Specific (Solaris DDI)

Parameters  *fnc  Pointer to a get_firstnext_client_t structure.

Description  The functions csx_GetFirstClient() and csx_GetNextClient() return information about the first or subsequent PC cards, respectively, that are installed in the system.

Structure Members  The structure members of get_firstnext_client_t are:

```c
uint32_t Socket; /* socket number */
uint32_t Attributes; /* attributes */
client_handle_t client_handle; /* client handle */
uint32_t num_clients; /* number of clients */
```

The fields are defined as follows:

Socket  If the CS_GET_FIRSTNEXT_CLIENT_SOCKET_ONLY attribute is set, return information only on the PC card installed in this socket.

Attributes  This field indicates the type of client. The field is bit-mapped; the following bits are defined:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Bit Code</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>CS_GET_FIRSTNEXT_CLIENT_ALL_CLIENTS</td>
<td>Return information on all clients.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CS_GET_FIRSTNEXT_CLIENT_SOCKET_ONLY</td>
<td>Return client information for the specified socket only.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

client_handle  The client handle of the PC card driver is returned in this field.

num_clients  The number of clients is returned in this field.

Return Values

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Code</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>CS_SUCCESS</td>
<td>Successful operation.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CS_BAD_HANDLE</td>
<td>Client handle is invalid.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CS_BAD_SOCKET</td>
<td>Socket number is invalid.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CS_NO_CARD</td>
<td>No PC Card in socket.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
PC Card driver does not handle the CS_EVENT_CLIENT_INFO event.

No PCMCIA hardware installed.

This function may be called from user or kernel context.

See Also csx_event_handler(9E)

PC Card 95 Standard, PCMCIA/JEIDA
### Name

 csx_GetFirstTuple, csx_GetNextTuple – return Card Information Structure tuple

### Synopsis

```c
#include <sys/pccard.h>

int32_t csx_GetFirstTuple(client_handle_t ch, tuple_t *tu);
int32_t csx_GetNextTuple(client_handle_t ch, tuple_t *tu);
```

### Interface Level

Solaris DDI Specific (Solaris DDI)

### Parameters

- **ch**  
  Client handle returned from `csx_RegisterClient(9F)`.
- **tu**  
  Pointer to a `tuple_t` structure.

### Description

The functions `csx_GetFirstTuple()` and `csx_GetNextTuple()` return the first and next tuple, respectively, of the specified type in the Card Information Structure (CIS) for the specified socket.

### Structure Members

The structure members of `tuple_t` are:

```c
uint32_t Socket;  /* socket number */
uint32_t Attributes;  /* Attributes */
cisdata_t DesiredTuple;  /* tuple to search for or flags */
cisdata_t TupleCode;  /* tuple type code */
cisdata_t TupleLink;  /* tuple data body size */
```

The fields are defined as follows:

- **Socket**  
  Not used in Solaris, but for portability with other Card Services implementations, it should be set to the logical socket number.

- **Attributes**  
  This field is bit-mapped. The following bits are defined:

  ```
  TUPLE_RETURN_LINK  
  Return link tuples if set. The following are link tuples and will only be returned by this function if the TUPLE_RETURN_LINK bit in the Attributes field is set:
  ```

  ```
  CISTPL_NULL    CISTPL_LONGLINK_MFC
  CISTPL_LONGLINK_A    CISTPL_LINKTARGET
  CISTPL_LONGLINK_C    CISTPL_NO_LINK
  CISTPL_LONGLINK_CB   CISTPL_END
  ```
TUPLE_RETURN_IGNORED_TUPLES  Return ignored tuples if set. Ignored tuples will be returned by this function if the TUPLE_RETURN_IGNORED_TUPLES bit in the Attributes field is set, see tuple(9S) for more information. The CIS is parsed from the location setup by the previous csx_GetFirstTuple() or csx_GetNextTuple() request.

DesiredTuple  This field is the tuple value desired. If it is RETURN_FIRST_TUPLE, the very first tuple of the CIS is returned (if it exists). If this field is set to RETURN_NEXT_TUPLE, the very next tuple of the CIS is returned (if it exists). If the DesiredTuple field is any other value on entry, the CIS is searched in an attempt to locate a tuple which matches.

TupleCode, TupleLink  These fields are the values returned from the tuple found. If there are no tuples on the card, CS_NO_MORE_ITEMS is returned.

Since the csx_GetFirstTuple(), csx_GetNextTuple(), and csx_GetTupleData(9F) functions all share the same tuple_t structure, some fields in the tuple_t structure are unused or reserved when calling this function and these fields must not be initialized by the client.

Return Values

CS_SUCCESS  Successful operation.
CS_BAD_HANDLE  Client handle is invalid.
CS_NO_CARD  No PC Card in socket.
CS_NO_CIS  No Card Information Structure (CIS) on PC card.
CS_NO_MORE_ITEMS  Desired tuple not found.
CS_UNSUPPORTED_FUNCTION  No PCMCIA hardware installed.
csx_GetFirstTuple(9F)

**Context**  These functions may be called from user or kernel context.

**See Also**  csx_GetTupleData(9F), csx_ParseTuple(9F), csx_RegisterClient(9F),
              csx_ValidateCIS(9F), tuple(9S)

     *PC Card 95 Standard, PCMCIA/JEIDA*
csx_GetHandleOffset(9F)

Name csx_GetHandleOffset – return current access handle offset

Synopsis
#include <sys/pccard.h>

int32_t csx_GetHandleOffset(acc_handle_t handle, uint32_t *offset);

Interface Level Solaris DDI Specific (Solaris DDI)

Parameters
handle Access handle returned by csx_RequestIRQ(9F) or csx_RequestIO(9F).
offset Pointer to a uint32_t in which the current access handle offset is returned.

Description This function returns the current offset for the access handle, handle, in offset.

Return Values CS_SUCCESS Successful operation.

Context This function may be called from user or kernel context.

See Also csx_RequestIO(9F), csx_RequestIRQ(9F), csx_SetHandleOffset(9F)

PC Card 95 Standard, PCMCIA/JEIDA
csx_GetMappedAddr(9F)

Name  csx_GetMappedAddr – return mapped virtual address

Synopsis  #include <sys/pccard.h>

```c
int32_t csx_GetMappedAddr(acc_handle_t handle, void **addr);
```

Interface Level  Solaris DDI Specific (Solaris DDI)

Parameters  
- `handle`  The access handle returned from `csx_RequestIO(9F)`, `csx_RequestWindow(9F)`, or `csx_DupHandle(9F)`.
- `addr`  The virtual or I/O port number represented by the handle.

Description  This function returns the mapped virtual address or the mapped I/O port number represented by the handle, `handle`.

Return Values  
- `CS_SUCCESS`  The resulting address or I/O port number can be directly accessed by the caller.
- `CS_FAILURE`  The resulting address or I/O port number cannot be directly accessed by the caller; the caller must make all accesses to the mapped area via the common access functions.
- `CS_UNSUPPORTED_FUNCTION`  No PCMCIA hardware installed.

Context  This function may be called from user, kernel, or interrupt context.

See Also  `csx_DupHandle(9F)`, `csx_Get8(9F)`, `csx_Put8(9F)`, `csx_RepGet8(9F)`, `csx_RepPut8(9F)`, `csx_RequestIO(9F)`, `csx_RequestWindow(9F)`

*PC Card 95 Standard, PCMCIA/JEIDA*
csx_GetStatus(9F)

Name csx_GetStatus – return the current status of a PC Card and its socket

Synopsis #include <sys/pccard.h>

```c
int32_t csx_GetStatus(client_handle_t ch, get_status_t *gs);
```

Interface Level Solaris DDI Specific (Solaris DDI)

Parameters

- `ch` Client handle returned from `csx_RegisterClient(9F)`.
- `gs` Pointer to a `get_status_t` structure.

Description This function returns the current status of a PC Card and its socket.

Structure Members The structure members of `get_status_t` are:

```c
typedef struct get_status_t {
    uint32_t Socket; /* socket number */
    uint32_t CardState; /* "live" card status for this client */
    uint32_t SocketState; /* latched socket values */
    uint32_t raw_CardState; /* raw live card status */
} get_status_t;
```

The fields are defined as follows:

- **Socket** Not used in Solaris, but for portability with other Card Services implementations, it should be set to the logical socket number.

- **CardState** The CardState field is the bit-mapped output data returned from Card Services. The bits identify what Card Services thinks the current state of the installed PC Card is. The bits are:
  - `CS_STATUS_WRITE_PROTECTED` Card is write protected
  - `CS_STATUS_CARD_LOCKED` Card is locked
  - `CS_STATUS_EJECTION_REQUEST` Ejection request in progress
  - `CS_STATUS_INSERTION_REQUEST` Insertion request in progress
  - `CS_STATUS_BATTERY_DEAD` Card battery is dead
  - `CS_STATUS_BATTERY_DEAD` Card battery is dead (BVD1)
  - `CS_STATUS_BATTERY_LOW` Card battery is low (BVD2)
  - `CS_STATUS_CARD_READY` Card is READY
  - `CS_STATUS_CARD_INSERTED` Card is inserted
  - `CS_STATUS_REQ_ATTN` Extended status attention request
### csx_GetStatus(9F)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Status Code</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>CS_STATUS_RES_EVT1</td>
<td>Extended status reserved event status</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CS_STATUS_RES_EVT2</td>
<td>Extended status reserved event status</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CS_STATUS_RES_EVT3</td>
<td>Extended status reserved event status</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CS_STATUS_VCC_50</td>
<td>5.0 Volts Vcc Indicated</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CS_STATUS_VCC_33</td>
<td>3.3 Volts Vcc Indicated</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CS_STATUS_VCC_XX</td>
<td>X.X Volts Vcc Indicated</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The state of the CS_STATUS_CARD_INSERTED bit indicates whether the PC Card associated with this driver instance, not just any card, is inserted in the socket. If an I/O card is installed in the specified socket, card state is returned from the PRR (Pin Replacement Register) and the ESR (Extended Status Register) (if present). If certain state bits are not present in the PRR or ESR, a simulated state bit value is returned as defined below:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Status Code</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>CS_STATUS_WRITE_PROTECTED</td>
<td>Not write protected</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CS_STATUS_BATTERY_DEAD</td>
<td>Power good</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PCS_STATUS_BATTERY_LOW</td>
<td>Power good</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CS_STATUS_CARD_READY</td>
<td>Ready</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CS_STATUS_REQ_ATTN</td>
<td>Not set</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CS_STATUS_RES_EVT1</td>
<td>Not set</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CS_STATUS_RES_EVT2</td>
<td>Not set</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CS_STATUS_RES_EVT3</td>
<td>Not set</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### SocketState

The SocketState field is a bit-map of the current card and socket state. The bits are:

- CS_SOCK_STATUS_WRITE_PROTECT_CHANGE
  - Write Protect

- ECS_SOCK_STATUS_CARD_LOCK_CHANGE
  - Card Lock Change

- CS_SOCK_STATUS_EJECTION_PENDING
  - Ejection Request

- CS_SOCK_STATUS_INSERTION_PENDING
  - Insertion Request
CS_SOCK_STATUS_BATTERY_DEAD_CHANGE  
Battery Dead

CS_SOCK_STATUS_BATTERY_LOW_CHANGE  
Battery Low

CS_SOCK_STATUS_CARD_READY_CHANGE  
Ready Change

CS_SOCK_STATUS_CARD_INSERTION_CHANGE  
Card is inserted

The state reported in the SocketState field may be different from the state reported in the CardState field. Clients should normally depend only on the state reported in the CardState field.

The state reported in the SocketState field may be different from the state reported in the CardState field. Clients should normally depend only on the state reported in the CardState field.

raw_CardState  
The raw_CardState field is a Solaris-specific extension that allows the client to determine if any card is inserted in the socket. The bit definitions in the raw_CardState field are identical to those in the CardState field with the exception that the CS_STATUS_CARD_INSERTED bit in the raw_CardState field is set whenever any card is inserted into the socket.

Return Values  
CS_SUCCESS  
Successful operation.

CS_BAD_HANDLE  
Client handle is invalid.

CS_BAD_SOCKET  
Error getting socket state.

CS_UNSUPPORTED_FUNCTION  
No PCMCIA hardware installed.

CS_NO_CARD will not be returned if there is no PC Card present in the socket.

Context  
This function may be called from user or kernel context.

See Also  
csx_RegisterClient(9F)

PC Card 95 Standard, PCMCIA/JEIDA
csx_GetTupleData – return the data portion of a tuple

Synopsis

```
#include <sys/pccard.h>

int32_t csx_GetTupleData(client_handle_t ch, tuple_t *tu);
```

Interface Level
Solaris DDI Specific (Solaris DDI)

Parameters

- `ch` Client handle returned from `csx_RegisterClient`
- `tu` Pointer to a `tuple_t` structure.

Description

This function returns the data portion of a tuple, as returned by the `csx_GetFirstTuple` and `csx_GetNextTuple` functions.

Structure Members

The structure members of `tuple_t` are:

- `uint32_t Socket; /* socket number */`
- `uint32_t Attributes; /* tuple attributes*/`
- `cisdata_t DesiredTuple; /* tuple to search for*/`
- `cisdata_t TupleOffset; /* tuple data offset*/`
- `cisdata_t TupleDataMax; /* max tuple data size*/`
- `cisdata_t TupleDataLen; /* actual tuple data length*/`
- `cisdata_t TupleData[CIS_MAX_TUPLE_DATA_LEN]; /* tuple body data buffer*/`
- `cisdata_t TupleCode; /* tuple type code*/`
- `cisdata_t TupleLink; /* tuple link */`

Socket Not used in Solaris, but for portability with other Card Services implementations, it should be set to the logical socket number.

Attributes

Initialized by `csx_GetFirstTuple` or `csx_GetNextTuple`; the client must not modify the value in this field.

DesiredTuple

Initialized by `csx_GetFirstTuple` or `csx_GetNextTuple`; the client must not modify the value in this field.

TupleOffset

This field allows partial tuple information to be retrieved, starting anywhere within the tuple.

TupleDataMax

This field is the size of the tuple data buffer that Card Services uses to return raw tuple data from `csx_GetTupleData`. It can be larger than the number of bytes in the tuple data body. Card Services ignores any value placed here by the client.

TupleDataLen

This field is the actual size of the tuple data body. It represents the number of tuple data body bytes returned.
TupleData

This field is an array of bytes containing the raw tuple data body contents.

TupleCode

Initialized by `csx_GetFirstTuple(9F)` or `csx_GetNextTuple(9F)`; the client must not modify the value in this field.

TupleLink

Initialized by `csx_GetFirstTuple(9F)` or `csx_GetNextTuple(9F)`; the client must not modify the value in this field.

**Return Values**

- **CS_SUCCESS**
  Successful operation.
- **CS_BAD_HANDLE**
  Client handle is invalid.
- **CS_BAD_ARGS**
  Data from prior `csx_GetFirstTuple(9F)` or `csx_GetNextTuple(9F)` is corrupt.
- **CS_NO_CARD**
  No PC Card in socket.
- **CS_NO_CIS**
  No Card Information Structure (CIS) on PC Card.
- **CS_NO_MORE_ITEMS**
  Card Services was not able to read the tuple from the PC Card.
- **CS_UNSUPPORTED_FUNCTION**
  No PCMCIA hardware installed.

**Context**

This function may be called from user or kernel context.

**See Also**

`csx_GetFirstTuple(9F), csx_ParseTuple(9F), csx_RegisterClient(9F), csx_ValidateCIS(9F), tuple(9S)`

*PC Card 95 Standard, PCMCIA/JEIDA*
csx_MakeDeviceNode, csx_RemoveDeviceNode – create and remove minor nodes on behalf of the client

Synopsis  
#include <sys/pccard.h>

int32_t csx_MakeDeviceNode(client_handle_t ch, make_device_node_t *dn);
int32_t csx_RemoveDeviceNode(client_handle_t ch, remove_device_node_t *dn);

Interface Level  Solaris DDI Specific (Solaris DDI)

Parameters  
ch  Client handle returned from csx_RegisterClient(9F).
dn  Pointer to a make_device_node_t or remove_device_node_t structure.

Description  
Create and remove device nodes in the file system on behalf of the client.

Structure Members  
The structure members of make_device_node_t are:

- uint32_t Action;  /* device operation */
- uint32_t NumDevNodes;  /* number of nodes to create */
- devnode_desc_t *devnode_desc;  /* description of device nodes */

The structure members of remove_device_node_t are:

- uint32_t Action;  /* device operation */
- uint32_t NumDevNodes;  /* number of nodes to remove */
- devnode_desc_t *devnode_desc;  /* description of device nodes */

The structure members of devnode_desc_t are:

- char *name;  /* device node path and name */
- int32_t spec_type;  /* device special type (block or char) */
- int32_t minor_num;  /* device node minor number */
- char *node_type;  /* device node type */

The Action field is used to specify the operation that csx_MakeDeviceNode() and csx_RemoveDeviceNode() should perform.

The following Action values are defined for csx_MakeDeviceNode():
- CREATE_DEVICE_NODE  Create NumDevNodes minor nodes

The following Action values are defined for csx_RemoveDeviceNode():
- REMOVEDEVICE_NODE  Remove NumDevNodes minor nodes
- REMOVE_ALL_DEVICE_NODES  Remove all minor nodes for this client
For `csx_MakeDeviceNode()`, if the Action field is:

- **CREATE_DEVICE_NODE**
  The `NumDevNodes` field must be set to the number of minor devices to create, and the client must allocate the quantity of `devnode_desc_t` structures specified by `NumDevNodes` and fill out the fields in the `devnode_desc_t` structure with the appropriate minor node information. The meanings of the fields in the `devnode_desc_t` structure are identical to the parameters of the same name to the `ddi_create_minor_node(9F)` DDI function.

For `csx_RemoveDeviceNode()`, if the Action field is:

- **REMOVEDEVICE_NODE**
  The `NumDevNodes` field must be set to the number of minor devices to remove, and the client must allocate the quantity of `devnode_desc_t` structures specified by `NumDevNodes` and fill out the fields in the `devnode_desc_t` structure with the appropriate minor node information. The meanings of the fields in the `devnode_desc_t` structure are identical to the parameters of the same name to the `ddi_remove_minor_node(9F)` DDI function.

- **REMOVE_ALLDEVICE_NODES**
  The `NumDevNodes` field must be set to 0 and the `devnode_desc_t` structure pointer must be set to NULL. All device nodes for this client will be removed from the filesystem.

**Return Values**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Code</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>CS_SUCCESS</td>
<td>Successful operation.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CS_BAD_HANDLE</td>
<td>Client handle is invalid.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CS_BAD_ATTRIBUTE</td>
<td>The value of one or more arguments is invalid.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CS_BAD_ARGS</td>
<td>Action is invalid.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CS_OUT_OF_RESOURCE</td>
<td>Unable to create or remove device node.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CS_UNSUPPORTED_FUNCTION</td>
<td>No PCMCIA hardware installed.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Context**

These functions may be called from user or kernel context.

**See Also**

`csx_RegisterClient(9F), ddi_create_minor_node(9F), ddi_remove_minor_node(9F)`

*PC Card 95 Standard, PCMCIA/JEIDA*
**Name**
csx_MapLogSocket – return the physical socket number associated with the client handle

**Synopsis**
```c
#include <sys/pccard.h>

int32_t csx_MapLogSocket(client_handle_t ch, map_log_socket_t *ls);
```

**Interface Level**
Solaris DDI Specific (Solaris DDI)

**Parameters**
- `ch` Client handle returned from `csx_RegisterClient(9F)`.
- `ls` Pointer to a `map_log_socket_t` structure.

**Description**
This function returns the physical socket number associated with the client handle.

**Structure Members**
The structure members of `map_log_socket_t` are:

```c
typedef struct map_log_socket_t {
    uint32_t LogSocket; /* logical socket number */
    uint32_t PhyAdapter; /* physical adapter number */
    uint32_t PhySocket; /* physical socket number */
} map_log_socket_t;
```

The fields are defined as follows:
- **LogSocket**
  Not used by this implementation of Card Services and can be set to any arbitrary value.
- **PhyAdapter**
  Returns the physical adapter number, which is always 0 in the Solaris implementation of Card Services.
- **PhySocket**
  Returns the physical socket number associated with the client handle. The physical socket number is typically used as part of an error or message string or if the client creates minor nodes based on the physical socket number.

**Return Values**
- **CS_SUCCESS**
  Successful operation.
- **CS_BAD_HANDLE**
  Client handle is invalid.
- **CS_UNSUPPORTED_FUNCTION**
  No PCMCIA hardware installed.

**Context**
This function may be called from user or kernel context.

**See Also**
- `csx_RegisterClient(9F)`
- *PC Card 95 Standard, PCMCIA/JEIDA*
Name  csx_MapMemPage – map the memory area on a PC Card

Synopsis  

```c
#include <sys/pccard.h>

int32_t csx_MapMemPage(window_handle_t wh, map_mem_page_t *mp);
```

Interface Level  Solaris DDI Specific (Solaris DDI)

Parameters  

- `wh`  Window handle returned from `csx_RequestWindow(9F)`.
- `mp`  Pointer to a `map_mem_page_t` structure.

Description  This function maps the memory area on a PC Card into a page of a window allocated with the `csx_RequestWindow(9F)` function.

Structure Members  The structure members of `map_mem_page_t` are:

```c
uint32_t CardOffset; /* card offset */
uint32_t Page; /* page number */
```

The fields are defined as follows:

- **CardOffset**  The absolute offset in bytes from the beginning of the PC Card to map into system memory.
- **Page**  Used internally by Card Services; clients must set this field to 0 before calling this function.

Return Values  

- **CS_SUCCESS**  Successful operation.
- **CS_BAD_HANDLE**  Client handle is invalid.
- **CS_BAD_OFFSET**  Offset is invalid.
- **CS_BAD_PAGE**  Page is not zero.
- **CS_NO_CARD**  No PC Card in socket.
- **CS_UNSUPPORTED_FUNCTION**  No PCMCIA hardware installed.

Context  This function may be called from user or kernel context.

See Also  `csx_ModifyWindow(9F), csx_ReleaseWindow(9F), csx_RequestWindow(9F)`

*PC Card 95 Standard, PCMCIA/JEIDA*
**Name**  
csx_ModifyConfiguration – modify socket and PC Card Configuration Register

**Synopsis**  
#include <sys/pccard.h>

```c
int32_t csx_ModifyConfiguration(client_handle_t ch, modify_config_t *mc);
```

**Interface Level**  
Solaris DDI Specific (Solaris DDI)

**Parameters**  
- `ch` Client handle returned from csx_RegisterClient(9F).
- `mc` Pointer to a `modify_config_t` structure.

**Description**  
This function allows a socket and PC Card configuration to be modified. This function can only modify a configuration requested via csx_RequestConfiguration(9F).

**Structure Members**  
The structure members of `modify_config_t` are:

```c
uint32_t Socket; /* socket number */
uint32_t Attributes; /* attributes to modify */
uint32_t Vpp1; /* Vpp1 value */
uint32_t Vpp2; /* Vpp2 value */
```

The fields are defined as follows:

**Socket**  
Not used in Solaris, but for portability with other Card Services implementations, it should be set to the logical socket number.

**Attributes**  
This field is bit-mapped. The following bits are defined:

- `CONF_ENABLE_IRQ_STEERING`  
  Enable IRQ steering. Set to connect the PC Card IREQ line to a previously selected system interrupt.

- `CONF_IRQ_CHANGE_VALID`  
  IRQ change valid. Set to request the IRQ steering enable to be changed.

- `CONF_VPP1_CHANGE_VALID`  
  Vpp1 change valid. These bits are set to request a change to the corresponding voltage level for the PC Card.

- `CONF_VPP2_CHANGE_VALID`  
  Vpp2 change valid. These bits are set to request a change to the corresponding voltage level for the PC Card.

- `CONF_VSOVERRIDE`  
  Override VS pins. For Low Voltage keyed cards, must be set if a client
desires to apply a voltage inappropriate for this card to any pin. After card insertion and prior to the first
\texttt{csx\_RequestConfiguration(9F)} call for this client, the voltage levels applied to the card will be those specified by the Card Interface Specification. (See \textit{WARNINGS}.)

Vpp1, Vpp2 Represent voltages expressed in tenths of a volt. Values from 0 to 25.5 volts may be set. To be valid, the exact voltage must be available from the system. To be compliant with the \textit{PC Card 95 Standard, PCMCIA/JEIDA}, systems must always support 5.0 volts for both Vcc and Vpp. (See \textit{WARNINGS}.)

\textbf{Return Values}

\begin{tabular}{ll}
\texttt{CS\_SUCCESS} & Successful operation. \\
\texttt{CS\_BAD\_HANDLE} & Client handle is invalid or \texttt{csx\_RequestConfiguration(9F)} not done. \\
\texttt{CS\_BAD\_SOCKET} & Error getting/setting socket hardware parameters. \\
\texttt{CS\_BAD\_VPP} & Requested Vpp is not available on socket. \\
\texttt{CS\_NO\_CARD} & No PC Card in socket. \\
\texttt{CS\_UNSUPPORTED\_FUNCTION} & No PCMCIA hardware installed. \\
\end{tabular}

\textbf{Context} This function may be called from user or kernel context.

\textbf{See Also} \texttt{csx\_Registerclient(9F), csx\_ReleaseConfiguration(9F), csx\_ReleaseIO(9F), csx\_ReleaseIRQ(9F), csx\_RequestConfiguration(9F), csx\_RequestIO(9F), csx\_RequestIRQ(9F)}

\textit{PC Card 95 Standard, PCMCIA/JEIDA}

\textbf{Warnings}

1. \texttt{CONF\_VSOVERRIDE} is provided for clients that have a need to override the information provided in the CIS. The client must exercise caution when setting this as it overrides any voltage level protection provided by Card Services.

2. Using \texttt{csx\_ModifyConfiguration()} to set Vpp to 0 volts may result in the loss of a PC Card’s state. Any client setting Vpp to 0 volts is responsible for insuring that the PC Card’s state is restored when power is re-applied to the card.

\textbf{Notes} Mapped IO addresses can only be changed by first releasing the current configuration and IO resources with \texttt{csx\_ReleaseConfiguration(9F)} and \texttt{csx\_ReleaseIO(9F)}, requesting new IO resources and a new configuration with \texttt{csx\_RequestIO(9F)}, followed by \texttt{csx\_RequestConfiguration(9F)}. 

\textit{Kernel Functions for Drivers 155}
IRQ priority can only be changed by first releasing the current configuration and IRQ resources with `csx_ReleaseConfiguration(9F)` and `csx_ReleaseIRQ(9F)`, requesting new IRQ resources and a new configuration with `csx_RequestIRQ(9F)`, followed by `csx_RequestConfiguration(9F)`.

Vcc cannot be changed using `csx_ModifyConfiguration(9F)`. Vcc may be changed by first invoking `csx_ReleaseConfiguration(9F)`, followed by `csx_RequestConfiguration(9F)` with a new Vcc value.
Name  csx_ModifyWindow – modify window attributes

Synopsis  #include <sys/pccard.h>

    int32_t csx_ModifyWindow(window_handle_t wh, modify_win_t *mw);

Interface Level  Solaris DDI Specific (Solaris DDI)

Parameters

    wh  Window handle returned from csx_RequestWindow(9F).

    mw  Pointer to a modify_win_t structure.

Description  This function modifies the attributes of a window allocated by the csx_RequestWindow(9F) function.

    Only some of the window attributes or the access speed field may be modified by this request. The csx_MapMemPage(9F) function is also used to set the offset into PC Card memory to be mapped into system memory for paged windows. The csx_RequestWindow(9F) and csx_ReleaseWindow(9F) functions must be used to change the window base or size.

Structure

Members

    uint32_t Attributes;  /* window flags */

    uint32_t AccessSpeed; /* window access speed */

The fields are defined as follows:

Attributes  This field is bit-mapped and defined as follows:

    WIN_MEMORY_TYPE_CM  Window points to Common Memory area. Set this to map the window to Common Memory.

    WIN_MEMORY_TYPE_AM  Window points to Attribute Memory area. Set this to map the window to Attribute Memory.

    WIN_ENABLE  Enable Window. The client must set this to enable the window.

    WIN_ACCESS_SPEED_VALID  AccessSpeed valid. The client must set this when the AccessSpeed field has a value that the client wants set for the window.

AccessSpeed  The bit definitions for this field use the format of the extended speed byte of the Device ID tuple. If the mantissa is 0 (noted as reserved in the PC Card 95
Standard), the lower bits are a binary code representing a speed from the list below. Numbers in the first column are codes; items in the second column are speeds.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Code</th>
<th>Speed</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td>Reserved: do not use</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>250 nsec</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>200 nsec</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>150 nsec</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>100 nsec</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5-7</td>
<td>Reserved: do not use</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

It is recommended that clients use the `csx_ConvertSpeed(9F)` function to generate the appropriate `AccessSpeed` values rather than manually perturbing the `AccessSpeed` field.

**Return Values**

- **CS_SUCCESS**: Successful operation.
- **CS_BAD_HANDLE**: Window handle is invalid.
- **CS_NO_CARD**: No PC Card in socket.
- **CS_BAD_OFFSET**: Error getting/setting window hardware parameters.
- **CS_BAD_WINDOW**: Error getting/setting window hardware parameters.
- **CS_BAD_SPEED**: `AccessSpeed` is invalid.
- **CS_UNSUPPORTED_FUNCTION**: No PCMCIA hardware installed.

**Context**

This function may be called from user or kernel context.

**See Also**

`csx_ModifyWindow(9F)`, `csx_MapMemPage(9F)`, `csx_ReleaseWindow(9F)`, `csx_RequestWindow(9F)`

*PC Card 95 Standard, PCMCIA/JEIDA*
**Name**  
csx_Parse_CISTPL_BATTERY – parse the Battery Replacement Date tuple

**Synopsis**  
#include <sys/pccard.h>

```c
int32_t csx_Parse_CISTPL_BATTERY(client_handle_t ch, tuple_t *tu, cistpl_battery_t *cb);
```

**Interface Level**  
Solaris DDI Specific (Solaris DDI)

**Parameters**
- `ch`  
  Client handle returned from `csx_RegisterClient(9F)`.
- `tu`  
  Pointer to a `tuple_t` structure (see `tuple(9S)`) returned by a call to `csx_GetFirstTuple(9F)` or `csx_GetNextTuple(9F)`.
- `cb`  
  Pointer to a `cistpl_battery_t` structure which contains the parsed CISTPL_BATTERY tuple information upon return from this function.

**Description**  
This function parses the Battery Replacement Date tuple, CISTPL_BATTERY, into a form usable by PC Card drivers.

The CISTPL_BATTERY tuple is an optional tuple which shall be present only in PC Cards with battery-backed storage. It indicates the date on which the battery was replaced, and the date on which the battery is expected to need replacement. Only one CISTPL_BATTERY tuple is allowed per PC Card.

**Structure Members**
The structure members of `cistpl_battery_t` are:

```c
uint32_t rday; /* date battery last replaced */
uint32_t xday; /* date battery due for replacement */
```

The fields are defined as follows:
- `rday`  
  This field indicates the date on which the battery was last replaced.
- `xday`  
  This field indicates the date on which the battery should be replaced.

**Return Values**
- `CS_SUCCESS`  
  Successful operation.
- `CS_BAD_HANDLE`  
  Client handle is invalid.
- `CS_UNKNOWN_TUPLE`  
  Parser does not know how to parse tuple.
- `CS_NO_CARD`  
  No PC Card in socket.
- `CS_NO_CIS`  
  No Card Information Structure (CIS) on PC Card.
- `CS_UNSUPPORTED_FUNCTION`  
  No PCMCIA hardware installed.

**Context**  
This function may be called from user or kernel context.
See Also  csx_GetFirstTuple(9F), csx_GetTupleData(9F), csx_RegisterClient(9F),
         csx_ValidateCIS(9F), tuple(9S)

      PC Card 95 Standard, PCMCIA/JEIDA
**Name**  
`csx_Parse_CISTPL_BYTEORDER` – parse the Byte Order tuple

**Synopsis**  
`#include <sys/pccard.h>

int32_t csx_Parse_CISTPL_BYTEORDER(client_handle_t ch, tuple_t *tu,  
cistpl_byteorder_t *cbo);`

**Interface Level**  
Solaris DDI Specific (Solaris DDI)

**Parameters**
- `ch`  
  Client handle returned from `csx_RegisterClient(9F)`.  
- `tu`  
  Pointer to a `tuple_t` structure (see `tuple(9S)`) returned by a call to  
  `csx_GetFirstTuple(9F)` or `csx_GetNextTuple(9F)`.  
- `cbo`  
  Pointer to a `cistpl_byteorder_t` structure which contains the parsed  
  `CISTPL_BYTEORDER` tuple information upon return from this function.

**Description**  
This function parses the Byte Order tuple, `CISTPL_BYTEORDER`, into a form usable by PC Card drivers.  

The `CISTPL_BYTEORDER` tuple shall only appear in a partition tuple set for a memory-like partition. It specifies two parameters: the order for multi-byte data, and the order in which bytes map into words for 16-bit cards.

**Structure Members**  
The structure members of `cistpl_byteorder_t` are:  

```c
uint32_t order; /* byte order code */
uint32_t map;  /* byte mapping code */
```

The fields are defined as follows:  
- `order`  
  This field specifies the byte order for multi-byte numeric data.  
  - `TPLBYTEORD_LOW`  
    Little endian order  
  - `TPLBYTEORD_VS`  
    Vendor specific  
- `map`  
  This field specifies the byte mapping for 16-bit or wider cards.  
  - `TPLBYTEMAP_LOW`  
    Byte zero is least significant byte  
  - `TPLBYTEMAPHIGH`  
    Byte zero is most significant byte  
  - `TPLBYTEMAP_VS`  
    Vendor specific mapping

**Return Values**
- `CS_SUCCESS`  
  Successful operation.  
- `CS_BAD_HANDLE`  
  Client handle is invalid.  
- `CS_UNKNOWN_TUPLE`  
  Parser does not know how to parse tuple.
csx_Parse_CISTPL_BYTEORDER(9F)

CS_NO_CARD          No PC Card in socket.
CS_NO_CIS           No Card Information Structure (CIS) PC Card.
CS_UNSUPPORTED_FUNCTION  No PCMCIA hardware installed.

Context This function may be called from user or kernel context.

See Also csx_GetFirstTuple(9F), csx_GetTupleData(9F), csx_RegisterClient(9F),
            csx_ValidateCIS(9F), tuple(9S)

PC Card 95 Standard, PCMCIA/JEIDA
### Name

csx_Parse_CISTPL_CFTABLE_ENTRY – parse 16-bit Card Configuration Table Entry tuple

### Synopsis

```c
#include <sys/pccard.h>

int32_t csx_Parse_CISTPL_CFTABLE_ENTRY(client_handle_t ch, tuple_t *tu,
                                       cistpl_cftable_entry_t *cft);
```

### Interface Level

Solaris DDI Specific (Solaris DDI)

### Parameters

- **ch**  
  Client handle returned from `csx_RegisterClient(9F)`.

- **tu**  
  Pointer to a `tuple_t` structure (see `tuple(9S)`) returned by a call to `csx_GetFirstTuple(9F)` or `csx_GetNextTuple(9F)`.

- **cft**  
  Pointer to a `cistpl_cftable_entry_t` structure which contains the parsed `CISTPL_CFTABLE_ENTRY` tuple information upon return from this function.

### Description

This function parses the 16 bit Card Configuration Table Entry tuple, `CISTPL_CFTABLE_ENTRY`, into a form usable by PC Card drivers.

The `CISTPL_CFTABLE_ENTRY` tuple is used to describe each possible configuration of a PC Card and to distinguish among the permitted configurations. The `CISTPL_CONFIG` tuple must precede all `CISTPL_CFTABLE_ENTRY` tuples.

### Structure Members

The structure members of `cistpl_cftable_entry_t` are:

- `uint32_t flags; /* valid descriptions */`
- `uint32_t ifc; /* interface description */`
- `/* information */`
- `uint32_t pin; /* values for PRR */`
- `uint32_t index; /* configuration index number */`
- `cistpl_cftable_entry_pd_t pd; /* power requirements */`
- `/* description */`
- `cistpl_cftable_entry_speed_t speed; /* device speed description */`
- `cistpl_cftable_entry_io_t io; /* device I/O map */`
- `cistpl_cftable_entry_irq_t irq; /* device IRQ utilization */`
- `cistpl_cftable_entry_mem_t mem; /* device memory space */`
- `cistpl_cftable_entry_misc_t misc; /* miscellaneous */`
- `/* device features */`

The `flags` field is defined and bit-mapped as follows:

- `CISTPL_CFTABLE_TPCE_DEFAULT` This is a default configuration
- `CISTPL_CFTABLE_TPCE_IF` If configuration byte exists
- `CISTPL_CFTABLE_TPCE_FS_PWR` Power information exists
- `CISTPL_CFTABLE_TPCE_FS_TD` Timing information exists
If the CISTPL_CFTABLE_TPCE_IF flag is set, the ifc field is bit-mapped and defined as follows:

- **CISTPL_CFTABLE_TPCE_IF_MEMORY** Memory interface
- **CISTPL_CFTABLE_TPCE_IF_IO_MEM** IO and memory
- **CISTPL_CFTABLE_TPCE_IF_CUSTOM_0** Custom interface 0
- **CISTPL_CFTABLE_TPCE_IF_CUSTOM_1** Custom interface 1
- **CISTPL_CFTABLE_TPCE_IF_CUSTOM_2** Custom interface 2
- **CISTPL_CFTABLE_TPCE_IF_CUSTOM_3** Custom interface 3
- **CISTPL_CFTABLE_TPCE_IF_MASK** Interface type mask
- **CISTPL_CFTABLE_TPCE_IF_BVD** BVD active in PRR
- **CISTPL_CFTABLE_TPCE_IF_WP** WP active in PRR
- **CISTPL_CFTABLE_TPCE_IF_RDY** RDY active in PRR
- **CISTPL_CFTABLE_TPCE_IF_MWAIT** WAIT - mem cycles

pin is a value for the Pin Replacement Register.

index is a configuration index number.

The structure members of cistpl_cftable_entry_pd_t are:

```c
uint32_t flags; /* which descriptions are valid */
cistpl_cftable_entry_pwr_t pd_vcc; /* VCC power description */
cistpl_cftable_entry_pwr_t pd_vpp1; /* Vpp1 power description */
cistpl_cftable_entry_pwr_t pd_vpp2; /* Vpp2 power description */
```

This flags field is bit-mapped and defined as follows:

- **CISTPL_CFTABLE_TPCE_FS_PWR_VCC** Vcc description valid
- **CISTPL_CFTABLE_TPCE_FS_PWR_VPP1** Vpp1 description valid
- **CISTPL_CFTABLE_TPCE_FS_PWR_VPP2** Vpp2 description valid
The structure members of `cistpl_cftable_entry_pwr_t` are:

```c
uint32_t nomV; /* nominal supply voltage */
uint32_t nomV_flags;
uint32_t minV;  /* minimum supply voltage */
uint32_t minV_flags;
uint32_t maxV;  /* maximum supply voltage */
uint32_t maxV_flags;
uint32_t staticI; /* continuous supply current */
uint32_t staticI_flags;
uint32_t avgI;  /* max current required averaged over 1 sec. */
uint32_t avgI_flags;
uint32_t peakI; /* max current required averaged over 10mS */
uint32_t peakI_flags;
uint32_t pdownI; /* power down supply current required */
uint32_t pdownI_flags;
```

`nomV`, `minV`, `maxV`, `staticI`, `avgI`, `peakI_flag`, and `pdwnI` are defined and bit-mapped as follows:

- `CISTPL_CFTABLE_PD_NOMV`: Nominal supply voltage
- `CISTPL_CFTABLE_PD_MINV`: Minimum supply voltage
- `CISTPL_CFTABLE_PD_MAXV`: Maximum supply voltage
- `CISTPL_CFTABLE_PD_STATICI`: Continuous supply current
- `CISTPL_CFTABLE_PD_AVGI`: Maximum current required averaged over 1 second
- `CISTPL_CFTABLE_PD_PEAKI`: Maximum current required averaged over 10mS
- `CISTPL_CFTABLE_PD_PDOWNI`: Power down supply current required

`nomV_flags`, `minV_flags`, `maxV_flags`, `staticI_flags`, `avgI_flags`, `peakI_flags`, and `pdwnI` are defined and bit-mapped as follows:

- `CISTPL_CFTABLE_PD_EXISTS`: This parameter exists
- `CISTPL_CFTABLE_PD_MUL10`: Multiply return value by 10
- `CISTPL_CFTABLE_PD_NC_SLEEP`: No connection on sleep/power down
- `CISTPL_CFTABLE_PD_ZERO`: Zero value required
- `CISTPL_CFTABLE_PD_NC`: No connection ever

The structure members of `cistpl_cftable_entry_speed_t` are:

```c
uint32_t flags;   /* which timing information is present */
uint32_t wait;    /* max WAIT time in device speed format */
uint32_t nS_wait; /* max WAIT time in nS */
uint32_t rdybsy;  /* max RDY/BSY time in device speed format */
```
uint32_t nS_rdybsy; /* max RDY/BSY time in nS */
uint32_t rsvid; /* max RSVD time in device speed format */
uint32_t nS_rsvd; /* max RSVD time in nS */

The flags field is bit-mapped and defined as follows:
- CISTPL_CFTABLE_TPCE_FS_TD_WAIT: WAIT timing exists
- CISTPL_CFTABLE_TPCE_FS_TD_RDY: RDY/BSY timing exists
- CISTPL_CFTABLE_TPCE_FS_TD_RSVD: RSVD timing exists

The structure members of cistpl_cftable_entry_io_t are:
- uint32_t flags; /* direct copy of TPCE_IO byte in tuple */
- uint32_t addr_lines; /* number of decoded I/O address lines */
- uint32_t ranges; /* number of I/O ranges */
- cistpl_cftable_entry_io_range_t
  range[CISTPL_CFTABLE_ENTRY_MAX_IO_RANGES];

The flags field is defined and bit-mapped as follows:
- CISTPL_CFTABLE_TPCE_FS_IO_BUS: Bus width mask
  - CISTPL_CFTABLE_TPCE_FS_IO_BUS8: 8-bit flag
  - CISTPL_CFTABLE_TPCE_FS_IO_BUS16: 16-bit flag
- CISTPL_CFTABLE_TPCE_FS_IO_RANGE: IO address ranges exist

The structure members of cistpl_cftable_entry_io_range_t are:
- uint32_t addr; /* I/O start address */
- uint32_t length; /* I/O register length */

The structure members of cistpl_cftable_entry_irq_t are:
- uint32_t flags; /* direct copy of TPCE_IR byte in tuple */
- uint32_t irqs; /* bit mask for each allowed IRQ */

The structure members of cistpl_cftable_entry_mem_t are:
- uint32_t flags; /* memory descriptor type and host addr info */
- uint32_t windows; /* number of memory space descriptors */
- cistpl_cftable_entry_mem_window_t
  window[CISTPL_CFTABLE_ENTRY_MAX_MEM_WINDOWS];

The flags field is defined and bit-mapped as follows:
- CISTPL_CFTABLE_TPCE_FS_MEM: Space descriptors
  - CISTPL_CFTABLE_TPCE_FS_MEM3: Spacedescriptors
  - CISTPL_CFTABLE_TPCE_FS_MEM2: host_addr=card_addr
  - CISTPL_CFTABLE_TPCE_FS_MEM1: Card address=0 any host address
CISTPL_CFTABLE_TPCE_FS_MEM_HOST  If host address is present in MEM3

The structure members of cistpl_cftable_entry_mem_window_t are:

- `uint32_t length; /* length of this window */`
- `uint32_t card_addr; /* card address */`
- `uint32_t host_addr; /* host address */`

The structure members of cistpl_cftable_entry_misc_t are:

- `uint32_t flags; /* miscellaneous features flags */`

The `flags` field is defined and bit-mapped as follows:

- CISTPL_CFTABLE_TPCE_MI_MTC_MASK  Max twin cards mask
- CISTPL_CFTABLE_TPCE_MI_AUDIO  Audio on BVD2
- CISTPL_CFTABLE_TPCE_MI_READONLY  R/O storage
- CISTPL_CFTABLE_TPCE_MI_PWRDOWN  Powerdown capable
- CISTPL_CFTABLE_TPCE_MI_DRQ_MASK  DMAREQ mask
- CISTPL_CFTABLE_TPCE_MI_DRQ_SPK  DMAREQ on SPKR
- CISTPL_CFTABLE_TPCE_MI_DRQ_IOIS  DMAREQ on IOIS16
- CISTPL_CFTABLE_TPCE_MI_DRQ_INP  DMAREQ on INPACK
- CISTPL_CFTABLE_TPCE_MI_DMA_8  DMA width 8 bits
- CISTPL_CFTABLE_TPCE_MI_DMA_16  DMA width 16 bits

**Return Values**

- CS_SUCCESS  Successful operation.
- CS_BAD_HANDLE  Client handle is invalid.
- CS_UNKNOWN_TUPLE  Parser does not know how to parse tuple.
- CS_NO_CARD  No PC Card in socket.
- CS_NO_CIS  No Card Information Structure (CIS) on PC Card.
- CS_UNSUPPORTED_FUNCTION  No PCMCIA hardware installed.

**Context**

This function may be called from user or kernel context.

**See Also**

- csx_GetFirstTuple(9F), csx_GetTupleData(9F), csx_Parse_CISTPL_CONFIG(9F),
  csx_RegisterClient(9F), csx.ValidateCIS(9F), tuple(9S)

*PC Card 95 Standard, PCMCIA/JEIDA*
Name  csx_Parse_CISTPL_CONFIG – parse Configuration tuple

Synopsis  #include <sys/pccard.h>

```
int32_t csx_Parse_CISTPL_CONFIG(client_handle_t ch, tuple_t *tu, cistpl_config_t *cc);
```

Interface Level  Solaris DDI Specific (Solaris DDI)

Parameters

\- \textit{ch}  Client handle returned from \texttt{csx_RegisterClient(9F)}.

\- \textit{tu}  Pointer to a \texttt{tuple_t} structure (see \texttt{tuple(9S)}) returned by a call to \texttt{csx_GetFirstTuple(9F)} or \texttt{csx_GetNextTuple(9F)}.

\- \textit{cc}  Pointer to a \texttt{cistpl_config_t} structure which contains the parsed CISTPL_CONFIG tuple information upon return from this function.

Description

This function parses the Configuration tuple, CISTPL_CONFIG, into a form usable by PC Card drivers. The CISTPL_CONFIG tuple is used to describe the general characteristics of 16-bit PC Cards containing I/O devices or using custom interfaces. It may also describe PC Cards, including Memory Only cards, which exceed nominal power supply specifications, or which need descriptions of their power requirements or other information.

Structure Members

The structure members of \texttt{cistpl_config_t} are:

```
uint32_t present; /* register present flags */
uint32_t nr; /* number of config registers found */
uint32_t hr; /* highest config register index found */
uint32_t *regs[CISTPL_CONFIG_MAX_CONFIG_REGS]; /* reg offsets */
uint32_t base; /* base offset of config registers */
uint32_t last; /* last config index */
```

The fields are defined as follows:

- **present**  This field indicates which configuration registers are present on the PC Card.

  - \texttt{CONFIG_OPTION_REG_PRESENT}  Configuration Option Register present

  - \texttt{CONFIG_STATUS_REG_PRESENT}  Configuration Status Register present

  - \texttt{CONFIG_PINREPL_REG_PRESENT}  Pin Replacement Register present

  - \texttt{CONFIG_COPY_REG_PRESENT}  Copy Register present

  - \texttt{CONFIG_EXSTAT_REG_PRESENT}  Extended Status Register present

  - \texttt{CONFIG_IOBASE0_REG_PRESENT}  IO Base 0 Register present

  - \texttt{CONFIG_IOBASE1_REG_PRESENT}  IO Base 1 Register present
CONFIG_IOBASE2_REG_PRESENT IO Base2 Register present
CONFIG_IOBASE3_REG_PRESENT IO Base3 Register present
CONFIG_IOLIMIT_REG_PRESENT IO Limit Register present

nr
This field specifies the number of configuration registers that are present on the
PC Card.

hr
This field specifies the highest configuration register number that is present on
the PC Card.

regs
This array contains the offset from the start of Attribute Memory space for each
configuration register that is present on the PC Card. If a configuration register
is not present on the PC Card, the value in the corresponding entry in the regs
array is undefined.

base
This field contains the offset from the start of Attribute Memory space to the
base of the PC Card configuration register space.

last
This field contains the value of the last valid configuration index for this PC
Card.

Return Values
CS_SUCCESS Successful operation.
CS_BAD_HANDLE Client handle is invalid.
CS_UNKNOWN_TUPLE Parser does not know how to parse tuple.
CS_NO_CARD No PC Card in socket.
CS_NO_CIS No Card Information Structure (CIS) on PC Card.
CS_UNSUPPORTED_FUNCTION No PCMCIA hardware installed.

Context This function may be called from user or kernel context.

See Also csx_GetFirstTuple(9F), csx_GetTupleData(9F), csx_Parse_CISTPL_CFTABLE_ENTRY(9F),
csx_RegisterClient(9F), csx.ValidateCIS(9F), tuple(9S)

PC Card 95 Standard, PCMCIA/JEIDA

Notes PC Card drivers should not attempt to use configurations beyond the "last" member in the
cistpl_config_t structure.
**csx_Parse_CISTPL_DATE(9F)**

**Name**  
csx_Parse_CISTPL_DATE – parse the Card Initialization Date tuple

**Synopsis**  
#include <sys/pccard.h>

```c
int32_t csx_Parse_CISTPL_DATE(client_handle_t ch, tuple_t *tu, cistpl_date_t *cd);
```

**Interface Level**  
Solaris DDI Specific (Solaris DDI)

**Parameters**
- `ch`  
  Client handle returned from csx_RegisterClient(9F).
- `tu`  
  Pointer to a tuple_t structure (see tuple(9S)) returned by a call to csx_GetFirstTuple(9F) or csx_GetNextTuple(9F).
- `cd`  
  Pointer to a cistpl_date_t structure which contains the parsed CISTPL_DATE tuple information upon return from this function.

**Description**  
This function parses the Card Initialization Date tuple, CISTPL_DATE, into a form usable by PC Card drivers.

The CISTPL_DATE tuple is an optional tuple. It indicates the date and time at which the card was formatted. Only one CISTPL_DATE tuple is allowed per PC Card.

**Structure Members**  
The structure members of cistpl_date_t are:

- `uint32_t time;`
- `uint32_t day;`

The fields are defined as follows:
- `time`  
  This field indicates the time at which the PC Card was initialized.
- `day`  
  This field indicates the date the PC Card was initialized.

**Return Values**
- `CS_SUCCESS`  
  Successful operation.
- `CS_BAD_HANDLE`  
  Client handle is invalid.
- `CS_UNKNOWN_TUPLE`  
  Parser does not know how to parse tuple.
- `CS_NO_CARD`  
  No PC Card in socket.
- `CS_NO_CIS`  
  No Card Information Structure (CIS) on PC Card.
- `CS_UNSUPPORTED_FUNCTION`  
  No PCMCIA hardware installed.

**Context**  
This function may be called from user or kernel context.

**See Also**  
- csx_GetFirstTuple(9F), csx_GetTupleData(9F), csx_RegisterClient(9F), csx_ValidateCIS(9F), tuple(9S)

*PC Card 95 Standard, PCMCIA/JEIDA*
csx_Parse_CISTPLDEVICE(9F)

Name  

csx_Parse_CISTPLDEVICE, csx_Parse_CISTPLDEVICE_A, 
csx_Parse_CISTPLDEVICE_OC, csx_Parse_CISTPLDEVICE_OA – parse Device 
Information tuples

Synopsis  

#include <sys/pccard.h>

int32_t csx_Parse_CISTPLDEVICE(client_handle_t ch, tuple_t *tu, cistpl_device_t *cd);

int32_t csx_Parse_CISTPLDEVICE_A(client_handle_t ch, tuple_t *tu, 
cistpl_device_t *cd);

int32_t csx_Parse_CISTPLDEVICE_OC(client_handle_t ch, tuple_t *tu, 
cistpl_device_t *cd);

int32_t csx_Parse_CISTPLDEVICE_OA(client_handle_t ch, tuple_t *tu, 
cistpl_device_t *cd);

Interface Level  

Solaris DDI Specific (Solaris DDI)

Parameters  

ch  
Client handle returned from csx_RegisterClient(9F).

tu  
Pointer to a tuple_t structure (see tuple(9S)) returned by a call to 

csx_GetFirstTuple(9F) or csx_GetNextTuple(9F).

cd  
Pointer to a cistpl_device_t structure which contains the parsed CISTPL_DEVICE, 
CISTPL_DEVICE_A, CISTPL_DEVICE_OC, or CISTPL_DEVICE_OA tuple information 
upon return from these functions, respectively.

Description  

csx_Parse_CISTPLDEVICE() and csx_Parse_CISTPLDEVICE_A() parse the 5 volt Device 
Information tuples, CISTPL_DEVICE and CISTPLDEVICE_A, respectively, into a form usable 
by PC Card drivers.

csx_Parse_CISTPLDEVICE_OC() and csx_Parse_CISTPLDEVICE_OA() parse the Other 
Condition Device Information tuples, CISTPLDEVICE_OC and CISTPLDEVICE_OA, 
respectively, into a form usable by PC Card drivers.

The CISTPL_DEVICE and CISTPL_DEVICE_A tuples are used to describe the card’s device 
information, such as device speed, device size, device type, and address space layout 
information for Common Memory or Attribute Memory space, respectively.

The CISTPLDEVICE_OC and CISTPLDEVICE_OA tuples are used to describe the information 
about the card’s device under a set of operating conditions for Common Memory or Attribute 
Memory space, respectively.

Structure Members  
The structure members of cistpl_device_t are:

uint32_t num_devices; /* number of devices found */
cistpl_device_node_t devnode[CISTPLDEVICE_MAX_DEVICES];
The structure members of `cistpl_device_node_t` are:

```c
uint32_t flags; /* flags specific to this device */
uint32_t speed; /* device speed in device speed code format */
uint32_t nS_speed; /* device speed in nS */
uint32_t type; /* device type */
uint32_t size; /* device size */
uint32_t size_in_bytes; /* device size in bytes */
```

The fields are defined as follows:

**flags**

This field indicates whether or not the device is writable, and describes a Vcc voltage at which the PC Card can be operated.

- **CISTPL_DEVICE_WPS** Write Protect Switch bit is set
- Bits which are applicable only for `CISTPL_DEVICE_OC` and `CISTPL_DEVICE_OA` are:
  - **CISTPL_DEVICE_OC_MWAIT** Use MWAIT
  - **CISTPL_DEVICE_OC_Vcc_MASK** Mask for Vcc value
  - **CISTPL_DEVICE_OC_Vcc5** 5.0 volt operation
  - **CISTPL_DEVICE_OC_Vcc33** 3.3 volt operation
  - **CISTPL_DEVICE_OC_VccXX** X.X volt operation
  - **CISTPL_DEVICE_OC_VccYY** Y.Y volt operation

**speed**

The device speed value described in the device speed code unit. If this field is set to `CISTPL_DEVICE_SPEED_SIZE_IGNORE`, then the speed information will be ignored.

**nS_speed**

The device speed value described in nanosecond units.

**size**

The device size value described in the device size code unit. If this field is set to `CISTPL_DEVICE_SPEED_SIZE_IGNORE`, then the size information will be ignored.

**size_in_bytes**

The device size value described in byte units.

**type**

This is the device type code field which is defined as follows:

- **CISTPL_DEVICE_DTYPE_NULL** No device
- **CISTPL_DEVICE_DTYPE_ROM** Masked ROM
- **CISTPL_DEVICE_DTYPE_OTPROM** One Time Programmable ROM
- **CISTPL_DEVICE_DTYPE_EPROM** UV EPROM
CISTPL_DEVICE_DTYPE_EEPROM EEPROM
CISTPL_DEVICE_DTYPE_FLASH FLASH
CISTPL_DEVICE_DTYPE_SRAM Static RAM
CISTPL_DEVICE_DTYPE_DRAM Dynamic RAM
CISTPL_DEVICE_DTYPE_FUNCSPEC Function-specific memory address range
CISTPL_DEVICE_DTYPE_EXTEND Extended type follows

Return Values
- CS_SUCCESS Successful operation.
- CS_BAD_HANDLE Client handle is invalid.
- CS_UNKNOWN_TUPLE Parser does not know how to parse tuple.
- CS_NO_CARD No PC Card in socket.
- CS_NO_CIS No Card Information Structure (CIS) on PC Card.
- CS_UNSUPPORTED_FUNCTION No PCMCIA hardware installed.

Context These functions may be called from user or kernel context.

See Also csx_GetFirstTuple(9F), csx_GetTupleData(9F), csx_Parse_CISTPL_JEDEC_C(9F),
csx_RegisterClient(9F), csx.ValidateCIS(9F), tuple(9S)

PC Card 95 Standard, PCMCIA/JEIDA
csx_Parse_CISTPLDEVICEGEO(9F)

Name

csx(Parse_CISTPL_DEVICEGEO – parse the Device Geo tuple

Synopsis

#include <sys/pccard.h>

int32_t csx_Parse_CISTPL_DEVICEGEO(client_handle_t ch, tuple_t *tp, cistpl_devicegeo_t *pt);

Interface Level

Solaris DDI Specific (Solaris DDI)

Parameters

ch Client handle returned from csx_RegisterClient(9F).

tp Pointer to a tuple_t structure (see tuple(9S)) returned by a call to csx_GetFirstTuple(9F) or csx_GetNextTuple(9F).

pt Pointer to a cistpl_devicegeo_t structure which contains the parsed Device Geo tuple information upon return from this function.

Description

This function parses the Device Geo tuple, CISTPL_DEVICEGEO, into a form usable by PC Card drivers.

The CISTPL_DEVICEGEO tuple describes the device geometry of common memory partitions.

Structure Members

The structure members of cistpl_devicegeo_t are:

uint32_t info[CISTPL_DEVICEGEO_MAX_PARTITIONS].bus;
uint32_t info[CISTPLDEVICEGEO_MAX_PARTITIONS].ebs;
uint32_t info[CISTPLDEVICEGEO_MAX_PARTITIONS].rbs;
uint32_t info[CISTPLDEVICEGEO_MAX_PARTITIONS].wbs;
uint32_t info[CISTPLDEVICEGEO_MAX_PARTITIONS].part;
uint32_t info[CISTPLDEVICEGEO_MAX_PARTITIONS].hwil;

The fields are defined as follows:

info[CISTPLDEVICEGEO_MAX_PARTITIONS].bus This field indicates the card interface width in bytes for the given partition.

info[CISTPLDEVICEGEO_MAX_PARTITIONS].ebs This field indicates the minimum erase block size for the given partition.

info[CISTPLDEVICEGEO_MAX_PARTITIONS].rbs This field indicates the minimum read block size for the given partition.

info[CISTPLDEVICEGEO_MAX_PARTITIONS].wbs This field indicates the minimum write block size for the given partition.
### Return Values

- **CS_SUCCESS**: Successful operation.
- **CS_BAD_HANDLE**: Client handle is invalid.
- **CS_UNKNOWN_TUPLE**: Parser does not know how to parse tuple.
- **CS_NO_CARD**: No PC Card in socket.
- **CS_NO_CIS**: No Card Information Structure (CIS) on PC Card.
- **CS_UNSUPPORTED_FUNCTION**: No PCMCIA hardware installed.

### Context

This function may be called from user or kernel context.

### See Also

```
csx_Parse_CISTPL_DEVICEGEO(9F), csx_GetFirstTuple(9F), csx_GetNextTuple(9F), csx_GetTupleData(9F),
csx_Parse_CISTPL_DEVICEGEO_A(9F), csx_RegisterClient(9F), tuple(9S)
```

*PC Card 95 Standard, PCMCIA/JEIDA*
# include <sys/pccard.h>

int32_t csx_Parse_CISTPL_DEVICEGEO_A(client_handle_t ch, tuple_t *tp, cistpl_devicegeo_t *pt);

**Synopsis**

#include <sys/pccard.h>

**Interface Level**
Solaris DDI Specific (Solaris DDI)

**Parameters**
- *ch*  Client handle returned from csx_RegisterClient(9F).
- *tp*  Pointer to a tuple_t structure (see tuple(9S)) returned by a call to csx_GetFirstTuple(9F) or csx_GetNextTuple(9F).
- *pt*  Pointer to a cistpl_devicegeo_t structure which contains the parsed Device Geo A tuple information upon return from this function.

**Description**
This function parses the Device Geo A tuple, CISTPL_DeviceGeo0_A, into a form usable by PC Card drivers.

The CISTPL_DEVICEGEO_A tuple describes the device geometry of attribute memory partitions.

**Structure Members**
The structure members of cistpl_devicegeo_t are:

- uint32_t info[CISTPL_DEVICEGEO_MAX_PARTITIONS].bus;
- uint32_t info[CISTPL DEVICEGEO_MAX_PARTITIONS].ebs;
- uint32_t info[CISTPL DEVICEGEO_MAX_PARTITIONS].rbs;
- uint32_t info[CISTPL DEVICEGEO_MAX_PARTITIONS].wbs;
- uint32_t info[CISTPL DEVICEGEO_MAX_PARTITIONS].part;
- uint32_t info[CISTPL DEVICEGEO_MAX_PARTITIONS].hwil;

The fields are defined as follows:

- info[CISTPL_DEVICEGEO_MAX_PARTITIONS].bus  This field indicates the card interface width in bytes for the given partition.
- info[CISTPL_DEVICEGEO_MAX_PARTITIONS].ebs  This field indicates the minimum erase block size for the given partition.
- info[CISTPL DEVICEGEO_MAX_PARTITIONS].rbs  This field indicates the minimum read block size for the given partition.
- info[CISTPL DEVICEGEO_MAX_PARTITIONS].wbs  This field indicates the minimum write block size for the given partition.
This field indicates the segment partition subdivisions for the given partition.

This field indicates the hardware interleave for the given partition.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Return Values</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>CS_SUCCESS</td>
<td>Successful operation.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CS_BAD_HANDLE</td>
<td>Client handle is invalid.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CS_UNKNOWN_TUPLE</td>
<td>Parser does not know how to parse tuple.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CS_NO_CARD</td>
<td>No PC Card in socket.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CS_NO_CIS</td>
<td>No Card Information Structure (CIS) on PC Card.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CS_UNSUPPORTED_FUNCTION</td>
<td>No PCMCIA hardware installed.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

This function may be called from user or kernel context.

See Also: csx_GetFirstTuple(9F), csx_GetNextTuple(9F), csx_GetTupleData(9F), csx_Parse_CISTPL_DEVICEGEO(9F), csx_RegisterClient(9F), tuple(9S)

*PC Card 95 Standard, PCMCIA/JEIDA*
#include <sys/pccard.h>

```c
int32_t csx_Parse_CISTPL_FORMAT(client_handle_t ch, tuple_t *tu, cistpl_format_t *pt);
```

**Parameters**
- `ch`  Client handle returned from `csx_RegisterClient(9F)`.
- `tu`  Pointer to a `tuple_t` structure (see `tuple(9S)`) returned by a call to `csx_GetFirstTuple(9F)` or `csx_GetNextTuple(9F)`.
- `pt`  Pointer to a `cistpl_format_t` structure which contains the parsed CISTPL_FORMAT tuple information upon return from this function.

**Description**
This function parses the Data Recording Format tuple, CISTPL_FORMAT, into a form usable by PC Card drivers.

The CISTPL_FORMAT tuple indicates the data recording format for a device partition.

**Structure Members**
The structure members of `cistpl_format_t` are:

```c
uint32_t type;
uint32_t edc_length;
uint32_t edc_type;
uint32_t offset;
uint32_t nbytes;
uint32_t dev.disk.bksize;
uint32_t dev.disk.nblocks;
uint32_t dev.disk.edcloc;
uint32_t dev.mem.flags;
uint32_t dev.mem.reserved;
caddr_t dev.mem.address;
uint32_t dev.mem.edcloc;
```

The fields are defined as follows:
- **type**  This field indicates the type of device:
  - TPLFMTTYPE_DISK  disk-like device
  - TPLFMTTYPE_MEM  memory-like device
  - TPLFMTTYPE_VS   vendor-specific device
- **edc_length**  This field indicates the error detection code length.
- **edc_type**  This field indicates the error detection code type.
offset  This field indicates the offset of the first byte of data in this partition.
nbytes  This field indicates the number of bytes of data in this partition
dev.disk.bksze  This field indicates the block size, for disk devices.
dev.disk.nblocks  This field indicates the number of blocks, for disk devices.
dev.disk.edcloc  This field indicates the location of the error detection code, for disk devices.
dev.mem.flags  This field provides flags, for memory devices. Valid flags are:
                 TPLFMTFLAGS_ADDR     address is valid
                 TPLFMTFLAGS_AUTO    automatically map memory region
dev.memreserved  This field is reserved.
dev.mem.address  This field indicates the physical address, for memory devices.
dev.mem.edcloc  This field indicates the location of the error detection code, for memory devices.

Return Values
CS_SUCCESS  Successful operation.
CS_BAD_HANDLE  Client handle is invalid.
CS_UNKNOWN_TUPLE  Parser does not know how to parse tuple.
CS_NO_CARD  No PC Card in socket.
CS_NO_CIS  No Card Information Structure (CIS) on PC Card.
CS_UNSUPPORTED_FUNCTION  No PCMCIA hardware installed.

Context  This function may be called from user or kernel context.

See Also  csx_Parse_CISTPL_FORMAT(9F), csx_GetFirstTupleData(9F), csx_RegisterClient(9F),
         csx_ValidateCIS(9F), tuple(9S)

PC Card 95 Standard, PCMCIA/JEIDA
**Name** csx_Parse_CISTPL_FUNCE – parse Function Extension tuple

**Synopsis**
```
#include <sys/pccard.h>

int32_t csx_Parse_CISTPL_FUNCE(client_handle_t ch, tuple_t *tu, cistpl_funce_t *cf,
                                uint32_t fid);
```

**Interface Level** Solaris DDI Specific (Solaris DDI)

**Parameters**
- `ch` Client handle returned from `csx_RegisterClient(9F)`.
- `tu` Pointer to a `tuple_t` structure (see `tuple(9S)`) returned by a call to `csx_GetFirstTuple(9F)` or `csx_GetNextTuple(9F)`.
- `cf` Pointer to a `cistpl_funce_t` structure which contains the parsed CISTPL_FUNCE tuple information upon return from this function.
- `fid` The function ID code to which this CISTPL_FUNCE tuple refers. See `csx_Parse_CISTPL_FUNCID(9F)`.

**Description**
This function parses the Function Extension tuple, CISTPL_FUNCE, into a form usable by PC Card drivers.

The CISTPL_FUNCE tuple is used to describe information about a specific PCCard function. The information provided is determined by the Function Identification tuple, CISTPL_FUNCID, that is being extended. Each function has a defined set of extension tuples.

**Structure Members**
The structure members of `cistpl_funce_t` are:

```c
struct cistpl_funce_t {
    uint32_t function; /* type of extended data */
    uint32_t subfunction;

    union {
        struct {
            uint32_t ua; /* UART in use */
            uint32_t uc; /* UART capabilities */
        } serial;
        struct {
            uint32_t fc; /* supported flow control methods */
            uint32_t cb; /* size of DCE command buffer */
            uint32_t eb; /* size of DCE to DCE buffer */
            uint32_t tb; /* size of DTE to DCE buffer */
        } modem;
        struct {
            uint32_t ud; /* highest data rate */
            uint32_t ms; /* modulation standards */
            uint32_t em; /* err correct proto and */
            uint32_t dc; /* data compression protocols */
            uint32_t dc; /* non-CCITT modulation */
        } data_modem;
    }
};
```
The fields are defined as follows:

function This field identifies the type of extended information provided about a function by the CISTPL_FUNCE tuple. This field is defined as follows:

- **TPLFE_SUB_SERIAL** Serial port interface
- **TPLFE_SUB_MODEM_COMMON** Common modem interface
- **TPLFE_SUB_MODEM_DATA** Data modem services
- **TPLFE_SUB_MODEM_FAX** Fax modem services
- **TPLFE_SUB_VOICE** Voice services
TPLFE_CAP_MODEM_DATA  Capabilities of the data modem interface
TPLFE_CAP_MODEM_FAX   Capabilities of the fax modem interface
TPLFE_CAP_MODEM_VOICE  Capabilities of the voice modem interface
TPLFE_CAP_SERIAL_DATA  Serial port interface for data modem services
TPLFE_CAP_SERIAL_FAX  Serial port interface for fax modem services
TPLFE_CAP_SERIAL_VOICE Serial port interface for voice modem services

_subfunction_  This is for identifying a sub-category of services provided by a function in the CISTPL_FUNCE tuple. The numeric value of the code is in the range of 1 to 15.

_uu_  This is the serial port UART identification and is defined as follows:
TPLFE_UA_8250 Intel 8250
TPLFE_UA_16450 NS 16450
TPLFE_UA_16550 NS 16550

_uc_  This identifies the serial port UART capabilities and is defined as follows:
TPLFE_UC_PARITY_SPACE Space parity supported
TPLFE_UC_PARITY_MARK  Mark parity supported
TPLFE_UC_PARITY_ODD   Odd parity supported
TPLFE_UC_PARITY_EVEN  Even parity supported
TPLFE_UC_CS5           5 bit characters supported
TPLFE_UC_CS6           6 bit characters supported
TPLFE_UC_CS7           7 bit characters supported
TPLFE_UC_CS8           8 bit characters supported
TPLFE_UC_STOP_1        1 stop bit supported
TPLFE_UC_STOP_15       1.5 stop bits supported
TPLFE_UC_STOP_2        2 stop bits supported

_fc_  This identifies the modem flow control methods and is defined as follows:
### Modem Standards (ms)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Code</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Modulation Standards</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TPLFE_MS_BELL103</td>
<td>300bps</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPLFE_MS_V21</td>
<td>300bps (V.21)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPLFE_MS_V23</td>
<td>600/1200bps (V.23)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPLFE_MS_V22AB</td>
<td>1200bps (V.22A, V.22B)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPLFE_MS_BELL212</td>
<td>2400bps (US Bell 212)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPLFE_MS_V22BIS</td>
<td>2400bps (V.22bis)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPLFE_MS_V26</td>
<td>2400bps leased line (V.26)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPLFE_MS_V26BIS</td>
<td>2400bps (V.26bis)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPLFE_MS_V27BIS</td>
<td>4800/2400bps leased line (V.27bis)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPLFE_MS_V29</td>
<td>9600/7200/4800 leased line (V.29)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPLFE_MS_V32</td>
<td>Up to 9600bps (V.32)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPLFE_MS_V32BIS</td>
<td>Up to 14400bps (V.32bis)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPLFE_MS_VFAST</td>
<td>Up to 28800 V.FAST</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Modem Error Correction/Detection (em)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Code</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TPLFE_EM_MNP</td>
<td>MNP levels 2-4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPLFE_EM_V42</td>
<td>CCITT LAPM (V.42)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Modem Data Compression (dc)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Code</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TPLFE_DC_V42BI</td>
<td>CCITT compression V.42</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPLFE_DC_MNP5</td>
<td>MNP compression (uses MNP 2, 3 or 4)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Modem Command (cm)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Code</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TPLFE_CM_AT1</td>
<td>ANSI/EIA/TIA 602 &quot;Action&quot; commands</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Code</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------</td>
<td>--------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPLFE_CM_AT2</td>
<td>ANSI/EIA/TIA 602 ACE/DCE IF Params</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPLFE_CM_AT3</td>
<td>ANSI/EIA/TIA 602 Ace Parameters</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPLFE_CM_MNP_AT</td>
<td>MNP specification AT commands</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPLFE_CM_V25BIS</td>
<td>V.25bis calling commands</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPLFE_CM_V25A</td>
<td>V.25bis test procedures</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPLFE_CM_DMCL</td>
<td>DMCL command mode</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**ex**

This identifies the modem escape mechanism and is defined as follows:

- **TPLFE_EX_BREAK**: BREAK support standardized
- **TPLFE_EX_PLUS**: +++ returns to command mode
- **TPLFE_EX_UD**: User defined escape character

**dy**

This identifies modem standardized data encryption and is a reserved field for future use and must be set to 0.

**ef**

This identifies modem miscellaneous features and is defined as follows:

- **TPLFE_EF_CALLERID**: Caller ID is supported

**fm**

This identifies fax modulation standards and is defined as follows:

- **TPLFE_FM_V21C2**: 300bps (V.21-C2)
- **TPLFE_FM_V27TER**: 4800/2400bps (V.27ter)
- **TPLFE_FM_V29**: 9600/7200/4800 leased line (V.29)
- **TPLFE_FM_V17**: 14.4K/12K/9600/7200bps (V.17)
- **TPLFE_FM_V33**: 4.4K/12K/9600/7200 leased line (V.33)

**fs**

This identifies the fax feature selection and is defined as follows:

- **TPLFE_FS_T3**: Group 2 (T.3) service class
- **TPLFE_FS_T4**: Group 3 (T.4) service class
- **TPLFE_FS_T6**: Group 4 (T.6) service class
- **TPLFE_FS_ECM**: Error Correction Mode
- **TPLFE_FS_VOICEREQ**: Voice requests allowed
- **TPLFE_FS_POLLING**: Polling support
- **TPLFE_FS_FTP**: File transfer support
- **TPLFE_FS_PASSWORD**: Password support
This identifies the LAN technology type and is defined as follows:

- TPLFE_LAN_TECH_ARCNET  Arcnet
- TPLFE_LAN_TECH_ETHERNET  Ethernet
- TPLFE_LAN_TECH_TOKENRING  Token Ring
- TPLFE_LAN_TECH_LOCALTALK  Local Talk
- TPLFE_LAN_TECH_FDDI  FDDI/CDDI
- TPLFE_LAN_TECH_ATM  ATM
- TPLFE_LAN_TECH_WIRELESS  Wireless

This identifies the LAN media type and is defined as follows:

- TPLFE_LAN_MEDIA_INHERENT  Generic interface
- TPLFE_LAN_MEDIA_UTP  Unshielded twisted pair
- TPLFE_LAN_MEDIA_STP  Shielded twisted pair
- TPLFE_LAN_MEDIA_THIN_COAX  Thin coax
- TPLFE_LAN_MEDIA_THICK_COAX  Thick coax
- TPLFE_LAN_MEDIA_FIBER  Fiber
- TPLFE_LAN_MEDIA_SSR_902  Spread spectrum radio 902-928 MHz
- TPLFE_LAN_MEDIA_SSR_2_4  Spread spectrum radio 2.4 GHz
- TPLFE_LAN_MEDIA_SSR_5_4  Spread spectrum radio 5.4 GHz
- TPLFE_LAN_MEDIA_DIFFUSE_IR  Diffuse infra red
- TPLFE_LAN_MEDIA_PTP_IR  Point to point infra red

**Return Values**

- CS_SUCCESS  Successful operation.
- CS_BAD_HANDLE  Client handle is invalid.
- CS_UNKNOWN_TUPLE  Parser does not know how to parse tuple.
- CS_NO_CARD  No PC Card in socket.
- CS_NO_CIS  No Card Information Structure (CIS) on PC Card.
- CS_UNSUPPORTED_FUNCTION  No PCMCIA hardware installed.
This function may be called from user or kernel context.

See Also  

- csx_GetFirstTuple(9F)
- csx_GetTupleData(9F)
- csx_Parse_CISTPL_FUNCID(9F)
- csx_RegisterClient(9F)
- csx_ValidateCIS(9F)
- tuple(9S)

*PC Card 95 Standard, PCMCIA/JEIDA*
**Name**
csx_Parse_CISTPL_FUNCID – parse Function Identification tuple

**Synopsis**
#include <sys/pccard.h>

int32_t csx_Parse_CISTPL_FUNCID(client_handle_t ch, tuple_t *tu, cistpl_funcid_t *cf);

**Interface Level**
Solaris DDI Specific (Solaris DDI)

**Parameters**
- **ch** Client handle returned from csx_RegisterClient(9F).
- **tu** Pointer to a tuple_t structure (see tuple(9S)) returned by a call to csx_GetFirstTuple(9F) or csx_GetNextTuple(9F).
- **cf** Pointer to a cistpl_funcid_t structure which contains the parsed CISTPL_FUNCID tuple information upon return from this function.

**Description**
This function parses the Function Identification tuple, CISTPL_FUNCID, into a form usable by PC Card drivers.

The CISTPL_FUNCID tuple is used to describe information about the functionality provided by a PC Card. Information is also provided to enable system utilities to decide if the PC Card should be configured during system initialization. If additional function specific information is available, one or more function extension tuples of type CISTPL_FUNCE follow this tuple (see csx_Parse_CISTPL_FUNCE(9F)).

**Structure Members**
The structure members of cistpl_funcid_t are:

- uint32_t function; /* PC Card function code */
- uint32_t sysinit; /* system initialization mask */

The fields are defined as follows:

- **function** This is the function type for CISTPL_FUNCID:
  - TPLFUNC_MULTI Vendor-specific multifunction card
  - TPLFUNC_MEMORY Memory card
  - TPLFUNC_SERIAL Serial I/O port
  - TPLFUNC_PARALLEL Parallel printer port
  - TPLFUNC_FIXED Fixed disk, silicon or removable
  - TPLFUNC_VIDEO Video interface
  - TPLFUNC_LAN Local Area Network adapter
  - TPLFUNC_AIMS Auto Incrementing Mass Storage
  - TPLFUNC_SCSI SCSI bridge
csx_Parse_CISTPL_FUNCID(9F)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TPLFUNC_SECURITY</th>
<th>Security cards</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TPLFUNC_VENDOR_SPECIFIC</td>
<td>Vendor specific</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPLFUNC_UNKNOWN</td>
<td>Unknown function(s)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**sysinit**
This field is bit-mapped and defined as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TPLINIT_POST</th>
<th>POST should attempt configure</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TPLINIT_ROM</td>
<td>Map ROM during sys init</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Return Values**

- **CS_SUCCESS** Successful operation.
- **CS_BAD_HANDLE** Client handle is invalid.
- **CS_UNKNOWN_TUPLE** Parser does not know how to parse tuple.
- **CS_NO_CARD** No PC Card in socket.
- **CS_NO_CIS** No Card Information Structure (CIS) on PC Card.
- **CS_UNSUPPORTED_FUNCTION** No PCMCIA hardware installed.

**Context**
This function may be called from user or kernel context.

**See Also**
* csx_GetFirstTuple(9F), csx_GetTupleData(9F), csx_Parse_CISTPL_FUNCID(9F),
  csx_RegisterClient(9F), csx_ValidateCIS(9F), tuple(9S)*

*PC Card 95 Standard, PCMCIA/JEIDA*
**Name**

csx_Parse_CISTPL_GEOMETRY – parse the Geometry tuple

**Synopsis**

#include <sys/pccard.h>

```c
int32_t csx_Parse_CISTPL_GEOMETRY(client_handle_t ch, tuple_t *tu,
        cistpl_geometry_t *pt);
```

**Interface Level**

Solaris DDI Specific (Solaris DDI)

**Parameters**

- **ch**
  - Client handle returned from `csx_RegisterClient(9F)`.

- **tu**
  - Pointer to a tuple_t structure (see `tuple(9S)`) returned by a call to `csx_GetFirstTuple(9F)` or `csx_GetNextTuple(9F)`.

- **pt**
  - Pointer to a cistpl_geometry_t structure which contains the parsed CISTPL_GEOMETRY tuple information upon return from this function.

**Description**

This function parses the Geometry tuple, CISTPL_GEOMETRY, into a form usable by PC Card drivers.

The CISTPL_GEOMETRY tuple indicates the geometry of a disk-like device.

**Structure Members**

The structure members of `cistpl_geometry_t` are:

- `uint32_t spt;
- `uint32_t tpc;
- `uint32_t ncyl;

The fields are defined as follows:

- **spt**
  - This field indicates the number of sectors per track.

- **tpc**
  - This field indicates the number of tracks per cylinder.

- **ncyl**
  - This field indicates the number of cylinders.

**Return Values**

- **CS_SUCCESS**
  - Successful operation.

- **CS_BAD_HANDLE**
  - Client handle is invalid.

- **CS_UNKNOWN_TUPLE**
  - Parser does not know how to parse tuple.

- **CS_NO_CARD**
  - No PC Card in socket.

- **CS_NO_CIS**
  - No Card Information Structure (CIS) on PC Card.

- **CS_UNSUPPORTED_FUNCTION**
  - No PCMCIA hardware installed.

**Context**

This function may be called from user or kernel context.
See Also  
csx_GetFirstTuple(9F), csx_GetTupleData(9F), csx_RegisterClient(9F),
csx_ValidateCIS(9F), tuple(9S)

PC Card 95 Standard, PCMCIA/JEIDA
#include <sys/pccard.h>

int32_t csx_Parse_CISTPL_JEDEC_C(client_handle_t ch, tuple_t *tu, cistpl_jedec_t *cj);
int32_t csx_Parse_CISTPL_JEDEC_A(client_handle_t ch, tuple_t *tu, cistpl_jedec_t *cj);

The structure members of cistpl_jedec_t are:

uint32_t nid; /* # of JEDEC identifiers present */
jedec_ident_t jid[CISTPL_JEDEC_MAX_IDENTIFIERS];

The structure members of jedec_ident_t are:

uint32_t id; /* manufacturer id */
uint32_t info; /* manufacturer specific info */

Return Values

CS_SUCCESS Successful operation.
CS_BAD_HANDLE Client handle is invalid.
CS_UNKNOWN_TUPLE Parser does not know how to parse tuple.
CS_NO_CARD No PC Card in socket.
CS_NO_CIS No Card Information Structure (CIS) on PC Card.
CS_UNSUPPORTED_FUNCTION No PCMCIA hardware installed.
These functions may be called from user or kernel context.

**See Also**

- `csx_GetFirstTuple(9F)`, `csx_GetTupleData(9F)`, `csx_Parse_CISTPLDEVICE(9F)`, `csx_RegisterClient(9F)`, `csx_ValidateCIS(9F)`, `tuple(9S)`

*PC Card 95 Standard, PCMCIA/JEIDA*
csx_Parse_CISTPL_LINKTARGET – parse the Link Target tuple

Synopsis
#include <sys/pccard.h>

int32_t csx_Parse_CISTPL_LINKTARGET(client_handle_t ch, tuple_t *tu,
cistpl_linktarget_t *pt);

Interface Level Solaris DDI Specific (Solaris DDI)

Parameters
- `ch` Client handle returned from `csx_RegisterClient(9F)`.
- `tu` Pointer to a tuple_t structure (see `tuple(9S)`) returned by a call to `csx_GetFirstTuple(9F)` or `csx_GetNextTuple(9F)`.
- `pt` Pointer to a cistpl_linktarget_t structure which contains the parsed CISTPL_LINKTARGET tuple information upon return from this function.

Description
This function parses the Link Target tuple, CISTPL_LINKTARGET, into a form usable by PCCard drivers.

The CISTPL_LINKTARGET tuple is used to verify that tuple chains other than the primary chain are valid. All secondary tuple chains are required to contain this tuple as the first tuple of the chain.

Structure Members
The structure members of cistpl_linktarget_t are:

```c
uint32_t length;
char tpltg_tag[CIS_MAX_TUPLE_DATA_LEN];
```

The fields are defined as follows:
- `length`: This field indicates the number of bytes in `tpltg_tag`.
- `tpltg_tag`: This field provides the Link Target tuple information.

Return Values
- `CS_SUCCESS` Successful operation.
- `CS_BAD_HANDLE` Client handle is invalid.
- `CS_UNKNOWN_TUPLE` Parser does not know how to parse tuple.
- `CS_NO_CARD` No PC Card in socket.
- `CS_NO_CIS` No Card Information Structure (CIS) on PC Card.
- `CS_UNSUPPORTED_FUNCTION` No PCMCIA hardware installed.

Context
This function may be called from user or kernel context.

See Also
`csx_GetFirstTuple(9F), csx_GetTupleData(9F), csx_RegisterClient(9F), csx_ValidateCIS(9F), tuple(9S)`
csx_Parse_CISTPL_LINKTARGET(0F)

PC Card 95 Standard, PCMCIA/JEIDA
### Name
csx_Parse_CISTPL_LONGLINK_A, csx_Parse_CISTPL_LONGLINK_C – parse the Long Link A and C tuples

### Synopsis
```
#include <sys/pccard.h>

int32_t csx_Parse_CISTPL_LONGLINK_A(client_handle_t ch, tuple_t *tu,
                                       cistpl_longlink_ac_t *pt);

int32_t csx_Parse_CISTPL_LONGLINK_C(client_handle_t ch, tuple_t *tu,
                                       cistpl_longlink_ac_t *pt);
```

### Interface Level
Solaris DDI Specific (Solaris DDI)

### Parameters
- **ch**: Client handle returned from `csx_RegisterClient(9F)`.
- **tu**: Pointer to a `tuple_t` structure (see `tuple(9S)`) returned by a call to `csx_GetFirstTuple(9F)` or `csx_GetNextTuple(9F)`.
- **pt**: Pointer to a `cistpl_longlink_ac_t` structure which contains the parsed CISTPL_LONGLINK_A or CISTPL_LONGLINK_C tuple information upon return from this function.

### Description
This function parses the Long Link A and C tuples, CISTPL_LONGLINK_A and CISTPL_LONGLINK_C, into a form usable by PC Card drivers.

The CISTPL_LONGLINK_A and CISTPL_LONGLINK_C tuples provide links to Attribute and Common Memory.

### Structure Members
The structure members of `cistpl_longlink_ac_t` are:
- **flags**: `uint32_t`
- **tpll_addr**: `uint32_t`

The fields are defined as follows:
- **flags**: This field indicates the type of memory:
  - CISTPL_LONGLINK_AC_AM: long link to Attribute Memory
  - CISTPL_LONGLINK_AC_CM: long link to Common Memory
- **tpll_addr**: This field provides the offset from the beginning of the specified address space.

### Return Values
- **CS_SUCCESS**: Successful operation.
- **CS_BAD_HANDLE**: Client handle is invalid.
- **CS_UNKNOWN_TUPLE**: Parser does not know how to parse tuple.
- **CS_NO_CARD**: No PC Card in socket.
CS_NO_CIS    No Card Information Structure (CIS) on PC Card.
CS_UNSUPPORTED_FUNCTION  No PCMCIA hardware installed.

**Context**  This function may be called from user or kernel context.

**See Also**  csx_GetFirstTuple(9F), csx_GetTupleData(9F), csx_RegisterClient(9F),
csx_ValidateCIS(9F), tuple(9S)

*PC Card 95 Standard, PCMCIA/JEIDA*
Name: csx_Parse_CISTPL_LONGLINK_MFC - parse the Multi-Function tuple

Synopsis: #include <sys/pccard.h>

int32_t csx_Parse_CISTPL_LONGLINK_MFC(client_handle_t ch, tuple_t *tu,
        cistpl_longlink_mfc_t *pt);

Interface Level: Solaris DDI Specific (Solaris DDI)

Parameters:
- ch: Client handle returned from csx_RegisterClient(9F).
- tu: Pointer to a tuple_t structure (see tuple(9S)) returned by a call to csx_GetFirstTuple(9F) or csx_GetNextTuple(9F).
- pt: Pointer to a cistpl_longlink_mfc_t structure which contains the parsed CISTPL_LONGLINK_MFC tuple information upon return from this function.

Description:
This function parses the Multi-Function tuple, CISTPL_LONGLINK_MFC, into a form usable by PC Card drivers.

The CISTPL_LONGLINK_MFC tuple describes the start of the function-specific CIS for each function on a multi-function card.

Structure Members:
The structure members of cistpl_longlink_mfc_t are:

- uint32_t nfuncs;
- uint32_t nregs;
- uint32_t function[CIS_MAX_FUNCTIONS].tas
- uint32_t function[CIS_MAX_FUNCTIONS].addr

The fields are defined as follows:
- nfuncs: This field indicates the number of functions on the PC card.
- nregs: This field indicates the number of configuration register sets.
- function[CIS_MAX_FUNCTIONS].tas: This field provides the target address space for each function on the PC card. This field can be one of:
  - CISTPL_LONGLINK_MFC_TAS_AM: CIS in attribute memory
  - CISTPL_LONGLINK_MFC_TAS_CM: CIS in common memory
function[CIS_MAX_FUNCTIONS].addr

This field provides the target address offset for each function on the PC card.

Return Values

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Code</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>CS_SUCCESS</td>
<td>Successful operation.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CS_BAD_HANDLE</td>
<td>Client handle is invalid.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CS_UNKNOWN_TUPLE</td>
<td>Parser does not know how to parse tuple.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CS_NO_CARD</td>
<td>No PC Card in socket.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CS_NO_CIS</td>
<td>No Card Information Structure (CIS) on PC Card.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CS_UNSUPPORTED_FUNCTION</td>
<td>No PCMCIA hardware installed.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Context

This function may be called from user or kernel context.

See Also

csx_GetFirstTuple(9F), csx_GetTupleData(9F), csx_RegisterClient(9F),
csx_ValidateCIS(9F), tuple(9S)

PC Card 95 Standard, PCMCIA/JEIDA
#include <sys/pccard.h>

int32_t csx_Parse_CISTPL_MANFID(client_handle_t ch, tuple_t *tu, cistpl_manfid_t *cm);

**Interface Level**
Solaris DDI Specific (Solaris DDI)

**Parameters**
- `ch` Client handle returned from `csx_RegisterClient(9F)`.
- `tu` Pointer to a `tuple_t` structure (see `tuple(9S)`) returned by a call to `csx_GetFirstTuple(9F)` or `csx_GetNextTuple(9F)`.
- `cm` Pointer to a `cistpl_manfid_t` structure which contains the parsed CISTPL_MANFID tuple information upon return from this function.

**Description**
This function parses the Manufacturer Identification tuple, CISTPL_MANFID, into a form usable by PCCard drivers.

The CISTPL_MANFID tuple is used to describe the information about the manufacturer of a PC Card. There are two types of information, the PC Card's manufacturer and a manufacturer card number.

**Structure Members**
The structure members of `cistpl_manfid_t` are:

```c
uint32_t manf; /* PCMCIA assigned manufacturer code */
uint32_t card; /* manufacturer information
               (part number and/or revision) */
```

**Return Values**
- `CS_SUCCESS` Successful operation.
- `CS_BAD_HANDLE` Client handle is invalid.
- `CS_UNKNOWN_TUPLE` Parser does not know how to parse tuple.
- `CS_NO_CARD` No PC Card in socket.
- `CS_NO_CIS` No Card Information Structure (CIS) on PC card.
- `CS_UNSUPPORTED_FUNCTION` No PCMCIA hardware installed.

**Context**
This function may be called from user or kernel context.

**See Also**
`csx_GetFirstTuple(9F), csx_GetTupleData(9F), csx_RegisterClient(9F), csx_ValidateCIS(9F), tuple(9S)`

*PC Card 95 Standard, PCMCIA/JEIDA*
### Synopsis

```c
int32_t csx_Parse_CISTPL_ORG(client_handle_t ch, tuple_t *tu, cistpl_org_t *pt);
```

### Interface Level

Solaris DDI Specific (Solaris DDI)

### Parameters

- **ch**
  - Client handle returned from `csx_RegisterClient(9F)`.
- **tu**
  - Pointer to a `tuple_t` structure (see `tuple(9S)`) returned by a call to `csx_GetFirstTuple(9F)` or `csx_GetNextTuple(9F)`.
- **pt**
  - Pointer to a `cistpl_org_t` structure which contains the parsed CISTPL ORG tuple information upon return from this function.

### Description

This function parses the Data Organization tuple, `CISTPL ORG`, into a form usable by PC Card drivers.

The CISTPL ORG tuple provides a text description of the organization.

### Structure Members

The structure members of `cistpl_org_t` are:

```c
struct cistpl_org_t {
    uint32_t type;
    char desc[CIS_MAX_TUPLE_DATA_LEN];
};
```

The fields are defined as follows:

- **type**
  - This field indicates type of data organization.
- **desc[CIS_MAX_TUPLE_DATA_LEN]**
  - This field provides the text description of this organization.

### Return Values

- **CS_SUCCESS**
  - Successful operation.
- **CS_BAD_HANDLE**
  - Client handle is invalid.
- **CS_UNKNOWN_TUPLE**
  - Parser does not know how to parse tuple.
- **CS_NO_CARD**
  - No PC Card in socket.
- **CS_NO_CIS**
  - No Card Information Structure (CIS) on PC Card.
- **CS_UNSUPPORTED_FUNCTION**
  - No PCMCIA hardware installed.

### Context

This function may be called from user or kernel context.

### See Also

- `csx_GetFirstTuple(9F)`
- `csx_GetTupleData(9F)`
- `csx_RegisterClient(9F)`
- `csx_ValidateCIS(9F)`
- `tuple(9S)`

`PC Card 95 Standard`, `PCMCIA/JEIDA`
### Name
csx_Parse_CISTPL_SPCL – parse the Special Purpose tuple

### Synopsis
```
#include <sys/pccard.h>

int32_t csx_Parse_CISTPL_SPCL(client_handle_t ch, tuple_t *tu, cistpl_spcl_t *csp);
```

### Interface Level
Solaris DDI Specific (Solaris DDI)

### Parameters
- **ch** Client handle returned from `csx_RegisterClient(9F)`.
- **tu** Pointer to a `tuple_t` structure (see `tuple(9S)`) returned by a call to `csx_GetFirstTuple(9F)` or `csx_GetNextTuple(9F)`.
- **csp** Pointer to a `cistpl_spcl_t` structure which contains the parsed CISTPL_SPCL tuple information upon return from this function.

### Description
This function parses the Special Purpose tuple, CISTPL_SPCL, into a form usable by PC Card drivers.

The CISTPL_SPCL tuple is identified by an identification field that is assigned by PCMCIA or JEIDA. A sequence field allows a series of CISTPL_SPCL tuples to be used when the data exceeds the size that can be stored in a single tuple; the maximum data area of a series of CISTPL_SPCL tuples is unlimited. Another field gives the number of bytes in the data field in this tuple.

### Structure Members
The structure members of `cistpl_date_t` are:

```c
uint32_t id; /* tuple contents identification */
uint32_t seq; /* data sequence number */
uint32_t bytes; /* number of bytes following */
uchar_t data[CIS_MAX_TUPLE_DATA_LEN];
```

The fields are defined as follows:

- **id** This field contains a PCMCIA or JEIDA assigned value that identifies this series of one or more CISTPL_SPCL tuples. These field values are assigned by contacting either PCMCIA or JEIDA.
- **seq** This field contains a data sequence number. CISTPL_SPCL_SEQ_END is the last tuple in sequence.
- **bytes** This field contains the number of data bytes in the `data[CIS_MAX_TUPLE_DATA_LEN]`.
- **data** The data component of this tuple.

### Return Values
- **CS_SUCCESS** Successful operation.
- **CS_BAD_HANDLE** Client handle is invalid.
csx_Parse_CISTPL_SPCL(9F)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Code</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>CS_UNKNOWN_TUPLE</td>
<td>Parser does not know how to parse tuple.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CS_NO_CARD</td>
<td>No PC Card in socket.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CS_NO_CIS</td>
<td>No Card Information Structure (CIS) on PC Card.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CS_UNSUPPORTED_FUNCTION</td>
<td>No PCMCIA hardware installed.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Context**  This function may be called from user or kernel context.

**See Also**  
- csx_GetFirstTuple(9F)
- csx_GetTupleData(9F)
- csx_RegisterClient(9F)
- csx_ValidateCIS(9F)
- tuple(9S)

*PC Card 95 Standard, PCMCIA/JEIDA*
Name csx_Parse_CISTPL_SWIL – parse the Software Interleaving tuple

Synopsis #include <sys/pccard.h>

int32_t csx_Parse_CISTPL_SWIL(client_handle_t ch, tuple_t *tu, cistpl_swil_t *pt);

Interface Level Solaris DDI Specific (Solaris DDI)

Parameters

- ch Client handle returned from csx_RegisterClient(9F).
- tu Pointer to a tuple_t structure (see tuple(9S)) returned by a call to
  csx_GetFirstTuple(9F) or csx_GetNextTuple(9F).
- pt Pointer to a cistpl_swil_t structure which contains the parsed CISTPL_SWIL tuple
  information upon return from this function.

Description

This function parses the Software Interleaving tuple, CISTPL_SWIL, into a form usable by PC
Card drivers.

The CISTPL_SWIL tuple provides the software interleaving of data within a partition on the

card.

Structure Members

The structure members of cistpl_swil_t are:

- uint32_t intrlv;

The fields are defined as follows:

- intrlv This field provides the software interleaving for a partition.

Return Values

- CS_SUCCESS Successful operation.
- CS_BAD_HANDLE Client handle is invalid.
- CS_UNKNOWN_TUPLE Parser does not know how to parse tuple.
- CS_NO_CARD No PC Card in socket.
- CS_NO_CIS No Card Information Structure (CIS) on PC Card.
- CS_UNSUPPORTED_FUNCTION No PCMCIA hardware installed.

Context This function may be called from user or kernel context.

See Also csx_GetFirstTuple(9F), csx_GetTupleData(9F), csx_RegisterClient(9F),
            csx_ValidateCIS(9F), tuple(9S)

PC Card 95 Standard, PCMCIA/JEIDA
#include <sys/pccard.h>

int32_t csx_Parse_CISTPL_VERS_1(client_handle_t ch, tuple_t *tu, cistpl_vers_1_t *cv1);

## Synopsis

```c
int32_t csx_Parse_CISTPL_VERS_1(client_handle_t ch, tuple_t *tu, cistpl_vers_1_t *cv1);
```

## Interface Level

Solaris DDI Specific (Solaris DDI)

## Parameters

- **ch**: Client handle returned from `csx_RegisterClient(9F)`.
- **tu**: Pointer to a `tuple_t` structure (see `tuple(9S)`) returned by a call to `csx_GetFirstTuple(9F)` or `csx_GetNextTuple(9F)`.
- **cv1**: Pointer to a `cistpl_vers_1_t` structure which contains the parsed CISTPL_VERS_1 tuple information upon return from this function.

## Description

This function parses the Level-1 Version/Product Information tuple, CISTPL_VERS_1, into a form usable by PC Card drivers.

The CISTPL_VERS_1 tuple is used to describe the card Level-1 version compliance and card manufacturer information.

## Structure Members

The structure members of `cistpl_vers_1_t` are:

```c
struct cistpl_vers_1_t {
    uint32_t major; /* major version number */
    uint32_t minor; /* minor version number */
    uint32_t ns; /* number of information strings */
    char *pi[CISTPL_VERS_1_MAX_PROD_STRINGS][CIS_MAX_TUPLE_DATA_LEN];
    /* pointers to product information strings */
};
```

## Return Values

- **CS_SUCCESS**: Successful operation.
- **CS_BAD_HANDLE**: Client handle is invalid.
- **CS_UNKNOWN_TUPLE**: Parser does not know how to parse tuple.
- **CS_NO_CARD**: No PC Card in socket.
- **CS_NO_CIS**: No Card Information Structure (CIS) on PC Card.
- **CS_UNSUPPORTED_FUNCTION**: No PCMCIA hardware installed.

## Context

This function may be called from user or kernel context.

## See Also

- `csx_GetFirstTuple(9F)`, `csx_GetTupleData(9F)`, `csx_RegisterClient(9F)`
- `csx_Parse_CISTPL_VERS_1(9F)`
- `csx_RegisterClient(9F)`, `csx_GetNextTuple(9F)`, `tuple(9S)`

**PC Card 95 Standard, PCMCIA/JEIDA**
Name  csx_Parse_CISTPL_VERS_2 – parse Level-2 Version and Information tuple

Synopsis  #include <sys/pccard.h>

int32_t csx_Parse_CISTPL_VERS_2(client_handle_t ch, tuple_t *tu, cistpl_vers_2_t *cv2);

Interface Level  Solaris DDI Specific (Solaris DDI)

Parameters  

  ch  Client handle returned from csx_RegisterClient(9F).

  tu  Pointer to a tuple_t structure (see tuple(9S)) returned by a call to 
       csx_GetFirstTuple(9F) or csx_GetNextTuple(9F).

  cv2  Pointer to a cistpl_vers_2_t structure which contains the parsed CISTPL_VERS_2 
       tuple information upon return from this function.

Description  This function parses the Level-2 Version and Information tuple, CISTPL_VERS_2, into a form 
       usable by PC Card drivers.

The CISTPL_VERS_2 tuple is used to describe the card Level-2 information which has the 
       logical organization of the card’s data.

Structure Members  The structure members of cistpl_vers_2_t are:

  uint32_t vers; /* version number */
  uint32_t comply; /* level of compliance */
  uint32_t dindex; /* byte address of first data byte in card */
  uint32_t vspec8; /* vendor specific (byte 8) */
  uint32_t vspec9; /* vendor specific (byte 9) */
  uint32_t nhdr; /* number of copies of CIS present on device */
  char oem[CIS_MAX_TUPLE_DATA_LEN];
      /* Vendor of software that formatted card */
  char info[CIS_MAX_TUPLE_DATA_LEN];
      /* Informational message about card */

Return Values  

  CS_SUCCESS  Successful operation.
  CS_BAD_HANDLE  Client handle is invalid.
  CS_UNKNOWN_TUPLE  Parser does not know how to parse tuple.
  CS_NO_CARD  No PC Card in socket.
  CS_NO_CIS  No Card Information Structure (CIS) on PC Card.
  CS_UNSUPPORTED_FUNCTION  No PCMCIA hardware installed.

Context  This function may be called from user or kernel context.
csx_Parse_CISTPL_VERS(9F)

See Also  csx_GetFirstTuple(9F), csx_GetTupleData(9F), csx_RegisterClient(9F), csxValidateCIS(9F), tuple(9S)

*PC Card 95 Standard*, PCMCIA/JEIDA
**Name**  
`csx_ParseTuple` – generic tuple parser

**Synopsis**  
```c
#include <sys/pccard.h>

int32_t csx_ParseTuple(client_handle_t ch, tuple_t *tu, cisparse_t *cp, 
cisdata_t cd);
```

**Interface Level**  
Solaris DDI Specific (Solaris DDI)

**Parameters**
- `ch`  
  Client handle returned from `csx_RegisterClient(9F)`.  
- `tu`  
  Pointer to a `tuple_t` structure (see `tuple(9S)`) returned by a call to `csx_GetFirstTuple(9F)` or `csx_GetNextTuple(9F)`.  
- `cp`  
  Pointer to a `cisparse_t` structure that unifies all tuple parsing structures.  
- `cd`  
  Extended tuple data for some tuples.

**Description**  
This function is the generic tuple parser entry point.

**Structure Members**  
The structure members of `cisparse_t` are:

```c
typedef union cisparse_t {
    cistpl_config_t cistpl_config;
    cistpl_device_t cistpl_device;
    cistpl_vers_1_t cistpl_vers_1;
    cistpl_vers_2_t cistpl_vers_2;
    cistpl_jedec_t cistpl_jedec;
    cistpl_format_t cistpl_format;
    cistpl_geometry_t cistpl_geometry;
    cistpl_byteorder_t cistpl_byteorder;
    cistpl_date_t cistpl_date;
    cistpl_battery_t cistpl_battery;
    cistpl_org_t cistpl_org;
    cistpl_manfid_t cistpl_manfid;
    cistpl_funcid_t cistpl_funcid;
    cistpl_funce_t cistpl_funce;
    cistpl_cftable_entry_t cistpl_cftable_entry;
    cistpl_linktarget_t cistpl_linktarget;
    cistpl_longlink_ac_t cistpl_longlink_ac;
    cistpl_longlink_mfc_t cistpl_longlink_mfc;
    cistpl_spcl_t cistpl_spcl;
    cistpl_swil_t cistpl_swil;
    cistpl_bar_t cistpl_bar;
    cistpl_devicegeo_t cistpl_devicegeo;
    cistpl_longlink_cb_t cistpl_longlink_cb;
    cistpl_get_tuple_name_t cistpl_get_tuple_name;
} cisparse_t;
```
csx_ParseTuple(9F)

Return Values

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Code</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>CS_SUCCESS</td>
<td>Successful operation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CS_BAD_HANDLE</td>
<td>Client handle is invalid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CS_UNKNOWN_TUPLE</td>
<td>Parser does not know how to parse tuple.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CS_NO_CARD</td>
<td>No PC Card in socket</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CS_BAD_CIS</td>
<td>Generic parser error</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CS_NO_CIS</td>
<td>No Card Information Structure (CIS) on PC Card.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CS_UNSUPPORTED_FUNCTION</td>
<td>No PCMCIA hardware installed.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Context

This function may be called from user or kernel context.

See Also

csx_GetFirstTuple(9F), csx_GetTupleData(9F), csx_Parse_CISTPL_BATTERY(9F),
csx_Parse_CISTPL_BYTEORDER(9F), csx_Parse_CISTPL_CFTABLE_ENTRY(9F),
csx_Parse_CISTPL_CONFIG(9F), csx_Parse_CISTPL_DATE(9F),
csx_Parse_CISTPL_DEVICE(9F), csx_Parse_CISTPL_FUNCE(9F),
csx_Parse_CISTPL_FUNCID(9F), csx_Parse_CISTPL_JEDEC_C(9F),
csx_Parse_CISTPL_MANFID(9F), csx_Parse_CISTPL_SPCL(9F),
csx_Parse_CISTPL_VERS_1(9F), csx_Parse_CISTPL_VERS_2(9F), csx_RegisterClient(9F),
csx_ValidateCIS(9F), tuple(9S)

PC Card 95 Standard, PCMCIA/JEIDA
### Name
csx_Put8, csx_Put16, csx_Put32, csx_Put64 – write to device register

### Synopsis
```c
#include <sys/pccard.h>

void csx_Put8(acc_handle_t handle, uint32_t offset, uint8_t value);
void csx_Put16(acc_handle_t handle, uint32_t offset, uint16_t value);
void csx_Put32(acc_handle_t handle, uint32_t offset, uint32_t value);
void csx_Put64(acc_handle_t handle, uint32_t offset, uint64_t value);
```

### Interface Level
Solaris DDI Specific (Solaris DDI)

### Parameters
- **handle**: The access handle returned from `csx_RequestIO(9F), csx_RequestWindow(9F),` or `csx_DupHandle(9F).`
- **offset**: The offset in bytes from the base of the mapped resource.
- **value**: The data to be written to the device.

### Description
These functions generate a write of various sizes to the mapped memory or device register.

The `csx_Put8()`, `csx_Put16()`, `csx_Put32()`, and `csx_Put64()` functions write 8 bits, 16 bits, 32 bits, and 64 bits of data, respectively, to the device address represented by the handle, `handle`, at an offset in bytes represented by the offset, `offset`.

Data that consists of more than one byte will automatically be translated to maintain a consistent view between the host and the device based on the encoded information in the data access handle. The translation may involve byte swapping if the host and the device have incompatible endian characteristics.

### Context
These functions may be called from user, kernel, or interrupt context.

### See Also
- `csx_DupHandle(9F), csx_Get8(9F), csx_GetMappedAddr(9F), csx_RepGet8(9F), csx_RepPut8(9F), csx_RequestIO(9F), csx_RequestWindow(9F)`

*PC Card 95 Standard, PCMCIA/JEIDA*
**Name**  
csx_RegisterClient – register a client

**Synopsis**  
#include <sys/pccard.h>

```c
int32_t csx_RegisterClient(client_handle_t *ch, client_reg_t *cr);
```

**Interface Level**  
Solaris DDI Specific (Solaris DDI)

**Parameters**  
- `ch`  
  Pointer to a `client_handle_t` structure.
- `mc`  
  Pointer to a `client_reg_t` structure.

**Description**  
This function registers a client with Card Services and returns a unique client handle for the client. The client handle must be passed to `csx_DeregisterClient(9F)` when the client terminates.

**Structure Members**  
The structure members of `client_reg_t` are:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Member</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>Attributes</code></td>
<td>This field is bit-mapped and defined as follows:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>INFO_MEM_CLIENT</code></td>
<td>Memory client device driver.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>INFO_MTD_CLIENT</code></td>
<td>Memory Technology Driver client.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>INFO_IO_CLIENT</code></td>
<td>IO client device driver.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>INFO_CARD_SHARE</code></td>
<td>Generate artificial <code>CS_EVENT_CARD_INSERTION</code> and <code>CS_EVENT_REGISTRATION_COMPLETE</code> events.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>INFO_CARD_EXCL</code></td>
<td>Generate artificial <code>CS_EVENT_CARD_INSERTION</code> and <code>CS_EVENT_REGISTRATION_COMPLETE</code> events.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The fields are defined as follows:

- `Attributes`  
  This field is bit-mapped and defined as follows:
  - `INFO_MEM_CLIENT`  
    Memory client device driver.
  - `INFO_MTD_CLIENT`  
    Memory Technology Driver client.
  - `INFO_IO_CLIENT`  
    IO client device driver.
  - `INFO_CARD_SHARE`  
    Generate artificial `CS_EVENT_CARD_INSERTION` and `CS_EVENT_REGISTRATION_COMPLETE` events.
  - `INFO_CARD_EXCL`  
    Generate artificial `CS_EVENT_CARD_INSERTION` and `CS_EVENT_REGISTRATION_COMPLETE` events.
These bits are mutually exclusive (that is, only one bit may be set), but one of the bits must be set.

If either of these bits is set, the client will receive a CS_EVENT_REGISTRATION_COMPLETE event when Card Services has completed its internal client registration processing and after a successful call to csx_RequestSocketMask(9F).

Also, if either of these bits is set, and if a card of the type that the client can control is currently inserted in the socket (and after a successful call to csx_RequestSocketMask(9F)), the client will receive an artificial CS_EVENT_CARD_INSERTION event.

This field is bit-mapped and specifies the client's global event mask. Card Services performs event notification based on this field. See csx_event_handler(9E) for valid event definitions and for additional information about handling events.

The event_callback_args_t structure members are:

```c
void *client_data;
```
The client_data field may be used to provide data available to the event handler (see csx_event_handler(9E)). Typically, this is the client driver's soft state pointer.

**Version**
This field contains the specific Card Services version number that the client expects to use. Typically, the client will use the CS_VERSION macro to specify to Card Services which version of Card Services the client expects.

**event_handler**
The client event callback handler entry point is passed in the event_handler field.

**iblk_cookie**
**idev_cookie**
These fields must be used by the client to set up mutexes that are used in the client's event callback handler when handling high priority events.

**dip**
The client must set this field with a pointer to the client's dip.

**driver_name**
The client must copy a driver-unique name into this member. This name must be identical across all instances of the driver.

### Return Values

- **CS_SUCCESS**
  Successful operation.
- **CS_BAD_ATTRIBUTE**
  No client type or more than one client type specified.
- **CS_OUT_OF_RESOURCE**
  Card Services is unable to register client.
- **CS_BAD_VERSION**
  Card Services version is incompatible with client.
- **CS_BAD_HANDLE**
  Client has already registered for this socket.
- **CS_UNSUPPORTED_FUNCTION**
  No PCMCIA hardware installed.

### Context
This function may be called from user or kernel context.

### See Also

- csx_DeregisterClient(9F), csx_RequestSocketMask(9F)
- PC Card 95 Standard, PCMCIA/JEIDA
# csx_ReleaseConfiguration

## Name

csx_ReleaseConfiguration – release PC Card and socket configuration

## Synopsis

```c
#include <sys/pccard.h>

int32_t csx_ReleaseConfiguration(client_handle_t ch, release_config_t *rc);
```

## Interface Level

Solaris DDI Specific (Solaris DDI)

## Parameters

- **ch**: Client handle returned from `csx_RegisterClient(9F)`.
- **rc**: Pointer to a `release_config_t` structure.

## Description

This function returns a PC Card and socket to a simple memory only interface and sets the card to configuration zero by writing a 0 to the PC card’s COR (Configuration Option Register).

Card Services may remove power from the socket if no clients have indicated their usage of the socket by an active `csx_RequestConfiguration(9F)` or `csx_RequestWindow(9F)`.

Card Services is prohibited from resetting the PC Card and is not required to cycle power through zero (0) volts.

After calling `csx_ReleaseConfiguration()` any resources requested via the request functions `csx_RequestIO(9F)`, `csx_RequestIRQ(9F)`, or `csx_RequestWindow(9F)` that are no longer needed should be returned to Card Services via the corresponding `csx_ReleaseIO(9F)`, `csx_ReleaseIRQ(9F)`, or `csx_ReleaseWindow(9F)` functions. `csx_ReleaseConfiguration()` must be called to release the current card and socket configuration before releasing any resources requested by the driver via the request functions named above.

## Structure Members

The structure members of `release_config_t` are:

```c
tuint32_t Socket;  /* socket number */
```

The `Socket` field is not used in Solaris, but for portability with other Card Services implementations, it should be set to the logical socket number.

## Return Values

- **CS_SUCCESS**: Successful operation.
- **CS_BAD_HANDLE**: Client handle is invalid or `csx_RequestConfiguration(9F)` not done.
- **CS_BAD_SOCKET**: Error getting or setting socket hardware parameters.
- **CS_NO_CARD**: No PC card in socket.
- **CS_UNSUPPORTED_FUNCTION**: No PCMCIA hardware installed.
csx_ReleaseConfiguration(9F)

Context  This function may be called from user or kernel context.

See Also  csx_RegisterClient(9F), csx_RequestConfiguration(9F), csx_RequestIO(9F),
            csx_RequestIRQ(9F), csx_RequestWindow(9F)

PC Card 95 Standard, PCMCIA/JEIDA
**Name**  
csx_RepGet8, csx_RepGet16, csx_RepGet32, csx_RepGet64 – read repetitively from the device register

**Synopsis**  
#include <sys/pccard.h>

```c
void csx_RepGet8(acc_handle_t handle, uint8_t *hostaddr, uint32_t offset, uint32_t repcount, uint32_t flags);
void csx_RepGet16(acc_handle_t handle, uint16_t *hostaddr, uint32_t offset, uint32_t repcount, uint32_t flags);
void csx_RepGet32(acc_handle_t handle, uint32_t *hostaddr, uint32_t offset, uint32_t repcount, uint32_t flags);
void csx_RepGet64(acc_handle_t handle, uint64_t *hostaddr, uint32_t offset, uint32_t repcount, uint32_t flags);
```

**Interface Level**  
Solaris DDI Specific (Solaris DDI)

**Parameters**
- **handle**: The access handler returned from csx_RequestIO(9F), csx_RequestWindow(9F), or csx_DupHandle(9F).
- **hostaddr**: Source host address.
- **offset**: The offset in bytes from the base of the mapped resource.
- **repcount**: Number of data accesses to perform.
- **flags**: Device address flags.

**Description**  
These functions generate multiple reads of various sizes from the mapped memory or device register.

The csx_RepGet8(), csx_RepGet16(), csx_RepGet32(), and csx_RepGet64() functions generate `repcount` reads of 8 bits, 16 bits, 32 bits, and 64 bits of data, respectively, from the device address represented by the handle, `handle`, at an offset in bytes represented by the offset, `offset`. The data read is stored consecutively into the buffer pointed to by the host address pointer, `hostaddr`.

Data that consists of more than one byte will automatically be translated to maintain a consistent view between the host and the device based on the encoded information in the data access handle. The translation may involve byte swapping if the host and the device have incompatible endian characteristics.

When the `flags` argument is set to CS_DEV_AUTOINCR, these functions increment the device offset, `offset`, after each datum read operation. However, when the `flags` argument is set to CS_DEV_NO_AUTOINCR, the same device offset will be used for every datum access. For example, this flag may be useful when reading from a data register.
csx_RepGet8(9F)

**Context**  These functions may be called from user, kernel, or interrupt context.

**See Also**  
- `csx_DupHandle(9F)`, `csx_Get8(9F)`, `csx_GetMappedAddr(9F)`, `csx_Put8(9F)`, `csx_RepPut8(9F)`, `csx_RequestIO(9F)`, `csx_RequestWindow(9F)`

*PC Card 95 Standard, PCMCIA/JEIDA*
Name  csx_RepPut8, csx_RepPut16, csx_RepPut32, csx_RepPut64 – write repetitively to the device register

Synopsis  #include <sys/pccard.h>

```c
void csx_RepPut8(acc_handle_t handle, uint8_t *hostaddr, uint32_t offset,
        uint32_t repcount, uint32_t flags);
void csx_RepPut16(acc_handle_t handle, uint16_t *hostaddr, uint32_t offset,
        uint32_t repcount, uint32_t flags);
void csx_RepPut32(acc_handle_t handle, uint32_t *hostaddr, uint32_t offset,
        uint32_t repcount, uint32_t flags);
void csx_RepPut64(acc_handle_t handle, uint64_t *hostaddr, uint32_t offset,
        uint32_t repcount, uint32_t flags);
```

Interface Level  Solaris DDI Specific (Solaris DDI)

Parameters

- `handle`  The access handle returned from `csx_RequestIO(9F), csx_RequestWindow(9F),` or `csx_DupHandle(9F).
- `hostaddr`  Source host address.
- `offset`  The offset in bytes from the base of the mapped resource.
- `repcount`  Number of data accesses to perform.
- `flags`  Device address flags.

Description  These functions generate multiple writes of various sizes to the mapped memory or device register.

The `csx_RepPut8(), csx_RepPut16(), csx_RepPut32(),` and `csx_RepPut64()` functions generate `repcount` writes of 8 bits, 16 bits, 32 bits, and 64 bits of data, respectively, to the device address represented by the handle, `handle`, at an offset in bytes represented by the offset, `offset`. The data written is read consecutively from the buffer pointed to by the host address pointer, `hostaddr`.

Data that consists of more than one byte will automatically be translated to maintain a consistent view between the host and the device based on the encoded information in the data access handle. The translation may involve byte swapping if the host and the device have incompatible endian characteristics.

When the `flags` argument is set to `CS_DEV_AUTOINCR`, these functions increment the device offset, `offset`, after each datum write operation. However, when the `flags` argument is set to `CS_DEV_NO_AUTOINCR`, the same device offset will be used for every datum access. For example, this flag may be useful when writing to a data register.
csx_RepPut8(9F)

Context: These functions may be called from user, kernel, or interrupt context.

See Also: csx_DupHandle(9F), csx_Get8(9F), csx_GetMappedAddr(9F), csx_Put8(9F),
          csx_RepGet8(9F), csx_RequestIO(9F), csx_RequestWindow(9F)

PC Card 95 Standard, PCMCIA/JEIDA
Name  csx_RequestConfiguration – configure the PC Card and socket

Synopsis  #include <sys/pccard.h>

```c
int32_t csx_RequestConfiguration(client_handle_t ch, config_req_t *cr);
```

Interface Level  Solaris DDI Specific (Solaris DDI)

Parameters  
- `ch`  Client handle returned from `csx_RegisterClient(9F)`.
- `cr`  Pointer to a `config_req_t` structure.

Description  This function configures the PC Card and socket. It must be used by clients that require I/O or IRQ resources for their PC Card.

`csx_RequestIO(9F)` and `csx_RequestIRQ(9F)` must be used before calling this function to specify the I/O and IRQ requirements for the PC Card and socket if necessary.

`csx_RequestConfiguration()` establishes the configuration in the socket adapter and PC Card, and it programs the Base and Limit registers of multi-function PC Cards if these registers exist. The values programmed into these registers depend on the IO requirements of this configuration.

Structure Members  The structure members of `config_req_t` are:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Member</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>Socket</code></td>
<td>/* socket number */</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>Attributes</code></td>
<td>/* configuration attributes */</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>Vcc</code></td>
<td>/* Vcc value */</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>Vpp1</code></td>
<td>/* Vpp1 value */</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>Vpp2</code></td>
<td>/* Vpp2 value */</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>IntType</code></td>
<td>/* socket interface type - mem or IO */</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>ConfigBase</code></td>
<td>/* offset from start of AM space */</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>Status</code></td>
<td>/* value to write to STATUS register */</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>Pin</code></td>
<td>/* value to write to PRR */</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>Copy</code></td>
<td>/* value to write to COPY register */</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>ConfigIndex</code></td>
<td>/* value to write to COR */</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>Present</code></td>
<td>/* which config registers present */</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>ExtendedStatus</code></td>
<td>/* value to write to EXSTAT register */</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The fields are defined as follows:

- **Socket**  
  Not used in Solaris, but for portability with other Card Services implementations, it should be set to the logical socket number.

- **Attributes**  
  This field is bit-mapped. It indicates whether the client wishes the IRQ resources to be enabled and
whether Card Services should ignore the VS bits on the socket interface. The following bits are defined:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Bit Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| CONF_ENABLE_IRQ_STEERING  | Enable IRQ Steering. Set to connect the PC Card IREQ line to a system interrupt previously selected by a call to `csx_RequestIRQ(9F)`. If CONF_ENABLE_IRQ_STEERING is set, once `csx_RequestConfiguration()` has successfully returned, the client may start receiving IRQ callbacks at the IRQ callback handler established in the call to `csx_RequestIRQ(9F)`.
| CONF_VSOVERRIDE           | Override VS pins. After card insertion and prior to the first successful `csx_RequestConfiguration()`, the voltage levels applied to the card shall be those indicated by the card’s physical key and/or the VS[2:1] voltage sense pins. For |
Low Voltage capable host systems (hosts which are capable of VS pin decoding), if a client desires to apply a voltage not indicated by the VS pin decoding, then CONF_VSOVERRIDE must be set in the Attributes field; otherwise, CS_BAD_VCC shall be returned.

Vcc, Vpp1, Vpp2

These fields all represent voltages expressed in tenths of a volt. Values from zero (0) to 25.5 volts may be set. To be valid, the exact voltage must be available from the system. PC Cards indicate multiple Vcc voltage capability in their CIS via the CISTPL_CFTABLE_ENTRY tuple. After card insertion, Card Services processes the CIS, and when multiple Vcc voltage capability is indicated, Card Services will allow the client to apply Vcc voltage levels which are contrary to the VS pin decoding without requiring the client to set CONF_VSOVERRIDE.

IntType

This field is bit-mapped. It indicates how the socket should be configured. The following bits are defined:

- SOCKET_INTERFACE_MEMORY
  Memory only interface.

- SOCKET_INTERFACE_MEMORY_AND_IO
  Memory and I/O interface.
### ConfigBase

This field is the offset in bytes from the beginning of attribute memory of the configuration registers.

### Present

This field identifies which of the configuration registers are present. If present, the corresponding bit is set. This field is bit-mapped as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>CONFIG OPTION REG PRESENT</td>
<td>Configuration Option Register (COR) present</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CONFIG STATUS REG PRESENT</td>
<td>Configuration Status Register (CCSR) present</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CONFIG_PINREPL REG PRESENT</td>
<td>Pin Replacement Register (PRR) present</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CONFIG_COPY REG PRESENT</td>
<td>Socket and Copy Register (SCR) present</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CONFIG_ESR REG PRESENT</td>
<td>Extended Status Register (ESR) present</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Status, Pin, Copy, ExtendedStatus

These fields represent the initial values that should be written to those registers if they are present, as indicated by the Present field.

The Pin field is also used to inform Card Services which pins in the PC Card’s PRR (Pin Replacement Register) are valid. Only those bits which are set are considered valid. This affects how status is returned by the `csx_GetStatus(9F)` function. If a particular signal is valid in the PRR,
both the mask (STATUS) bit and the change (EVENT) bit must be set in the Pin field. The following PRR bit definitions are provided for client use:

- **PRR_WP_STATUS** WRITE PROTECT mask
- **PRR_READY_STATUS** READY mask
- **PRR_BVD2_STATUS** BVD2 mask
- **PRR_BVD1_STATUS** BVD1 mask
- **PRR_WP_EVENT** WRITE PROTECT changed
- **PRR_READY_EVENT** READY changed
- **PRR_BVD2_EVENT** BVD2 changed
- **PRR_BVD1_EVENT** BVD1 changed

### ConfigIndex

This field is the value written to the COR (Configuration Option Register) for the configuration index required by the PC Card. Only the least significant six bits of the ConfigIndex field are significant; the upper two (2) bits are ignored. The interrupt type in the COR is always set to level mode by Card Services.

### Return Values

- **CS_SUCCESS** Successful operation.
- **CS_BAD_HANDLE** Client handle is invalid or csx_RequestConfiguration() not done.
- **CS_BAD_SOCKET** Error in getting or setting socket hardware parameters.
- **CS_BAD_VCC** Requested Vcc is not available on socket.
- **CS_BAD_VPP** Requested Vpp is not available on socket.
- **CS_NO_CARD** No PC Card in socket.
- **CS_BAD_TYPE** I/O and memory interface not supported on socket.
- **CS_CONFIGURATION_LOCKED** csx_RequestConfiguration() already done.
- **CS_UNSUPPORTED_FUNCTION** No PCMCIA hardware installed.

### Context

This function may be called from user or kernel context.

### See Also

- csx_AccessConfigurationRegister(9F)
- csx_GetStatus(9F)
- csx_RegisterClient(9F)
- csx_ReleaseConfiguration(9F)
- csx_RequestIO(9F)
- csx_RequestIRQ(9F)
csx_RequestConfiguration(9F)

PC Card 95 Standard, PCMCIA/JEIDA
Name: csx_RequestIO, csx_ReleaseIO – request or release I/O resources for the client

Synopsis: #include <sys/pccard.h>

```c
int32_t csx_RequestIO(client_handle_t ch, io_req_t *ir);
int32_t csx_ReleaseIO(client_handle_t ch, io_req_t *ir);
```

Interface Level: Solaris DDI Specific (Solaris DDI)

Parameters:
- `ch`: Client handle returned from `csx_RegisterClient(9F)`.
- `ir`: Pointer to an `io_req_t` structure.

Description:
The functions `csx_RequestIO()` and `csx_ReleaseIO()` request or release, respectively, I/O resources for the client.

If a client requires I/O resources, `csx_RequestIO()` must be called to request I/O resources from Card Services; then `csx_RequestConfiguration(9F)` must be used to establish the configuration. `csx_RequestIO()` can be called multiple times until a successful set of I/O resources is found. `csx_RequestConfiguration(9F)` only uses the last configuration specified.

`csx_RequestIO()` fails if it has already been called without a corresponding `csx_ReleaseIO()`.

`csx_ReleaseIO()` releases previously requested I/O resources. The Card Services window resource list is adjusted by this function. Depending on the adapter hardware, the I/O window might also be disabled.

Structure Members:
The structure members of `io_req_t` are:

- `uint32_t Socket; /* socket number*/`
- `uint32_t Baseport1.base; /* I/O range base port address */`
- `acc_handle_t Baseport1.handle; /* I/O range base address or port num */`
- `uint32_t NumPorts1; /* first I/O range number contiguous ports */`
- `uint32_t Attributes1; /* first I/O range attributes */`
- `uint32_t Baseport2.base; /* I/O range base port address */`
- `acc_handle_t Baseport2.handle; /* I/O range base address or port num */`
- `uint32_t NumPorts2; /* second I/O range number contiguous ports */`
- `uint32_t Attributes2; /* second I/O range attributes */`
- `uint32_t IOAddrLines; /* number of I/O address lines decoded */`
The fields are defined as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Socket</strong></td>
<td>Not used in Solaris, but for portability with other Card Services implementations, it should be set to the logical socket number.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>BasePort1.base</strong></td>
<td>Two I/O address ranges can be requested by <code>csx_RequestIO()</code>. Each I/O address range is specified by the BasePort, NumPorts, and Attributes fields. If only a single I/O range is being requested, the NumPorts2 field must be reset to 0.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>BasePort1.handle</strong></td>
<td>When calling <code>csx_RequestIO()</code>, the BasePort.base field specifies the first port address requested. Upon successful return from <code>csx_RequestIO()</code>, the BasePort.handle field contains an access handle, corresponding to the first byte of the allocated I/O window, which the client must use when accessing the PC Card’s I/O space via the common access functions. A client must not make any assumptions as to the format of the returned BasePort.handle field value.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>BasePort2.base</strong></td>
<td>If the BasePort.base field is set to 0, Card Services returns an I/O resource based on the available I/O resources and the number of contiguous ports requested. When BasePort.base is 0, Card Services aligns the returned resource in the host system’s I/O address space on a boundary that is a multiple of the number of contiguous ports requested, rounded up to the nearest power of two. For example, if a client requests two I/O ports, the resource returned will be a multiple of two. If a client requests five contiguous I/O ports, the resource returned will be a multiple of eight.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>BasePort2.handle</strong></td>
<td>If multiple ranges are being requested, at least one of the BasePort.base fields must be non-zero.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>NumPorts</strong></td>
<td>This field is the number of contiguous ports being requested.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Attributes</strong></td>
<td>This field is bit-mapped. The following bits are defined:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IO_DATA_WIDTH_8</td>
<td>I/O resource uses 8-bit data path.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IO_DATA_WIDTH_16</td>
<td>I/O resource uses 16-bit data path.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WIN_ACC_NEVER_SWAP</td>
<td>Host endian byte ordering.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WIN_ACC_BIG_ENDIAN</td>
<td>Big endian byte ordering</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WIN_ACC_LITTLE_ENDIAN</td>
<td>Little endian byte ordering.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
WIN_ACC_STRICT_ORDER  Program ordering references.
WIN_ACC_UNORDERED_OK  May re-order references.
WIN_ACC_MERGING_OK  Merge stores to consecutive locations.
WIN_ACC_LOADCACHING_OK  May cache load operations.
WIN_ACCSTORECACHING_OK  May cache store operations.

For some combinations of host system busses and adapter hardware, the width of an I/O resource cannot be set via RequestIO(); on those systems, the host bus cycle access type determines the I/O resource data path width on a per-cycle basis.

WIN_ACC_BIG_ENDIAN and WIN_ACC_LITTLE_ENDIAN describe the endian characteristics of the device as big endian or little endian, respectively. Even though most of the devices will have the same endian characteristics as their busses, there are examples of devices with an I/O processor that has opposite endian characteristics of the busses. When WIN_ACC_BIG_ENDIAN or WIN_ACC_LITTLE_ENDIAN is set, byte swapping will automatically be performed by the system if the host machine and the device data formats have opposite endian characteristics. The implementation may take advantage of hardware platform byte swapping capabilities.

When WIN_ACC_NEVER_SWAP is specified, byte swapping will not be invoked in the data access functions. The ability to specify the order in which the CPU will reference data is provided by the following Attributes bits. Only one of the following bits may be specified:

WIN_ACC_STRICT_ORDER  The data references must be issued by a CPU in program order. Strict ordering is the default behavior.
WIN_ACC_UNORDERED_OK  The CPU may re-order the data references. This includes all kinds of re-ordering (that is, a load followed by a store may be replaced by a store followed by a load).
WIN_ACC_MERGING_OK  The CPU may merge individual stores to consecutive locations. For example, the CPU may turn two consecutive byte stores into one halfword store. It may also batch individual loads. For example, the
CPU may turn two consecutive byte loads into one halfword load. 
IO_MERGING_OK_ACC also implies re-ordering.

WIN_ACC_LOADCACHING_OK The CPU may cache the data it fetches and reuse it until another store occurs. The default behavior is to fetch new data on every load. 
WIN_ACC_LOADCACHING_OK also implies merging and re-ordering.

WIN_ACC_STORECACHING_OK The CPU may keep the data in the cache and push it to the device (perhaps with other data) at a later time. The default behavior is to push the data right away. 
WIN_ACC_STORECACHING_OK also implies load caching, merging, and re-ordering.

These values are advisory, not mandatory. For example, data can be ordered without being merged or cached, even though a driver requests unordered, merged and cached together. All other bits in the Attributes field must be set to 0.

IOAddrLines This field is the number of I/O address lines decoded by the PC Card in the specified socket.

On some systems, multiple calls to csx_RequestIO() with different BasePort, NumPorts, and/or IOAddrLines values will have to be made to find an acceptable combination of parameters that can be used by Card Services to allocate I/O resources for the client. (See NOTES).

Return Values

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Code</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>CS_SUCCESS</td>
<td>Successful operation.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CS_BAD_ATTRIBUTE</td>
<td>Invalid Attributes specified.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CS_BAD_BASE</td>
<td>BasePort value is invalid.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CS_BAD_HANDLE</td>
<td>Client handle is invalid.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CS_CONFIGURATION_LOCKED</td>
<td>csx_RequestConfiguration(9F) has already been done.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CS_IN_USE</td>
<td>csx_RequestIO() has already been done without a corresponding csx_ReleaseIO().</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CS_NO_CARD</td>
<td>No PC Card in socket.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
csx_RequestIO(9F)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Code</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>CS_BAD_WINDOW</td>
<td>Unable to allocate I/O resources.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CS_OUT_OF_RESOURCE</td>
<td>Unable to allocate I/O resources.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CS_UNSUPPORTED_FUNCTION</td>
<td>No PCMCIA hardware installed.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Context**  These functions may be called from user or kernel context.

**See Also**  csx_RegisterClient(9F), csx_RequestConfiguration(9F)

*PC Card 95 Standard, PCMCIA/JEIDA*

**Notes**  It is important for clients to try to use the minimum amount of I/O resources necessary. One way to do this is for the client to parse the CIS of the PC Card and call csx_RequestIO() first with any I0AddrLines values that are 0 or that specify a minimum number of address lines necessary to decode the I/O space on the PC Card. Also, if no convenient minimum number of address lines can be used to decode the I/O space on the PC Card, it is important to try to avoid system conflicts with well-known architectural hardware features.
The function `csx_RequestIRQ()` requests an IRQ resource and registers the client's IRQ handler with Card Services.

If a client requires an IRQ, `csx_RequestIRQ()` must be called to request an IRQ resource as well as to register the client's IRQ handler with Card Services. The client will not receive callbacks at the IRQ callback handler until `csx_RequestConfiguration(9F)` or `csx_ModifyConfiguration(9F)` has successfully returned when either of these functions are called with the `CONF_ENABLE_IRQ_STEERING` bit set.

The function `csx_ReleaseIRQ()` releases a previously requested IRQ resource.

The Card Services IRQ resource list is adjusted by `csx_ReleaseIRQ()`. Depending on the adapter hardware, the host bus IRQ connection might also be disabled. Client IRQ handlers always run above lock level and so should take care to perform only Solaris operations that are appropriate for an above-lock-level IRQ handler.

`csx_RequestIRQ()` fails if it has already been called without a corresponding `csx_ReleaseIRQ()`.

The structure members of `irq_req_t` are:

- `uint32_t Socket; /* socket number */`
- `uint32_t Attributes; /* IRQ attribute flags */`
- `csfunction_t *irq_handler; /* IRQ handler */`
- `void *irq_handler_arg; /* IRQ handler argument */`
- `ddi_iblock_cookie_t *iblk_cookie; /* IRQ interrupt */`
- `void *iblk_cookie; /* block cookie */`
- `ddi_idevice_cookie_t *idev_cookie; /* IRQ interrupt device */`
- `void *idev_cookie; /* cookie */`

The fields are defined as follows:

- `Socket` Not used in Solaris, but for portability with other Card Services implementations, it should be set to the logical socket number.
Attributes

This field is bit-mapped. It specifies details about the type of IRQ desired by the client. The following bits are defined:

- **IRQ_TYPE_EXCLUSIVE**: IRQ is exclusive to this socket. This bit must be set. It indicates that the system IRQ is dedicated to this PC Card.

**irq_handler**

The client IRQ callback handler entry point is passed in the **irq_handler** field.

**irq_handler_arg**

The client can use the **irq_handler_arg** field to pass client-specific data to the client IRQ callback handler.

**iblk_cookie**

**idev_cookie**

These fields must be used by the client to set up mutexes that are used in the client's IRQ callback handler.

For a specific `csx_ReleaseIRQ()` call, the values in the **irq_req_t** structure must be the same as those returned from the previous `csx_RequestIRQ()` call; otherwise, **CS_BAD_ARGS** is returned and no changes are made to Card Services resources or the socket and adapter hardware.

**Return Values**

- **CS_SUCCESS**: Successful operation.
- **CS_BAD_ARGS**: IRQ description does not match allocation.
- **CS_BAD_ATTRIBUTE**: **IRQ_TYPE_EXCLUSIVE** not set, or an unsupported or reserved bit is set.
- **CS_BAD_HANDLE**: Client handle is invalid or `csx_RequestConfiguration(9F)` not done.
- **CS_BAD_IRQ**: Unable to allocate IRQ resources.
- **CS_IN_USE**: `csx_RequestIRQ()` already done or a previous `csx_RequestIRQ()` has not been done for a corresponding `csx_ReleaseIRQ()`.
- **CS_CONFIGURATION_LOCKED**: `csx_RequestConfiguration(9F)` already done or `csx_ReleaseConfiguration(9F)` has not been done.
- **CS_NO_CARD**: No PC Card in socket.
- **CS_UNSUPPORTED_FUNCTION**: No PCMCIA hardware installed.

**Context**

These functions may be called from user or kernel context.

**See Also**

`csx_ReleaseConfiguration(9F), csx_RequestConfiguration(9F)`

*PC Card Card 95 Standard, PCMCIA/JEIDA*
**Name**
csx_RequestSocketMask, csx_ReleaseSocketMask – set or clear the client’s client event mask

**Synopsis**
```c
#include <sys/pccard.h>

int32_t csx_RequestSocketMask(client_handle_t ch, request_socket_mask_t *sm);
int32_t csx_ReleaseSocketMask(client_handle_t ch, release_socket_mask_t *rm);
```

**Interface Level**
Solaris DDI Specific (Solaris DDI)

**Parameters**
- `ch` Client handle returned from `csx_RegisterClient(9F)`.
- `sm` Pointer to a `request_socket_mask_t` structure.
- `rm` Pointer to a `release_socket_mask_t` structure.

**Description**
The function `csx_RequestSocketMask()` sets the client’s client event mask and enables the client to start receiving events at its event callback handler. Once this function returns successfully, the client can start receiving events at its event callback handler. Any pending events generated from the call to `csx_RegisterClient(9F)` will be delivered to the client after this call as well. This allows the client to set up the event handler mutexes before the event handler gets called.

`csx_RequestSocketMask()` must be used before calling `csx_GetEventMask(9F)` or `csx_SetEventMask(9F)` for the client event mask for this socket.

The function `csx_ReleaseSocketMask()` clears the client’s client event mask.

**Structure Members**
The structure members of `request_socket_mask_t` are:

```c
uint32_t Socket; /* socket number */
uint32_t EventMask; /* event mask to set or return */
```

The structure members of `release_socket_mask_t` are:

```c
uint32_t Socket; /* socket number */
```

The fields are defined as follows:
- **Socket** Not used in Solaris, but for portability with other Card Services implementations, it should be set to the logical socket number.
- **EventMask** This field is bit-mapped. Card Services performs event notification based on this field. See `csx_event_handler(9E)` for valid event definitions and for additional information about handling events.

**Return Values**
- **CS_SUCCESS** Successful operation.
- **CS_BAD_HANDLE** Client handle is invalid.
CS_IN_USE  csx_ReleaseSocketMask() has not been done.
CS_BAD_SOCKET  csx_RequestSocketMask() has not been done.
CS_UNSUPPORTED_FUNCTION  No PCMCIA hardware installed.

**Context**  These functions may be called from user or kernel context.

**See Also**  
- csx_event_handler(9E)
- csx_GetEventMask(9F)
- csx_RegisterClient(9F)
- csx_SetEventMask(9F)

*PC Card 95 Standard, PCMCIA/JEIDA*
Name  csx_RequestWindow, csx_ReleaseWindow – request or release window resources

Synopsis  

```c
#include <sys/pccard.h>

int32_t csx_RequestWindow(client_handle_t ch, window_handle_t *wh, win_req_t *wr);
int32_t csx_ReleaseWindow(window_handle_t wh);
```

Interface Level  Solaris DDI Specific (Solaris DDI)

Parameters  

- `ch`  Client handle returned from `csx_RegisterClient(9F)`.
- `wh`  Pointer to a `window_handle_t` structure.
- `wr`  Pointer to a `win_req_t` structure.

Description  The function `csx_RequestWindow()` requests a block of system address space be assigned to a PC Card in a socket.

The function `csx_ReleaseWindow()` releases window resources which were obtained by a call to `csx_RequestWindow()`. No adapter or socket hardware is modified by this function.

The `csx_MapMemPage(9F)` and `csx_ModifyWindow(9F)` functions use the window handle returned by `csx_RequestWindow()`. This window handle must be freed by calling `csx_ReleaseWindow()` when the client is done using this window.

The PC Card Attribute or Common Memory offset for this window is set by `csx_MapMemPage(9F)`.

Structure Members  The structure members of `win_req_t` are:

```c
tuint32_t Socket; /* socket number */
tuint32_t Attributes; /* window flags */
tuint32_t Base.base; /* requested window */

acc_handle_t Base.handle; /* returned handle for */

uint32_t Size; /* window size requested */

win_params.AccessSpeed; /* window access speed */

win_params.IOAddrLines; /* IO address lines decoded */

uint32_t ReqOffset; /* required window offset */
```

The fields are defined as follows:
Socket

Not used in Solaris, but for portability with other Card Services implementations, it should be set to the logical socket number.

Attributes

This field is bit-mapped. It is defined as follows:

- **WIN_MEMORY_TYPE_IO**: Window points to I/O space
- **WIN_MEMORY_TYPE_CM**: Window points to Common Memory space
- **WIN_MEMORY_TYPE_AM**: Window points to Attribute Memory space
- **WIN_ENABLE**: Enable window
- **WIN_DATA_WIDTH_8**: Set window to 8-bit data path
- **WIN_DATA_WIDTH_16**: Set window to 16-bit data path
- **WIN_ACC_NEVER_SWAP**: Host endian byte ordering
- **WIN_ACC_BIG_ENDIAN**: Big endian byte ordering
- **WIN_ACC_LITTLE_ENDIAN**: Little endian byte ordering
- **WIN_ACC STRICT_ORDER**: Program ordering references
- **WIN_ACC_UNORDERED_OK**: May re-order references
- **WIN_ACC MERGING_OK**: Merge stores to consecutive locations
- **WIN_ACC_LOADCACHING_OK**: May cache load operations
- **WIN_ACC_STORECACHING_OK**: May cache store operations

These bits select which type of window is being requested. One of these bits must be set.

- **WIN_ENABLE**: The client must set this bit to enable the window.
- **WIN_ACC_BIG_ENDIAN**: Describes device as big-endian.
- **WIN_ACC_LITTLE_ENDIAN**: These bits describe the endian characteristics of the device as big endian or little endian, respectively. Even though most of the devices will have the same endian characteristics as their busses, there are examples of devices with an I/O processor that has opposite endian characteristics of the busses. When either of these bits are set, byte swapping will automatically be performed by the system if the host machine...
and the device data formats have opposite endian characteristics. The implementation may take advantage of hardware platform byte swapping capabilities.

**WIN_ACC_NEVER_SWAP**

When this is specified, byte swapping will not be invoked in the data access functions.

The ability to specify the order in which the CPU will reference data is provided by the following Attributes bits, only one of which may be specified:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Attributes Bit</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>WIN_ACC_STRICT_ORDER</strong></td>
<td>The data references must be issued by a CPU in program order. Strict ordering is the default behavior.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>WIN_ACC_UNORDERED_OK</strong></td>
<td>The CPU may re-order the data references. This includes all kinds of re-ordering (that is, a load followed by a store may be replaced by a store followed by a load).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>WIN_ACC_MERGING_OK</strong></td>
<td>The CPU may merge individual stores to consecutive locations. For example, the CPU may turn two consecutive byte stores into one halfword store. It may also batch individual loads. For example, the CPU may turn two consecutive byte loads into one halfword load. This bit also implies re-ordering.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>WIN_ACC_LOADCACHING_OK</strong></td>
<td>The CPU may cache the data it fetches and reuse it until another store occurs. The default behavior is to fetch</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
new data on every load. This bit also implies merging and re-ordering.

WIN_ACC_STORECACHING_OK The CPU may keep the data in the cache and push it to the device (perhaps with other data) at a later time. The default behavior is to push the data right away. This bit also implies load caching, merging, and re-ordering.

These values are advisory, not mandatory. For example, data can be ordered without being merged or cached, even though a driver requests unordered, merged and cached together.

All other bits in the Attributes field must be set to 0.

On successful return from csx_RequestWindow(), WIN_OFFSET_SIZE is set in the Attributes field when the client must specify card offsets to csx_MapMemPage(9F) that are a multiple of the window size.

Base.base This field must be set to 0 on calling csx_RequestWindow().

Base.handle On successful return from csx_RequestWindow(), the Base.handle field contains an access handle corresponding to the first byte of the allocated memory window which the client must use when accessing the PC Card’s memory space via the common access functions. A client must not make any assumptions as to the format of the returned Base.handle field value.

Size On calling csx_RequestWindow(), the Size field is the size in bytes of the memory window requested. Size may be zero to indicate that Card Services should provide the smallest sized window available. On successful return from csx_RequestWindow(), the Size field contains the actual size of the window allocated.

win_params.AccessSpeed This field specifies the access speed of the window if the client is requesting a memory window. The AccessSpeed field bit definitions use the format of the extended speed byte of the Device ID tuple. If the mantissa is 0 (noted as reserved in the
PC Card 95 Standard), the lower bits are a binary code representing a speed from the following table:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Code</th>
<th>Speed</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td>(Reserved - do not use).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>250 nsec</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>200 nsec</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>150 nsec</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>100 nsec</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5-7</td>
<td>(Reserved—do not use.)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

To request a window that supports the WAIT signal, OR-in the WIN_USE_WAIT bit to the AccessSpeed value before calling this function.

It is recommended that clients use the `csx_ConvertSpeed(9F)` function to generate the appropriate AccessSpeed values rather than manually perturbing the AccessSpeed field.

**Return Values**

- **CS_SUCCESS**
  Successful operation.
- **CS_BAD_ATTRIBUTE**
  Attributes are invalid.
- **CS_BAD_SPEED**
  Speed is invalid.
- **CS_BAD_HANDLE**
  Client handle is invalid.
- **CS_BAD_SIZE**
  Window size is invalid.
- **CS_NO_CARD**
  No PC Card in socket.
- **CS_OUT_OF_RESOURCE**
  Unable to allocate window.
- **CS_UNSUPPORTED_FUNCTION**
  No PCMCIA hardware installed.
These functions may be called from user or kernel context.

See Also  
\texttt{csx\_ConvertSpeed(9F), csx\_MapMemPage(9F), csx\_ModifyWindow(9F), csx\_RegisterClient(9F), csx\_RequestConfiguration(9F)}

\textit{PC Card 95 Standard, PCMCIA/JEIDA}
Name  csx_ResetFunction – reset a function on a PC card

Synopsis  #include <sys/pccard.h>

int32_t csx_ResetFunction(client_handle_t ch, reset_function_t *rf);

Interface Level  Solaris DDI Specific (Solaris DDI)

Parameters  

ch  Client handle returned from csx_RegisterClient(9F).

rf  Pointer to a reset_function_t structure.

Description  csx_ResetFunction() requests that the specified function on the PC card initiate a reset operation.

Structure Members  The structure members of reset_function_t are:

uint32_t Socket; /* socket number */
uint32_t Attributes; /* reset attributes */

The fields are defined as follows:

Socket  Not used in Solaris, but for portability with other Card Services implementations, it should be set to the logical socket number.

Attributes  Must be 0.

Return Values  

CS_SUCCESS  Card Services has noted the reset request.
CS_IN_USE  This Card Services implementation does not permit configured cards to be reset.
CS_BAD_HANDLE  Client handle is invalid.
CS_NO_CARD  No PC card in socket.
CS_BAD_SOCKET  Specified socket or function number is invalid.
CS_UNSUPPORTED_FUNCTION  No PCMCIA hardware installed.

Context  This function may be called from user or kernel context.

See Also  csx_event_handler(9E), csx_RegisterClient(9F)

PC Card 95 Standard, PCMCIA/JEIDA

Notes  csx_ResetFunction() has not been implemented in this release and always returns CS_IN_USE.
csx_SetEventMask, csx_GetEventMask – set or return the client event mask for the client

Synopsis
#include <sys/pccard.h>

int32_t csx_SetEventMask(client_handle_t ch, sockevent_t *se);
int32_t csx_GetEventMask(client_handle_t ch, sockevent_t *se);

Interface Level
Solaris DDI Specific (Solaris DDI)

Parameters
ch Client handle returned from csx_RegisterClient(9F).
se Pointer to a sockevent_t structure

Description
The function csx_SetEventMask() sets the client or global event mask for the client.

The function csx_GetEventMask() returns the client or global event mask for the client.

csx_RequestSocketMask(9F) must be called before calling csx_SetEventMask() for the client event mask for this socket.

Structure Members
The structure members of sockevent_t are:

uint32_t uint32_t /* attribute flags for call */
uint32_t EventMask; /* event mask to set or return */
uint32_t Socket; /* socket number if necessary */

The fields are defined as follows:

Attributes
This is a bit-mapped field that identifies the type of event mask to be returned. The field is defined as follows:

CONF_EVENT_MASK_GLOBAL Client's global event mask. If set, the client's global event mask is returned.
CONF_EVENT_MASK_CLIENT Client's local event mask. If set, the client's local event mask is returned.

EventMask
This field is bit-mapped. Card Services performs event notification based on this field. See csx_event_handler(9E) for valid event definitions and for additional information about handling events.

Socket
Not used in Solaris, but for portability with other Card Services implementations, it should be set to the logical socket number.

Return Values
CS_SUCCESS Successful operation.
CS_BAD_HANDLE Client handle is invalid.
CS_BAD_SOCKET  csx_RequestSocketMask(9F) not called for CONFEVENT MASK_CLIENT.

CS_UNSUPPORTED_FUNCTION  No PCMCIA hardware installed.

Context  These functions may be called from user or kernel context.

See Also  csx_event_handler(9E), csx_RegisterClient(9F), csx_ReleaseSocketMask(9F), csx_RequestSocketMask(9F)

PC Card 95 Standard, PCMCIA/JEIDA
Name  csx_SetHandleOffset – set current access handle offset
Synopsis  
#include <sys/pccard.h>

    int32_t csx_SetHandleOffset(acc_handle_t handle, uint32_t offset);

Interface Level  Solaris DDI Specific (Solaris DDI)
Parameters  
    handle  Access handle returned by csx_RequestIRQ(9F) or csx_RequestIO(9F).
    offset  New access handle offset.
Description  This function sets the current offset for the access handle, handle, to offset.
Return Values  CS_SUCCESS  Successful operation.
    Context  This function may be called from user or kernel context.
See Also  csx_GetHandleOffset(9F), csx_RequestIO(9F), csx_RequestIRQ(9F)
    PC Card 95 Standard, PCMCIA/JEIDA
Name: csx_ValidateCIS – validate the Card Information Structure (CIS)

Synopsis: #include <sys/pccard.h>

```
int32_t csx_ValidateCIS(client_handle_t ch, cisinfo_t *ci);
```

Interface Level: Solaris DDI Specific (Solaris DDI)

Parameters:
- `ch`: Client handle returned from `csx_RegisterClient(9F)`.
- `ci`: Pointer to a `cisinfo_t` structure.

Description: This function validates the Card Information Structure (CIS) on the PC Card in the specified socket.

Structure Members:
- `uint32_t Socket; /* socket number to validate CIS on */`
- `uint32_t Chains; /* number of tuple chains in CIS */`
- `uint32_t Tuples; /* total number of tuples in CIS */`

The fields are defined as follows:
- **Socket**: Not used in Solaris, but for portability with other Card Services implementations, it should be set to the logical socket number.
- **Chains**: This field returns the number of valid tuple chains located in the CIS. If 0 is returned, the CIS is not valid.
- **Tuples**: This field is a Solaris-specific extension and it returns the total number of tuples on all the chains in the PC Card's CIS.

Return Values:
- `CS_SUCCESS`: Successful operation.
- `CS_NO_CIS`: No CIS on PC Card or CIS is invalid.
- `CS_NO_CARD`: No PC Card in socket.
- `CS_UNSUPPORTED_FUNCTION`: No PCMCIA hardware installed.

Context: This function may be called from user or kernel context.

See Also:
- `csx_GetFirstTuple(9F)`, `csx_GetTupleData(9F)`, `csx_ParseTuple(9F)`
- `csx_RegisterClient(9F)`
- *PC Card 95 Standard, PCMCIA/JEIDA*
Name  datamsg – test whether a message is a data message

Synopsis  #include <sys/stream.h>
          #include <sys/ddi.h>

          int datamsg(unsigned char type);

Interface Level  Architecture independent level 1 (DDI/DKI).

Parameters  type  The type of message to be tested. The db_type field of the datab(9S) structure contains the message type. This field may be accessed through the message block using mp->b_datap->db_type.

Description  The datamsg() function tests the type of message to determine if it is a data message type (M_DATA, M_DELAY, M_PROTO, or M_PCPROTO).

Return Values  datamsg returns

1  if the message is a data message
0  otherwise.

Context  The datamsg() function can be called from user, interrupt, or kernel context.

Examples  The put(9E) routine enqueues all data messages for handling by the srv(9E) (service) routine. All non-data messages are handled in the put(9E) routine.

1  xxput(q, mp)
2    queue_t *q;
3    mblk_t *mp;
4  { 5    if (datamsg(mp->b_datap->db_type)) {
6        putq(q, mp);
7        return;
8    }
9    switch (mp->b_datap->db_type) {
10      case M_FLUSH:
11          ...
12    }

See Also  put(9E), srv(9E), allocb(9F), datab(9S), msgb(9S)

Writing Device Drivers

STREAMS Programming Guide
**Name** | DB_BASE, DB_LIM, DB_REF, DB_TYPE – Data block access macros
---|---
**Synopsis** | `#include <sys/stream.h>
#include <sys/strsun.h>`

```
uchar_t *DB_BASE(mblk_t *mp);
uchar_t *DB_LIM(mblk_t *mp);
uchar_t DB_TYPE(mblk_t *mp);
uchar_t DB_REF(mblk_t *mp);
```

**Interface Level** | Solaris DDI specific (Solaris DDI).
**Parameters** | `mp` Message block to be accessed.
**Description** | These macros provide compact access to public members of the `datab(9S)` structure associated with the specified message block.

In all cases, these macros are equivalent to directly accessing the underlying fields of the `datab(9S)` associated with the specified message block. Specifically:

- `DB_BASE(mp)` is equivalent to `mp->b_datap->db_base`.
- `DB_LIM(mp)` is equivalent to `mp->b_datap->db_lim`.
- `DB_TYPE(mp)` is equivalent to `mp->b_datap->db_type`.
- `DB_REF(mp)` is equivalent to `mp->b_datap->db_ref`.

**Context** | These functions can be called from user, kernel or interrupt context.

**See Also** | `msgb(9S), datab(9S)`

*STREAMS Programming Guide*
**Name**  
ddi_add_event_handler – add an NDI event service callback handler

**Synopsis**  
```
#include <sys/dditypes.h>
#include <sys/sunddi.h>

int ddi_add_event_handler(dev_info_t *dip, ddi_eventcookie_t cookie,
                          void (*handler)(dev_info_t *, ddi_eventcookie_t, void *, void *),
                          void *arg, ddi_registration_id_t *id);
```

**Interface Level**  
Solaris DDI specific (Solaris DDI).

**Parameters**
- **dev_info_t *dip**  
  Device node registering the callback.

- **ddi_eventcookie_t cookie**  
  Cookie returned from call to `ddi_get_eventcookie(9F)`.

- **void (*handler)(dev_info_t *, ddi_eventcookie_t, void *, void *)**  
  Callback handler responsible for handling an NDI event service notification.

- **void *arg**  
  Pointer to opaque data supplied by the caller. Typically, this would be a pointer to the driver's softstate structure.

- **ddi_registration_id_t *id**  
  Pointer to registration ID where a unique registration id will be returned. Registration ID must be saved and used when calling `ddi_remove_event_handler(9F)` to unregister a callback.

**Description**  
The `ddi_add_event_handler()` function adds a callback handler to be invoked in the face of the event specified by `cookie`. The process of adding a callback handler is also known as subscribing to an event. Upon successful subscription, the handler will be invoked by the system when the event occurs. The handler can be unregistered by using `ddi_remove_event_handler(9F)`.

An instance of a driver can register multiple handlers for an event or a single handler for multiple events. Callback order is not defined and should assumed to be random.

The routine handler will be invoked with the following arguments:

- **dev_info_t *dip**  
  Device node requesting the notification.

- **ddi_eventcookie_t cookie**  
  Structure describing event that occurred.

- **void *arg**  
  Opaque data pointer provided, by the driver, during callback registration.

- **void *impl_data**  
  Pointer to event specific data defined by the framework which invokes the callback function.
ddi_add_event_handler(9F)

Return Values

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Return Value</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>DDI_SUCCESS</td>
<td>Callback handler registered successfully.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DDI_FAILURE</td>
<td>Failed to register callback handler. Possible reasons include lack of resources or a bad cookie.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Context

The ddi_add_event_handler() and handler() function can be called from user and kernel contexts only.

Attributes

See attributes(5) for a description of the following attributes:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ATTRIBUTE TYPE</th>
<th>ATTRIBUTE VALUE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Stability Level</td>
<td>Evolving</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

See Also

attributes(5), ddi_get_eventcookie(9F), ddi_remove_event_handler(9F)

Writing Device Drivers

Notes

Drivers must remove all registered callback handlers for a device instance by calling ddi_remove_event_handler(9F) before detach completes.
**Name**

ddi_add_intr, ddi_get_iblock_cookie, ddi_remove_intr – hardware interrupt handling routines

**Synopsis**

```c
#include <sys/types.h>
#include <sys/conf.h>
#include <sys/ddi.h>
#include <sys/sunddi.h>

int ddi_get_iblock_cookie(dev_info_t *dip, uint_t inumber, ddi_iblock_cookie_t *iblock_cookiep);
int ddi_add_intr(dev_info_t *dip, uint_t inumber, ddi_iblock_cookie_t *iblock_cookiep, ddi_idevice_cookie_t *idevice_cookiep, uint_t (*int_handler)(caddr_t), caddr_t int_handler_arg);
void ddi_remove_intr(dev_info_t *dip, uint_t inumber, ddi_iblock_cookie_t iblock_cookie);
```

**Interface Level**

Solaris DDI specific (Solaris DDI). These interfaces are obsolete. Use the new interrupt interfaces referenced in **Intro(9F)**. Refer to *Writing Device Drivers* for more information.

**Parameters**

For **ddi_get_iblock_cookie()**:

- `dip` Pointer to dev_info structure.
- `inumber` Interrupt number.
- `iblock_cookie` Pointer to an interrupt block cookie.

For **ddi_add_intr()**:

- `dip` Pointer to dev_info structure.
- `inumber` Interrupt number.
- `iblock_cookie` Optional pointer to an interrupt block cookie where a returned interrupt block cookie is stored.
- `idevice_cookie` Optional pointer to an interrupt device cookie where a returned interrupt device cookie is stored.
- `int_handler` Pointer to interrupt handler.
- `int_handler_arg` Argument for interrupt handler.

For **ddi_remove_intr()**:

- `dip` Pointer to dev_info structure.
- `inumber` Interrupt number.
- `iblock_cookie` Block cookie which identifies the interrupt handler to be removed.
Description

ddi_get_iblock_cookie() ddi_get_iblock_cookie() retrieves the interrupt block cookie associated with a particular interrupt specification. This routine should be called before ddi_add_intr() to retrieve the interrupt block cookie needed to initialize locks (mutex(9F), rwlock(9F)) used by the interrupt routine. The interrupt number inumber determines for which interrupt specification to retrieve the cookie. inumber is associated with information provided either by the device (see sbus(4)) or the hardware configuration file (see sysbus(4), isa(4), and driver.conf(4)). If only one interrupt is associated with the device, inumber should be 0.

On a successful return, *iblock_cookiep contains information needed for initializing locks associated with the interrupt specification corresponding to inumber (see mutex_init(9F) and rw_init(9F)). The driver can then initialize locks acquired by the interrupt routine before calling ddi_add_intr() which prevents a possible race condition where the driver’s interrupt handler is called immediately after the driver has called ddi_add_intr() but before the driver has initialized the locks. This may happen when an interrupt for a different device occurs on the same interrupt level. If the interrupt routine acquires the lock before the lock has been initialized, undefined behavior may result.

ddi_add_intr() ddi_add_intr() adds an interrupt handler to the system. The interrupt number inumber determines which interrupt the handler will be associated with. (Refer to ddi_get_iblock_cookie() above.)

On a successful return, iblock_cookiep contains information used for initializing locks associated with this interrupt specification (see mutex_init(9F) and rw_init(9F)). Note that the interrupt block cookie is usually obtained using ddi_get_iblock_cookie() to avoid the race conditions described above (refer to ddi_get_iblock_cookie() above). For this reason, iblock_cookiep is no longer useful and should be set to NULL.

On a successful return, idevice_cookiep contains a pointer to a ddi_idevice_cookie_t structure (see ddi_idevice_cookie(9S)) containing information useful for some devices that have programmable interrupts. If idevice_cookiep is set to NULL, no value is returned.

The routine intr_handler, with its argument int_handler_arg, is called upon receipt of the appropriate interrupt. The interrupt handler should return DDI_INTR_CLAIMED if the interrupt was claimed, DDI_INTR_UNCLAIMED otherwise.

If successful, ddi_add_intr() returns DDI_SUCCESS. If the interrupt information cannot be found on the sun4u architecture, either DDI_INTR_NOTFOUND or DDI_FAILURE can be returned. On i86pc and sun4m architectures, if the interrupt information cannot be found, DDI_INTR_NOTFOUND is returned.

ddi_remove_intr() ddi_remove_intr() removes an interrupt handler from the system. Unloadable drivers should call this routine during their detach(9E) routine to remove their interrupt handler from the system.
The device interrupt routine for this instance of the device will not execute after `ddi_remove_intr()` returns. `ddi_remove_intr()` may need to wait for the device interrupt routine to complete before returning. Therefore, locks acquired by the interrupt handler should not be held across the call to `ddi_remove_intr()` or deadlock may result.

For certain bus types, you can call these DDI functions from a high-interrupt context. These types include ISA and SBus buses. See `sysbus(4)`, `isa(4)`, and `sbus(4)` for details.

**Return Values**

`ddi_add_intr()` and `ddi_get_iblock_cookie()` return:

- **DDI_SUCCESS**: On success.
- **DDI_INTR_NOTFOUND**: On failure to find the interrupt.
- **DDI_FAILURE**: On failure. `DDI_FAILURE` can also be returned on failure to find interrupt (sun4u).

**Context**

`ddi_add_intr()`, `ddi_remove_intr()`, and `ddi_get_iblock_cookie()` can be called from user or kernel context.

**Attributes**

See `attributes(5)` for descriptions of the following attributes:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Attribute Type</th>
<th>Attribute Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Interface Stability</td>
<td>Obsolete</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**See Also**

- `driver.conf(4)`, `isa(4)`, `sbus(4)`, `sysbus(4)`, `attach(9E)`, `detach(9E)`, `ddi_intr_hilevel(9F)`, `mutex(9F)`, `mutex_init(9F)`, `rw_init(9F)`, `rwlock(9F)`, `ddi_idevice_cookie(9S)`

**Writing Device Drivers**

**Notes**

`ddi_get_iblock_cookie()` must not be called after the driver adds an interrupt handler for the interrupt specification corresponding to `inumber`.

All consumers of these interfaces, checking return codes, should verify `return_code != DDI_SUCCESS`. Checking for specific failure codes can result in inconsistent behaviors among platforms.

**Bugs**

The `idevice_cookie` should really point to a data structure that is specific to the bus architecture that the device operates on. Currently the SBus and PCI buses are supported and a single data structure is used to describe both.
ddi_add_softintr(9F)

Name  ddi_add_softintr, ddi_get_soft_iblock_cookie, ddi_remove_softintr, ddi_trigger_softintr –
software interrupt handling routines

Synopsis  #include <sys/types.h>
#include <sys/conf.h>
#include <sys/ddi.h>
#include <sys/sunddi.h>

int ddi_get_soft_iblock_cookie(dev_info_t * dip, int preference, ddi_iblock_cookie_t * iblock_cookiep);
int ddi_add_softintr(dev_info_t * dip, int preference, ddi_softintr_t * idp, ddi_iblock_cookie_t * iblock_cookiep, ddi_idevice_cookie_t * idevice_cookiep, uint_t (* int_handler)(caddr_t int_handler_arg), caddr_t int_handler_arg);
void ddi_remove_softintr(ddi_softintr_t id);
void ddi_trigger_softintr(ddi_softintr_t id);

Interface Level  Solaris DDI specific (Solaris DDI). These interfaces are obsolete. Use the new interrupt
interfaces referenced in Intro(9F). Refer to Writing Device Drivers for more information.

Parameters  ddi_get_soft_iblock_cookie()

dip  Pointer to a dev_info structure.
preference  The type of soft interrupt to retrieve the cookie for.
iblock_cookiep  Pointer to a location to store the interrupt block cookie.

ddi_add_softintr()

dip  Pointer to dev_info structure.
preference  A hint value describing the type of soft interrupt to generate.
idp  Pointer to a soft interrupt identifier where a returned soft interrupt
identifier is stored.
iblock_cookiep  Optional pointer to an interrupt block cookie where a returned interrupt
block cookie is stored.
device_cookiep  Optional pointer to an interrupt device cookie where a returned interrupt
device cookie is stored (not used).
int_handler  Pointer to interrupt handler.
int_handler_arg  Argument for interrupt handler.
ddi_remove_softintr()

*id*  The identifier specifying which soft interrupt handler to remove.

ddi_trigger_softintr()

*id*  The identifier specifying which soft interrupt to trigger and which soft interrupt handler will be called.

**Description**

For `ddi_get_soft_iblock_cookie()`:

`ddi_get_soft_iblock_cookie()` retrieves the interrupt block cookie associated with a particular soft interrupt preference level. This routine should be called before `ddi_add_softintr()` to retrieve the interrupt block cookie needed to initialize locks (mutex(9F), rwlock(9F)) used by the software interrupt routine. *preference* determines which type of soft interrupt to retrieve the cookie for. The possible values for *preference* are:

- **DDI_SOFTINT_LOW**  Low priority soft interrupt.
- **DDI_SOFTINT_MED**  Medium priority soft interrupt.
- **DDI_SOFTINT_HIGH**  High priority soft interrupt.

On a successful return, *iblock_cookiep* contains information needed for initializing locks associated with this soft interrupt (see mutex(9F) and rw_init(9F)). The driver can then initialize mutexes acquired by the interrupt routine before calling `ddi_add_softintr()` which prevents a possible race condition where the driver's soft interrupt handler is called immediately after the driver has called `ddi_add_softintr()` but before the driver has initialized the mutexes. This can happen when a soft interrupt for a different device occurs on the same soft interrupt priority level. If the soft interrupt routine acquires the mutex before it has been initialized, undefined behavior may result.

For `ddi_add_softintr()`:

`ddi_add_softintr()` adds a soft interrupt to the system. The user specified hint *preference* identifies three suggested levels for the system to attempt to allocate the soft interrupt priority at. The value for *preference* should be the same as that used in the corresponding call to `ddi_get_soft_iblock_cookie()`. Refer to the description of `ddi_get_soft_iblock_cookie()` above.

The value returned in the location pointed at by *idp* is the soft interrupt identifier. This value is used in later calls to `ddi_remove_softintr()` and `ddi_trigger_softintr()` to identify the soft interrupt and the soft interrupt handler.

The value returned in the location pointed at by *iblock_cookiep* is an interrupt block cookie which contains information used for initializing mutexes associated with this soft interrupt (see mutex_init(9F) and rw_init(9F)). Note that the interrupt block cookie is normally obtained using `ddi_get_soft_iblock_cookie()` to avoid the race conditions described.
above (refer to the description of ddi_get_soft_iblock_cookie() above). For this reason, iblock_cookiep is no longer useful and should be set to NULL.

idevice_cookiep is not used and should be set to NULL.

The routine int_handler, with its argument int_handler_arg, is called upon receipt of a software interrupt. Software interrupt handlers must not assume that they have work to do when they run, since (like hardware interrupt handlers) they may run because a soft interrupt occurred for some other reason. For example, another driver may have triggered a soft interrupt at the same level. For this reason, before triggering the soft interrupt, the driver must indicate to its soft interrupt handler that it should do work. This is usually done by setting a flag in the state structure. The routine int_handler checks this flag, reachable through int_handler_arg, to determine if it should claim the interrupt and do its work.

The interrupt handler must return DDI_INTR_CLAIMED if the interrupt was claimed, DDI_INTR_UNCLAIMED otherwise.

If successful, ddi_add_softintr() will return DDI_SUCCESS; if the interrupt information cannot be found, it will return DDI_FAILURE.

For ddi_remove_softintr():

ddi_remove_softintr() removes a soft interrupt from the system. The soft interrupt identifier id, which was returned from a call to ddi_add_softintr(), is used to determine which soft interrupt and which soft interrupt handler to remove. Drivers must remove any soft interrupt handlers before allowing the system to unload the driver.

For ddi_trigger_softintr():

ddi_trigger_softintr() triggers a soft interrupt. The soft interrupt identifier id is used to determine which soft interrupt to trigger. This function is used by device drivers when they wish to trigger a soft interrupt which has been set up using ddi_add_softintr().

Return Values  ddi_add_softintr() and ddi_get_soft_iblock_cookie() return:

DDI_SUCCESS    on success
DDI_FAILURE    on failure

Context  These functions can be called from user or kernel context. ddi_trigger_softintr() may be called from high-level interrupt context as well.

Examples  EXAMPLE 1  device using high-level interrupts

In the following example, the device uses high-level interrupts. High-level interrupts are those that interrupt at the level of the scheduler and above. High level interrupts must be handled without using system services that manipulate thread or process states, because these
EXAMPLE 1  device using high-level interrupts  (Continued)

interrupts are not blocked by the scheduler. In addition, high level interrupt handlers must
take care to do a minimum of work because they are not preemptable. See
ddi_intr_hilevel(9F).

In the example, the high-level interrupt routine minimally services the device, and enqueues
the data for later processing by the soft interrupt handler. If the soft interrupt handler is not
currently running, the high-level interrupt routine triggers a soft interrupt so the soft
interrupt handler can process the data. Once running, the soft interrupt handler processes all
the enqueued data before returning.

The state structure contains two mutexes. The high-level mutex is used to protect data shared
between the high-level interrupt handler and the soft interrupt handler. The low-level mutex
is used to protect the rest of the driver from the soft interrupt handler.

struct xxstate {
    ...
    ddi_softintr_t id;
    ddi_iblock_cookie_t high_iblock_cookie;
    kmutex_t high_mutex;
    ddi_iblock_cookie_t low_iblock_cookie;
    kmutex_t low_mutex;
    int softint_running;
    ...
};
struct xxstate *xsp;
static uint_t xxsoftintr(caddr_t);
static uint_t xxhighintr(caddr_t);

EXAMPLE 2  sample attach() routine

The following code fragment would usually appear in the driver’s attach(9E) routine.
ddi_add_intr(9F) is used to add the high-level interrupt handler and ddi_add_softintr() is
used to add the low-level interrupt routine.

static uint_t
xxattach(dev_info_t *dip, ddi_attach_cmd_t cmd)
{
    struct xxstate *xsp;
    ...
    /* get high-level iblock cookie */
    if (ddi_get_iblock_cookie(dip, inumber,
        &xsp->high_iblock_cookie) != DDI_SUCCESS) {
        /* clean up */
        return (DDI_FAILURE); /* fail attach */
    }
EXAMPLE 2  sample attach() routine  (Continued)

/* initialize high-level mutex */
mutex_init(&xsp->high_mutex, "xx high mutex", MUTEX_DRIVER,
(void *)xsp->high_iblock_cookie);

/* add high-level routine - xxhighintr() */
if (ddi_add_intr(dip, inumber, NULL, NULL,
xxhighintr, (caddr_t) xsp) != DDI_SUCCESS) {
    /* cleanup */
    return (DDI_FAILURE); /* fail attach */
}

/* get soft iblock cookie */
if (ddi_get_soft_iblock_cookie(dip, DDI_SOFTINT_MED,
&xsp->low_iblock_cookie) != DDI_SUCCESS) {
    /* cleanup */
    return (DDI_FAILURE); /* fail attach */
}

/* initialize low-level mutex */
mutex_init(&xsp->low_mutex, "xx low mutex", MUTEX_DRIVER,
(void *)xsp->low_iblock_cookie);

/* add low level routine - xxsoftintr() */
if ( ddi_add_softintr(dip, DDI_SOFTINT_MED, &xsp->id,
NULL, NULL, xxsoftintr, (caddr_t) xsp) != DDI_SUCCESS) {
    /* cleanup */
    return (DDI_FAILURE); /* fail attach */
}

EXAMPLE 3  High-level interrupt routine

The next code fragment represents the high-level interrupt routine. The high-level interrupt routine minimally services the device, and enqueues the data for later processing by the soft interrupt routine. If the soft interrupt routine is not already running, ddi_trigger_softintr() is called to start the routine. The soft interrupt routine will run until there is no more data on the queue.

static uint_t
xxhighintr(caddr_t arg)
{
    struct xxstate *xsp = (struct xxstate *) arg;
    int need_softint;
EXAMPLE 3  High-level interrupt routine  (Continued)

    . . .
    mutex_enter(&xsp->high_mutex);
    /*
    * Verify this device generated the interrupt
    * and disable the device interrupt.
    * Enqueue data for xxsoftintr() processing.
    */

    /* is xxsoftintr() already running? */
    if (xsp->softint_running)
        need_softint = 0;
    else
        need_softint = 1;
    mutex_exit(&xsp->high_mutex);

    /* read-only access to xsp->id, no mutex needed */
    if (need_softint)
        ddi_trigger_softintr(xsp->id);
    . . .
    return (DDI_INTR_CLAIMED);

static uint_t
xxsoftintr(caddr_t arg)
{
    struct xxstate *xsp = (struct xxstate *) arg;
    . . .
    mutex_enter(&xsp->low_mutex);
    mutex_enter(&xsp->high_mutex);

    /* verify there is work to do */
    if (work queue empty || xsp->softint_running) {
        mutex_exit(&xsp->high_mutex);
        mutex_exit(&xsp->low_mutex);
        return (DDI_INTR_UNCLAIMED);
    }

    xsp->softint_running = 1;

    while ( data on queue ) {
        ASSERT(mutex_owned(&xsp->high_mutex));

        /* de-queue data */
        mutex_exit(&xsp->high_mutex);
EXAMPLE 3 High-level interrupt routine  (Continued)

/* Process data on queue */

mutex_enter(&xsp->high_mutex);
}

xsp->softint_running = 0;
mutex_exit(&xsp->high_mutex);
mutex_exit(&xsp->low_mutex);

return (DDI_INTRCLAIMED);
}

Attributes  See attributes(5) for descriptions of the following attributes:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ATTRIBUTE TYPE</th>
<th>ATTRIBUTE VALUE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Interface Stability</td>
<td>Obsolete</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

See Also  ddi_add_intr(9F), ddi_in_panic(9F), ddi_intr_hilevel(9F), ddi_remove_intr(9F), Intro(9F), mutex_init(9F)

Writing Device Drivers

Notes  ddi_add_softintr() may not be used to add the same software interrupt handler more than once. This is true even if a different value is used for int_handler_arg in each of the calls to ddi_add_softintr(). Instead, the argument passed to the interrupt handler should indicate what service(s) the interrupt handler should perform. For example, the argument could be a pointer to the device's soft state structure, which could contain a 'which_service' field that the handler examines. The driver must set this field to the appropriate value before calling ddi_trigger_softintr().
Name  
ddi_binding_name, ddi_get_name – return driver binding name

Synopsis  
#include <sys/ddi.h>
#include <sys/sunddi.h>

char *ddi_binding_name(dev_info_t *dip);
char *ddi_get_name(dev_info_t *dip);

Interface Level  
Solaris DDI specific (Solaris DDI).

Parameters  
dip  
A pointer to the device’s dev_info structure.

Description  
ddi_binding_name() and ddi_get_name() return the driver binding name. This is the name used to select a driver for the device. This name is typically derived from the device name property or the device compatible property. The name returned may be a driver alias or the driver name.

Return Values  
ddi_binding_name() and ddi_get_name() return the name used to bind a driver to a device.

Context  
ddi_binding_name() and ddi_get_name() can be called from user, kernel, or interrupt context.

See Also  
ddi_node_name(9F)

Writing Device Drivers

Warnings  
The name returned by ddi_binding_name() and ddi_get_name() is read-only.
Name  ddi_btop, ddi_btopr, ddi_ptob – page size conversions

Synopsis  #include <sys/ddi.h>
#include <sys/sunddi.h>

unsigned long ddi_btop(dev_info_t *dip, unsigned long bytes);
unsigned long ddi_btopr(dev_info_t *dip, unsigned long bytes);
unsigned long ddi_ptob(dev_info_t *dip, unsigned long pages);

Interface Level  Solaris DDI specific (Solaris DDI).

Description  This set of routines use the parent nexus driver to perform conversions in page size units.

The ddi_btop() function converts the given number of bytes to the number of memory pages that it corresponds to, rounding down in the case that the byte count is not a page multiple.

The ddi_btopr() function converts the given number of bytes to the number of memory pages that it corresponds to, rounding up in the case that the byte count is not a page multiple.

The ddi_ptob() function converts the given number of pages to the number of bytes that it corresponds to.

Because bus nexus may possess their own hardware address translation facilities, these routines should be used in preference to the corresponding DDI/DKI routines btop(9F), btopr(9F), and ptob(9F), which only deal in terms of the pagesize of the main system MMU.

Return Values  The ddi_btop() and ddi_btopr() functions return the number of corresponding pages. ddi_ptob() returns the corresponding number of bytes. There are no error return values.

Context  This function can be called from user, interrupt, or kernel context.

Examples  EXAMPLE 1  Find the size (in bytes) of one page
           pagesize = ddi_ptob(dip, 1L);

See Also  btop(9F), btopr(9F), ptob(9F)

Writing Device Drivers
ddi_can_receive_sig() - Test for ability to receive signals

Synopsis

```c
#include <sys/ddi.h>
#include <sys/sunddi.h>

boolean_t ddi_can_receive_sig(void);
```

Interface Level

Solaris DDI specific (Solaris DDI).

Parameters

None.

Description

The `ddi_can_receive_sig()` function returns a boolean value indicating whether the current thread can receive signals sent by `kill(2)`. If the return value is `B_FALSE`, then the calling thread cannot receive signals, and any call to `qwait_sig(9F), cv_wait_sig(9F),` or `cv_timedwait_sig(9F)` implicitly becomes `qwait(9F), cv_wait(9F),` or `cv_timedwait(9F),` respectively. Drivers that can block indefinitely awaiting an event should use this function to determine if additional means (such as `timeout(9F)`) may be necessary to avoid creating unkillable threads.

Return Values

- **B_FALSE**  The calling thread is in a state in which signals cannot be received. For example, the thread is not associated with a user process or is in the midst of `exit(2)` handling.
- **B_TRUE**   The calling thread may receive a signal while blocked on a condition variable. Note that this function does not check to determine whether signals are blocked (see `sigprocmask(2)`).

Context

The `ddi_can_receive_sig()` function may be called from user, kernel, or interrupt context.

See Also

`close(9E), cv_wait(9F), qwait(9F)`
ddi_cb_register, ddi_cb_unregister – register and unregister a device driver callback handler

#include <sys/sunddi.h>

int ddi_cb_register(dev_info_t *dip, ddi_cb_flags_t flags, ddi_cb_func_t cbfunc, void *arg1, void *arg2, ddi_cb_handle_t *ret_hdlp);

int ddi_cb_unregister(ddi_cb_handle_t hdl);

Solaris DDI specific (Solaris DDI).

ddi_cb_register()

Parameters

- **dip**  
  Pointer to the dev_info structure.

- **flags**  
  Flags to determine which callback events can be handled.

- **cbfunc**  
  Callback handler function.

- **arg1**  
  First argument to the callback handler.

- **arg2**  
  Second (optional) argument to the callback handler.

- **ret_hdlp**  
  Pointer to return a handle to the registered callback.

ddi_cb_unregister()

Parameters

- **hdl**  
  Handle to the registered callback handler that is to be unregistered.

Description

The ddi_cb_register() function installs a callback handler which processes various actions that require the driver's attention while it is attached. The driver specifies which callback actions it can handle through the flags parameter. With each relevant action, the specified callback function passes the arg1 and arg2 arguments along with the description of each callback event to the driver.

The ddi_cb_unregister() function removes a previously installed callback handler and prevents future processing of actions.

The flags parameter consists of the following:

- **DDI_CB_FLAG_INTR**  
  The device driver participates in interrupt resource management. The device driver may receive additional interrupt resources from the system, but only because it can accept callback notices informing it when it has more or less resources available. Callback notices can occur at anytime after the driver is attached. Interrupt availability varies based on the overall needs of the system.

The cbfunc is a callback handler with the following prototype:
typedef int (*ddi_cb_func_t)(dev_info_t *dip,
        ddi_action_t action, void *cbarg,
        void *arg1, void *arg2);

The cbfunc routine with the arguments dip, action, cbarg, arg1 and arg2 is called upon receipt of any callbacks for which the driver is registered. The callback handler returns DDI_SUCCESS if the callback was handled successfully, DDI_ENOTSUP if it received a callback action that it did not know how to process, or DDI_FAILURE if it has an internal failure while processing an action.

The action parameter can be one of the following:

- **DDI_CB_INTR_ADD**: For interrupt resource management, the driver has more available interrupts. The driver can allocate more interrupt vectors and then set up more interrupt handling functions by using `ddi_intr_alloc(9F)`.

- **DDI_CB_INTR_REMOVE**: For interrupt resource management, the driver has fewer available interrupts. The driver must release any previously allocated interrupts in excess of what is now available by using `ddi_intr_free(9F)`.

The cbarg parameter points to an action-specific argument. Each class of registered actions specifies its own data structure that a callback handler should dereference when it receives those actions.

The cbarg parameter is defined as an integer in the case of DDI_CB_INTR_ADD and DDI_CB_INTR_REMOVE actions. The callback handler should cast the cbarg parameter to an integer. The integer represents how many interrupts have been added or removed from the total number available to the device driver.

If a driver participates in interrupt resource management, it must register a callback with the DDI_CB_FLAG_INTR flag. The driver then receives the actions DDI_CB_INTR_ADD and DDI_CB_INTR_REMOVE whenever its interrupt availability has changed. The callback handler should use the interrupt functions `ddi_intr_alloc(9F)` and `ddi_intr_free(9F)` functions to respond accordingly. A driver is not required to allocate all interrupts that are available to it, but it is required to manage its allocations so that it never uses more interrupts than are currently available.

**Return Values**  
The ddi_cb_register() and ddi_cb_unregister() functions return:

- **DDI_SUCCESS** on success
- **DDI_EINVAL** An invalid parameter was given when registering a callback handler, or an invalid handle was given when unregistering.
- **DDI_EALREADY** An attempt was made to register a callback handler while a previous registration still exists.
The `cbfunc` routine must return:

- `DDI_SUCCESS` on success
- `DDI_ENOTSUP` The device does not support the operation
- `DDI_FAILURE` Implementation specific failure

**Context** These functions can be called from kernel, non-interrupt context.

**Examples**

**EXAMPLE 1** `ddi_cb_register`

```c
/*
 * attach(9F) routine.
 *
 * Creates soft state, registers callback handler, initializes
 * hardware, and sets up interrupt handling for the driver.
 */
xx_attach(dev_info_t *dip, ddi_attach_cmd_t cmd)
{
    xx_state_t *statep = NULL;
    xx_intr_t *intrs = NULL;
    ddi_intr_handle_t *hdls;
    ddi_cb_handle_t cb_hdl;
    int instance;
    int type;
    int types;
    int nintrs;
    int nactual;
    int inum;

    /* Get device instance */
    instance = ddi_get_instance(dip);

    switch (cmd) {
    case DDI_ATTACH:
        /* Get soft state */
        if (ddi_soft_state_zalloc(state_list, instance) != 0)
            return (DDI_FAILURE);
        statep = ddi_get_soft_state(state_list, instance);
        ddi_set_driver_private(dip, (caddr_t)statep);
        statep->dip = dip;

        /* Initialize hardware */
        xx_initialize(statep);

        /* Register callback handler */
        if (ddi_cb_register(dip, DDI_CB_FLAG_INTR, xx_cbf, cb_hdl, instance)
```
EXAMPLE 1  ddi_cb_register  (Continued)

    statep, NULL, &cb_hdl) != 0) {
        ddi_soft_state_free(state_list, instance);
        return (DDI_FAILURE);
    }
    statep->cb_hdl = cb_hdl;

    /* Select interrupt type */
    ddi_intr_get_supported_types(dip, &types);
    if (types & DDI_INTR_TYPE_MSIX) {
        type = DDI_INTR_TYPE_MSIX;
    } else if (types & DDI_INTR_TYPE_MSI) {
        type = DDI_INTR_TYPE_MSI;
    } else {
        type = DDI_INTR_TYPE_FIXED;
    }
    statep->type = type;

    /* Get number of supported interrupts */
    ddi_intr_get_nintrs(dip, type, &nintrs);

    /* Allocate interrupt handle array */
    statep->hdls_size = nintrs * sizeof (ddi_intr_handle_t);
    hdls = kmem_zalloc(statep->hdls_size, KMEM_SLEEP);

    /* Allocate interrupt setup array */
    statep->intrs_size = nintrs * sizeof (xx_intr_t);
    statep->intrs = kmem_zalloc(statep->intrs_size, KMEM_SLEEP);

    /* Allocate interrupt vectors */
    ddi_intr_alloc(dip, hdls, type, 0, nintrs, &nactual, 0);
    statep->nactual = nactual;

    /* Configure interrupt handling */
    xx_setup_interrupts(statep, nactual, statep->intrs);

    /* Install and enable interrupt handlers */
    for (inum = 0; inum < nactual; inum++) {
        ddi_intr_add_handler(&statep->hdls[inum],
            statep->intrs[inum].inhandler,
            statep->intrs[inum].arg1,
            statep->intrs[inum].arg2);
        ddi_intr_enable(statep->hdls[inum]);
    }
break;

case DDI_RESUME:
/* Get soft state */
    statep = ddi_get_soft_state(state_list, instance);
    if (statep == NULL)
        return (DDI_FAILURE);
/* Resume hardware */
    xx_resume(statep);
    break;
}

    return (DDI_SUCCESS);
}

/* detach(9F) routine.
 * Stops the hardware, disables interrupt handling, unregisters
 * a callback handler, and destroys the soft state for the driver.
 */
xx_detach(dev_info_t *dip, ddi_detach_cmd_t cmd)
{
    xx_state_t *statep = NULL;
    int instance;
    int inum;

    /* Get device instance */
    instance = ddi_get_instance(dip);

    switch (cmd) {
    case DDI_DETACH:
        /* Get soft state */
        statep = ddi_get_soft_state(state_list, instance);
        if (statep == NULL)
            return (DDI_FAILURE);
        /* Stop device */
        xx_uninitialize(statep);
/* Disable and free interrupts */
for (inum = 0; inum < statep->nactual; inum++) {
    ddi_intr_disable(statep->hdls[inum]);
    ddi_intr_remove_handler(statep->hdls[inum]);
    ddi_intr_free(statep->hdls[inum]);
}

/* Unregister callback handler */
ddi_cb_unregister(statep->cb_hdl);

/* Free interrupt handle array */
kmem_free(statep->hdls, statep->hdls_size);

/* Free interrupt setup array */
kmem_free(statep->intrs, statep->intrs_size);

/* Free soft state */
ddi_soft_state_free(state_list, instance);
break;

case DDI_SUSPEND:
    /* Get soft state */
    statep = ddi_get_soft_state(state_list, instance);
    if (statep == NULL)
        return (DDI_FAILURE);

    /* Suspend hardware */
    xx_quiesce(statep);
    break;
}

return (DDI_SUCCESS);
}

/* (*ddi_cbfunc)() routine.
*  * Adapt interrupt usage when availability changes.
*/
int
xx_cbfunc(dev_info_t *dip, ddi_cb_action_t cbaction, void *cbarg,
            void *arg1, void *arg2)
EXAMPLE 1  ddi_cb_register  (Continued)

{
    xx_state_t *statep = (xx_state_t *)arg1;
    int count;
    int inum;
    int nactual;

    switch (cbaction) {
    case DDI_CB_INTR_ADD:
    case DDI_CB_INTR_REMOVE:
        /* Get change in availability */
        count = (int)(uintptr_t)cbarg;

        /* Suspend hardware */
        xx_quiesce(statep);

        /* Tear down previous interrupt handling */
        for (inum = 0; inum < statep->nactual; inum++) {
            ddi_intr_disable(statep->hdls[inum]);
            ddi_intr_remove_handler(statep->hdls[inum]);
        }

        /* Adjust interrupt vector allocations */
        if (cbaction == DDI_CB_INTR_ADD) {
            /* Allocate additional interrupt vectors */
            ddi_intr_alloc(dip, statep->hdls, statep->type,
                            statep->nactual, count, &nactual, 0);

            /* Update actual count of available interrupts */
            statep->nactual += nactual;
        } else {
            /* Free removed interrupt vectors */
            for (inum = statep->nactual - count;
                 inum < statep->nactual; inum++) {
                ddi_intr_free(statep->hdls[inum]);
            }

            /* Update actual count of available interrupts */
            statep->nactual -= count;
        }

        /* Configure interrupt handling */
EXAMPLE 1  ddi_cb_register  (Continued)

    xx_setup_interrupts(statep, statep->nactual, statep->intrs);

    /* Install and enable interrupt handlers */
    for (inum = 0; inum < statep->nactual; inum++) {
        ddi_intr_add_handler(&statep->hdls[inum],
            statep->intrs[inum].inthandler,
            statep->intrs[inum].arg1,
            statep->intrs[inum].arg2);
        ddi_intr_enable(statep->hdls[inum]);
    }

    /* Resume hardware */
    xx_resume(statep);

    break;

default:
    return (DDI_ENOTSUP);
}

return (DDI_SUCCESS);

Attributes  See attributes(5) for descriptions of the following attributes:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ATTRIBUTE TYPE</th>
<th>ATTRIBUTE VALUE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Interface Stability</td>
<td>Private</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MT-Level</td>
<td>Unsafe</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

See Also  attributes(5), ddi_intr_alloc(9F), ddi_intr_free(9F), ddi_intr_set_nreq(9F)

Notes  Users of these interfaces that register for DDI_CB_FLAG_INTR become participants in interrupt
resource management. With that participation comes a responsibility to properly adjust
interrupt usage. In the case of a DDI_CB_INTR_ADD action, the system guarantees that a driver
can allocate a total number of interrupt resources up to its new number of available interrupts.
The total number of interrupt resources is the sum of all resources allocated by the function
ddi_intr_alloc(9F), minus all previously released by the function ddi_intr_free(9F). In
the case of a DDI_CB_INTR_REMOVE action, the driver might have more interrupts allocated
than are now currently available. It is necessary for the driver to release the excess interrupts,
or it will have a negative impact on the interrupt availability for other drivers in the system.

A failure to release interrupts in response to a DDI_CB_INTR_REMOVE callback generates the
following warning on the system console:
WARNING: <driver><instance>: failed to release interrupts for
IRM (nintrs = ##, navail=##).

Participation in interrupt resource management ends when a driver uses the
ddi_cb_unregister() function to unregister its callback function. The callback function
must still operate properly until after the call to the ddi_cb_unregister() function
completes. If addinterrupts were given to the driver because of its participation, then a final
use of the callback function occurs to release the additional interrupts. The call to the
ddi_cb_unregister() function blocks until the final use of the registered callback function is
finished.
ddi_check_acc_handle() and ddi_check_dma_handle() functions check for faults that can interfere with communication between a driver and the device it controls. Each function checks a single handle of a specific type and returns a status value indicating whether faults affecting the resource mapped by the supplied handle have been detected.

If a fault is indicated when checking a data access handle, this implies that the driver is no longer able to access the mapped registers or memory using programmed I/O through that handle. Typically, this might occur after the device has failed to respond to an I/O access (for example, has incurred a bus error or timed out). The effect of programmed I/O accesses made after this happens is undefined; for example, read accesses (for example, ddi_get8(9F)) may return random values, and write accesses (for example, ddi_put8(9F)) may or may not have any effect. This type of fault is normally fatal to the operation of the device, and the driver should report it via ddi_dev_report_fault(9F) specifying DDI_SERVICE_LOST for the impact, and DDI_DATAPATH_FAULT for the location.

If a fault is indicated when checking a DMA handle, it implies that a fault has been detected that has (or will) affect DMA transactions between the device and the memory currently bound to the handle (or most recently bound, if the handle is currently unbound). Possible causes include the failure of a component in the DMA data path, or an attempt by the device to make an invalid DMA access. The driver may be able to continue by falling back to a non-DMA mode of operation, but in general, DMA faults are non-recoverable. The contents of the memory currently (or previously) bound to the handle should be regarded as indeterminate. The fault indication associated with the current transaction is lost once the handle is (re-)bound, but because the fault may persist, future DMA operations may not succeed.
Note – Some implementations cannot detect all types of failure. If a fault is not indicated, this does not constitute a guarantee that communication is possible. However, if a check fails, this is a positive indication that a problem *does* exist with respect to communication using that handle.

Return Values The `ddi_check_acc_handle()` and `ddi_check_dma_handle()` functions return `DDI_SUCCESS` if no faults affecting the supplied handle are detected and `DDI_FAILURE` if any fault affecting the supplied handle is detected.

Examples static int xxattach(dev_info_t *dip, ddi_attach_cmd_t cmd)
{
    /* This driver uses only a single register-access handle */
    status = ddi_regs_map_setup(dip, REGSET_ZERO, &regaddr,
        0, 0, &acc_attr, &acc_hdl);
    if (status != DDI_SUCCESS)
        return (DDI_FAILURE);
    \&...
}

static int xxread(dev_t dev, struct uio *uio_p, cred_t *cred_p)
{
    if (ddi_check_acc_handle(acc_hdl) != DDI_SUCCESS) {
        ddi_dev_report_fault(dip, DDI_SERVICE_LOST,
            DDI_DATAPATH_FAULT, "register access fault during read");
        return (EIO);
    }
    \&...

Context The `ddi_check_acc_handle()` and `ddi_check_dma_handle()` functions may be called from user, kernel, or interrupt context.

See Also `ddi_regs_map_setup(9F)`, `ddi_dma_setup(9F)`, `ddi_dev_report_fault(9F)`, `ddi_get8(9F)`, `ddi_put8(9F)`
ddi_copyin(9F)

**Name**

ddi_copyin – copy data to a driver buffer

**Synopsis**

```
#include <sys/types.h>
#include <sys/ddi.h>
#include <sys/sunddi.h>

int ddi_copyin(const void *buf, void *driverbuf, size_t cn, int flags);
```

**Interface Level**

Solaris DDI specific (Solaris DDI).

**Parameters**

- `buf` Source address from which data is transferred.
- `driverbuf` Driver destination address to which data is transferred.
- `cn` Number of bytes transferred.
- `flags` Set of flag bits that provide address space information about `buf`.

**Description**

This routine is designed for use in driver `ioctl(9E)` routines for drivers that support layered `ioctl`s. `ddi_copyin()` copies data from a source address to a driver buffer. The driver developer must ensure that adequate space is allocated for the destination address.

The `flags` argument determines the address space information about `buf`. If the FKIOCCTL flag is set, this indicates that `buf` is a kernel address, and `ddi_copyin()` behaves like `bcopy(9F)`. Otherwise, `buf` is interpreted as a user buffer address, and `ddi_copyin()` behaves like `copyin(9F)`.

Addresses that are word-aligned are moved most efficiently. However, the driver developer is not obliged to ensure alignment. This function automatically finds the most efficient move according to address alignment.

**Return Values**

`ddi_copyin()` returns 0, indicating a successful copy. It returns −1 if one of the following occurs:

- Paging fault; the driver tried to access a page of memory for which it did not have read or write access.
- Invalid user address, such as a user area or stack area.
- Invalid address that would have resulted in data being copied into the user block.
- Hardware fault; a hardware error prevented access to the specified user memory. For example, an uncorrectable parity or ECC error occurred.

If −1 is returned to the caller, driver entry point routines should return EFAULT.

**Context**

`ddi_copyin()` can be called from user or kernel context only.
A driver `ioctl(9E)` routine (line 12) can be used to get or set device attributes or registers. For the `XX_SETREGS` condition (line 25), the driver copies the user data in `arg` to the device registers. If the specified argument contains an invalid address, an error code is returned.

```c
struct device { /* layout of physical device registers */
    int control; /* physical device control word */
    int status; /* physical device status word */
    short recv_char; /* receive character from device */
    short xmit_char; /* transmit character to device */
};

struct device_state {
    volatile struct device *regsp; /* pointer to device registers */
    kmutex_t reg_mutex; /* protect device registers */
    ...
};

static void *statep; /* for soft state routines */

xxioctl(dev_t dev, int cmd, int arg, int mode,
        cred_t *cred_p, int *rval_p)
{
    struct device_state *sp;
    volatile struct device *rp;
    struct device reg_buf; /* temporary buffer for registers */
    int instance;

    instance = getminor(dev);
    sp = ddi_get_soft_state(statep, instance);
    if (sp == NULL)
        return (ENXIO);
    rp = sp->regsp;

    switch (cmd) {
    case XX_GETREGS: /* copy data to temp. regs. buf */
        if (ddi_copyin(arg, &reg_buf,
                      sizeof (struct device), mode) != 0) {
            return (EFAULT);
        }
        mutex_enter(&sp->reg_mutex);
        /* Copy data from temporary device register
        * buffer to device registers.
        * e.g. rp->control = reg_buf.control;
        */
```
EXAMPLE 1 ddi_copyin() example (Continued)

36      mutex_exit(&sp->reg_mutex);
37      break;
38  }
39 }

See Also ioctl(9E), bcopy(9F), copyin(9F), copyout(9F), ddi_copyout(9F), uiomove(9F)

Writing Device Drivers

Notes The value of the flags argument to ddi_copyin() should be passed through directly from the
mode argument of ioctl() untranslated.

Driver defined locks should not be held across calls to this function.

ddi_copyin() should not be used from a streams driver. See M_COPYIN and M_COPYOUT in
STREAMS Programming Guide.
**ddi_copyout(9F)**

**Name**
ddi_copyout – copy data from a driver

**Synopsis**
```
#include <sys/types.h>
#include <sys/ddi.h>
#include <sys/sunddi.h>

int ddi_copyout(const void *driverbuf, void *buf, size_t cn, int flags);
```

**Interface Level**
Solaris DDI specific (Solaris DDI).

**Parameters**
- **driverbuf**  Source address in the driver from which the data is transferred.
- **buf**  Destination address to which the data is transferred.
- **cn**  Number of bytes to copy.
- **flags**  Set of flag bits that provide address space information about **buf**.

**Description**
This routine is designed for use in driver ioctl(9E) routines for drivers that support layered ioctls. `ddi_copyout()` copies data from a driver buffer to a destination address, **buf**.

The **flags** argument determines the address space information about **buf**. If the FKI0CTL flag is set, this indicates that **buf** is a kernel address, and `ddi_copyout()` behaves like `bcopy(9F)`. Otherwise, **buf** is interpreted as a user buffer address, and `ddi_copyout()` behaves like `copyout(9F)`.

Addresses that are word-aligned are moved most efficiently. However, the driver developer is not obliged to ensure alignment. This function automatically finds the most efficient move algorithm according to address alignment.

**Return Values**
Under normal conditions, 0 is returned to indicate a successful copy. Otherwise, −1 is returned if one of the following occurs:

- Paging fault; the driver tried to access a page of memory for which it did not have read or write access.
- Invalid user address, such as a user area or stack area.
- Invalid address that would have resulted in data being copied into the user block.
- Hardware fault; a hardware error prevented access to the specified user memory. For example, an uncorrectable parity or ECC error occurred.

If −1 is returned to the caller, driver entry point routines should return EFAULT.

**Context**
`ddi_copyout()` can be called from user or kernel context only.
A driver `ioctl(9E)` routine (line 12) can be used to get or set device attributes or registers. In the `XX_GETREGS` condition (line 25), the driver copies the current device register values to another data area. If the specified argument contains an invalid address, an error code is returned.

```c
1 struct device { /* layout of physical device registers */
2     int control;  /* physical device control word */
3     int status;  /* physical device status word */
4     short recv_char; /* receive character from device */
5     short xmit_char; /* transmit character to device */
6 };

7 struct device_state {
8     volatile struct device *regsp; /* pointer to device registers */
9     kmutex_t reg_mutex;     /* protect device registers */
10 };

11 static void *statep; /* for soft state routines */

12 xxioctl(dev_t dev, int cmd, int arg, int mode,
13          cred_t *cred_p, int *rval_p)
14 {
15     struct device_state *sp;
16     volatile struct device *rp;
17     struct device reg_buf; /* temporary buffer for registers */
18     int instance;

19     instance = getminor(dev);
20     sp = ddi_get_soft_state(statep, instance);
21     if (sp == NULL)
22         return (ENXIO);
23     rp = sp->regsp;
24     ...  

25     case XX_GETREGS: /* copy registers to arg */
26         mutex_enter(&sp->reg_mutex);
27         /*
28            * Copy data from device registers to
29            * temporary device register buffer
30            * e.g. reg_buf.control = rp->control;
31            */
32         mutex_exit(&sp->reg_mutex);
33         if (ddi_copyout(&reg_buf, arg,
34                           sizeof (struct device), mode) != 0) {
```

Examples

**EXAMPLE 1 ddi_copyout() example**

A driver `ioctl(9E)` routine (line 12) can be used to get or set device attributes or registers. In the `XX_GETREGS` condition (line 25), the driver copies the current device register values to another data area. If the specified argument contains an invalid address, an error code is returned.

```c
1 struct device { /* layout of physical device registers */
2     int control;  /* physical device control word */
3     int status;  /* physical device status word */
4     short recv_char; /* receive character from device */
5     short xmit_char; /* transmit character to device */
6 };

7 struct device_state {
8     volatile struct device *regsp; /* pointer to device registers */
9     kmutex_t reg_mutex;     /* protect device registers */
10 };

11 static void *statep; /* for soft state routines */

12 xxioctl(dev_t dev, int cmd, int arg, int mode,
13          cred_t *cred_p, int *rval_p)
14 {
15     struct device_state *sp;
16     volatile struct device *rp;
17     struct device reg_buf; /* temporary buffer for registers */
18     int instance;

19     instance = getminor(dev);
20     sp = ddi_get_soft_state(statep, instance);
21     if (sp == NULL)
22         return (ENXIO);
23     rp = sp->regsp;
24     ...

25     case XX_GETREGS: /* copy registers to arg */
26         mutex_enter(&sp->reg_mutex);
27         /*
28            * Copy data from device registers to
29            * temporary device register buffer
30            * e.g. reg_buf.control = rp->control;
31            */
32         mutex_exit(&sp->reg_mutex);
33         if (ddi_copyout(&reg_buf, arg,
34                           sizeof (struct device), mode) != 0) {
```
EXAMPLE 1  ddi_copyout() example  (Continued)

35     return (EFAULT);
36 }
37 break;
38 }
39 }

See Also  ioctl(9E), bcopy(9F), copyin(9F), copyout(9F), ddi_copyin(9F), uio_move(9F)

Writing Device Drivers

Notes  The value of the flags argument to ddi_copyout() should be passed through directly from the
mode argument of ioctl() untranslated.

Driver defined locks should not be held across calls to this function.

ddi_copyout() should not be used from a streams driver. See M_COPYIN and M_COPYOUT in
STREAMS Programming Guide.
ddi_create_minor_node – Create a minor node for this device

#include <sys/stat.h>
#include <sys/sunddi.h>

int ddi_create_minor_node(dev_info_t *dip, char *name, int spec_type,
                          minor_t minor_num, char *node_type, int flag);

Solaris DDI specific (Solaris DDI).

dip: A pointer to the device’s dev_info structure.
name: The name of this particular minor device.
spec_type: S_IFCHR or S_IFBLK for character or block minor devices respectively.
minor_num: The minor number for this particular minor device.
node_type: Any string literal that uniquely identifies the type of node. The following predefined node types are provided with this release:

- DDI_NT_SERIAL: For serial ports
- DDI_NT_SERIAL_MB: For on board serial ports
- DDI_NT_SERIAL_DO: For dial out ports
- DDI_NT_SERIAL_MB_DO: For on board dial out ports
- DDI_NT_BLOCK: For hard disks
- DDI_NT_BLOCK_CHAN: For hard disks with channel or target numbers
- DDI_NT_CD: For CDROM drives
- DDI_NT_CD_CHAN: For CDROM drives with channel or target numbers
- DDI_NT_FD: For floppy disks
- DDI_NT_TAPE: For tape drives
- DDI_NT_NET: For DLPI style 1 or style 2 network devices
- DDI_NT_DISPLAY: For display devices
- DDI_PSEUDO: For pseudo devices

flag: If the device is a clone device then this flag is set to CLONE_DEV else it is set to 0.

Description: ddi_create_minor_node() provides the necessary information to enable the system to create the /dev and /devices hierarchies. The name is used to create the minor name of the block or character special file under the /devices hierarchy. At-sign (@), slash (/), and space are not
allowed. The `spec_type` specifies whether this is a block or character device. The `minor_num` is the minor number for the device. The `node_type` is used to create the names in the `/dev` hierarchy that refers to the names in the `/devices` hierarchy. See `disks(1M)`, `ports(1M)`, `tapes(1M)`, `devlinks(1M)`. Finally, `flag` determines if this is a clone device or not, and what device class the node belongs to.

### Return Values

`ddi_create_minor_node()` returns:

- **DDI_SUCCESS**: Was able to allocate memory, create the minor data structure, and place it into the linked list of minor devices for this driver.
- **DDI_FAILURE**: Minor node creation failed.

### Context

The `ddi_create_minor_node()` function can be called from user context. It is typically called from `attach(9E)` or `ioctl(9E)`.

### Examples

**EXAMPLE 1** Create Data Structure Describing Minor Device with Minor Number of 0

The following example creates a data structure describing a minor device called `foo` which has a minor number of 0. It is of type `DDI_NT_BLOCK` (a block device) and it is not a clone device.

```c
ddi_create_minor_node(dip, "foo", S_IFBLK, 0, DDI_NT_BLOCK, 0);
```

### See Also

`add_drv(1M)`, `devlinks(1M)`, `disks(1M)`, `drvconfig(1M)`, `ports(1M)`, `tapes(1M)`, `attach(9E)`, `ddi_remove_minor_node(9F)`

### Writing Device Drivers

- **Notes** If the driver is for a network device (`node_type DDI_NT_NET`), note that the driver name will undergo the driver name constraints identified in the NOTES section of `dlpi(7P)`. Additionally, the minor name must match the driver name for a DLPI style 2 provider. If the driver is a DLPI style 1 provider, the minor name must also match the driver name with the exception that the ppa is appended to the minor name.

Non-`gld(7D)`-based DLPI network streams drivers are encouraged to switch to `gld(7D)`. Failing this, a driver that creates DLPI style-2 minor nodes must specify `CLONE_DEV` for its style-2 `ddi_create_minor_node()` nodes and use `qassociate(9F)`. A driver that supports both style-1 and style-2 minor nodes should return `DDI_FAILURE` for `DDI_INFO_DEVT2INSTANCE` and `DDI_INFO_DEVT2DEVINFO` `getinfo(9E)` calls to style-2 minor nodes. (The correct association is already established by `qassociate(9F)`). A driver that only supports style-2 minor nodes can use `ddi_no_info(9F)` for its `getinfo(9E)` implementation. For drivers that do not follow these rules, the results of a `modunload(1M)` of the driver or a `cfgen(1M)` of the device are undefined.

- **Warning** Drivers must remove references to `GLOBAL_DEV`, `NODEBOUND_DEV`, `NODESPECIFIC_DEV`, and `ENUMERATED_DEV` to compile under Solaris 10 and later versions.
ddi_cred, crgetuid, crgetruid, crgetsuid, crgetgid, crgetrgid, crgetsgid, crgetzoneid, crgetgroups, crgetngrroups – access and change parts of the cred_t structure

#include <sys/cred.h>

uid_t crgetuid(const cred_t *cr);
uid_t crgetruid(const cred_t *cr);
uid_t crgetsuid(const cred_t *cr);
gid_t crgetgid(const cred_t *cr);
gid_t crgetrgid(const cred_t *cr);
gid_t crgetsgid(const cred_t *cr);
zoneid_t crgetzoneid(const cred_t *cr);
const gid_t *crgetgroups(const cred_t *cr);
int crgetngrroups(const cred_t *cr);
int crsetresuid(cred_t *cr, uid_t ruid, uid_t euid, uid_t suid);
int crsetresgid(cred_t *cr, gid_t rgid, gid_t egid, gid_t sgid);
int crsetugid(cred_t *cr, uid_t uid, gid_t gid);
int crsetgroups(cred_t *cr, int ngroups, gid_t gids);

Name ddi_cred, crgetuid, crgetruid, crgetsuid, crgetgid, crgetrgid, crgetsgid, crgetzoneid, crgetgroups, crgetngrroups – access and change parts of the cred_t structure

Synopsis #include <sys/cred.h>

Interface Level Solaris DDI specific (Solaris DDI).

Parameters $cr$ pointer to the user credential structure

$uid, ruid, euid, suid$ new user id, real, effective and saved user id

$gid, rgid, egid, sgid$ new group id, real, effective and saved group id

$ngroups$ number of groups in the group array

$gids$ pointer to array of new groups

Description The user credential is a shared, read-only, ref-counted data structure. Its actual size and layout are subject to change. The functions described in this page allow the programmer to retrieve fields from the structure and to initialize newly allocated credential structures.

$crgetuid()$, $crgetruid()$, and $crgetsuid()$ return, respectively, the effective, real, and saved user id from the user credential pointed to by $cr$.

$crgetgid()$, $crgetrgid()$, and $crgetsgid()$ return, respectively, the effective, real, and saved group id from the user credential pointed to by $cr$. 
`crgetzoneid()` returns the zone id from the user credential pointed to by `cr`.

`crgetgroups()` returns the group list of the user credential pointed to by `cr`.

`crgetngroups()` returns the number of groups in the user credential pointed to by `cr`.

`crsetresuid()` sets the real, effective, and saved user id. All but one can be specified as -1, which causes the original value not to change.

`crresgid()` sets the real, effective, and saved group id. All but one can be specified as -1, which causes the original value not to change.

`crsetugid()` initializes the real, effective, and saved user id all to `uid`. It initializes the real, effective, and saved group id all to `gid`.

`crsetgroups()` sets the number of groups in the user credential to `ngroups` and copies the groups from `gids` to the user credential. If `ngroups` is 0, `gids` need not point to valid storage.

It is an error to call this any of the `crset*()` functions on a user credential structure that was newly allocated.

**Return Values**  The `crget*()` functions return the requested information.

The `crset*id()` functions return 0 on success and -1 if any of the specified ids are invalid. The functions might cause a system panic if called on a user credential structure that is referenced by other parts of the system.

**Context**  These functions can be called from user and kernel contexts.

**Attributes**  See `attributes(5)` for a description of the following attributes:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ATTRIBUTE TYPE</th>
<th>ATTRIBUTE VALUE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Architecture</td>
<td>All</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Interface Stability</td>
<td>Evolving</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**See Also**  `attributes(5), privileges(5), drv_priv(9F)`

*Writing Device Drivers*
ddi_device_copy(9F)

Name ddi_device_copy – copy data from one device register to another device register

Synopsis #include <sys/ddi.h>
#include <sys/sunddi.h>

int ddi_device_copy(ddi_acc_handle_t src_handle, caddr_t src_addr,
                     ssize_t src_advcnt, ddi_acc_handle_t dest_handle,
                     caddr_t dest_addr, ssize_t dest_advcnt,
                     size_t bytecount, uint_t dev_datasz);

Interface Level Solaris DDI specific (Solaris DDI).

Parameters src_handle The data access handle of the source device.
src_addr Base data source address.
src_advcnt Number of dev_datasz units to advance on every access.
dest_handle The data access handle of the destination device.
dest_addr Base data destination address.
dest_advcnt Number of dev_datasz units to advance on every access.
bytecount Number of bytes to transfer.
dev_datasz The size of each data word. Possible values are defined as:
DDI_DATA_SZ01_ACC 1 byte data size
DDI_DATA_SZ02_ACC 2 bytes data size
DDI_DATA_SZ04_ACC 4 bytes data size
DDI_DATA_SZ08_ACC 8 bytes data size

Description ddi_device_copy() copies bytecount bytes from the source address, src_addr, to the destination address, dest_addr. The attributes encoded in the access handles, src_handle and dest_handle, govern how data is actually copied from the source to the destination. Only matching data sizes between the source and destination are supported.

Data will automatically be translated to maintain a consistent view between the source and the destination. The translation may involve byte-swapping if the source and the destination devices have incompatible endian characteristics.

The src_advcnt and dest_advcnt arguments specifies the number of dev_datasz units to advance with each access to the device addresses. A value of 0 will use the same source and destination device address on every access. A positive value increments the corresponding device address by certain number of data size units in the next access. On the other hand, a negative value decrements the device address.
The `dev_datasz` argument determines the size of the data word on each access. The data size must be the same between the source and destination.

**Return Values**  
ddi_device_copy() returns:

- **DDI_SUCCESS** Successfully transferred the data.
- **DDI_FAILURE** The byte count is not a multiple of `dev_datasz`.

**Context**  
ddi_device_copy() can be called from user, kernel, or interrupt context.

**See Also**  
ddi_regs_map_free(9F), ddi_regs_map_setup(9F)

*Writing Device Drivers*
ddi_device_zero(9F)

Name  ddi_device_zero – zero fill the device

Synopsis  
#include <sys/ddi.h>
#include <sys/sunddi.h>

int ddi_device_zero(ddi_acc_handle_t handle, caddr_t dev_addr,
    size_t bytecount, ssize_t dev_advcnt, uint_t dev_datasz);

Interface Level  Solaris DDI specific (Solaris DDI).

Parameters  
handle  The data access handle returned from setup calls, such as
ddi_regs_map_setup(9F).

dev_addr  Beginning of the device address.

bytecount  Number of bytes to zero.

dev_advcnt  Number of dev_datasz units to advance on every access.

dev_datasz  The size of each data word. Possible values are defined as:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Constant</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>DDI_DATA_SZ01_ACC</td>
<td>1 byte data size</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DDI_DATA_SZ02_ACC</td>
<td>2 bytes data size</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DDI_DATA_SZ04_ACC</td>
<td>4 bytes data size</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DDI_DATA_SZ08_ACC</td>
<td>8 bytes data size</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Description  ddi_device_zero() function fills the given, bytecount, number of byte of zeroes to the device register or memory.

The dev_advcnt argument determines the value of the device address, dev_addr, on each access. A value of 0 will use the same device address, dev_addr, on every access. A positive value increments the device address in the next access while a negative value decrements the address. The device address is incremented and decremented in dev_datasz units.

The dev_datasz argument determines the size of data word on each access.

Return Values  ddi_device_zero() returns:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Constant</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>DDI_SUCCESS</td>
<td>Successfully zeroed the data.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DDI_FAILURE</td>
<td>The byte count is not a multiple of dev_datasz.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Context  ddi_device_zero() can be called from user, kernel, or interrupt context.

See Also  ddi_regs_map_free(9F), ddi_regs_map_setup(9F)

Writing Device Drivers
**Name**

ddi_devid_compare, ddi_devid_free, ddi_devid_init, ddi_devid_register, ddi_devid_sizeof, ddi_devid_str_decode, ddi_devid_str_encode, ddi_devid_str_free, ddi_devid_get, ddi_devid_unregister, ddi_devid_valid – kernel interfaces for device ids

**Synopsis**

```c
int ddi_devid_compare(ddi_devid_t devid1, ddi_devid_t devid2);
size_t ddi_devid_sizeof(ddi_devid_t devid);
int ddi_devid_init(dev_info_t *dip, ushort_t devid_type,
ushort_t nbytes, void *id, ddi_devid_t *retdevid);
void ddi_devid_free(ddi_devid_t devid);
int ddi_devid_register(dev_info_t *dip, ddi_devid_t devid);
int ddi_devid_str_decode(char *devidstr, ddi_devid_t *retdevid,
char **retminor_name);
int ddi_devid_str_encode(ddi_devid_t devid, char *minor_name);
int ddi_devid_str_free(char *devidstr);
int ddi_devid_get(dev_info_t *dip, ddi_devid_t *retdevid);
void ddi_devid_unregister(dev_info_t *dip);
int ddi_devid_valid(ddi_devid_t devid);
```

**Parameters**

- **devid** The device id address.
- **devidstr** The `devid` and `minor_name` represented as a string.
- **devid1** The first of two device id addresses to be compared calling `ddi_devid_compare()`.
- **devid2** The second of two device id addresses to be compared calling `ddi_devid_compare()`.
- **dip** A `dev_info` pointer, which identifies the device.
- **devid_type** The following device id types may be accepted by the `ddi_devid_init()` function:
  - `DEVID_SCSI3_WWN` World Wide Name associated with SCSI-3 devices.
  - `DEVID_SCSI_SERIAL` Vendor ID and serial number associated with a SCSI device. Note: This may only be used if known to be unique; otherwise a fabricated device id must be used.
  - `DEVID_ENCAP` Device ID of another device. This is for layered device driver usage.
  - `DEVID_FAB` Fabricated device ID.
- **minor_name** The minor name to be encoded.
Interface Level  Solaris DDI specific (Solaris DDI).

Description  The following routines are used to provide unique identifiers, device IDs, for devices. Specifically, kernel modules use these interfaces to identify and locate devices, independent of the device’s physical connection or its logical device name or number.

- **ddi_devid_compare()** compares two device IDs byte-by-byte and determines both equality and sort order.

- **ddi_devid_sizeof()** returns the number of bytes allocated for the passed in device ID (devid).

- **ddi_devid_init()** allocates memory and initializes the opaque device ID structure. This function does not store the devid. If the device id is not derived from the device’s firmware, it is the driver’s responsibility to store the devid on some reliable store. When a devid_type of either DEVID_SCSI3_WWN, DEVID_SCSI_SERIAL, or DEVID_ENCAP is accepted, an array of bytes (id) must be passed in ( nbytes).

  When the devid_type DEVID_FAB is used, the array of bytes (id) must be NULL and the length ( nbytes) must be zero. The fabricated device ids, DEVID_FAB will be initialized with the machine's host id and a timestamp.

  Drivers must free the memory allocated by this function, using the ddi_devid_free() function.

- **ddi_devid_free()** frees the memory allocated for the returned devid by the ddi_devid_init() and devid_str_decode() functions.

- **ddi_devid_register()** registers the device ID address (devid) with the DDI framework, associating it with the dev_info passed in (dip). The drivers must register device IDs at attach time. See **attach(9E)**.

- **ddi_devid_unregister()** removes the device ID address from the dev_info passed in (dip).

  Drivers must use this function to unregister the device ID when devices are being detached. This function does not free the space allocated for the device ID. The driver must free the space allocated for the device ID, using the ddi_devid_free() function. See **detach(9E)**.

- **ddi_devid_valid()** validates the device ID (devid) passed in. The driver must use this function to validate any fabricated device ID that has been stored on a device.
ddi_devid_get() returns a pointer to the device ID structure through retdevid if there is already a registered device ID associated with the dev_info node. A driver can use this interface to check and get the device ID associated with the dev_info node. If no device ID is registered for the node then it returns DDI_FAILURE.

The ddi_devid_str_encode() function encodes a devid and minor_name into a null-terminated ASCII string, returning a pointer to that string. If both a devid and a minor_name are non-null, then a slash (/) is used to separate the devid from the minor_name in the encoded string. If minor_name is null, then only the devid is encoded. If the devid is null, then the special string id0 is returned. Note that you cannot compare the returned string against another string with strcmp() to determine devid equality. The returned string must be freed by calling ddi_devid_str_free().

The ddi_devid_str_decode() function takes a string previously produced by the ddi_devid_str_encode() function and decodes the contained device ID and minor_name, allocating and returning pointers to the extracted parts through the retdevid and retminor_name arguments. If the special devidstr id0 was specified then the returned device ID and minor name will both be null. A non-null returned devid must be freed by the caller through the ddi_devid_free() function. A non-null returned minor name must be freed by calling ddi_devid_str_free().

The ddi_devid_str_free() function is used to free all strings returned by the ddi_devid functions (the ddi_devid_str_encode() function return value and the returned retminor_name argument).

Return Values  ddi_devid_init() returns the following values:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Value</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>DDI_SUCCESS</td>
<td>Success.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DDI_FAILURE</td>
<td>Out of memory. An invalid devid_type was passed in.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

ddi_devid_valid() returns the following values:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Value</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>DDI_SUCCESS</td>
<td>Valid device ID.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DDI_FAILURE</td>
<td>Invalid device ID.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

ddi_devid_register() returns the following values:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Value</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>DDI_SUCCESS</td>
<td>Success.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DDI_FAILURE</td>
<td>Failure. The device ID is already registered or the device ID is invalid.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

ddi_devid_valid() returns the following values:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Value</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>DDI_SUCCESS</td>
<td>Valid device ID.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DDI_FAILURE</td>
<td>Invalid device ID.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
ddi_devid_get() returns the following values:

- **DDI_SUCCESS**: Device ID is present and a pointer to it is returned in `retdevid`.
- **DDI_FAILURE**: No device ID is defined for this `dev_info` node.

ddi_devid_compare() returns the following values:

- `-1`: The first device ID is less than the second device ID.
- `0`: The first device ID is equal to the second device ID.
- `1`: The first device ID is greater than the second device ID.

ddi_devid_sizeof() returns the size of the `devid` in bytes. If called with a null, then the number of bytes that must be allocated and initialized to determine the size of a complete device ID is returned.

ddi_devid_str_encode() returns a value of null to indicate failure. Failure can be caused by attempting to encode an invalid `devid`. If the return value is non-null then the caller must free the returned string by using the `devid_str_free()` function.

ddi_devid_str_decode() returns the following values:

- **DDI_SUCCESS**: Success.
- **DDI_FAILURE**: Failure; the `devidstr` string was not valid.

**Context**
These functions can be called from a user or kernel context.

**See Also**
`devid_get(3DEVID), libdevid(3LIB), attributes(5), attach(9E), detach(9E), kmem_free(9F)`

*Writing Device Drivers*
ddi_dev_is_needed(9F)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>ddi_dev_is_needed – inform the system that a device's component is required</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| Synopsis           | #include <sys/ddi.h>  
|                    | #include <sys/sunddi.h>  

    int ddi_dev_is_needed(dev_info_t *dip, int component, int level);

Interface Level | Solaris DDI specific (Solaris DDI)

Parameters     | dip Pointer to the device's dev_info structure.  
|               | component Component of the driver which is needed.  
|               | level Power level at which the component is needed.

Description The ddi_dev_is_needed() function is obsolete and will be removed in a future release. It is recommended that device drivers use pm_raise_power(9F) and pm_lower_power(9F).

The ddi_dev_is_needed() function informs the system that a device component is needed at the specified power level. The level argument must be non-zero.

This function sets a component to the required level and sets all devices which depend on this to their normal power levels.

The state of the device should be examined before each physical access. The ddi_dev_is_needed() function should be called to set a component to the required power level if the operation to be performed requires the component to be at a power level other than its current level.

The ddi_dev_is_needed() function might cause re-entry of the driver. Deadlock may result if driver locks are held across the call to ddi_dev_is_needed().

Return Values The ddi_dev_is_needed() function returns:

    DDI_SUCCESS Power successfully set to the requested level.

    DDI_FAILURE An error occurred.

Examples EXAMPLE 1 disk driver code

A hypothetical disk driver might include this code:

```c
static int
xxdisk_spun_down(struct xxstate *xsp)
{
    return (xsp->power_level[DISK_COMPONENT] < POWER_SPUN_UP);
}
static int
```
EXAMPLE 1  disk driver code (Continued)

xxdisk_strategy(struct buf *bp)
{
...

mutex_enter(&xxstate_lock);
/*
 * Since we have to drop the mutex, we have to do this in a loop
 * in case we get preempted and the device gets taken away from
 * us again
 */
while (device_spun_down(sp)) {
    mutex_exit(&xxstate_lock);
    if (ddi_dev_is_needed(xsp->mydip,
        XXDISK_COMPONENT, XXPPOWER_SPUN_UP) != DDI_SUCCESS) {
        bioerror(bp,EIO);
        biodone(bp);
        return (0);
    }
    mutex_enter(&xxstate_lock);
}
    xsp->device_busy++;
    mutex_exit(&xxstate_lock);

...}

Context  This function can be called from user or kernel context.

Attributes  See attributes(5) for descriptions of the following attributes:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ATTRIBUTE TYPE</th>
<th>ATTRIBUTE VALUE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Interface stability</td>
<td>Obsolete</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

See Also  pm(7D), pm-components(9P), attach(9E), detach(9E), power(9E), pm_busy_component(9F), pm_idle_component(9F)

Writing Device Drivers
### ddi_dev_is_sid(9F)

**Name**  
ddi_dev_is_sid – tell whether a device is self-identifying

**Synopsis**  
```c
#include <sys/conf.h>
#include <sys/ddi.h>
#include <sys/sunddi.h>

int ddi_dev_is_sid(dev_info_t *dip);
```

**Interface Level**  
Solaris DDI specific (Solaris DDI).

**Parameters**  
dip  
A pointer to the device's dev_info structure.

**Description**  
The ddi_dev_is_sid() function tells the caller whether the device described by dip is self-identifying, that is, a device that can unequivocally tell the system that it exists. This is useful for drivers that support both a self-identifying as well as a non-self-identifying variants of a device (and therefore must be probed).

**Return Values**  
- **DDI_SUCCESS**  
  Device is self-identifying.
- **DDI_FAILURE**  
  Device is not self-identifying.

**Context**  
The ddi_dev_is_sid() function can be called from user, interrupt, or kernel context.

**Examples**  
```c
... 
int bz_probe(dev_info_t *dip)
{
...

  if (ddi_dev_is_sid(dip) == DDI_SUCCESS) {
    /*
     * This is the self-identifying version (OpenBoot).
     * No need to probe for it because we know it is there.
     * The existence of dip && ddi_dev_is_sid() proves this.
     */
    return (DDI_PROBE_DONTCARE);
  }
  /*
   * Not a self-identifying variant of the device. Now we have to
   * do some work to see whether it is really attached to the
   * system.
   */
  ...
```

**See Also**  
`probe(9E)` *Writing Device Drivers*
ddi_dev_nintrs(9F)

Name  ddi_dev_nintrs – return the number of interrupt specifications a device has

Synopsis  #include <sys/conf.h>
          #include <sys/ddi.h>
          #include <sys/sunddi.h>

          int ddi_dev_nintrs(dev_info_t *dip, int *resultp);

Interface Level  Solaris DDI specific (Solaris DDI). This interface is obsolete. Use the new interrupt interfaces referenced in Intro(9F). Refer to Writing Device Drivers for more information.

Description  The ddi_dev_nintrs() function returns the number of interrupt specifications a device has in *resultp.

Return Values  The ddi_dev_nintrs() function returns:

DDI_SUCCESS  A successful return. The number of interrupt specifications that the device has is set in resultp.

DDI_FAILURE  The device has no interrupt specifications.

Context  The ddi_dev_nintrs() function can be called from user, interrupt, or kernel context.

Attributes  See attributes(5) for descriptions of the following attributes:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ATTRIBUTE TYPE</th>
<th>ATTRIBUTE VALUE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Interface Stability</td>
<td>Obsolete</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

See Also  isa(4), sbus(4), ddi_add_intr(9F), ddi_dev_nregs(9F), ddi_dev_regsize(9F), Intro(9F)

Writing Device Drivers
ddi_dev_nregs - return the number of registers a device has

**Synopsis**
```
#include <sys/conf.h>
#include <sys/ddi.h>
#include <sys/sunddi.h>

int ddi_dev_nregs(dev_info_t *dip, int *resultp);
```

**Interface Level**
Solaris DDI specific (Solaris DDI).

**Parameters**
- *dip* A pointer to the device's `dev_info` structure.
- *resultp* Pointer to an integer that holds the number of register sets on return.

**Description**
The `ddi_dev_nregs()` function returns the number of sets of registers the device has.

**Return Values**
The `ddi_dev_nregs()` function returns:
- `DDI_SUCCESS` A successful return. The number of register sets is returned in `resultp`.
- `DDI_FAILURE` The device has no registers.

**Context**
The `ddi_dev_nregs()` function can be called from user, interrupt, or kernel context.

**See Also**
- `ddi_dev_nintrs(9F)`, `ddi_dev_regsize(9F)`

*Writing Device Drivers*
ddi_dev_regsize(9F)

**Name**
ddi_dev_regsize – return the size of a device's register

**Synopsis**
```c
#include <sys/conf.h>
#include <sys/ddi.h>
#include <sys/sunddi.h>

int ddi_dev_regsize(dev_info_t *dip, uint_t rnumber, off_t *resultp);
```

**Interface Level**
Solaris DDI specific (Solaris DDI).

**Parameters**
- **dip**
  A pointer to the device's dev_info structure.
- **rnumber**
  The ordinal register number. Device registers are associated with a dev_info and are enumerated in arbitrary sets from 0 on up. The number of registers a device has can be determined from a call to ddi_dev_nregs(9F).
- **resultp**
  Pointer to an integer that holds the size, in bytes, of the described register (if it exists).

**Description**
The ddi_dev_regsize() function returns the size, in bytes, of the device register specified by dip and rnumber. This is useful when, for example, one of the registers is a frame buffer with a varying size known only to its proms.

**Return Values**
The ddi_dev_regsize() function returns:
- **DDI_SUCCESS**
  A successful return. The size, in bytes, of the specified register, is set in resultp.
- **DDI_FAILURE**
  An invalid (nonexistent) register number was specified.

**Context**
The ddi_dev_regsize() function can be called from user, interrupt, or kernel context.

**See Also**
- ddi_dev_nintrs(9F), ddi_dev_nregs(9F)

*Writing Device Drivers*
**Name**  
ddi_dev_report_fault – Report a hardware failure

**Synopsis**  
#include <sys/ddi.h>  
#include <sys/sunddi.h>

```c
void ddi_dev_report_fault (dev_info_t *dip,  
ddi_fault_impact_t impact, ddi_fault_location_t location,  
const char *message);
```

**Interface Level**  
Solaris DDI specific (Solaris DDI)

**Parameters**  
- **dip**  
  Pointer to the driver's dev_info structure to which the fault report relates.  
  (Normally the caller's own dev_info pointer).

- **impact**  
  One of a set of enumerated values indicating the impact of the fault on the  
  device's ability to provide normal service.

- **location**  
  One of a set of enumerated values indicating the location of the fault, relative to  
  the hardware controlled by the driver specified by dip.

- **message**  
  Text of the message describing the fault being reported.

**Description**  
This function provides a standardized mechanism through which device drivers can report  
hardware faults. Use of this reporting mechanism enables systems equipped with a fault  
management system to respond to faults discovered by a driver. On a suitably equipped  
system, this might include automatic failover to an alternative device and/or scheduling  
replacement of the faulty hardware.

The driver must indicate the impact of the fault being reported on its ability to provide service  
by passing one of the following values for the impact parameter:

- **DDI_SERVICE_LOST**  
  Indicates a total loss of service. The driver is unable to  
  implement the normal functions of its hardware.

- **DDI_SERVICE_DEGRADED**  
  The driver is unable to provide normal service, but can provide  
  a partial or degraded level of service. The driver may have to  
  make repeated attempts to perform an operation before it  
  succeeds, or it may be running at less than its configured  
  speed. A driver may use this value to indicate that an  
  alternative device should be used if available, but that it can  
  continue operation if no alternative exists.

- **DDI_SERVICE_UNAFFECTED**  
  The service provided by the device is currently unaffected by  
  the reported fault. This value may be used to report recovered  
  errors for predictive failure analysis.
The driver has resumed normal service, following a previous report that service was lost or degraded. This message implies that any previously reported fault condition no longer exists.

The location parameter should be one of the following values:

**DDI_DATAPATH_FAULT**  
The fault lies in the datapath between the driver and the device. The device may be unplugged, or a problem may exist in the bus on which the device resides. This value is appropriate if the device is not responding to accesses, (for example, the device may not be present) or if a call to `ddi_check_acc_handle(9F)` returns `DDI_FAILURE`.

**DDI_DEVICE_FAULT**  
The fault lies in the device controlled by the driver. This value is appropriate if the device returns an error from a selftest function, or if the driver is able to determine that device is present and accessible, but is not functioning correctly.

**DDI_EXTERNAL_FAULT**  
The fault is external to the device. For example, an Ethernet driver would use this value when reporting a cable fault.

If a device returns detectably bad data during normal operation (an "impossible" value in a register or DMA status area, for example), the driver should check the associated handle using `ddi_check_acc_handle(9F)` or `ddi_check_dma_handle(9F)` before reporting the fault. If the fault is associated with the handle, the driver should specify `DDI_DATAPATH_FAULT` rather than `DDI_DEVICE_FAULT`. As a consequence of this call, the device’s state may be updated to reflect the level of service currently available. See `ddi_get_devstate(9F)`.

Note that if a driver calls `ddi_get_devstate(9F)` and discovers that its device is down, a fault should not be reported- the device is down as the result of a fault that has already been reported. Additionally, a driver should avoid incurring or reporting additional faults when the device is already known to be unusable. The `ddi_dev_report_fault()` call should only be used to report hardware (device) problems and should not be used to report purely software problems such as memory (or other resource) exhaustion.

### Examples

An Ethernet driver receives an error interrupt from its device if various fault conditions occur. The driver must read an error status register to determine the nature of the fault, and report it appropriately:

```c
static int
xx_error_intr(xx_soft_state *ssp)
```
error_status = ddi_get32(ssp->handle, &ssp->regs->xx_err_status);
if (ddi_check_acc_handle(ssp->handle) != DDI_SUCCESS) {
    ddi_dev_report_fault(ssp->dip, DDI_SERVICE_LOST,
                        DDI_DATAPATH_FAULT, "register access fault");
    return DDI_INTR_UNCLAIMED;
}
if (ssp->error_status & XX_CABLE_FAULT) {
    ddi_dev_report_fault(ssp->dip, DDI_SERVICE_LOST,
                        DDI_EXTERNAL_FAULT, "cable fault")
    return DDI_INTRCLAIMED;
}
if (ssp->error_status & XX_JABBER) {
    ddi_dev_report_fault(ssp->dip, DDI_SERVICE_DEGRADED,
                        DDI_EXTERNAL_FAULT, "jabbering detected")
    return DDI_INTRCLAIMED;
}
...
int ddi_dma_addr_bind_handle(ddi_dma_handle_t handle, struct as *as, caddr_t addr, size_t len, uint_t flags, int (*callback)(caddr_t), caddr_t arg, ddi_dma_cookie_t *cookiep, uint_t *ccountp);

**Parameters**

- **handle**: The DMA handle previously allocated by a call to `ddi_dma_alloc_handle(9F)`.
- **as**: A pointer to an address space structure. This parameter should be set to NULL, which implies kernel address space.
- **addr**: Virtual address of the memory object.
- **len**: Length of the memory object in bytes.
- **flags**: Valid flags include:
  - `DDI_DMA_WRITE`: Transfer direction is from memory to I/O.
  - `DDI_DMA_READ`: Transfer direction is from I/O to memory.
  - `DDI_DMA_RDWR`: Both read and write.
  - `DDI_DMA_REDZONE`: Establish an MMU redzone at end of the object.
  - `DDI_DMA_PARTIAL`: Partial resource allocation.
  - `DDI_DMA_CONSISTENT`: Nonsequential, random, and small block transfers.
  - `DDI_DMA_STREAMING`: Sequential, unidirectional, block-sized, and block-aligned transfers.
- **callback**: The address of a function to call back later if resources are not currently available. The following special function addresses may also be used.
  - `DDI_DMA_SLEEP`: Wait until resources are available.
  - `DDI_DMA_DONTWAIT`: Do not wait until resources are available and do not schedule a callback.
- **arg**: Argument to be passed to the callback function, `callback`, if such a function is specified.
- **cookiep**: A pointer to the first `ddi_dma_cookie(9S)` structure.
- **ccountp**: Upon a successful return, `ccountp` points to a value representing the number of cookies for this DMA object.
ddi_dma_addr_bind_handle() allocates DMA resources for a memory object such that a
device can perform DMA to or from the object. DMA resources are allocated considering the
device's DMA attributes as expressed by ddi_dma_attr(9S) (see ddi_dma_alloc_handle(9F)).

ddi_dma_addr_bind_handle() fills in the first DMA cookie pointed to by cookiep with the
appropriate address, length, and bus type. *countp is set to the number of DMA cookies
representing this DMA object. Subsequent DMA cookies must be retrieved by calling
ddi_dma_nextcookie(9F) the number of times specified by *countp-1.

When a DMA transfer completes, the driver frees up system DMA resources by calling
ddi_dma_unbind_handle(9F).

The flags argument contains information for mapping routines.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Flags</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>DDI_DMA_WRITE, DDI_DMA_READ, DDI_DMA_RDWR</td>
<td>These flags describe the intended direction of the DMA transfer.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DDI_DMA_STREAMING</td>
<td>This flag should be set if the device is doing sequential, unidirectional,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>block-sized, and block-aligned transfers to or from memory. The alignment and</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>padding constraints specified by the minxfer and burstsizes fields in the</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>DMA attribute structure, ddi_dma_attr(9S) (see ddi_dma_alloc_handle(9F)) is</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>used to allocate the most effective hardware support for large transfers.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DDI_DMA_CONSISTENT</td>
<td>This flag should be set if the device accesses memory randomly, or if</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>synchronization steps using ddi_dma_sync(9F) need to be as efficient as</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>possible. I/O parameter blocks used for communication between a device and a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>driver should be allocated using DDI_DMA_CONSISTENT.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DDI_DMA_REDZONE</td>
<td>If this flag is set, the system attempts to establish a protected red zone</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>after the object. The DMA resource allocation functions do not guarantee the</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>success of this request as some implementations may not have the hardware</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ability to support a red zone.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Setting this flag indicates the caller can accept resources for part of the object. That is, if the size of the object exceeds the resources available, only resources for a portion of the object are allocated. The system indicates this condition by returning status DDI_DMA_PARTIAL_MAP. At a later point, the caller can use ddi_dma_getwin(9F) to change the valid portion of the object for which resources are allocated. If resources were allocated for only part of the object, ddi_dma_addr_bind_handle() returns resources for the first DMA window. Even when DDI_DMA_PARTIAL is set, the system may decide to allocate resources for the entire object (less overhead) in which case DDI_DMA_MAPPED is returned.

The callback function callback indicates how a caller wants to handle the possibility of resources not being available. If callback is set to DDI_DMA_DONTWAIT, the caller does not care if the allocation fails, and can handle an allocation failure appropriately. If callback is set to DDI_DMA_SLEEP, the caller wishes to have the allocation routines wait for resources to become available. If any other value is set and a DMA resource allocation fails, this value is assumed to be the address of a function to be called when resources become available. When the specified function is called, arg is passed to it as an argument. The specified callback function must return either DDI_DMA_CALLBACK_RUNOUT or DDI_DMA_CALLBACK_DONE.

DDI_DMA_CALLBACK_RUNOUT indicates that the callback function attempted to allocate DMA resources but failed. In this case, the callback function is put back on a list to be called again later. DDI_DMA_CALLBACK_DONE indicates that either the allocation of DMA resources was successful or the driver no longer wishes to retry.

The callback function is called in interrupt context. Therefore, only system functions accessible from interrupt context are available. The callback function must take whatever steps are necessary to protect its critical resources, data structures, queues, and so on.

**Return Values**

ddi_dma_addr_bind_handle() returns:

- **DDI_DMA_MAPPED**: Successfully allocated resources for the entire object.
- **DDI_DMA_PARTIAL_MAP**: Successfully allocated resources for a part of the object. This is acceptable when partial transfers are permitted by setting the DDI_DMA_PARTIAL flag in flags.
- **DDI_DMA_INUSE**: Another I/O transaction is using the DMA handle.
DDI_DMA_NORESOURCES  No resources are available at the present time.
DDI_DMA_NOMAPPING     The object cannot be reached by the device requesting the resources.
DDI_DMA_TOOBIG        The object is too big. A request of this size can never be satisfied on this particular system. The maximum size varies depending on machine and configuration.

Context  ddi_dma_addr_bind_handle() can be called from user, kernel, or interrupt context, except when callback is set to DDI_DMA_SLEEP, in which case it can only be called from user or kernel context.

See Also  ddi_dma_alloc_handle(9F), ddi_dma_free_handle(9F), ddi_dma_getwin(9F), ddi_dma_mem_alloc(9F), ddi_dma_mem_free(9F), ddi_dma_nextcookie(9F), ddi_dma_mem_alloc(9F), ddi_dma_sync(9F), ddi_dma_unbind_handle(9F), ddi_dma_mem_free(9F), ddi_dma_attr(9S), ddi_dma_cookie(9S)

Writing Device Drivers

Notes  If the driver permits partial mapping with the DDI_DMA_PARTIAL flag, the number of cookies in each window may exceed the size of the device's scatter/gather list as specified in the dma_attr_sgllen field in the ddi_dma_attr(9S) structure. In this case, each set of cookies comprising a DMA window will satisfy the DMA attributes as described in the ddi_dma_attr(9S) structure in all aspects. The driver should set up its DMA engine and perform one transfer for each set of cookies sufficient for its scatter/gather list, up to the number of cookies for this window, before advancing to the next window using ddi_dma_getwin(9F).
int ddi_dma_addr_setup(dev_info_t *dip, struct as *as, caddr_t addr, size_t len, uint_t flags, int (*waitfp) (caddr_t), caddr_t arg, ddi_dma_lim_t *lim, ddi_dma_handle_t *handlep);

This interface is obsolete. ddi_dma_addr_bind_handle(9F) should be used instead.

ddi_dma_addr_setup() is an interface to ddi_dma_setup(9F). It uses its arguments to construct an appropriate ddi_dma_req structure and calls ddi_dma_setup(9F) with it.

See ddi_dma_setup(9F) for the possible return values for this function.

The ddi_dma_addr_setup() can be called from user, interrupt, or kernel context, except when waitfp is set to DDI_DMA_SLEEP, in which case it cannot be called from interrupt context.

See attributes(5) for a description of the following attributes:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ATTRIBUTE TYPE</th>
<th>ATTRIBUTE VALUE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Stability Level</td>
<td>Obsolete</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
See Also  attributes(5), ddi_dma_buf_setup(9F), ddi_dma_free(9F), ddi_dma_htoc(9F),
        ddi_dma_setup(9F), ddi_dma_sync(9F), ddi_iopb_alloc(9F), ddi_dma_lim_sparc(9S),
        ddi_dma_lim_x86(9S), ddi_dma_req(9S)

        Writing Device Drivers
Name   ddi_dma_alloc_handle – allocate DMA handle

Synopsis  
#include <sys/ddi.h>
#include <sys/sunddi.h>

int ddi_dma_alloc_handle(dev_info_t *dip, ddi_dma_attr_t *attr,
                          int (*callback) (caddr_t), caddr_t arg, ddi_dma_handle_t *handlep);

Interface Level  Solaris DDI specific (Solaris DDI).

Parameters  
dip    Pointer to the device's dev_info structure.
attr    Pointer to a DMA attribute structure for this device (see ddi_dma_attr(9S)).
callback The address of a function to call back later if resources aren't available now. The following special function addresses may also be used.

DDI_DMA_SLEEP    Wait until resources are available.
DDI_DMA_DONTWAIT Do not wait until resources are available and do not schedule a callback.
arg    Argument to be passed to a callback function, if such a function is specified.
handlep  Pointer to the DMA handle to be initialized.

Description  ddi_dma_alloc_handle() allocates a new DMA handle. A DMA handle is an opaque object used as a reference to subsequently allocated DMA resources. ddi_dma_alloc_handle() accepts as parameters the device information referred to by dip and the device's DMA attributes described by a ddi_dma_attr(9S) structure. A successful call to ddi_dma_alloc_handle() fills in the value pointed to by handlep. A DMA handle must only be used by the device for which it was allocated and is only valid for one I/O transaction at a time.

The callback function, callback, indicates how a caller wants to handle the possibility of resources not being available. If callback is set to DDI_DMA_DONTWAIT, then the caller does not care if the allocation fails, and can handle an allocation failure appropriately. If callback is set to DDI_DMA_SLEEP, then the caller wishes to have the allocation routines wait for resources to become available. If any other value is set, and a DMA resource allocation fails, this value is assumed to be a function to call at a later time when resources may become available. When the specified function is called, it is passed arg as an argument. The specified callback function must return either DDI_DMA_CALLBACK_RUNOUT or DDI_DMA_CALLBACK_DONE.

DDI_DMA_CALLBACK_RUNOUT indicates that the callback routine attempted to allocate DMA resources but failed to do so, in which case the callback function is put back on a list to be called again later. DDI_DMA_CALLBACK_DONE indicates either success at allocating DMA resources or the driver no longer wishes to retry.
The callback function is called in interrupt context. Therefore, only system functions that are accessible from interrupt context is available. The callback function must take whatever steps necessary to protect its critical resources, data structures, queues, and so forth.

When a DMA handle is no longer needed, `ddi_dma_free_handle(9F)` must be called to free the handle.

**Return Values**

- **DDI_SUCCESS**
  Successfully allocated a new DMA handle.

- **DDI_DMA_BADATTR**
  The attributes specified in the `ddi_dma_attr(9S)` structure make it impossible for the system to allocate potential DMA resources.

- **DDI_DMA_NORESOURCES**
  No resources are available.

**Context**

`ddi_dma_alloc_handle()` can be called from user, kernel, or interrupt context, except when `callback` is set to `DDI_DMA_SLEEP`, in which case it can be called from user or kernel context only.

**See Also**

- `ddi_dma_addr_bind_handle(9F)`, `ddi_dma_buf_bind_handle(9F)`, `ddi_dma_burstsizes(9F)`, `ddi_dma_free_handle(9F)`, `ddi_dma_unbind_handle(9F)`, `ddi_dma_attr(9S)`

*Writing Device Drivers*
ddi_dma_buf_bind_handle() - binds a system buffer to a DMA handle

**Synopsis**

```c
#include <sys/ddi.h>
#include <sys/sunddi.h>

int ddi_dma_buf_bind_handle(ddi_dma_handle_t handle, struct buf *bp,
    uint_t flags, int (*callback)(caddr_t), caddr_t arg,
    ddi_dma_cookie_t *cookiep,
    uint_t *ccountp);
```

**Interface Level**

Solaris DDI specific (Solaris DDI).

**Parameters**

- **handle**
  The DMA handle previously allocated by a call to `ddi_dma_alloc_handle(9F)`.  
- **bp**
  A pointer to a system buffer structure (see `buf(9S)`).  
- **flags**
  Valid flags include:  
  - `DDI_DMA_WRITE`  
    Transfer direction is from memory to I/O  
  - `DDI_DMA_READ`  
    Transfer direction is from I/O to memory  
  - `DDI_DMA_RDWR`  
    Both read and write  
  - `DDI_DMA_REDZONE`  
    Establish an MMU redzone at end of the object.  
  - `DDI_DMA_PARTIAL`  
    Partial resource allocation  
  - `DDI_DMA_CONSISTENT`  
    Nonsequential, random, and small block transfers.  
  - `DDI_DMA_STREAMING`  
    Sequential, unidirectional, block-sized, and block-aligned transfers.  
- **callback**
  The address of a function to call back later if resources are not available now. The following special function addresses may also be used.  
  - `DDI_DMA_SLEEP`  
    Wait until resources are available.  
  - `DDI_DMA_DONTWAIT`  
    Do not wait until resources are available and do not schedule a callback.  
- **arg**
  Argument to be passed to the callback function, `callback`, if such a function is specified.  
- **cookiep**
  A pointer to the first `ddi_dma_cookie(9S)` structure.  
- **ccountp**
  Upon a successful return, `ccountp` points to a value representing the number of cookies for this DMA object.

**Description**

`ddi_dma_buf_bind_handle()` allocates DMA resources for a system buffer such that a device can perform DMA to or from the buffer. DMA resources are allocated considering the device’s DMA attributes as expressed by `ddi_dma_attr(9S)` (see `ddi_dma.alloc_handle(9F)`).
ddi_dma_buf_bind_handle() fills in the first DMA cookie pointed to by cookiep with the appropriate address, length, and bus type. *countp is set to the number of DMA cookies representing this DMA object. Subsequent DMA cookies must be retrieved by calling ddi_dma_nextcookie(9F) *countp-1 times.

When a DMA transfer completes, the driver should free up system DMA resources by calling ddi_dma_unbind_handle(9F).

The flags argument contains information for mapping routines.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Flags</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>DDI_DMA_WRITE, DDI_DMA_READ, DDI_DMA_RDWR</td>
<td>These flags describe the intended direction of the DMA transfer.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DDI_DMA_STREAMING</td>
<td>This flag should be set if the device is doing sequential, unidirectional, block-sized, and block-aligned transfers to or from memory. The alignment and padding constraints specified by the minxfer and burstsizes fields in the DMA attribute structure, ddi_dma_attr(9S) (see ddi_dma_alloc_handle(9F)) is used to allocate the most effective hardware support for large transfers.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DDI_DMA_CONSISTENT</td>
<td>This flag should be set if the device accesses memory randomly, or if synchronization steps using ddi_dma_sync(9F) need to be as efficient as possible. I/O parameter blocks used for communication between a device and a driver should be allocated using DDI_DMA_CONSISTENT.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DDI_DMA_REDZONE</td>
<td>If this flag is set, the system attempts to establish a protected red zone after the object. The DMA resource allocation functions do not guarantee the success of this request as some implementations may not have the hardware ability to support a red zone.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| DDI_DMA_PARTIAL | Setting this flag indicates the caller can accept resources for part of the object. That is, if the size of the object exceeds the resources available, only resources for a
portion of the object are allocated. The system indicates this condition returning status DDI_DMA_PARTIAL_MAP. At a later point, the caller can use ddi_dma_getwin(9F) to change the valid portion of the object for which resources are allocated. If resources were allocated for only part of the object, ddi_dma_addr_bind_handle() returns resources for the first DMA window. Even when DDI_DMA_PARTIAL is set, the system may decide to allocate resources for the entire object (less overhead) in which case DDI_DMA_MAPPED is returned.

The callback function, callback, indicates how a caller wants to handle the possibility of resources not being available. If callback is set to DDI_DMA_DONTWAIT, the caller does not care if the allocation fails, and can handle an allocation failure appropriately. If callback is set to DDI_DMA_SLEEP, the caller wishes to have the allocation routines wait for resources to become available. If any other value is set, and a DMA resource allocation fails, this value is assumed to be the address of a function to call at a later time when resources may become available. When the specified function is called, it is passed arg as an argument. The specified callback function must return either DDI_DMA_CALLBACK_RUNOUT or DDI_DMA_CALLBACK_DONE.

DDI_DMA_CALLBACK_RUNOUT indicates that the callback function attempted to allocate DMA resources but failed to do so. In this case the callback function is put back on a list to be called again later. DDI_DMA_CALLBACK_DONE indicates either a successful allocation of DMA resources or that the driver no longer wishes to retry.

The callback function is called in interrupt context. Therefore, only system functions accessible from interrupt context are be available. The callback function must take whatever steps necessary to protect its critical resources, data structures, queues, etc.

**Return Values**

ddi_dma_buf_bind_handle() returns:

- **DDI_DMA_MAPPED**: Successfully allocated resources for the entire object.
- **DDI_DMA_PARTIAL_MAP**: Successfully allocated resources for a part of the object. This is acceptable when partial transfers are permitted by setting the DDI_DMA_PARTIAL flag in flags.
- **DDI_DMA_INUSE**: Another I/O transaction is using the DMA handle.
- **DDI_DMA_NORESOURCES**: No resources are available at the present time.
- **DDI_DMA_NOMAPPING**: The object cannot be reached by the device requesting the resources.
The object is too big. A request of this size can never be satisfied on this particular system. The maximum size varies depending on machine and configuration.

Context ddi_dma_buf_bind_handle() can be called from user, kernel, or interrupt context, except when callback is set to DDI_DMA_SLEEP, in which case it can be called from user or kernel context only.

See Also ddi_dma_addr_bind_handle, ddi_dma_alloc_handle, ddi_dma_free_handle, ddi_dma_getwin, ddi_dma_nextcookie, ddi_dma_sync, ddi_dma_unbind_handle, buf, ddi_dma_attr, ddi_dma_cookie

Writing Device Drivers

Notes If the driver permits partial mapping with the DDI_DMA_PARTIAL flag, the number of cookies in each window may exceed the size of the device's scatter/gather list as specified in the dma_attr_sgllen field in the ddi_dma_attr structure. In this case, each set of cookies comprising a DMA window will satisfy the DMA attributes as described in the ddi_dma_attr structure in all aspects. The driver should set up its DMA engine and perform one transfer for each set of cookies sufficient for its scatter/gather list, up to the number of cookies for this window, before advancing to the next window using ddi_dma_getwin.
Name  

ddi_dma_buf_setup – easier DMA setup for use with buffer structures

Synopsis  

#include <sys/ddi.h>
#include <sys/sunddi.h>

int ddi_dma_buf_setup(dev_info_t *dip, struct buf *bp, uint_t flags,
        int (*waitfp) (caddr_t), caddr_t arg, ddi_dma_lim_t *lim,
        ddi_dma_handle_t *handlep);

This interface is obsolete. **ddi_dma_buf_bind_handle(9F)** should be used instead.

Parameters  

dip  
A pointer to the device's dev_info structure.

bp  
A pointer to a system buffer structure (see buf(9S)).

flags  
Flags that go into a ddi_dma_req structure (see ddi_dma_req(9S)).

waitfp  
The address of a function to call back later if resources aren't available now. The special function addresses DDI_DMA_SLEEP and DDI_DMA_DONTWAIT (see ddi_dma_req(9S)) are taken to mean, respectively, wait until resources are available, or do not wait at all and do not schedule a callback.

arg  
Argument to be passed to a callback function, if such a function is specified.

lim  
A pointer to a DMA limits structure for this device (see ddi_dmaLim_sparc(9S) or ddi_dmaLim_x86(9S)). If this pointer is NULL, a default set of DMA limits is assumed.

handlep  
Pointer to a DMA handle. See ddi_dma_setup(9F) for a discussion of handle.

Description  
The ddi_dma_buf_setup() function is an interface to ddi_dma_setup(9F). It uses its arguments to construct an appropriate ddi_dma_req structure and calls ddi_dma_setup() with it.

Return Values  
See ddi_dma_setup(9F) for the possible return values for this function.

Context  
The ddi_dma_buf_setup() function can be called from user, interrupt, or kernel context, except when waitfp is set to DDI_DMA_SLEEP, in which case it cannot be called from interrupt context.

Attributes  
See attributes(5) for a description of the following attributes:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ATTRIBUTE TYPE</th>
<th>ATTRIBUTE VALUE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Stability Level</td>
<td>Obsolete</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
See Also  attributes(5), ddi_dma_addr_setup(9F), ddi_dma_free(9F), ddi_dma_htoc(9F),
ddi_dma_setup(9F), ddi_dma_sync(9F), physio(9F), buf(9S), ddi_dma_lim_sparc(9S),
ddi_dma_lim_x86(9S), ddi_dma_req(9S)

Writing Device Drivers
ddi_dma_burstsizes(9F)

**Name**

ddi_dma_burstsizes – find out the allowed burst sizes for a DMA mapping

**Synopsis**

```c
#include <sys/conf.h>
#include <sys/ddi.h>
#include <sys/sunddi.h>

int ddi_dma_burstsizes(ddi_dma_handle_t handle);
```

**Interface Level**

Solaris DDI specific (Solaris DDI).

**Parameters**

`handle` A DMA handle that was filled in by a successful call to `ddi_dma_setup(9F)`.

**Description**

`ddi_dma_burstsizes()` returns the allowed burst sizes for a DMA mapping. This value is derived from the `dlim_burstsizes` member of the `ddi_dma_lim_sparc(9S)` structure, but it shows the allowable burst sizes after imposing on it the limitations of other device layers in addition to device's own limitations.

**Return Values**

`ddi_dma_burstsizes()` returns a binary encoded value of the allowable DMA burst sizes. See `ddi_dma_lim_sparc(9S)` for a discussion of DMA burst sizes.

**Context**

This function can be called from user or interrupt context.

**See Also**

`ddi_dma_devalign(9F), ddi_dma_setup(9F), ddi_dma_lim_sparc(9S), ddi_dma_req(9S)`

*Writing Device Drivers*
Name  ddi_dma_coff – convert a DMA cookie to an offset within a DMA handle.

Synopsis  #include <sys/conf.h>
          #include <sys/ddi.h>
          #include <sys/sunddi.h>

          int ddi_dma_coff(ddi_dma_handle_t handle, ddi_dma_cookie_t *cookiep,
                          off_t *offp);

Interface Level  Solaris SPARC DDI (Solaris SPARC DDI). This interface is obsolete.

Parameters  handle  The handle filled in by a call to ddi_dma_setup(9F).

cookiep  A pointer to a DMA cookie (see ddi_dma_cookie(9S)) that contains the appropriate address, length and bus type to be used in programming the DMA engine.

offp  A pointer to an offset to be filled in.

Description  The ddi_dma_coff() function converts the values in DMA cookie pointed to by cookiep to an offset (in bytes) from the beginning of the object that the DMA handle has mapped.

The ddi_dma_coff() function allows a driver to update a DMA cookie with values it reads from its device’s DMA engine after a transfer completes and convert that value into an offset into the object that is mapped for DMA.

Return Values  The ddi_dma_coff() function returns:

DDI_SUCCESS  Successfully filled in offp.

DDI_FAILURE  Failed to successfully fill in offp.

Context  The ddi_dma_coff() function can be called from user, interrupt, or kernel context.

Attributes  See attributes(5) for descriptions of the following attributes:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ATTRIBUTE TYPE</th>
<th>ATTRIBUTE VALUE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Interface Stability</td>
<td>Obsolete</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

See Also  ddi_dma_setup(9F), ddi_dma_sync(9F), ddi_dma_cookie(9S)

Writing Device Drivers
**Name**  
ddi_dma_curwin – report current DMA window offset and size

**Synopsis**  
```c
#include <sys/conf.h>
#include <sys/ddi.h>
#include <sys/sunddi.h>

int ddi_dma_curwin(ddi_dma_handle_t handle, off_t *offp, uint_t *lenp);
```

**Interface Level**  
This interface is obsolete. `ddi_dma_getwin(9F)` should be used instead.

**Parameters**  
- **handle**  
The DMA handle filled in by a call to `ddi_dma_setup(9F)`.
- **offp**  
A pointer to a value which will be filled in with the current offset from the beginning of the object that is mapped for DMA.
- **lenp**  
A pointer to a value which will be filled in with the size, in bytes, of the current window onto the object that is mapped for DMA.

**Description**  
The `ddi_dma_curwin()` function reports the current DMA window offset and size. If a DMA mapping allows partial mapping, that is if the `DDI_DMA_PARTIAL` flag in the `ddi_dma_req(9S)` structure is set, its current (effective) DMA window offset and size can be obtained by a call to `ddi_dma_curwin()`.

**Return Values**  
The `ddi_dma_curwin()` function returns:
- **DDI_SUCCESS**  
The current length and offset can be established.
- **DDI_FAILURE**  
Otherwise.

**Context**  
The `ddi_dma_curwin()` function can be called from user, interrupt, or kernel context.

**Attributes**  
See `attributes(5)` for a description of the following attributes:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ATTRIBUTE TYPE</th>
<th>ATTRIBUTE VALUE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Stability Level</td>
<td>Obsolete</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**See Also**  
`attributes(5), ddi_dma_getwin(9F), ddi_dma_movwin(9F), ddi_dma_setup(9F), ddi_dma_req(9S)`

*Writing Device Drivers*
Name  ddi_dma_devalign – find DMA mapping alignment and minimum transfer size

Synopsis  
#include <sys/conf.h>
#include <sys/ddi.h>
#include <sys/sunddi.h>

int ddi_dma_devalign(ddi_dma_handle_t handle, uint_t *alignment,
                      uint_t *minxfr);

Interface Level  Solaris DDI specific (Solaris DDI). This interface is obsolete.

Parameters  handle  The DMA handle filled in by a successful call to ddi_dma_setup(9F).
alignment  A pointer to an unsigned integer to be filled in with the minimum required alignment for DMA. The alignment is guaranteed to be a power of two.
minxfr  A pointer to an unsigned integer to be filled in with the minimum effective transfer size (see ddi_iomin(9F), ddi_dma_lim_sparc(9S) and ddi_dma_lim_x86(9S)). This also is guaranteed to be a power of two.

Description  The ddi_dma_devalign() Function determines after a successful DMA mapping (see ddi_dma_setup(9F)) the minimum required data alignment and minimum DMA transfer size.

Return Values  The ddi_dma_devalign() function returns:
DDI_SUCCESS  The alignment and minxfr values have been filled.
DDI_FAILURE  The handle was illegal.

Context  The ddi_dma_devalign() function can be called from user, interrupt, or kernel context.

Attributes  See attributes(5) for descriptions of the following attributes:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ATTRIBUTE TYPE</th>
<th>ATTRIBUTE VALUE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Interface Stability</td>
<td>Obsolete</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

See Also  ddi_dma_setup(9F), ddi_iomin(9F), ddi_dma_lim_sparc(9S), ddi_dma_lim_x86(9S), ddi_dma_req(9S)

Writing Device Drivers
Name  
ddi_dmae, ddi_dmae_alloc, ddi_dmae_release, ddi_dmae_prog, ddi_dmae_disable, 
ddi_dmae_enable, ddi_dmae_stop, ddi_dmae_getcnt, ddi_dmae_1stparty, ddi_dmae_getlim, 
ddi_dmae_getattr – system DMA engine functions

Synopsis  
int ddi_dmae_alloc(dev_info_t *dip, int chnl, int (*callback) (caddr_t), 
                     caddr_t arg);

int ddi_dmae_release(dev_info_t *dip, int chnl);

int ddi_dmae_prog(dev_info_t *dip, struct ddi_dmae_req *dmaereqp, 
                   ddi_dma_cookie_t *cookiep, int chnl);

int ddi_dmae_disable(dev_info_t *dip, int chnl);

int ddi_dmae_enable(dev_info_t *dip, int chnl);

int ddi_dmae_stop(dev_info_t *dip, int chnl);

int ddi_dmae_getcnt(dev_info_t *dip, int chnl, int *countp);

int ddi_dmae_1stparty(dev_info_t *dip, int chnl);

int ddi_dmae_getlim(dev_info_t *dip, ddi_dma_lim_t *limitsp);

int ddi_dmae_getattr(dev_info_t *dip, ddi_dma_attr_t *attrp);

Interface Level  
Solaris DDI specific (Solaris DDI). The ddi_dmae_getlim() interface, described below, is 
obsolete. Use ddi_dmae_getattr(), also described below, to replace it.

Parameters

dip  
A dev_info pointer that identifies the device.

chnl  
A DMA channel number. On ISA buses this number must be 0, 1, 2, 3, 5, 6, or 7.

callback  
The address of a function to call back later if resources are not currently available. 
The following special function addresses may also be used:

DDI_DMA_SLEEP  
Wait until resources are available.

DDI_DMA_DONTWAIT  
Do not wait until resources are available and do not schedule a callback.

arg  
Argument to be passed to the callback function, if specified.

dmaereqp  
A pointer to a DMA engine request structure. See ddi_dmae_req(9S).

cookiep  
A pointer to a ddi_dma_cookie(9S) object, obtained from 
ddi_dma_segtocookie(9F), which contains the address and count.

countp  
A pointer to an integer that will receive the count of the number of bytes not yet 
transferred upon completion of a DMA operation.

limitsp  
A pointer to a DMA limit structure. See ddi_dma_lim_x86(9S).

attrp  
A pointer to a DMA attribute structure. See ddi_dma_attr(9S).
There are three possible ways that a device can perform DMA engine functions:

**Bus master DMA**  
If the device is capable of acting as a true bus master, then the driver should program the device's DMA registers directly and not make use of the DMA engine functions described here. The driver should obtain the DMA address and count from `ddi_dma_segtocookie(9F)`. See `ddi_dma_cookie(9S)` for a description of a DMA cookie.

**Third-party DMA**  
This method uses the system DMA engine that is resident on the main system board. In this model, the device cooperates with the system's DMA engine to effect the data transfers between the device and memory. The driver uses the functions documented here, except `ddi_dmae_1stparty()`, to initialize and program the DMA engine. For each DMA data transfer, the driver programs the DMA engine and then gives the device a command to initiate the transfer in cooperation with that engine.

**First-party DMA**  
Using this method, the device uses its own DMA bus cycles, but requires a channel from the system's DMA engine. After allocating the DMA channel, the `ddi_dmae_1stparty()` function may be used to perform whatever configuration is necessary to enable this mode.

**ddi_dmae_alloc()**  
The `ddi_dmae_alloc()` function is used to acquire a DMA channel of the system DMA engine. `ddi_dmae_alloc()` allows only one device at a time to have a particular DMA channel allocated. It must be called prior to any other system DMA engine function on a channel. If the device allows the channel to be shared with other devices, it must be freed using `ddi_dmae_release()` after completion of the DMA operation. In any case, the channel must be released before the driver successfully detaches. See `detach(9E)`. No other driver may acquire the DMA channel until it is released.

If the requested channel is not immediately available, the value of `callback` determines what action will be taken. If the value of `callback` is `DDI_DMA_DONTWAIT`, `ddi_dmae_alloc()` will return immediately. The value `DDI_DMA_SLEEP` will cause the thread to sleep and not return until the channel has been acquired. Any other value is assumed to be a callback function address. In that case, `ddi_dmae_alloc()` returns immediately, and when resources might have become available, the callback function is called (with the argument `arg`) from interrupt context. When the callback function is called, it should attempt to allocate the DMA channel again. If it succeeds or no longer needs the channel, it must return the value `DDI_DMA_CALLBACK_DONE`. If it tries to allocate the channel but fails to do so, it must return the value `DDI_DMA_CALLBACK_RUNOUT`. In this case, the callback function is put back on a list to be called again later.

**ddi_dmae_prog()**  
The `ddi_dmae_prog()` function programs the DMA channel for a DMA transfer. The `ddi_dmae_req` structure contains all the information necessary to set up the channel, except for the memory address and count. Once the channel has been programmed, subsequent calls to `ddi_dmae_prog()` may specify a value of `NULL` for `dmaereqp` if no changes to the
programming are required other than the address and count values. It disables the channel prior to setup, and enables the channel before returning. The DMA address and count are specified by passing ddi_dmae_prog() a cookie obtained from ddi_dmae_segtocookie(9F). Other DMA engine parameters are specified by the DMA engine request structure passed in through dmaereqp. The fields of that structure are documented in ddi_dmae_req(9S).

Before using ddi_dmae_prog(), you must allocate system DMA resources using DMA setup functions such as ddi_dma_buf_setup(9F). ddi_dmae_segtocookie(9F) can then be used to retrieve a cookie which contains the address and count. Then this cookie is passed to ddi_dmae_prog().

ddi_dmae_disable() The ddi_dmae_disable() function disables the DMA channel so that it no longer responds to a device's DMA service requests.

ddi_dmae_enable() The ddi_dmae_enable() function enables the DMA channel for operation. This may be used to re-enable the channel after a call to ddi_dmae_disable(). The channel is automatically enabled after successful programming by ddi_dmae_prog().

ddi_dmae_stop() The ddi_dmae_stop() function disables the channel and terminates any active operation.

ddi_dmae_getcnt() The ddi_dmae_getcnt() function examines the count register of the DMA channel and sets *countp to the number of bytes remaining to be transferred. The channel is assumed to be stopped.

ddi_dmae_1stparty() In the case of ISA buses, ddi_dmae_1stparty() configures a channel in the system's DMA engine to operate in a "slave" ("cascade") mode.

When operating in ddi_dmae_1stparty() mode, the DMA channel must first be allocated using ddi_dmae_alloc() and then configured using ddi_dmae_1stparty(). The driver then programs the device to perform the I/O, including the necessary DMA address and count values obtained from ddi_dmae_segtocookie(9F).

ddi_dmae_getlim() This function is obsolete. Use ddi_dmae_getattr(), described below, instead.

The ddi_dmae_getlim() function fills in the DMA limit structure, pointed to by limitsp, with the DMA limits of the system DMA engine. Drivers for devices that perform their own bus mastering or use first-party DMA must create and initialize their own DMA limit structures; they should not use ddi_dmae_getlim(). The DMA limit structure must be passed to the DMA setup routines so that they will know how to break the DMA request into windows and segments (see ddi_dma_nextseg(9F) and ddi_dma_nextwin(9F)). If the device has any particular restrictions on transfer size or granularity (such as the size of disk sector), the driver should further restrict the values in the structure members before passing them to the DMA setup routines. The driver must not relax any of the restrictions embodied in the structure after it is filled in by ddi_dmae_getlim(). After calling ddi_dmae_getlim(), a driver must examine, and possibly set, the size of the DMA engine's scatter/gather list to determine
whether DMA chaining will be used. See \texttt{ddi_dma\_lim\_x86(9S)} and \texttt{ddi\_dmae\_req(9S)} for additional information on scatter/gather DMA.

**ddi\_dmae\_getattr()**  
The \texttt{ddi\_dmae\_getattr()} function fills in the DMA attribute structure, pointed to by \texttt{attrp}, with the DMA attributes of the system DMA engine. Drivers for devices that perform their own bus mastering or use first-party DMA must create and initialize their own DMA attribute structures; they should not use \texttt{ddi\_dmae\_getattr()}. The DMA attribute structure must be passed to the DMA resource allocation functions to provide the information necessary to break the DMA request into DMA windows and DMA cookies. See \texttt{ddi\_dma\_nextcookie(9F)} and \texttt{ddi\_dma\_getwin(9F)}.

**Return Values**  
- **DDI\_SUCCESS**  
  Upon success, for all of these routines.
- **DDI\_FAILURE**  
  May be returned due to invalid arguments.
- **DDI\_DMA\_NORESOURCES**  
  May be returned by \texttt{ddi\_dmae\_alloc()} if the requested resources are not available and the value of \texttt{dmae\_waitfp} is not \texttt{DDI\_DMA\_SLEEP}.

**Context**  
If \texttt{ddi\_dmae\_alloc()} is called from interrupt context, then its \texttt{dmae\_waitfp} argument and the callback function must not have the value \texttt{DDI\_DMA\_SLEEP}. Otherwise, all these routines can be called from user, interrupt, or kernel context.

**Attributes**  
See \texttt{attributes(5)} for descriptions of the following attributes:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ATTRIBUTE TYPE</th>
<th>ATTRIBUTE VALUE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Architecture</td>
<td>x86</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**See Also**  
\texttt{isa(4)}, \texttt{attributes(5)}, \texttt{ddi\_dma\_buf\_setup(9F)}, \texttt{ddi\_dma\_getwin(9F)}, \texttt{ddi\_dma\_nextcookie(9F)}, \texttt{ddi\_dma\_nextseg(9F)}, \texttt{ddi\_dma\_nextwin(9F)}, \texttt{ddi\_dma\_segtocookie(9F)}, \texttt{ddi\_dma\_setup(9F)}, \texttt{ddi\_dma\_attr(9S)}, \texttt{ddi\_dma\_cookie(9S)}, \texttt{ddi\_dma\_lim\_x86(9S)}, \texttt{ddi\_dma\_req(9S)}, \texttt{ddi\_dmae\_req(9S)}}
Name ddi_dma_free – release system DMA resources

Synopsis #include <sys/ddi.h>
#include <sys/sunddi.h>

int ddi_dma_free(ddi_dma_handle_t handle);

Interface Level This interface is obsolete. ddi_dma_free_handle(9F) should be used instead.

Parameters handle The handle filled in by a call to ddi_dma_setup(9F).

Description The ddi_dma_free() function releases system DMA resources set up by ddi_dma_setup(9F).
When a DMA transfer completes, the driver should free up system DMA resources established by a call to ddi_dma_setup(9F). This is done by a call to ddi_dma_free().
ddi_dma_free() does an implicit ddi_dma_sync(9F) for you so any further synchronization steps are not necessary.

Return Values The ddi_dma_free() function returns:
DDI_SUCCESS Successfully released resources
DDI_FAILURE Failed to free resources

Context The ddi_dma_free() function can be called from user, interrupt, or kernel context.

Attributes See attributes(5) for a description of the following attributes:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ATTRIBUTE TYPE</th>
<th>ATTRIBUTE VALUE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Stability Level</td>
<td>Obsolete</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

See Also attributes(5), ddi_dma_addr_setup(9F), ddi_dma_buf_setup(9F), ddi_dma_free_handle(9F), ddi_dma_htoc(9F), ddi_dma_sync(9F), ddi_dma_req(9S)

Writing Device Drivers
Name  ddi_dma_free_handle – free DMA handle

Synopsis  
#include <sys/ddi.h>
#include <sys/sunddi.h>

void ddi_dma_free_handle(ddi_dma_handle_t *handle);

Parameters  handle A pointer to the DMA handle previously allocated by a call to
ddi_dma_alloc_handle(9F).

Interface Level  Solaris DDI specific (Solaris DDI).

Description  ddi_dma_free_handle() destroys the DMA handle pointed to by handle. Any further
references to the DMA handle will have undefined results. Note that
ddi_dma_unbind_handle(9F) must be called prior to ddi_dma_free_handle() to free any
resources the system may be caching on the handle.

Context  ddi_dma_free_handle() can be called from user, kernel, or interrupt context.

See Also  ddi_dma_alloc_handle(9F), ddi_dma_unbind_handle(9F)

Writing Device Drivers
Name  

ddi_dma_get_attr – get the device DMA attribute structure from a DMA handle

Synopsis  

#include <sys/ddi.h>
#include <sys/sunddi.h>

int ddi_dma_get_attr(ddi_dma_handle_t handle, ddi_dma_attr_t *attrp);

Interface Level  

Solaris DDI specific (Solaris DDI)

Parameters  

handle  
The handle filled in by a call to ddi_dma_alloc_handle(9F).

attrp  
Pointer to a buffer suitable for holding a DMA attribute structure. See ddi_dma_attr(9S).

Description  

ddi_dma_get_attr() is used to get a ddi_dma_attr(9S) structure. This structure describes
the attributes of the DMA data path to which any memory object bound to the given handle
will be subject.

Return Values  

DDI_SUCCESS  
Successfully passed back attribute structure in buffer pointed to by attrp.

DDI_DMA_BADATTR  
A valid attribute structure could not be passed back.

Context  

ddi_dma_get_attr() can be called from any context.

See Also  

ddi_dma_alloc_handle(9F), ddi_dma_attr(9S)
ddi_dma_getwin

**Name**
ddi_dma_getwin – activate a new DMA window

**Synopsis**
#include <sys/ddi.h>
#include <sys/sunddi.h>

int ddi_dma_getwin(ddi_dma_handle_t handle, uint_t win,  
    off_t *offp, size_t *lenp, ddi_dma_cookie_t *cookiep,  
    uint_t *ccountp);

**Interface Level**
Solaris DDI specific (Solaris DDI).

**Parameters**
- **handle**
  The DMA handle previously allocated by a call to ddi_dma_alloc_handle(9F).
- **win**
  Number of the window to activate.
- **offp**
  Pointer to an offset. Upon a successful return, offp will contain the new offset indicating the beginning of the window within the object.
- **lenp**
  Upon a successful return, lenp will contain the size, in bytes, of the current window.
- **cookiep**
  A pointer to the first ddi_dma_cookie(9S) structure.
- **ccountp**
  Upon a successful return, ccountp will contain the number of cookies for this DMA window.

**Description**
ddi_dma_getwin() activates a new DMA window. If a DMA resource allocation request returns DDI_DMA_PARTIAL_MAP indicating that resources for less than the entire object were allocated, the current DMA window can be changed by a call to ddi_dma_getwin().

The caller must first determine the number of DMA windows, \( N \), using ddi_dma_numwin(9F).

ddi_dma_getwin() takes a DMA window number from the range \([0..N-1]\) as the parameter win and makes it the current DMA window.

ddi_dma_getwin() fills in the first DMA cookie pointed to by cookiep with the appropriate address, length, and bus type. *ccountp is set to the number of DMA cookies representing this DMA object. Subsequent DMA cookies must be retrieved using ddi_dma_nextcookie(9F).

ddi_dma_getwin() takes care of underlying resource synchronizations required to shift the window. However accessing the data prior to or after moving the window requires further synchronization steps using ddi_dma_sync(9F).

ddi_dma_getwin() is normally called from an interrupt routine. The first invocation of the DMA engine is done from the driver. All subsequent invocations of the DMA engine are done from the interrupt routine. The interrupt routine checks to see if the request has been
completed. If it has, the interrupt routine returns without invoking another DMA transfer. Otherwise, it calls `ddi_dma_getwin()` to shift the current window and start another DMA transfer.

**Return Values**  
`ddi_dma_getwin()` returns:
- `DDI_SUCCESS`  
  Resources for the specified DMA window are allocated.
- `DDI_FAILURE`  
  `win` is not a valid window index.

**Context**  
`ddi_dma_getwin()` can be called from user, kernel, or interrupt context.

**See Also**  
`ddi_dma_addr_bind_handle(9F), ddi_dma_alloc_handle(9F), ddi_dma_buf_bind_handle(9F), ddi_dma_nextcookie(9F), ddi_dma_numwin(9F), ddi_dma_sync(9F), ddi_dma_unbind_handle(9F), ddi_dma_cookie(9S)`

*Writing Device Drivers*
Name  ddi_dma_htoc – convert a DMA handle to a DMA address cookie

Synopsis  #include <sys/conf.h>
          #include <sys/ddi.h>
          #include <sys/sunddi.h>

          int ddi_dma_htoc(ddi_dma_handle_t handle, off_t off,
                          ddi_dma_cookie_t *cookiep);

Interface Level  This interface is obsolete. ddi_dma_addr_bind_handle(9F) or
                 ddi_dma_buf_bind_handle(9F) should be used instead.

Parameters  handle    The handle filled in by a call to ddi_dma_setup(9F).
             off       An offset into the object that handle maps.
             cookiep   A pointer to a ddi_dma_cookie(9S) structure.

Description  The ddi_dma_htoc() function takes a DMA handle (established by ddi_dma_setup(9F)), and
              fills in the cookie pointed to by cookiep with the appropriate address, length, and bus type to be
              used to program the DMA engine.

Return Values  The ddi_dma_htoc() function returns:
                DDI_SUCCESS    Successfully filled in the cookie pointed to by cookiep.
                DDI_FAILURE    Failed to successfully fill in the cookie.

Context  The ddi_dma_htoc() function can be called from user, interrupt, or kernel context.

Attributes  See attributes(5) for a description of the following attributes:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ATTRIBUTE TYPE</th>
<th>ATTRIBUTE VALUE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Stability Level</td>
<td>Obsolete</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

See Also  attributes(5), ddi_dma_addr_bind_handle(9F), ddi_dma_addr_setup(9F),
          ddi_dma_buf_bind_handle(9F), ddi_dma_buf_setup(9F), ddi_dma_setup(9F),
          ddi_dma_sync(9F), ddi_dma_cookie(9S)

Writing Device Drivers
Name  
ddi_dma_mem_alloc – allocate memory for DMA transfer

Synopsis  
#include <sys/ddi.h>
#include <sys/sunddi.h>

int ddi_dma_mem_alloc(ddi_dma_handle_t handle, size_t length,
          ddi_device_acc_attr_t *accattrp, uint_t flags,
          int (*waitfp) (caddr_t), caddr_t arg, caddr_t *kaddrp,
          size_t *real_length, ddi_acc_handle_t *handlep);

Interface Level  
Solaris DDI specific (Solaris DDI).

Parameters  
handle  
The DMA handle previously allocated by a call to
ddi_dma_alloc_handle(9F).

length  
The length in bytes of the desired allocation.

accattrp  
Pointer to a ddi_device_acc_attr(9S) structure of the device. See
ddi_device_acc_attr(9S). The value in devacc_attr_dataorder is ignored
in the current release. The value in devacc_attr_endian_flags is meaningful
on the SPARC architecture only.

flags  
Used to determine the data transfer mode and/or the cache attribute.

Possible values of the data transfer are:

DDI_DMA_STREAMING  
Sequential, unidirectional, block-sized, and
block-aligned transfers.

DDI_DMA_CONSISTENT  
Nonsequential transfers of small objects.

waitfp  
The address of a function to call back later if resources are not available now.
The callback function indicates how a caller wants to handle the possibility of
resources not being available. If callback is set to DDI_DMA_DONTWAIT, the caller
does not care if the allocation fails, and can handle an allocation failure
appropriately. If callback is set to DDI_DMA_SLEEP, the caller wishes to have the
allocation routines wait for resources to become available. If any other value is
set and a DMA resource allocation fails, this value is assumed to be the address
of a function to be called when resources become available. When the specified
function is called, arg is passed to it as an argument. The specified callback
function must return either DDI_DMA_CALLBACK_RUNOUT or
DDI_DMA_CALLBACK_DONE. DDI_DMA_CALLBACK_RUNOUT indicates that the
callback function attempted to allocate DMA resources but failed. In this case,
the callback function is put back on a list to be called again later.
DDI_DMA_CALLBACK_DONE indicates that either the allocation of DMA
resources was successful or the driver no longer wishes to retry. The callback
function is called in interrupt context. Therefore, only system functions accessible from interrupt context are available.

The callback function must take whatever steps are necessary to protect its critical resources, data structures, queues, and so on.

**arg**
Argument to be passed to the callback function, if such a function is specified.

**kaddrp**
On successful return, kaddrp points to the allocated memory.

**real_length**
The amount of memory, in bytes, allocated. Alignment and padding requirements may require `ddi_dma_mem_alloc()` to allocate more memory than requested in `length`.

**handlep**
Pointer to a data access handle.

**Description**
The `ddi_dma_mem_alloc()` function allocates memory for DMA transfers to or from a device. The allocation will obey the alignment, padding constraints and device granularity as specified by the DMA attributes (see `ddi_dma_attr(9S)`) passed to `ddi_dma_alloc_handle(9F)` and the more restrictive attributes imposed by the system.

The `flags` parameter should be set to `DDI_DMA_STREAMING` if the device is doing sequential, unidirectional, block-sized, and block-aligned transfers to or from memory. The alignment and padding constraints specified by the `minxfer` and `burstsizes` fields in the DMA attribute structure, `ddi_dma_attr(9S)` (see `ddi_dma_alloc_handle(9F)`) will be used to allocate the most effective hardware support for large transfers. For example, if an I/O transfer can be sped up by using an I/O cache, which has a minimum transfer of one cache line, `ddi_dma_mem_alloc()` will align the memory at a cache line boundary and it will round up `real_length` to a multiple of the cache line size.

The `flags` parameter should be set to `DDI_DMA_CONSISTENT` if the device accesses memory randomly, or if synchronization steps using `ddi_dma_sync(9F)` need to be as efficient as possible. I/O parameter blocks used for communication between a device and a driver should be allocated using `DDI_DMA_CONSISTENT`.

The device access attributes are specified in the location pointed by the `accattrp` argument (see `ddi_device_acc_attr(9S)`).

The data access handle is returned in `handlep`. `handlep` is opaque – drivers may not attempt to interpret its value. To access the data content, the driver must invoke `ddi_get8(9F)` or `ddi_put8(9F)` (depending on the data transfer direction) with the data access handle.

DMA resources must be established before performing a DMA transfer by passing `kaddrp` and `real_length` as returned from `ddi_dma_mem_alloc()` and the flag `DDI_DMA_STREAMING` or `DDI_DMA_CONSISTENT` to `ddi_dma_addr_bind_handle(9F)`. In addition, to ensure the
consistency of a memory object shared between the CPU and the device after a DMA transfer, explicit synchronization steps using `ddi_dma_sync(9F)` or `ddi_dma_unbind_handle(9F)` are required.

**Return Values**  The `ddi_dma_mem_alloc()` function returns:

- **DDI_SUCCESS** Memory successfully allocated.
- **DDI_FAILURE** Memory allocation failed.

**Context**  The `ddi_dma_mem_alloc()` function can be called from user, interrupt, or kernel context except when `waitfp` is set to `DDI_DMA_SLEEP`, in which case it cannot be called from interrupt context.

**See Also**  `ddi_dma_addr_bind_handle(9F), ddi_dma_alloc_handle(9F), ddi_dma_mem_free(9F), ddi_dma_sync(9F), ddi_dma_unbind_handle(9F), ddi_get8(9F), ddi_put8(9F), ddi_device_acc_attr(9S), ddi_dma_attr(9S)`

**Writing Device Drivers**

**Warnings**  If `DDI_NEVERSWAP_ACC` is specified, memory can be used for any purpose; but if either endian mode is specified, you must use `ddi_get/put*` and never anything else.
### ddi_dma_mem_free(9F)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>Name</strong></th>
<th>ddi_dma_mem_free – free previously allocated memory</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Synopsis</strong></td>
<td><code>#include &lt;sys/ddi.h&gt;</code>&lt;br&gt;<code>#include &lt;sys/sunddi.h&gt;</code>&lt;br&gt;<code>void ddi_dma_mem_free(ddi_acc_handle_t *handlep);</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Parameters</strong></td>
<td><em>handlep</em>  Pointer to the data access handle previously allocated by a call to ddi_dma_mem_alloc(9F).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Interface Level</strong></td>
<td>Solaris DDI specific (Solaris DDI).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Description</strong></td>
<td>ddi_dma_mem_free() deallocates the memory acquired by ddi_dma_mem_alloc(9F). In addition, it destroys the data access handle <em>handlep</em> associated with the memory.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Context</strong></td>
<td>ddi_dma_mem_free() can be called from user, kernel, or interrupt context.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>See Also</strong></td>
<td>ddi_dma_mem_alloc(9F)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Writing Device Drivers*
ddi_dma_movwin(9F)

Name  ddi_dma_movwin – shift current DMA window

Synopsis  
#include <sys/ddi.h>
#include <sys/sunddi.h>

int ddi_dma_movwin(ddi_dma_handle_t handle, off_t *offp,
                   uint_t *lenp, ddi_dma_cookie_t *cookiep);

Interface Level  This interface is obsolete. ddi_dma_getwin(9F) should be used instead.

Parameters  

handle  The DMA handle filled in by a call to ddi_dma_setup(9F).

offp  A pointer to an offset to set the DMA window to. Upon a successful return, it will be filled in with the new offset from the beginning of the object resources are allocated for.

lenp  A pointer to a value which must either be the current size of the DMA window (as known from a call to ddi_dma_curwin(9F) or from a previous call to ddi_dma_movwin()). Upon a successful return, it will be filled in with the size, in bytes, of the current window.

cookiep  A pointer to a DMA cookie (see ddi_dma_cookie(9S)). Upon a successful return, cookiep is filled in just as if an implicit ddi_dma_htoc(9F) had been made.

Description  The ddi_dma_movwin() function shifts the current DMA window. If a DMA request allows the system to allocate resources for less than the entire object by setting the DDI_DMA_PARTIAL flag in the ddi_dma_req(9S) structure, the current DMA window can be shifted by a call to ddi_dma_movwin().

The caller must first determine the current DMA window size by a call to ddi_dma_curwin(9F). Using the current offset and size of the window thus retrieved, the caller of ddi_dma_movwin() may change the window onto the object by changing the offset by a value which is some multiple of the size of the DMA window.

The ddi_dma_movwin() function takes care of underlying resource synchronizations required to shift the window. However, if you want to access the data prior to or after moving the window, further synchronizations using ddi_dma_sync(9F) are required.

This function is normally called from an interrupt routine. The first invocation of the DMA engine is done from the driver. All subsequent invocations of the DMA engine are done from the interrupt routine. The interrupt routine checks to see if the request has been completed. If it has, it returns without invoking another DMA transfer. Otherwise it calls ddi_dmaMovwin() to shift the current window and starts another DMA transfer.
The `ddi_dma_movwin()` function returns:

- **DDI_SUCCESS**: The current length and offset are legal and have been set.
- **DDI_FAILURE**: Otherwise.

**Context**

The `ddi_dma_movwin()` function can be called from user, interrupt, or kernel context.

**Attributes**

See attributes(5) for a description of the following attributes:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ATTRIBUTE TYPE</th>
<th>ATTRIBUTE VALUE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Stability Level</td>
<td>Obsolete</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**See Also**

attributes(5), ddi_dma_curwin(9F), ddi_dma_getwin(9F), ddi_dma_htoc(9F), ddi_dma_setup(9F), ddi_dma_sync(9F), ddi_dma_cookie(9S), ddi_dma_req(9S)

**Writing Device Drivers**

**Warnings**

The caller must guarantee that the resources used by the object are inactive prior to calling this function.
**Name**

ddi_dma_nextcookie – retrieve subsequent DMA cookie

**Synopsis**

```c
#include <sys/ddi.h>
#include <sys/sunddi.h>

void ddi_dma_nextcookie(ddi_dma_handle_t handle,
                         ddi_dma_cookie_t *cookiep);
```

**Parameters**

- **handle** The handle previously allocated by a call to `ddi_dma_alloc_handle(9F)`.
- **cookiep** A pointer to a `ddi_dma_cookie(9S)` structure.

**Interface Level**

Solaris DDI specific (Solaris DDI).

**Description**

`ddi_dma_nextcookie()` retrieves subsequent DMA cookies for a DMA object. `ddi_dma_nextcookie()` fills in the `ddi_dma_cookie(9S)` structure pointed to by `cookiep`. The `ddi_dma_cookie(9S)` structure must be allocated prior to calling `ddi_dma_nextcookie()`.

The DMA cookie count returned by `ddi_dma_buf_bind_handle(9F)`, `ddi_dma_addr_bind_handle(9F)`, or `ddi_dma_getwin(9F)` indicates the number of DMA cookies a DMA object consists of. If the resulting cookie count, N, is larger than 1, `ddi_dma_nextcookie()` must be called N-1 times to retrieve all DMA cookies.

**Context**

ddi_dma_nextcookie() can be called from user, kernel, or interrupt context.

**Examples**

**EXAMPLE 1**

Process a scatter-gather list of I/O requests.

This example demonstrates the use of `ddi_dma_nextcookie()` to process a scatter-gather list of I/O requests.

```c
/* setup scatter-gather list with multiple DMA cookies */
ddi_dma_cookie_t dmacookie;
uint_t ccount;
...

status = ddi_dma_buf_bind_handle(handle, bp, DDI_DMA_READ,
                                  NULL, NULL, &dmacookie, &ccount);

if (status == DDI_DMA_MAPPED) {
    /* program DMA engine with first cookie */

    while (--ccount > 0) {
        ddi_dma_nextcookie(handle, &dmacookie);
        /* program DMA engine with next cookie */
    }
}
```
EXAMPLE 1  Process a scatter-gather list of I/O requests.  (Continued)

...  

See Also  ddi_dma_addr_bind_handle(9F), ddi_dma_alloc_handle(9F),
ddi_dma_buf_bind_handle(9F), ddi_dma_unbind_handle(9F), ddi_dma_cookie(9S)

Writing Device Drivers
### Name
`ddi_dma_nextseg` – get next DMA segment

### Synopsis
```c
#include <sys/ddi.h>
#include <sys/sunddi.h>

int ddi_dma_nextseg(ddi_dma_win_t win, ddi_dma_seg_t seg,
                     ddi_dma_seg_t *nseg);
```

### Interface Level
This interface is obsolete. `ddi_dma_nextcookie(9F)` should be used instead.

### Parameters
- **`win`**
  A DMA window.
- **`seg`**
  The current DMA segment or `NULL`.
- **`nseg`**
  A pointer to the next DMA segment to be filled in. If `seg` is `NULL`, a pointer to the first segment within the specified window is returned.

### Description
The `ddi_dma_nextseg()` function gets the next DMA segment within the specified window `win`. If the current segment is `NULL`, the first DMA segment within the window is returned.

A DMA segment is always required for a DMA window. A DMA segment is a contiguous portion of a DMA window (see `ddi_dma_nextwin(9F)`) which is entirely addressable by the device for a data transfer operation.

An example where multiple DMA segments are allocated is where the system does not contain DVMA capabilities and the object may be non-contiguous. In this example the object will be broken into smaller contiguous DMA segments. Another example is where the device has an upper limit on its transfer size (for example an 8-bit address register) and has expressed this in the DMA limit structure (see `ddi_dma_lim_sparc(9S)` or `ddi_dma_lim_x86(9S)`). In this example the object will be broken into smaller addressable DMA segments.

### Return Values
The `ddi_dma_nextseg()` function returns:

- **`DDI_SUCCESS`**
  Successfully filled in the next segment pointer.
- **`DDI_DMA_DONE`**
  There is no next segment. The current segment is the final segment within the specified window.
- **`DDI_DMA_STALE`**
  `win` does not refer to the currently active window.

### Context
The `ddi_dma_nextseg()` function can be called from user, interrupt, or kernel context.

### Examples
For an example, see `ddi_dma_segtocookie(9F)`.

### Attributes
See `attributes(5)` for a description of the following attributes:
ddi_dma_nextseg(9F)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ATTRIBUTE TYPE</th>
<th>ATTRIBUTE VALUE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Stability Level</td>
<td>Obsolete</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

See Also  attributes(5), ddi_dma_addr_setup(9F), ddi_dma_buf_setup(9F), ddi_dma_nextcookie(9F), ddi_dma_nextwin(9F), ddi_dma_segtocookie(9F), ddi_dma_sync(9F), ddi_dma_lim_sparc(9S), ddi_dma_lim_x86(9S), ddi_dma_req(9S)

Writing Device Drivers
Name  
ddi_dma_nextwin – get next DMA window

Synopsis  
#include <sys/ddi.h>
#include <sys/sunddi.h>

int ddi_dma_nextwin(ddi_dma_handle_t handle, ddi_dma_win_t win,
                   ddi_dma_win_t *nwin);

Interface Level  
This interface is obsolete. ddi_dma_getwin(9F) should be used instead.

Parameters  
handle  
A DMA handle.

win  
The current DMA window or NULL.

nwin  
A pointer to the next DMA window to be filled in. If win is NULL, a pointer to the
first window within the object is returned.

Description  
The ddi_dma_nextwin() function shifts the current DMA window win within the object
referred to by handle to the next DMA window nwin. If the current window is NULL, the first
window within the object is returned. A DMA window is a portion of a DMA object or might
be the entire object. A DMA window has system resources allocated to it and is prepared to
accept data transfers. Examples of system resources are DVMA mapping resources and
intermediate transfer buffer resources.

All DMA objects require a window. If the DMA window represents the whole DMA object it
has system resources allocated for the entire data transfer. However, if the system is unable to
setup the entire DMA object due to system resource limitations, the driver writer may allow
the system to allocate system resources for less than the entire DMA object. This can be
accomplished by specifying the DDI_DMA_PARTIAL flag as a parameter to
ddi_dma_buf_setup(9F) or ddi_dma_addr_setup(9F) or as part of a ddi_dma_req(9S)
structure in a call to ddi_dma_setup(9F).

Only the window that has resources allocated is valid per object at any one time. The currently
valid window is the one that was most recently returned from ddi_dma_nextwin().
Furthermore, because a call to ddi_dma_nextwin() will reallocate system resources to the new
window, the previous window will become invalid. It is a severe error to call
ddi_dma_nextwin() before any transfers into the current window are complete.

The ddi_dma_nextwin() function takes care of underlying memory synchronizations
required to shift the window. However, if you want to access the data before or after moving
the window, further synchronizations using ddi_dma_sync(9F) are required.

Return Values  
The ddi_dma_nextwin() function returns:

DDI_SUCCESS  
Successfully filled in the next window pointer.
DDI_DMA_DONE  There is no next window. The current window is the final window within the specified object.

DDI_DMA_STALE  win does not refer to the currently active window.

**Context**  The ddi_dma_nextwin() function can be called from user, interrupt, or kernel context.

**Examples**  For an example see ddi_dma_segtocookie(9F).

**Attributes**  See attributes(5) for a description of the following attributes:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ATTRIBUTE TYPE</th>
<th>ATTRIBUTE VALUE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Stability Level</td>
<td>Obsolete</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**See Also**  attributes(5), ddi_dma_addr_setup(9F), ddi_dma_buf_setup(9F), ddi_dma_getwin(9F), ddi_dma_nextseg(9F), ddi_dma_segtocookie(9F), ddi_dma_sync(9F), ddi_dma_req(9S)

*Writing Device Drivers*
**Name**  
ddi_dma_numwin – retrieve number of DMA windows

**Synopsis**  
#include <sys/ddi.h>  
#include <sys/sunddi.h>

```c
int ddi_dma_numwin(ddi_dma_handle_t handle, uint_t *nwinp);
```

**Parameters**  
- `handle`  
The DMA handle previously allocated by a call to `ddi_dma_alloc_handle(9F)`.
- `nwinp`  
Upon a successful return, `nwinp` will contain the number of DMA windows for this object.

**Interface Level**  
Solaris DDI specific (Solaris DDI).

**Description**  
`ddi_dma_numwin()` returns the number of DMA windows for a DMA object if partial resource allocation was permitted.

**Return Values**  
- `DDI_SUCCESS`  
Successfully filled in the number of DMA windows.
- `DDI_FAILURE`  
DMA windows are not activated.

**Context**  
`ddi_dma_numwin()` can be called from user, kernel, or interrupt context.

**See Also**  
`ddi_dma_addr_bind_handle(9F), ddi_dma_alloc_handle(9F), ddi_dma_buf_bind_handle(9F), ddi_dma_unbind_handle(9F)`

*Writing Device Drivers*
ddi_dma_segtocookie(9F)

**Name**
ddi_dma_segtocookie – convert a DMA segment to a DMA address cookie

**Synopsis**
```
#include <sys/ddi.h>
#include <sys/sunddi.h>

int ddi_dma_segtocookie(ddi_dma_seg_t seg, off_t *offp, off_t *lenp,
                        ddi_dma_cookie_t *cookiep);
```

This interface is obsolete. *ddi_dma_nextcookie*(9F) should be used instead.

**Parameters**
- `seg` A DMA segment.
- `offp` A pointer to an off_t. Upon a successful return, it is filled in with the offset. This segment is addressing within the object.
- `lenp` The byte length. This segment is addressing within the object.
- `cookiep` A pointer to a DMA cookie (see *ddi_dma_cookie*(9S)).

**Description**
The `ddi_dma_segtocookie()` function takes a DMA segment and fills in the cookie pointed to by `cookiep` with the appropriate address, length, and bus type to be used to program the DMA engine. The `ddi_dma_segtocookie()` also fills in *`offp`* and *`lenp`*, which specify the range within the object.

**Return Values**
The `ddi_dma_segtocookie()` function returns:
- `DDI_SUCCESS` Successfully filled in all values.
- `DDI_FAILURE` Failed to successfully fill in all values.

**Context**
The `ddi_dma_segtocookie()` function can be called from user, interrupt, or kernel context.

**Examples**
```
EXAMPLE1 ddi_dma_segtocookie() example

    for (win = NULL; (retw = ddi_dma_nextwin(handle, win, &nwin)) !=
         DDI_DMA_DONE; win = nwin) {
        if (retw != DDI_SUCCESS) {
            /* do error handling */
        } else {
            for (seg = NULL; (rets = ddi_dma_nextseg(nwin, seg, &nseg)) !=
                 DDI_DMA_DONE; seg = nseg) {
                if (rets != DDI_SUCCESS) {
                    /* do error handling */
                } else {
                    ddi_dma_segtocookie(nseg, &off, &len, &cookie);
                    /* program DMA engine */
                }
            }
        }
    }
```
EXAMPLE 1  

```c
  ddi_dma_segtocookie() example  (Continued)

  }
  }
  }
  }

Attributes  See attributes(5) for a description of the following attributes:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ATTRIBUTE TYPE</th>
<th>ATTRIBUTE VALUE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Stability Level</td>
<td>Obsolete</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

See Also  attributes(5), ddi_dma_nextcookie(9F), ddi_dma_nextseg(9F), ddi_dma_nextwin(9F), ddi_dma_sync(9F), ddi_dma_cookie(9S)

Writing Device Drivers
Name  ddi_dma_set_sbus64 – allow 64–bit transfers on SBus

Synopsis  
#include <sys/ddi.h>
#include <sys/sunddi.h>

int ddi_dma_set_sbus64(ddi_dma_handle_t handle, uint_t burstsizes);

Interface Level  Solaris DDI specific (Solaris DDI).

Parameters  
handle  The handle filled in by a call to ddi_dma_alloc_handle(9F).
burstsizes  The possible burst sizes the device's DMA engine can accept in 64–bit mode.

Description  ddi_dma_set_sbus64() informs the system that the device wishes to perform 64–bit data transfers on the SBus. The driver must first allocate a DMA handle using ddi_dma_alloc_handle(9F) with a ddi_dma_attr(9S) structure describing the DMA attributes for a 32–bit transfer mode.

burstsizes describes the possible burst sizes the device's DMA engine can accept in 64–bit mode. It may be distinct from the burst sizes for 32–bit mode set in the ddi_dma_attr(9S) structure. The system will activate 64–bit SBus transfers if the SBus supports them. Otherwise, the SBus will operate in 32–bit mode.

After DMA resources have been allocated (see ddi_dma_addr_bind_handle(9F) or ddi_dma_buf_bind_handle(9F)), the driver should retrieve the available burst sizes by calling ddi_dma_burstsizes(9F). This function will return the burst sizes in 64–bit mode if the system was able to activate 64–bit transfers. Otherwise burst sizes will be returned in 32–bit mode.

Return Values  ddi_dma_set_sbus64() returns:

DDI_SUCCESS  Successfully set the SBus to 64–bit mode.
DDI_FAILURE  64–bit mode could not be set.

Context  ddi_dma_set_sbus64() can be called from user, kernel, or interrupt context.

Attributes  See attributes(5) for descriptions of the following attributes:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ATTRIBUTE TYPE</th>
<th>ATTRIBUTE VALUE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Architecture</td>
<td>SBus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

See Also  attributes(5), ddi_dma_addr_bind_handle(9F), ddi_dma_alloc_handle(9F), ddi_dma_buf_bind_handle(9F), ddi_dma_burstsizes(9F), ddi_dma_attr(9S)
**Notes** 64-bit SBus mode is activated on a per SBus slot basis. If there are multiple SBus cards in one slot, they all must operate in 64-bit mode or they all must operate in 32-bit mode.
**Name**

ddi_dma_setup – setup DMA resources

**Synopsis**

```c
#include <sys/ddi.h>
#include <sys/sunddi.h>

int ddi_dma_setup(dev_info_t *dip, ddi_dma_req_t *dmareqp,
                   ddi_dma_handle_t *handlep);
```

**Interface Level**

This interface is obsolete. The functions `ddi_dma_addr_bind_handle(9F)`, `ddi_dma_alloc_handle(9F)`, `ddi_dma_buf_bind_handle(9F)`, `ddi_dma_free_handle(9F)`, and `ddi_dma_unbind_handle(9F)` should be used instead.

**Parameters**

- **dip**
  A pointer to the device's dev_info structure.

- **dmareqp**
  A pointer to a DMA request structure (see `ddi_dma_req(9S)`).

- **handlep**
  A pointer to a DMA handle to be filled in. See below for a discussion of a handle. If `handlep` is NULL, the call to `ddi_dma_setup()` is considered an advisory call, in which case no resources are allocated, but a value indicating the legality and the feasibility of the request is returned.

**Description**

The `ddi_dma_setup()` function allocates resources for a memory object such that a device can perform DMA to or from that object.

A call to `ddi_dma_setup()` informs the system that device referred to by `dip` wishes to perform DMA to or from a memory object. The memory object, the device’s DMA capabilities, the device driver’s policy on whether to wait for resources, are all specified in the `ddi_dma_req` structure pointed to by `dmareqp`.

A successful call to `ddi_dma_setup()` fills in the value pointed to by `handlep`. This is an opaque object called a DMA handle. This handle is then used in subsequent DMA calls, until `ddi_dma_free(9F)` is called.

Again a DMA handle is opaque—drivers may not attempt to interpret its value. When a driver wants to enable its DMA engine, it must retrieve the appropriate address to supply to its DMA engine using a call to `ddi_dma_htoc(9F)`, which takes a pointer to a DMA handle and returns the appropriate DMA address.

When DMA transfer completes, the driver should free up the allocated DMA resources by calling `ddi_dma_free()`.

**Return Values**

The `ddi_dma_setup()` function returns:

- `DDI_DMA_MAPPED` Successfully allocated resources for the object. In the case of an advisory call, this indicates that the request is legal.
DDI_DMA_PARTIAL_MAP Successfully allocated resources for a part of the object. This is acceptable when partial transfers are allowed using a flag setting in the ddi_dma_req structure (see ddi_dma_req(9S) and ddi_dma_movwin(9F)).

DDI_DMA_NORESOURCES When no resources are available.

DDI_DMA_NOMAPPING The object cannot be reached by the device requesting the resources.

DDI_DMA_TOOBIG The object is too big and exceeds the available resources. The maximum size varies depending on machine and configuration.

Context The ddi_dma_setup() function can be called from user, interrupt, or kernel context, except when the dmar_fp member of the ddi_dma_req structure pointed to by dmareqp is set to DDI_DMA_SLEEP, in which case it cannot be called from interrupt context.

Attributes See attributes(5) for a description of the following attributes:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ATTRIBUTE TYPE</th>
<th>ATTRIBUTE VALUE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Stability Level</td>
<td>Obsolete</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

See Also attributes(5), ddi_dma_addr_bind_handle(9F), ddi_dma_alloc_handle(9F), ddi_dma_buf_bind_handle(9F), ddi_dma_free_handle(9F), ddi_dma_unbind_handle(9F), ddi_dma_addr_setup(9F), ddi_dma_buf_setup(9F), ddi_dma_free(9F), ddi_dma_htoc(9F), ddi_dma_movwin(9F), ddi_dma_sync(9F), ddi_dma_req(9S)

Writing Device Drivers

Notes The construction of the ddi_dma_req structure is complicated. Use of the provided interface functions such as ddi_dma_buf_setup(9F) simplifies this task.
ddi_dma_sync – synchronize CPU and I/O views of memory

**Synopsis**

```c
#include <sys/ddi.h>
#include <sys/sunddi.h>

int ddi_dma_sync(ddi_dma_handle_t handle, off_t offset, size_t length, uint_t type);
```

**Parameters**

- `handle`: The handle filled in by a call to `ddi_dma_alloc_handle(9F)`.
- `offset`: The offset into the object described by the `handle`.
- `length`: The length, in bytes, of the area to synchronize. When `length` is zero, the entire range starting from `offset` to the end of the object has the requested operation applied to it.
- `type`: Indicates the caller's desire about what view of the memory object to synchronize. The possible values are `DDI_DMA_SYNC_FORDEV`, `DDI_DMA_SYNC_FORCPU` and `DDI_DMA_SYNC_FORKERNEL`.

**Description**

The `ddi_dma_sync()` function is used to selectively synchronize either a DMA device's or a CPU's view of a memory object that has DMA resources allocated for I/O. This may involve operations such as flushes of CPU or I/O caches, as well as other more complex operations such as stalling until hardware write buffers have drained.

This function need only be called under certain circumstances. When resources are allocated for DMA using `ddi_dma_addr_bind_handle()` or `ddi_dma_buf_bind_handle()`, an implicit `ddi_dma_sync()` is done. When DMA resources are deallocated using `ddi_dma_unbind_handle(9F)`, an implicit `ddi_dma_sync()` is done. However, at any time between DMA resource allocation and deallocation, if the memory object has been modified by either the DMA device or a CPU and you wish to ensure that the change is noticed by the party that did not do the modifying, a call to `ddi_dma_sync()` is required. This is true independent of any attributes of the memory object including, but not limited to, whether or not the memory was allocated for consistent mode I/O (see `ddi_dma_mem Alloc(9F)`) or whether or not DMA resources have been allocated for consistent mode I/O (see `ddi_dma_addr_bind_handle(9F)` or `ddi_dma_buf_bind_handle(9F)`).

If a consistent view of the memory object must be ensured between the time DMA resources are allocated for the object and the time they are deallocated, you must call `ddi_dma_sync()` to ensure that either a CPU or a DMA device has such a consistent view.

What to set `type` to depends on the view you are trying to ensure consistency for. If the memory object is modified by a CPU, and the object is going to be read by the DMA engine of the device, use `DDI_DMA_SYNC_FORDEV`. This ensures that the device's DMA engine sees any
changes that a CPU has made to the memory object. If the DMA engine for the device has written to the memory object, and you are going to read (with a CPU) the object (using an extant virtual address mapping that you have to the memory object), use DDI_DMA_SYNC_FORCPU. This ensures that a CPU’s view of the memory object includes any changes made to the object by the device’s DMA engine. If you are only interested in the kernel’s view (kernel-space part of the CPU’s view) you may use DDI_DMA_SYNC_FORKERNEL. This gives a hint to the system—that is, if it is more economical to synchronize the kernel’s view only, then do so; otherwise, synchronize for CPU.

Return Values The ddi_dma_sync() function returns:

DDI_SUCCESS Caches are successfully flushed.

DDI_FAILURE The address range to be flushed is out of the address range established by ddi_dma_addr_bind_handle(9F) or ddi_dma_buf_bind_handle(9F).

Context The ddi_dma_sync() function can be called from user, interrupt, or kernel context.

See Also ddi_dma_addr_bind_handle(9F), ddi_dma_alloc_handle(9F), ddi_dma_buf_bind_handle(9F), ddi_dma_mem_alloc(9F), ddi_dma_unbind_handle(9F)

Writing Device Drivers
ddi_dma_unbind_handle(9F)

Name  
ddi_dma_unbind_handle – unbinds the address in a DMA handle

Synopsis  
#include <sys/ddi.h>
#include <sys/sunddi.h>

int ddi_dma_unbind_handle(ddi_dma_handle_t handle);

Parameters  
handle  The DMA handle previously allocated by a call to ddi_dma_alloc_handle(9F).

Interface Level  Solaris DDI specific (Solaris DDI).

Description  
ddi_dma_unbind_handle() frees all DMA resources associated with an existing DMA handle. When a DMA transfer completes, the driver should call ddi_dma_unbind_handle() to free system DMA resources established by a call to ddi_dma_buf_bind_handle(9F) or ddi_dma_addr_bind_handle(9F). ddi_dma_unbind_handle() does an implicit ddi_dma_sync(9F) making further synchronization steps unnecessary.

Return Values  
DDI_SUCCESS  on success
DDI_FAILURE  on failure

Context  
ddi_dma_unbind_handle() can be called from user, kernel, or interrupt context.

See Also  
ddi_dma_addr_bind_handle(9F), ddi_dma_alloc_handle(9F), ddi_dma_buf_bind_handle(9F), ddi_dma_free_handle(9F), ddi_dma_sync(9F)

Writing Device Drivers
ddi_driver_major – return driver's major device number

**Synopsis**

```c
#include <sys/ddi.h>
#include <sys/sunddi.h>

major_t ddi_driver_major(dev_info_t *dip);
```

**Interface Level**

Solaris DDI specific (Solaris DDI)

**Description**

`ddi_driver_major()` returns the major device number for the driver associated with the supplied `dev_info` node. This value can then be used as an argument to `makedevice(9F)` to construct a complete `dev_t`.

**Parameters**

`dip` A pointer to the device's `dev_info` structure.

**Return Values**

`ddi_driver_major()` returns the major number of the driver bound to a device, if any, or `DDI_MAJOR_T_NONE` otherwise.

**Context**

`ddi_driver_major()` can be called from kernel or interrupt context.

**See Also**

`ddi_driver_name(9F)`

*Writing Device Drivers*
#include <sys/ddi.h>
#include <sys/sunddi.h>

const char *ddi_driver_name(dev_info_t *devi);

SolarisDDIspecific(SolarisDDI).

dip A pointer to the device's dev_info structure.

ddi_driver_name() returns the normalized driver name. This name is typically derived from
the device name property or the device compatible property. If this name is a driver alias, the
 corresponding driver name is returned.

ddi_driver_name() returns the actual name of the driver bound to a device.

ddi_driver_name() can be called from kernel, or interrupt context.

Writing Device Drivers

The name returned by ddi_driver_name() is read-only.
ddi_enter_critical, ddi_exit_critical – enter and exit a critical region of control

#include <sys/conf.h>
#include <sys/ddi.h>
#include <sys/sunddi.h>

unsigned int ddi_enter_critical(void);
void ddi_exit_critical(unsigned int ddic);

Solaris DDI specific (Solaris DDI).

Parameters

ddic The returned value from the call to ddi_enter_critical() must be passed to ddi_exit_critical().

Description

Nearly all driver operations can be done without any special synchronization and protection mechanisms beyond those provided by, for example, mutexes (see mutex(9F)). However, for certain devices there can exist a very short critical region of code which must be allowed to run uninterrupted. The function ddi_enter_critical() provides a mechanism by which a driver can ask the system to guarantee to the best of its ability that the current thread of execution will neither be preempted nor interrupted. This stays in effect until a bracketing call to ddi_exit_critical() is made (with an argument which was the returned value from ddi_enter_critical()).

The driver may not call any functions external to itself in between the time it calls ddi_enter_critical() and the time it calls ddi_exit_critical().

Return Values

The ddi_enter_critical() function returns an opaque unsigned integer which must be used in the subsequent call to ddi_exit_critical().

Context

This function can be called from user, interrupt, or kernel context.

Warnings

Driver writers should note that in a multiple processor system this function does not temporarily suspend other processors from executing. This function also cannot guarantee to actually block the hardware from doing such things as interrupt acknowledge cycles. What it can do is guarantee that the currently executing thread will not be preempted.

Do not write code bracketed by ddi_enter_critical() and ddi_exit_critical() that can get caught in an infinite loop, as the machine may crash if you do.

See Also

mutex(9F)

Writing Device Drivers
ddi_ffs(9F)

Name  

ddi_ffs, ddi_flfs – find first (last) bit set in a long integer

Synopsis  

```c
#include <sys/conf.h>
#include <sys/ddi.h>
#include <sys/sunddi.h>

int ddi_ffs(long mask);
int ddi_flfs(long mask);
```

Interface Level  

Solaris DDI specific (Solaris DDI).

Parameters  

`mask`  
A 32-bit argument value to search through.

Description  

The function `ddi_ffs()` takes its argument and returns the shift count that the first (least significant) bit set in the argument corresponds to. The function `ddi_flfs()` does the same, only it returns the shift count for the last (most significant) bit set in the argument.

Return Values  

0  
No bits are set in mask.

`N`  
Bit N is the least significant (`ddi_ffs`) or most significant (`ddi_flfs`) bit set in mask. Bits are numbered from 1 to 32, with bit 1 being the least significant bit position and bit 32 the most significant position.

Context  

This function can be called from user, interrupt, or kernel context.

See Also  

`Writing Device Drivers`
Name  ddi_fm_acc_err_clear, ddi_fm_dma_err_clear – clear the error status for an access or DMA handle

Synopsis  #include <sys/ndifma.h>

void ddi_fm_acc_err_clear(ddi_acc_handle_t acc_handle, int version);
void ddi_fm_dma_err_clear(ddi_dma_handle_t dma_handle, int version);

Interface Level  Solaris DDI specific (Solaris DDI)

Parameters  acc_handle  Data access handle obtained from a previous call to ddi_regs_map_setup(9F),
            ddi_dma_mem_alloc(9F), or to a similar function.
            dma_handle  DMA handle obtained from a previous call to ddi_dma_mem_alloc(9F) or one
                         of its derivatives.
            version     Version number of ddi_fm_error_t.

Description  The ddi_fm_dma_err_clear() and ddi_fm_acc_err_clear() functions clear the error status
               of a DMA or access handle respectively.

               Once cleared, the driver is again able to access the mapped registers or memory using
               programmed I/O through the handle.

Attributes  See attributes(5) for descriptions of the following attributes:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ATTRIBUTE TYPE</th>
<th>ATTRIBUTE VALUE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Interface Stability</td>
<td>Committed</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

See Also  attributes(5), ddi_dma_mem_alloc(9F), ddi_fm_acc_err_get(9F),
          ddi_fm_dma_err_get(9F), ddi_regs_map_setup(9F)

Writing Device Drivers
**Name**

`ddi_fm_acc_err_get`, `ddi_fm_dma_err_get` – get the error status for an access or DMA handle

**Synopsis**

```c
#include <sys/ndifma.h>

void ddi_fm_acc_err_get(ddi_acc_handle_t acc_handle, ddi_fm_error_t *error_status, int version);
void ddi_fm_dma_err_get(ddi_dma_handle_t dma_handle, ddi_fm_error_t *error_status, int version);
```

**Interface Level**

Solaris DDI specific (Solaris DDI)

**Parameters**

- **acc_handle**
  Data access handle obtained from a previous call to `ddi_regs_map_setup(9F)`, `ddi_dma_mem_alloc(9F)`, or to a similar function.

- **dma_handle**
  DMA handle obtained from a previous call to `ddi_dma_mem_alloc(9F)` or one of its derivatives.

- **error_status**
  Pointer to where the error status for the access or DMA handle should be returned.

- **version**
  Version number of `ddi_fm_error_t`. The driver should always set this to `DDI_FME_VERSION`.

**Description**

The `ddi_fm_dma_err_get()` and `ddi_fm_acc_err_get()` functions return the error status for a DMA or access handle respectively. If a fault has occurred that affects the resource mapped by the supplied handle, the supplied `error_status` structure is updated to reflect error information captured during error handling by a bus or other device driver in the I/O data path.

If an error is indicated for an access handle, the driver might no longer be able to access the mapped registers or memory using programmed I/O through the handle. Typically, this might occur after the device has failed to respond to an I/O access – in the case of a bus error, for instance, or a timeout. The effect of programmed I/O access made at the time of a fault is undefined. Read access via `ddi_get8(9F)`, for example, can return random values, while write access via `ddi_put8(9F)` might or might not have an effect. It is possible, however, that the error might be transient. In that case, the driver can attempt to recover by calling `ddi_fm_acc_err_clear()`, resetting the device to return it to a known state, then retrying any potentially failed transactions.

If an error is indicated for a DMA handle, it implies that an error has been detected that has or will affect DMA transactions between the device and the memory currently bound to the handle – or the memory most recently bound, if the handle is currently unbound. Possible causes include the failure of a component in the DMA data path or an attempt by the device to make an invalid DMA access. The contents of any memory currently or previously bound to the handle should be considered indeterminate. The driver might be able to continue by freeing memory that is bound to the handle back to the system, resetting the device to return it to a known state, then retrying any potentially failed transactions.
If the driver is unable to recover, the operating state should be changed by a call to `ddi_fm_service_impact()` that specifies DDI_SERVICE_LOST for the impacted device instance. If the recovery and retry succeed, a call should still be made to `ddi_fm_service_impact()` but DDI_SERVICE_UNAFFECTED should be specified.

**Context**
The `ddi_fm_acc_err_get()` and `ddi_fm_dma_err_get()` functions can be called from user, kernel, or high-level interrupt context.

**Attributes**
See `attributes(5)` for descriptions of the following attributes:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ATTRIBUTE TYPE</th>
<th>ATTRIBUTE VALUE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Interface Stability</td>
<td>Committed</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**See Also**
`attributes(5), ddi_dma_mem_alloc(9F), ddi_fm_acc_err_clear(9F), ddi_fm_service_impact(9F), ddi_get8(9F), ddi_put8(9F), ddi_regs_map_setup(9F), ddi_fm_error(9S),`  

*Writing Device Drivers*
include <sys/ddifm.h>

void ddi_fm_ereport_post(dev_info_t *dip,
char *ereport_class,
uint64_t ena, int *sflag, ... /* name-value pair args */);

SolarisDDI specific (Solaris DDI)

Pointertothe dev_info structure

FMA Event Protocol error class

Error Numeric Association

Determines whether caller can sleep for memory or other event resources.

The ddi_fm_ereport_post() function causes an encoded fault management error report
name-value pair list to be queued for delivery to the Fault Manager daemon, fmd(1M). The
sflag parameter indicates whether or not the caller is willing to wait for system memory and
event channel resources to become available.

The following ereport_class strings are available for use by any leaf device driver:

device.inval_state A leaf driver discovers that the device is in an invalid or
inconsistent state. For example, the driver might detect that
receive or send ring descriptor indices are corrupted. It might
also find an invalid value in a register or a driver-to-device
protocol violation.

device.no_response A leaf driver times out waiting for a response from the device. For
example, timeouts can occur when no confirmation is seen after
resetting, enabling, or disabling part of the device.

device.badint_limit A leaf device sends too many consecutive interrupts with no
work to do.

device.intern_corr A leaf device reports to the driver that it has itself detected an
internal correctable error.

device.intern_uncorr A leaf device reports to the driver that it has itself detected an
internal uncorrectable error.

device.stall A leaf driver determines that data transmission has stalled
indefinitely.

The ena indicates the Format 1 Error Numeric Association for this error report. It might have
already been initialized by another error-detecting software module. For example, if
ddi_fm_ereport_post() is called from an error handler callback function, the fme_ena field
from the passed-in ddi_fm_error argument should be used. Otherwise it should be set to 0
and will be initialized by ddi_fm_ereport_post().
The name-value pair `args` variable argument list contains one or more (names, type, value pointer) `nvpair` tuples for non-array `data_type_t` types or one or more (name, type, number of elements, value pointer) tuples for `data_type_t` array types. There is one mandatory tuple to describe the `ereport` version. This should contain the following values:

- **name**: `FM_VERSION`
- **type**: `DATA_TYPE_UINT8`
- **value**: `FM_EREPORT_VERS0`

Additional `nvpair` tuples can describe error conditions for logging purposes, but are not interpreted by the I/O framework or fault manager. The end of the argument list is specified by `NULL`.

**Context**
The `ddi_fm_ereport_post()` function can be called from user, kernel, or high-level interrupt context.

**Attributes**
See `attributes(5)` for descriptions of the following attributes:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Attribute Type</th>
<th>Attribute Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Interface Stability</td>
<td>Committed</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**See Also**
`fmd(1M), attributes(5), ddi_fm_service_impact(9F)`
ddi_fm_handler_register

Name  

ddi_fm_handler_register, ddi_fm_handler_unregister – register or unregister an error handling callback

Synopsis  

#include <sys/ddifm.h>

void ddi_fm_handler_register(dev_info_t *dip,  
    ddi_err_func_t error_handler, void *impl_data);

void ddi_fm_handler_unregister(dev_info_t *dip);

Interface Level  

Solaris DDI specific (Solaris DDI)

Parameters  

dip  
    Pointer to the dev_info structure

error_handler  
    Pointer to an error handler callback function

impl_data  
    Pointer to private data for use by the caller

Description  

The ddi_fm_handler_register() function registers an error handler callback routine with the I/O Fault Management framework. The error handler callback, error_handler, is called to process error conditions detected by the system. In addition to its device instance, dip, the error handler is called with a pointer to a fault management error status structure, ddi_fm_error_t. For example:

int (*ddi_err_func_t)(dev_info_t *dip, ddi_fm_error_t *error_status);

A driver error handling callback is passed the following arguments:

- a pointer to the device instance registered for this callback.
- a data structure containing common fault management data and status for error handling.

The primary responsibilities of the error handler include:

- to check for outstanding hardware or software errors.
- where possible, to isolate the device that might have caused the errors.
- to report errors that were detected.

During the invocation of an error handler, a device driver might need to quiesce or suspend all I/O activities in order to check for error conditions or status in:

- hardware control and status registers.
- outstanding I/O transactions.
- access or DMA handles.

For each error detected, the driver must formulate and post an error report via ddi_fm_ereport_post() for problem analysis by the Solaris Fault Manager fmd(1M).

For a PCI, PCI/X, or PCI Express leaf device, the pci_ereport_post() function is provided to carry out reporting responsibilities on behalf of the driver. In many cases, an error handler callback function of the following form can be used:
xxx_err_cb(dev_info_t *dip, ddi_fm_error_t *errp) {
    pci_ereport_post(dip, errp, NULL);
    return (errp->fme_status);
}

In addition, the driver might be able to carry out further device specific checks within the error handler.

Error handlers can be called from kernel, interrupt, or high-level interrupt context. The interrupt block cookie returned from ddi_fm_init() should be used to allocate and initialize any synchronization variables and locks that might be used within the error handler callback function. Such locks may not be held by the driver when a device register is accessed with functions such as ddi_get8(9F) and ddi_put8(9F).

The data structure, ddi_fm_error_t, contains an FMA protocol (format 1) ENA for the current error propagation chain, the status of the error handler callback, an error expectation flag, and any potential access or DMA handles associated with an error detected by the parent nexus.

The ddi_fm_handler_unregister() function removes a previously registered error handling callback for the device instance specified by the dip.

Context: The ddi_fm_handler_register() and ddi_fm_handler_unregister() functions must be called from kernel context in an attach(9E) or detach(9E) entry point. The registered error handler, error_handler, callback can be called from kernel, interrupt, or high level interrupt context.

Attributes: See attributes(5) for descriptions of the following attributes:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ATTRIBUTE TYPE</th>
<th>ATTRIBUTE VALUE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Interface Stability</td>
<td>Committed</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

See Also: fmd(1M), attributes(5), attach(9E), detach(9E), ddi_fm_ereport_post(9F), ddi_fm_init(9F), ddi_get8(9F), ddi_put8(9F), pci_ereport_post(9F), ddi_fm_error(9S)

Writing Device Drivers
ddi_fm_init(9F)

Name  ddi_fm_init, ddi_fm_fini, ddi_fm_capable – initialize and get the FM capabilities for a device instance

Synopsis  #include <sys/ddifm.h>

void ddi_fm_init(dev_info_t *dip, int *fm_capability, ddi_iblock_cookie_t *ibcp);
void ddi_fm_fini(dev_info_t *dip);
int ddi_fm_capable(dev_info_t *dip, int *fm_capability);

Interface Level  Solaris DDI specific (Solaris DDI)

Parameters  

ddi_fm_init()

- dip  Pointer to the dev_info structure
- fm_capability  Fault Management capability bitmask
- ibcp  Pointer to where the interrupt block cookie should be returned.

Description  
A device driver can declare its fault management capabilities to the I/O Fault Management framework by calling ddi_fm_init(). The ddi_fm_init() function allocates and initializes resources according to the bitwise-inclusive-OR of the fault management capabilities, described in the following and supported by the driver's immediate nexus parent.

DDI_FM_NOT_CAPABLE  The driver does not support any FMA features. This is the default value assigned to device drivers.

DDI_FM_EREPORT_CAPABLE  The driver generates FMA protocol error events (ereports) upon the detection of an error condition.

DDI_FM_ACCCHK_CAPABLE  The driver checks for errors upon the completion of one or more access I/O transactions.

DDI_FM_DMACHK_CAPABLE  The driver checks for errors upon the completion of one or more DMA I/O transactions.

DDI_FM_ERRCB_CAPABLE  The driver is capable of error handler callback registration.

If the parent nexus is not capable of supporting any one of the requested capabilities, the associated bit will not be set and returned as such to the driver. Before returning from ddi_fm_init(), the I/O Fault Management framework creates a set of fault management capability properties: fm-ereport-capable, fm-errcb-capable, fm-accchk-capable, and fm-dmachk-capable. The current supported fault management capability levels are observable via prtconf(1M).
A driver can support the administrative selection of fault management capabilities by exporting and setting a fault management capability level property in its `driver.conf` file to the values described above. The `fm_capable` properties must be set and read prior to calling `ddi_fm_init()` with the desired capability list.

`ddi_fm_fini()` This function cleans up resources allocated to support fault management for the `dip` structure.

`ddi_fm_capable()` This function returns the capability bit mask currently set for the `dip` structure.

**Context**
These functions can be called from kernel context in a driver `attach(9E)` or `detach(9E)` operation.

**Attributes**
See `attributes(5)` for descriptions of the following attributes:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ATTRIBUTE TYPE</th>
<th>ATTRIBUTE VALUE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Interface Stability</td>
<td>Committed</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**See Also**
`prtconf(1M), driver.conf(4), attributes(5), attach(9E), detach(9E)`

*Writing Device Drivers*
### Name
ddi_fm_service_impact – report the impact of an error

### Synopsis
```c
#include <sys/ddifm.h>

void ddi_fm_service_impact(dev_info_t *dip, int *impact);
```

### Interface Level
Solaris DDI specific (Solaris DDI)

### Parameters
- **dip** Pointer to the dev_info structure
- **impact** Impact of error

### Description
The following service impact values are accepted by ddi_fm_service_impact():

**DDI_SERVICE_LOST**
The service provided by the device is unavailable due to an error. The operational state of the device will transition to DEVI_DEVICE_DOWN.

**DDI_SERVICE_DEGRADED**
The driver is unable to provide normal service, but it can provide a partial or degraded level of service. The driver might have to make repeated attempts to perform an operation before it succeeds, or it may be running at less than its configured speed. A driver may use this value to indicate that an alternative device should be used if available, but that it can continue operation if no alternative exists. The operational state of the device will transition to DEVI_DEVICE_DEGRADED.

**DDI_SERVICE_RESTORED**
The service provided by the device has been restored. The operational state of the device will transition to its pre-error condition state and DEVI_DEVICE_DOWN or DEVI_DEVICE_DEGRADED is removed.

**DDI_SERVICE_UNAFFECTED**
The service provided by the device was unaffected by the error.

### Context
The ddi_fm_service_impact() function can be called from user, kernel, or high-level interrupt context.

### Attributes
See attributes(5) for descriptions of the following attributes:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ATTRIBUTE TYPE</th>
<th>ATTRIBUTE VALUE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Interface Stability</td>
<td>Committed</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### See Also
fmd(1M), attributes(5), ddi_fm_ereport_post(9F), pci_ereport_post(9F)
**ddi_get8**, **ddi_get16**, **ddi_get32**, **ddi_get64**, **ddi_getb**, **ddi_getw**, **ddi_getl**, **ddi_getll** – read data from the mapped memory address, device register or allocated DMA memory address

```
#include <sys/ddi.h>
#include <sys/sunddi.h>
```

- **ddi_get8**
- **ddi_get16**
- **ddi_get32**
- **ddi_get64**

The data access handler returned from setup calls, such as **ddi_regs_map_setup**.

- **dev_addr**

Basedevice address.

The **ddi_get8()**, **ddi_get16()**, **ddi_get32()**, and **ddi_get64()** functions read 8 bits, 16 bits, 32 bits and 64 bits of data, respectively, from the device address, **dev_addr**.

Each individual datum will automatically be translated to maintain a consistent view between the host and the device based on the encoded information in the data access handle. The translation may involve byte-swapping if the host and the device have incompatible endian characteristics.

For certain bus types, you can call these DDI functions from a high-interrupt context. These types include ISA and SBus buses. See **sysbus(4)**, **isa(4)**, and **sbus(4)** for details. For the PCI bus, you can, under certain conditions, call these DDI functions from a high-interrupt context. See **pci(4)**.

These functions return the value read from the mapped address.

These functions can be called from user, kernel, or interrupt context.

**ddi_put8**, **ddi_regs_map_free**, **ddi_regs_map_setup**, **ddi_rep_get8**, **ddi_rep_put8**

The functions described in this manual page previously used symbolic names which specified their data access size; the function names have been changed so they now specify a fixed-width data size. See the following table for the new name equivalents:
### ddi_get8(9F)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Previous Name</th>
<th>New Name</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ddi_getb</td>
<td>ddi_get8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ddi_getw</td>
<td>ddi_get16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ddi_getl</td>
<td>ddi_get32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ddi_getll</td>
<td>ddi_get64</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
ddi_get_cred — returns a pointer to the credential structure of the caller

Synopsis

```c
#include <sys/types.h>
#include <sys/ddi.h>
#include <sys/sunddi.h>

cred_t *ddi_get_cred(void)
```

Description

ddi_get_cred() returns a pointer to the user credential structure of the caller.

Return Values

ddi_get_cred() returns a pointer to the caller's credential structure.

Context

ddi_get_cred() can be called from user context only.

See Also

Writing Device Drivers
ddi_get_devstate(9F)

Name  ddi_get_devstate – Check device state

Synopsis  

```c
#include <sys/ddi.h>
#include <sys/sunddi.h>

ddi_devstate_t ddi_get_devstate(dev_info_t *dip);
```

Interface Level  Solaris DDI specific (Solaris DDI)

Parameters  dip  Pointer to the device’s dev_info structure

Description  The ddi_get_devstate() function returns a value indicating the state of the device specified by dip, as derived from the configuration operations that have been performed on it (or on the bus on which it resides) and any fault reports relating to it.

Return Values  

- **DDI_DEVSTATE_OFFLINE**  The device is offline. In this state, the device driver is not attached, nor will it be attached automatically. The device cannot be used until it is brought online.
- **DDI_DEVSTATE_DOWN**  The device is online but unusable due to a fault.
- **DDI_DEVSTATEQUIESCED**  The bus on which the device resides has been quiesced. This is not a fault, but no operations on the device should be performed while the bus remains quiesced.
- **DDI_DEVSTATE_DEGRADED**  The device is online but only able to provide a partial or degraded service, due to a fault.
- **DDI_DEVSTATE_UP**  The device is online and fully operational.

Context  The ddi_get_devstate() function may be called from user, kernel, or interrupt context.

Notes  A device driver should call this function to check its own state at each major entry point, and before committing resources to a requested operation. If a driver discovers that its device is already down, it should perform required cleanup actions and return as soon as possible. If appropriate, it should return an error to its caller, indicating that the device has failed (for example, a driver’s read(9E) routine would return EIO).

Depending on the driver, some non-I/O operations (for example, calls to the driver’s ioctl(9E) routine) may still succeed; only functions which would require fully accessible and operational hardware will necessarily fail. If the bus on which the device resides is quiesced, the driver may return a value indicating the operation should be retried later (for example, EAGAIN). Alternatively, for some classes of device, it may be appropriate for the driver to enqueue the operation and service it once the bus has been unquiesced. Note that not all busses support the quiesce/unquiesce operations, so this value may never be seen by some drivers.
See Also  attach(9E), ioctl(9E), open(9E), read(9E), strategy(9E), write(9E),
         ddi_dev_report_fault(9F)
**Name**

ddi_get_driver_private, ddi_set_driver_private – get or set the address of the device’s private data area

**Synopsis**

#include <sys/conf.h>
#include <sys/ddi.h>
#include <sys/sunddi.h>

void ddi_set_driver_private(dev_info_t *dip, void *data);
void *ddi_get_driver_private(dev_info_t *dip);

**Interface Level**

Solaris DDI specific (Solaris DDI).

**Parameters**

**ddi_get_driver_private()**

dip Pointer to device information structure to get from.

**ddi_set_driver_private()**

dip Pointer to device information structure to set.

data Data area address to set.

**Description**

The ddi_get_driver_private() function returns the address of the device’s private data area from the device information structure pointed to by dip.

The ddi_set_driver_private() function sets the address of the device’s private data area in the device information structure pointed to by dip with the value of data.

**Return Values**

The ddi_get_driver_private() function returns the contents of devi_driver_data. If ddi_set_driver_private() has not been previously called with dip, an unpredictable value is returned.

**Context**

These functions can be called from user, interrupt, or kernel context.

**See Also**

*Writing Device Drivers*
**Name**

`ddi_get_eventcookie` – retrieve a NDI event service cookie handle

**Synopsis**

```c
#include <sys/dditypes.h>
#include <sys/sunddi.h>

int ddi_get_eventcookie(dev_info_t *dip, char *name,
                        ddi_eventcookie_t *event_cookiep);
```

**Interface Level**

Solaris DDI specific (Solaris DDI).

**Parameters**

- `dev_info_t *dip`
  
  Child device node requesting the cookie.

- `char *name`
  
  NULL-terminated string containing the name of the event.

- `ddi_eventcookie_t *event_cookiep`
  
  Pointer to cookie where event cookie will be returned.

**Description**

The `ddi_get_eventcookie()` function queries the device tree for a cookie matching the given event name and returns a reference to that cookie. The search is performed by calling up the device tree hierarchy until the request is satisfied by a bus nexus driver, or the top of the `dev_info` tree is reached.

The cookie returned by this function can be used to register a callback handler, unregister a callback handler, or post an event.

**Return Values**

- `DDI_SUCCESS`
  
  Cookie handle is returned.

- `DDI_FAILURE`
  
  Request was not serviceable by any nexus driver in the driver's ancestral device tree hierarchy.

**Context**

The `ddi_get_eventcookie()` function can be called from user and kernel contexts only.

**Attributes**

See `attributes(5)` for a description of the following attributes:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ATTRIBUTE TYPE</th>
<th>ATTRIBUTE VALUE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Stability Level</td>
<td>Evolving</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**See Also**

`attributes(5), ddi_add_event_handler(9F), ddi_remove_event_handler(9F)`

*Writing Device Drivers*
ddi_getiminor(9F)

Name

ddi_getiminor – get kernel internal minor number from an external dev_t

Synopsis

#include <sys/types.h>
#include <sys/mkdev.h>
#include <sys/ddi.h>

minor_t ddi_getiminor(dev_t dev);

Interface Level

This interface is obsolete. getminor(9F) should be used instead.

Parameters

The following parameters are supported:

dev    Device number.

Description

ddi_getiminor() extracts the minor number from a device number. This call should be used only for device numbers that have been passed to the kernel from the user space through opaque interfaces such as the contents of ioctl(9E) and putmsg(2). The device numbers passed in using standard device entry points must continue to be interpreted using the getminor(9F) interface. This new interface is used to translate between user visible device numbers and in kernel device numbers. The two numbers may differ in a clustered system.

For certain bus types, you can call this DDI function from a high-interrupt context. These types include ISA and SBus buses. See sysbus(4), isa(4), and sbus(4) for details.

Context

ddi_getiminor() can be called from user context only.

Return Values

The minor number or EMINOR_UNKNOWN if the minor number of the device is invalid.

Attributes

See attributes(5) for a description of the following attributes:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ATTRIBUTE TYPE</th>
<th>ATTRIBUTE VALUE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Stability Level</td>
<td>Obsolete</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

See Also

attributes(5), getmajor(9F), getminor(9F), makedevice(9F)

Writing Device Drivers

Warnings

Drivers are required to replace calls to ddi_getminor.9f by getminor(9F)) in order to compile under Solaris 10 and later versions.
ddi_get_instance–get device instance number

# include <sys/ddi.h>
# include <sys/sunddi.h>

int ddi_get_instance(dev_info_t *dip);

Interface Level Solaris DDI specific (Solaris DDI).

Parameters dip Pointer to dev_info structure.

Description The ddi_get_instance() function returns the instance number of the device corresponding to dip.

The system assigns an instance number to every device. Instance numbers for devices attached to the same driver are unique. This provides a way for the system and the driver to uniquely identify one or more devices of the same type. The instance number is derived by the system from different properties for different device types in an implementation specific manner.

Once an instance number has been assigned to a device, it will remain the same even across reconfigurations and reboots. Therefore, instance numbers seen by a driver may not appear to be in consecutive order. For example, if device foo0 has been assigned an instance number of 0 and device foo1 has been assigned an instance number of 1, if foo0 is removed, foo1 will continue to be associated with instance number 1 (even though foo1 is now the only device of its type on the system).

Return Values The ddi_get_instance() function returns the instance number of the device corresponding to dip.

Context The ddi_get_instance() function can be called from user, interrupt, or kernel context.

See Also path_to_inst(4)

Writing Device Drivers
ddi_get_kt_did(9F)

Name  ddi_get_kt_did – get identifier of current thread

Synopsis  #include <sys/types.h>
          #include <sys/ddi.h>
          #include <sys/sunddi.h>

          kt_did_t ddi_get_kt_did(void);

Interface Level  Solaris DDI specific (Solaris DDI)

Description  The ddi_get_kt_did() function returns a unique 64-bit identifier for the currently running
              thread.

Context  This routine can be called from user, kernel, or interrupt context. This routine cannot be
          called from a high-level interrupt context.

Return Values  ddi_get_kt_did() always returns the identifier for the current thread. There are no error
                conditions.

See Also  Writing Device Drivers

Notes  The value returned by this function can also be seen in adb or mdb as the did field displayed
        when using the thread macro.

        This interface is intended for tracing and debugging purposes.
ddi_get_lbolt(9F)

**Name**  
ddi_get_lbolt, ddi_get_lbolt64 – return the number of clock ticks since boot

**Synopsis**  
```c
#include <sys/types.h>
#include <sys/ddi.h>
#include <sys/sunddi.h>

clock_t ddi_get_lbolt(void);
int64_t ddi_get_lbolt64(void);
```

**Interface Level**  
Solaris DDI specific (Solaris DDI).

**Description**  
The ddi_get_lbolt() function returns a value that represents the number of clock ticks since the system booted. This value is used as a counter or timer inside the system kernel. The tick frequency can be determined by using `drv_usectohz(9F)`, which converts microseconds into clock ticks.

The ddi_get_lbolt64() behaves essentially the same as ddi_get_lbolt(), except the value is returned in a longer data type (`int64_t`) that will not wrap for 2.9 billion years.

**Return Values**  
The ddi_get_lbolt() function returns the number of clock ticks since boot in a `clock_t` type.

The ddi_get_lbolt64() function returns the number of clock ticks since boot in an `int64_t` type.

**Context**  
These routines can be called from any context.

**See Also**  
`ddi_get_time(9F), drv_getparm(9F), drv_usectohz(9F)`

*Writing Device Drivers*

*STREAMS Programming Guide*
Name    ddi_get_parent – find the parent of a device information structure

Synopsis  
#include <sys/ddi.h>
#include <sys/sunddi.h>

    dev_info_t *ddi_get_parent(dev_info_t *dip);

Interface Level  Solaris DDI specific (Solaris DDI).

Parameters  
    dip  Pointer to a device information structure.

Description  The ddi_get_parent() function returns a pointer to the device information structure which is the parent of the one pointed to by dip.

Return Values  The ddi_get_parent() function returns a pointer to a device information structure.

Context  The ddi_get_parent() function can be called from user, interrupt, or kernel context.

See Also  Writing Device Drivers
ddi_get_pid – returns the process ID

```c
#include <sys/types.h>
#include <sys/ddi.h>
#include <sys/sunddi.h>

pid_t ddi_get_pid(void);
```

**Name**  
ddi_get_pid – returns the process ID

**Synopsis**  
```c
#include <sys/types.h>
#include <sys/ddi.h>
#include <sys/sunddi.h>
```

**Context**  
This routine can be called from user context only.

**See Also**  
drv_getparm(9F)

*Writing Device Drivers*

*STREAMS Programming Guide*
### Name

cci_get_time – returns the current time in seconds

### Synopsis

```
#include <sys/types.h>
#include <sys/ddi.h>
#include <sys/sunddi.h>

int cci_get_time(void);
```

### Interface Level

Solaris DDI specific (Solaris DDI).

### Description

cci_get_time() returns the current time in seconds since 00:00:00 UTC, January 1, 1970. This value can be used to set of wait or expiration intervals.

### Return Values

cci_get_time() returns the time in seconds.

### Context

This routine can be called from any context.

### See Also

cci_get_lbolt(9F), drv_getparm(9F), drv_usectohz(9F)

*Writing Device Drivers*

*STREAMS Programming Guide*
ddi_in_panic(9F)

Name  
ddi_in_panic – determine if system is in panic state

Synopsis  
#include <sys/ddi.h>  
#include <sys/sunddi.h>

int ddi_in_panic(void);

Interface Level  
Solaris DDI specific (Solaris DDI).

Description  
Drivers controlling devices on which the system may write a kernel crash dump in the event of a panic can call ddi_in_panic() to determine if the system is panicking.

When the system is panicking, the calls of functions scheduled by timeout(9F) and ddi_trigger_softintr(9F) will never occur. Neither can delay(9F) be relied upon, since it is implemented via timeout(9F).

Drivers that need to enforce a time delay such as SCSI bus reset delay time must busy-wait when the system is panicking.

Return Values  
ddi_in_panic() returns 1 if the system is in panic, or 0 otherwise.

Context  
ddi_in_panic() may be called from any context.

See Also  
dump(9E), delay(9F), ddi_trigger_softintr(9F), timeout(9F)

Writing Device Drivers
**Name**

ddi_intr_add_handler, ddi_intr_remove_handler – add or remove interrupt handler

**Synopsis**

```c
#include <sys/types.h>
#include <sys/conf.h>
#include <sys/ddi.h>
#include <sys/sunddi.h>

int ddi_intr_add_handler(ddi_intr_handle_t *h,
                        ddi_intr_handler_t inthandler, void *arg1,
                        void *arg2);

int ddi_intr_remove_handler(ddi_intr_handle_t h);
```

**Interface Level**

Solaris DDI specific (Solaris DDI).

**Parameters**

**ddi_intr_add_handler()**

- **h** Pointer to the DDI interrupt handle
- **inthandler** Pointer to interrupt handler
- **arg1** First argument for the interrupt handler
- **arg2** Second, optional, argument for the interrupt handler

**ddi_intr_remove_handler()**

- **h** DDI interrupt handle

**Description**

The **ddi_intr_add_handler()** function adds an interrupt handler given by the `inthandler` argument to the system with the handler arguments `arg1` and `arg2` for the previously allocated interrupt handle specified by the `h` pointer. The arguments `arg1` and `arg2` are passed as the first and second arguments, respectively, to the interrupt handler `inthandler`. See `<sys/ddi_intr.h>` for the definition of the interrupt handler.

The routine `inthandler` with the arguments `arg1` and `arg2` is called upon receipt of the appropriate interrupt. The interrupt handler should return `DDI_INTR_CLAIMED` if the interrupt is claimed and `DDI_INTR_UNCLAIMED` otherwise.

The **ddi_intr_add_handler()** function must be called after `ddi_intr_alloc()`, but before `ddi_intr_enable()` is called. The interrupt must be enabled through `ddi_intr_enable()` or `ddi_intr_block_enable()` before it can be used.

The **ddi_intr_remove_handler()** function removes the handler association, added previously with **ddi_intr_add_handler()**, for the interrupt identified by the interrupt handle `h` argument. Unloadable drivers should call this routine during their `detach(9E)` routine to remove the interrupt handler from the system.
The `ddi_intr_remove_handler()` function is used to disassociate the handler after the interrupt is disabled to remove *dup-ed* interrupt handles. See `ddi_intr_dup_handler(9F)` for *dup-ed* interrupt handles. If a handler is duplicated with the `ddi_intr_dup_handler()` function, all added and duplicated instances of the handler must be removed with `ddi_intr_remove_handler()` in order for the handler to be completely removed.

**Return Values** The `ddi_intr_add_handler()` and `ddi_intr_remove_handler()` functions return:

- **DDI_SUCCESS** On success.
- **DDI_EINVAL** On encountering invalid input parameters.
- **DDI_FAILURE** On any implementation specific failure.

**Context** The `ddi_intr_add_handler()` and `ddi_intr_remove_handler()` functions can be called from kernel non-interrupt context.

**Attributes** See `attributes(5)` for descriptions of the following attributes:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ATTRIBUTE TYPE</th>
<th>ATTRIBUTE VALUE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Interface Stability</td>
<td>Evolving</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**See Also** `attributes(5), attach(9E), detach(9E), ddi_intr_alloc(9F), ddi_intr_block_enable(9F), ddi_intr_disable(9F), ddi_intr_dup_handler(9F), ddi_intr_enable(9F), ddi_intr_free(9F), ddi_intr_get_supported_types(9F), mutex(9F), mutex_init(9F), rw_init(9F), rwlock(9F)`

**Writing Device Drivers**

**Notes** Consumers of these interfaces should verify that the return value is not equal to `DDI_SUCCESS`. Incomplete checking for failure codes could result in inconsistent behavior among platforms.

If a device driver that uses MSI and MSI-X interrupts resets the device, the device might reset its configuration space modifications. Such a reset could cause a device driver to lose any MSI and MSI-X interrupt usage settings that have been applied.

The second argument, `arg2`, is optional. Device drivers are free to use the two arguments however they see fit. There is no officially recommended model or restrictions. For example, an interrupt handler may wish to use the first argument as the pointer to its softstate and the second argument as the value of the MSI vector.
**Name**
ddi_intr_add_softint, ddi_intr_remove_softint, ddi_intr_trigger_softint,
ddi_intr_get_softint_pri, ddi_intr_set_softint_pri – software interrupt handling routines

**Synopsis**
#include <sys/types.h>
#include <sys/conf.h>
#include <sys/ddi.h>
#include <sys/sunddi.h>

int ddi_intr_add_softint(dev_info_t *dip,
                        ddi_softint_handle_t *h,
                        int soft_pri,
                        ddi_intr_handler_t handler,
                        void *arg1);

int ddi_intr_trigger_softint(ddi_softint_handle_t h,
                              void *arg2);

int ddi_intr_remove_softint(ddi_softint_handle_t h);

int ddi_intr_get_softint_pri(ddi_softint_handle_t h,
                             uint *soft_prip);

int ddi_intr_set_softint_pri(ddi_softint_handle_t h,
                             uint soft_pri);

**Interface Level**
Solaris DDI specific (Solaris DDI).

**Parameters**

**ddi_intr_add_softint()**

- **dip**  Pointer to a dev_info structure
- **h**  Pointer to the DDI soft interrupt handle
- **soft_pri**  Priority to associate with a soft interrupt
- **handler**  Pointer to soft interrupt handler
- **arg1**  Argument for the soft interrupt handler

**ddi_intr_trigger_softint()**

- **h**  DDI soft interrupt handle
- **arg2**  Additional argument for the soft interrupt handler

**ddi_intr_remove_softint()**

- **h**  DDI soft interrupt handle

**ddi_intr_get_softint_pri()**

- **h**  DDI soft interrupt handle
- **soft_prip**  Soft interrupt priority of the handle

**ddi_intr_set_softint_pri()**

- **h**  DDI soft interrupt handle
- **soft_pri**  Soft interrupt priority of the handle
ddi_intr_set_softint_pri()

\[ h \text{ DDI soft interrupt handle} \]

\[ soft\_pri \text{ Soft interrupt priority of the handle} \]

**Description**

The `ddi_intr_add_softint()` function adds the soft interrupt handler given by the `handler` argument `arg1`. The `handler` runs at the soft interrupt priority given by the `soft_pri` argument.

The value returned in the location pointed at by `h` is the soft interrupt handle. This value is used in later calls to `ddi_intr_remove_softint()`, `ddi_intr_trigger_softint()` and `ddi_intr_set_softint_pri()`.

The software priority argument `soft_pri` is a relative priority value within the range of `DDI_INTR_SOFTPRI_MIN` and `DDI_INTR_SOFTPRI_MAX`. If the driver does not know what priority to use, the default `soft_pri` value of `DDI_INTR_SOFTPRI_DEFAULT` could be specified. The default value is the lowest possible soft interrupt priority value.

The `soft_pri` argument contains the value needed to initialize the lock associated with a soft interrupt. See `mutex_init(9F)` and `rw_init(9F)`. The handler cannot be triggered until the lock is initialized.

The `ddi_intr_remove_softint()` function removes the handler for the soft interrupt identified by the interrupt handle `h` argument. Once removed, the soft interrupt can no longer be triggered, although any trigger calls in progress can still be delivered to the handler.

Drivers must remove any soft interrupt handlers before allowing the system to unload the driver. Otherwise, kernel resource leaks might occur.

The `ddi_intr_trigger_softint()` function triggers the soft interrupt specified by the interrupt handler `h` argument. A driver may optionally specify an additional argument `arg2` that is passed to the soft interrupt handler. Subsequent `ddi_intr_trigger_softint()` events, along with `arg2`, will be dropped until the one pending is serviced and returns the error code `DDI_EPENDING`.

The routine `handler`, with the `arg1` and `arg2` arguments, is called upon the receipt of a software interrupt. These were registered through a prior call to `ddi_intr_add_softint()`. Software interrupt handlers must not assume that they have work to do when they run. Like hardware interrupt handlers, they may run because a soft interrupt has occurred for some other reason. For example, another driver may have triggered a soft interrupt at the same level. Before triggering the soft interrupt, the driver must indicate to the soft interrupt handler that it has work to do. This is usually done by setting a flag in the state structure. The routine `handler` checks this flag, reached through `arg1` and `arg2`, to determine if it should claim the interrupt and do its work.

The interrupt handler must return `DDI_INTR_CLAIMED` if the interrupt was claimed and `DDI_INTR_UNCLAIMED` otherwise.
The `ddi_intr_get_softint_pri()` function retrieves the soft interrupt priority, a small integer value, associated with the soft interrupt handle. The handle is defined by the `h` argument, and the priority returned is in the value of the integer pointed to by the `soft_prip` argument.

Return Values

The `ddi_intr_add_softint()`, `ddi_intr_remove_softint()`, `ddi_intr_trigger_softint()`, `ddi_intr_get_softint_pri()`, and `ddi_intr_set_softint_pri()` functions return:

- **DDI_SUCCESS**: On success.
- **DDI_EAGAIN**: On encountering internal error regarding currently unavailable resources.
- **DDI_EINVAL**: On encountering invalid input parameters.
- **DDI_FAILURE**: On any implementation specific failure.
- **DDI_EPENDING**: On encountering a previously triggered softint event that is pending.

Context

The `ddi_intr_add_softint()`, `ddi_intr_remove_softint()`, `ddi_intr_trigger_softint()`, `ddi_intr_get_softint_pri()`, and `ddi_intr_set_softint_pri()` functions can be called from either user or kernel non-interrupt context.

Examples

**EXAMPLE 1**  
Device using high-level interrupts

In the following example, the device uses high-level interrupts. High-level interrupts are those that interrupt at the level of the scheduler and above. High-level interrupts must be handled without using system services that manipulate thread or process states, because these interrupts are not blocked by the scheduler. In addition, high-level interrupt handlers must take care to do a minimum of work because they are not preemttable. See `ddi_intr_get_hilevel_pri(9F)`.

In the example, the high-level interrupt routine minimally services the device, and enqueues the data for later processing by the soft interrupt handler. If the soft interrupt handler is not currently running, the high-level interrupt routine triggers a soft interrupt so the soft interrupt handler can process the data. Once running, the soft interrupt handler processes all the enqueued data before returning.

The state structure contains two mutexes. The high-level mutex is used to protect data shared between the high-level interrupt handler and the soft interrupt handler. The low-level mutex is used to protect the rest of the driver from the soft interrupt handler.

```c
struct xxstate {
    ...
    ddi_intr_handle_t int_hdl;
    int high_pri;
    kmutex_t high_mutex;
    ddi_softint_handle_t soft_hdl;
};
```
EXAMPLE 1  
Device using high-level interrupts  
(Continued)

```c
int low_soft_pri;
kmutex_t low_mutex;
int softint_running;
...
```

```c
struct xxstate *xsp;
static uint_t xxsoftint_handler(void *, void *);
static uint_t xxhighintr(void *, void *);
...
```

EXAMPLE 2  
Sample attach() routine

The following code fragment would usually appear in the driver's attach(9E) routine. 

```c
static uint_t
xxattach(dev_info_t *dip, ddi_attach_cmd_t cmd)
{
    int types;
    int *actual;
    int nintrs;
    struct xxstate *xsp;
    ...

    (void) ddi_intr_get_supported_types(dip, &types);
    (void) ddi_intr_get_nintrs(dip< DDI_INTR_TYPE_FIXED, *nintrs);
    (void) ddi_intr_alloc(dip, &xsp->int_hdl, DDI_INTR_TYPE_FIXED,
        1, nintrs, *actual, 0);

    /* initialize high-level mutex */
    (void) ddi_intr_get_pri(xsp->int_hdl, &>high_pri);
    mutex_init(&xsp->high_mutex, NULL, MUTEX_DRIVER,
        DDI_INTR_PRI(xsp->high_pri));

    /* Ensure that this is a hi-level interrupt */
    if (ddi_intr_get_hilevel_pri(h) != DDI_SUCCESS) {
        /* cleanup */
        return (DDI_FAILURE); /* fail attach */
    }

    /* add high-level routine - xxhighintr() */
    if (ddi_intr_add_handler(xsp->int_hdl, xxhighintr,
        argl, NULL) != DDI_SUCCESS) {
        /* cleanup */
    }
```
EXAMPLE 2  Sample attach() routine  (Continued)

       return (DDI_FAILURE); /* fail attach */
    }

/* Enable high-level routine - xxhighintr() */
if (ddi_intr_enable(xsp->int_hdl) != DDI_SUCCESS) {
    /* cleanup */
    return (DDI_FAILURE); /* fail attach */
}

/* Enable soft interrupts */
xsp->low_soft_pri = DDI_INTR_SOFTPRI_MIN;
if (ddi_intr_add_softint(dip, &xsp->soft_hdl,
    xsp->low_soft_pri, xxsoftint_handler, arg1) != DDI_SUCCESS) {
    /* clean up */
    return (DDI_FAILURE); /* fail attach */
}

/* initialize low-level mutex */
mutex_init(&xsp->low_mutex, NULL, MUTEX_DRIVER,
    DDI_INTR PRI(xsp->low_soft_pri));
...

EXAMPLE 3  High-level interrupt routine
The next code fragment represents the high-level interrupt routine. The high-level interrupt routine minimally services the device and enqueues the data for later processing by the soft interrupt routine. If the soft interrupt routine is not already running, ddi_intr_trigger_softint() is called to start the routine. The soft interrupt routine will run until there is no more data on the queue.

static uint_t
xxhighintr(void *arg1, void *arg2)
{
    struct xxstate *xsp = (struct xxstate *)arg1;
    int need_softint;
    ...
    mutex_enter(&xsp->high_mutex);
    /*
    * Verify this device generated the interrupt
    * and disable the device interrupt.
    * Enqueue data for xxsoftint_handler() processing.
    */
    /*
    /* is xxsoftint_handler() already running? */

EXAMPLE 3  High-level interrupt routine  (Continued)

need_softint = (xsp->softint_running) ? 0 : 1;
mutable_exit(&xsp->high_mutex);

/* read-only access to xsp->id, no mutex needed */
if (xsp->soft_hdl && need_softint)
    ddi_intr_trigger_softint(xsp->soft_hdl, arg2);
...
return (DDI_INTR_CLAIMED);
}

static uint_t
xxsoftint_handler(void *arg1, void *arg2)
{
    struct xxstate *xsp = (struct xxstate *)arg1;
    ...
    mutex_enter(&xsp->low_mutex);
    mutex_enter(&xsp->high_mutex);

    /* verify there is work to do */
    if (work queue empty || xsp->softint_running ) {
        mutex_exit(&xsp->high_mutex);
        mutex_exit(&xsp->low_mutex);
        return (DDI_INTR_UNCLAIMED);
    }

    xsp->softint_running = 1;

    while ( data on queue ) {
        ASSERT(mutex_owned(&xsp->high_mutex));
        /* de-queue data */
        mutex_exit(&xsp->high_mutex);

        /* Process data on queue */
        mutex.enter(&xsp->high_mutex);
    }

    xsp->softint_running = 0;
    mutex_exit(&xsp->high_mutex);
    mutex_exit(&xsp->low_mutex);
    return (DDI_INTR_CLAIMED);
}

Attributes  See attributes(5) for descriptions of the following attributes:

Kernel Functions for Drivers  385
ATTRIBUTE TYPE | ATTRIBUTE VALUE
--- | ---
Interface Stability | Committed

See Also
attributes(5), attach(9E), ddi_intr_alloc(9F), ddi_intr_free(9F), ddi_intr_get_hilevel_pri(9F), mutex_init(9F), rw_init(9F), rwlock(9F)

Writing Device Drivers

Notes
Consumers of these interfaces should verify that the return value is not equal to DDI_SUCCESS. Incomplete checking for failure codes could result in inconsistent behavior among platforms.

The ddi_intr_add_softint() may not be used to add the same software interrupt handler more than once. This is true even if a different value is used for arg1 in each of the calls to ddi_intr_add_softint(). Instead, the argument passed to the interrupt handler should indicate what service(s) the interrupt handler should perform. For example, the argument could be a pointer to the soft state structure of the device that could contain a which_service field that the handler examines. The driver must set this field to the appropriate value before calling ddi_intr_trigger_softint().

Every time a modifiable valid second argument, arg2, is provided when ddi_intr_trigger_softint() is invoked, the DDI framework saves arg2 internally and passes it to the interrupt handler handler.

A call to ddi_intr_set_softint_pri() could fail if a previously scheduled soft interrupt trigger is still pending.
ddi_intr_alloc(9F)

**Name**  
ddi_intr_alloc, ddi_intr_free – allocate or free interrupts for a given interrupt type

**Synopsis**  
#include <sys/types.h>
#include <sys/conf.h>
#include <sys/ddi.h>
#include <sys/sunddi.h>

```c
int ddi_intr_alloc(dev_info_t *dip, ddi_intr_handle_t *h_array, int type,
                    int inum, int count, int *actualp, int behavior);

int ddi_intr_free(ddi_intr_handle_t h);
```

**Interface Level**  
Solaris DDI specific (Solaris DDI).

**Parameters**  
**ddi_intr_alloc()**

- *dip*  
  Pointer to the dev_info structure

- *h_array*  
  Pointer to an array of DDI interrupt handles

- *type*  
  Interrupt type

- *inum*  
  Interrupt number

- *count*  
  Number of interrupts requested. The `count` should not exceed the total number of interrupts supported by the device, as returned by a call to `ddi_intr_get_nintrs(9F)`.  

- *actualp*  
  Pointer to the number of interrupts actually allocated

- *behavior*  
  Flag to determine the allocation algorithm

**ddi_intr_free()**

- *h*  
  DDI interrupt handle

**Description**  
The `ddi_intr_alloc()` function allocates interrupts of the interrupt type given by the `type` argument beginning at the interrupt number `inum`. If `ddi_intr_alloc()` allocates any interrupts, it returns the actual number of interrupts allocated in the integer pointed to by the `actualp` argument and returns the number of interrupt handles in the interrupt handle array pointed to by the `h_array` argument.

Specific interrupts are always specified by the combination of interrupt `type` and `inum`. For legacy devices, `inum` refers to the nth interrupt, typically as defined by the devices `interrupts` property. For PCI fixed interrupts, `inum` refers to the interrupt number. The `inum` is the relative interrupt vector number, from 0 to 31 for MSI, from 0 to 2047 for MSI-X. The first interrupt vector is 0. The last relative vector is 31 for MSI or 2047 for MSI-X.

The `h_array` must be pre-allocated by the caller as a `count` sized array of `ddi_intr_handle_t`'s.
If MSI interrupts are being allocated, the `count` argument passed should be a number between 1 and 32, specified as a power of two. If `count` is not specified as a power of two, the error `DDI_EINVAL` is returned.

The behavior flag controls the interrupt allocation algorithm. It takes one of two input values: `DDI_INTR_ALLOC_NORMAL` or `DDI_INTR_ALLOC_STRICT`. If the `count` value used is greater than `NINTRs`, then the call fails with `DDI_EINVAL` unconditionally. When set to `DDI_INTR_ALLOC_STRICT`, the call succeeds if and only if `count` interrupts are allocated. Otherwise, the call fails, and the number of available interrupts is returned in `actualp`. When set to `DDI_INTR_ALLOC_NORMAL`, the call succeeds if at least one interrupt is allocated, and the number of allocated interrupts is returned in `actualp`.

The handle for each allocated interrupt, if any, is returned in the array of handles given by the `h_array` argument.

The `ddi_intr_free()` function releases the system resources and interrupt vectors associated with the `ddi_intr_handle_t` `h`, including any resources associated with the handle `h` itself. Once freed, the handle `h` should not be used in any further calls.

The `ddi_intr_free()` function should be called once for each handle in the handle array.

**Return Values**

The `ddi_intr_alloc()` and `ddi_intr_free()` functions return:

- `DDI_SUCCESS` On success.
- `DDI_EAGAIN` Not enough interrupt resources.
- `DDI_EINVAL` On encountering invalid input parameters.
- `DDI_INTR_NOTFOUND` On failure to find the interrupt.
- `DDI_FAILURE` On any implementation specific failure.

**Context**

The `ddi_intr_alloc()` and `ddi_intr_free()` functions can be called from kernel non-interrupt context.

**Attributes**

See `attributes(5)` for descriptions of the following attributes:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Attribute Type</th>
<th>Attribute Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Interface Stability</td>
<td>Committed</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**See Also**

`attributes(5), ddi_intr_add_handler(9F), ddi_intr_block_enable(9F),
ddi_intr_disable(9F), ddi_intr_enable(9F), ddi_intr_get_cap(9F),
ddi_intr_get_nintrs(9F), ddi_intr_get_pri(9F), ddi_intr_get_supported_types(9F),
ddi_intr_remove_handler(9F)`
Writing Device Drivers

**Notes**  Consumers of these interfaces should verify that the return value is not equal to DDI_SUCCESS. Incomplete checking for failure codes could result in inconsistent behavior among platforms.

If a device driver that uses MSI and MSI-X interrupts resets the device, the device might reset its configuration space modifications. Such a reset could cause a device driver to lose any MSI and MSI-X interrupt usage settings that have been applied.
ddi_intr_dup_handler(9F)

Name

ddi_intr_dup_handler - reuse interrupt handler and arguments for MSI-X interrupts

Synopsis

#include <sys/types.h>
#include <sys/conf.h>
#include <sys/ddi.h>
#include <sys/sunddi.h>

int ddi_intr_dup_handler(ddi_intr_handle_t primary, int vector,
                        ddi_intr_handle_t *new);

Interface Level

Solaris DDI specific (Solaris DDI).

Parameters

primary Original DDI interrupt handle
vector Interrupt number to duplicate
new Pointer to new DDI interrupt handle

Description

The ddi_intr_dup_handler() function is a feature for MSI-X interrupts that allows an unallocated interrupt vector of a device to use a previously initialized or added primary MSI-X interrupt vector in order to share the same vector address, vector data, interrupt handler, and handler arguments. This feature allows a driver to alias the resources provided by the Solaris Operating System to the unallocated interrupt vectors on an associated device. For example, if 2 MSI-X interrupts were allocated to a driver and 32 interrupts were supported on the device, the driver could alias the 2 interrupts it received to the 30 remaining on the device.

The ddi_intr_dup_handler() function must be called after the primary interrupt handle has been added to the system or enabled by ddi_intr_add_handler(9F) and ddi_intr_enable(9F) calls, respectively. If successful, the function returns the new interrupt handle for a given vector in the new argument passed to the function. The new interrupt handle must not have been previously allocated with ddi_intr_alloc(9F). Otherwise, the ddi_intr_dup_handler() call will fail.

The only supported calls on dup-ed interrupt handles are ddi_intr_set_mask(9F), ddi_intr_clr_mask(9F), ddi_intr_get_pending(9F), ddi_intr_enable(9F), ddi_intr_disable(9F), and ddi_intr_free(9F).

A call to ddi_intr_dup_handler() does not imply that the interrupt source is automatically enabled. Initially, the dup-ed handle is in the disabled state and must be enabled before it can be used by calling ddi_intr_enable(). Likewise, ddi_intr_disable() must be called to disable the enabled dup-ed interrupt source.

A dup-ed interrupt is removed by calling ddi_intr_free() after it has been disabled. The ddi_intr_remove_handler(9F) call is not required for a dup-ed handle.

Before removing the original MSI-X interrupt handler, all dup-ed interrupt handlers associated with this MSI-X interrupt must have been disabled and freed. Otherwise, calls to ddi_intr_remove_handler() will fail with DDI_FAILURE.
See the EXAMPLES section for code that illustrates the use of the `ddi_intr_dup_handler()` function.

Return Values

The `ddi_intr_dup_handler()` function returns:

- **DDI_SUCCESS** On success. Note that the interface should be verified to ensure that the return value is not equal to DDI_SUCCESS. Incomplete checking for failure codes could result in inconsistent behavior among platforms.

- **DDI_EINVAL** On encountering invalid input parameters. DDI_EINVAL is also returned if a dup is attempted from a dup-ed interrupt or if the hardware device is found not to support MSI-X interrupts.

- **DDI_FAILURE** On any implementation specific failure.

Examples

**EXAMPLE 1** Using the `ddi_intr_dup_handler()` function

```c
int add_msix_interrupts(intr_state_t *state)
{
    int x, y;

    /*
     * For this example, assume the device supports multiple
     * interrupt vectors, but only request to be allocated
     * 1 MSI-X to use and then dup the rest.
     */
    if (ddi_intr_get_nintrs(state->dip, DDI_INTR_TYPE_MSIX,
                            &state->intr_count) != DDI_SUCCESS) {
        cmn_err(CE_WARN, "Failed to retrieve the MSI-X interrupt count");
        return (DDI_FAILURE);
    }

    state->intr_size = state->intr_count * sizeof (ddi_intr_handle_t);
    state->intr_htable = kmem_zalloc(state->intr_size, KM_SLEEP);

    /* Allocate one MSI-X interrupt handle */
    if (ddi_intr_alloc(state->dip, state->intr_htable,
                        DDI_INTR_TYPE_MSIX, state->inum, 1, &state->actual,
                        DDI_INTR_ALLOC_STRICT) != DDI_SUCCESS) {
        cmn_err(CE_WARN, "Failed to allocate MSI-X interrupt");
        kmem_free(state->intr_htable, state->intr_size);
        return (DDI_FAILURE);
    }

    /* Get the count of how many MSI-X interrupts we dup */
    state->dup_cnt = state->intr_count - state->actual;
```
if (ddi_intr_get_pri(state->intr_htable[0], &state->intr_pri) != DDI_SUCCESS) {
    cmn_err(CE_WARN, "Failed to get interrupt priority");
    goto error1;
}

/* Make sure the MSI-X priority is below 'high level' */
if (state->intr_pri >= ddi_intr_get_hilevel_pri()) {
    cmn_err(CE_WARN, "Interrupt PRI is too high");
    goto error1;
}

/* Add the handler for the interrupt */
if (ddi_intr_add_handler(state->intr_htable[0],
    (ddi_intr_handler_t *)intr_isr, (caddr_t)state,
    NULL) != DDI_SUCCESS) {
    cmn_err(CE_WARN, "Failed to add interrupt handler");
    goto error1;
}

/* Enable the main MSI-X handle first */
if (ddi_intr_enable(state->intr_htable[0]) != DDI_SUCCESS) {
    cmn_err(CE_WARN, "Failed to enable interrupt");
    goto error2;
}

/* Create and enable dups of the original MSI-X handler, note
 * that the inum we are using starts at 0.
 */
for (x = 1; x < state->dup_cnt; x++) {
    if (ddi_intr_dup_handler(state->intr_htable[0],
        state->inum + x, &state->intr_htable[x]) != DDI_SUCCESS) {
        for (y = x - 1; y > 0; y--) {
            (void) ddi_intr_disable(state->intr_htable[y]);
            (void) ddi_intr_free(state->intr_htable[y]);
        }
        goto error2;
    }
}

if (ddi_intr_enable(state->intr_htable[x]) != DDI_SUCCESS) {
    for (y = x; y > 0; y--) {

EXAMPLE 1 Using the ddi_intr_dup_handler() function (Continued)

    (void) ddi_intr_disable(state->intr_htable[y]);
    (void) ddi_intr_free(state->intr_htable[y]);
}

goto error2;
}
}

return (DDI_SUCCESS);

error2:
    (void) ddi_intr_remove_handler(state->intr_htable[0]);

error1:
    (void) ddi_intr_free(state->intr_htable[0]);

    kmem_free(state->intr_htable, state->intr_size);
    return (DDI_FAILURE);
}

void
remove_msix_interrupts(intr_state_t *state)
{
    int x;

    /*
    * Disable all the handles and free the dup-ed handles
    * before we can remove the main MSI-X interrupt handle.
    */
    for (x = 1; x < state->dup_cnt; x++) {
        (void) ddi_intr_disable(state->intr_htable[x]);
        (void) ddi_intr_free(state->intr_htable[x]);
    }

    /*
    * We can remove and free the main MSI-X handler now
    * that all the dups have been freed.
    */
    (void) ddi_intr_disable(state->intr_htable[0]);
    (void) ddi_intr_remove_handler(state->intr_htable[0]);
    (void) ddi_intr_free(state->intr_htable[0]);

    kmem_free(state->intr_htable, state->intr_size);
}
The `ddi_intr_dup_handler()` function can be called from kernel non-interrupt context.

**Attributes**  See `attributes(5)` for descriptions of the following attributes:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ATTRIBUTE TYPE</th>
<th>ATTRIBUTE VALUE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Interface Stability</td>
<td>Evolving</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**See Also**  `attributes(5), ddi_intr_add_handler(9F), ddi_intr_alloc(9F), ddi_intr_clr_mask(9F),
                 ddi_intr_disable(9F), ddi_intr_enable(9F), ddi_intr_free(9F),
                 ddi_intr_get_pending(9F), ddi_intr_get_supported_types(9F), ddi_intr_set_mask(9F)

*Writing Device Drivers*
# Name

`ddi_intr_enable`, `ddi_intr_block_enable`, `ddi_intr_disable`, `ddi_intr_block_disable` - enable or disable a given interrupt or range of interrupts

## Synopsis

```c
#include <sys/types.h>
#include <sys/conf.h>
#include <sys/ddi.h>
#include <sys/sunddi.h>

int ddi_intr_enable(ddi_intr_handle_t h);
int ddi_intr_block_enable(ddi_intr_handle_t *h_array, int count);
int ddi_intr_disable(ddi_intr_handle_t h);
int ddi_intr_block_disable(ddi_intr_handle_t *h_array, int count);
```

## Interface Level

Solaris DDI specific (Solaris DDI).

## Parameters

- **`ddi_intr_enable()`**
  - `h`  
    DDI interrupt handle

- **`ddi_intr_block_enable()`**
  - `h_array`  
    Pointer to an array of DDI interrupt handles
  - `count`  
    Number of interrupts

- **`ddi_intr_disable()`**
  - `h`  
    DDI interrupt handle

- **`ddi_intr_block_disable()`**
  - `h_array`  
    Pointer to an array of DDI interrupt handles
  - `count`  
    Number of interrupts

## Description

The `ddi_intr_enable()` function enables the interrupt given by the interrupt handle `h`.

The `ddi_intr_block_enable()` function enables a range of interrupts given by the `count` and `h_array` arguments, where `count` must be at least 1 and `h_array` is pointer to a count-sized array of interrupt handles.

The `ddi_intr_block_enable()` function can be used only if the device or host bridge supports the block enable/disable feature. The `ddi_intr_get_cap()` function returns the RO flag `DDI_INTR_FLAG_BLOCK` if the device or host bridge supports the interrupt block enable/disable feature for the given interrupt type. The `ddi_intr_block_enable()` function is useful for enabling MSI interrupts when the optional per-vector masking capability is not supported.
The `ddi_intr_enable()` or `ddi_intr_block_enable()` functions must be called after the required interrupt resources are allocated with `ddi_intr_alloc()`, the interrupt handlers are added through `ddi_intr_add_handler()`, and the required locks are initialized by `mutex(9F)` or `rwlock(9F)`.

Once enabled by either of the enable calls, the interrupt can be taken and passed to the driver's interrupt service routine. Enabling an interrupt implies clearing any system or device mask bits associated with the interrupt.

The `ddi_intr_disable()` function disables the interrupt given by the interrupt handle `h`.

The `ddi_intr_block_disable()` function disables a range of interrupts given by the `count` and `h_array` arguments, where `count` must be at least 1 and `h_array` is pointer to a count-sized array of interrupt handles.

The `ddi_intr_block_disable()` function can be used only if the device or host bridge supports the block enable/disable feature. The `ddi_intr_get_cap()` function returns the `RO` flag `DDI_INTR_FLAG_BLOCK` if the device or host bridge supports the interrupt block enable/disable feature for the given interrupt type. The `ddi_intr_block_disable()` function is useful for disabling MSI interrupts when the optional per-vector masking capability is not supported.

The `ddi_intr_disable()` or `ddi_intr_block_disable()` functions must be called before removing the interrupt handler and freeing the corresponding interrupt with `ddi_intr_remove_handler()` and `ddi_intr_free()`, respectively. The `ddi_intr_block_disable()` function should be called if the `ddi_intr_block_enable()` function was used to enable the interrupts.

**Return Values**
The `ddi_intr_enable()`, `ddi_intr_block_enable()`, `ddi_intr_disable()`, and `ddi_intr_block_disable()` functions return:

- `DDI_SUCCESS`  
  On success.

- `DDI EINVAL`  
  On encountering invalid input parameters.

- `DDI_FAILURE`  
  On any implementation specific failure.

**Context**
The `ddi_intr_enable()`, `ddi_intr_block_enable()`, `ddi_intr_disable()`, and `ddi_intr_block_disable()` functions can be called from kernel non-interrupt context.

**Attributes**
See `attributes(5)` for descriptions of the following attributes:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ATTRIBUTE TYPE</th>
<th>ATTRIBUTE VALUE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Interface Stability</td>
<td>Evolving</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
See Also: attributes(5), ddi_intr_add_handler(9F), ddi_intr_alloc(9F),
ddi_intr_dup_handler(9F), ddi_intr_free(9F), ddi_intr_get_cap(9F),
ddi_intr_remove_handler(9F), mutex(9F), rwlock(9F)

Writing Device Drivers

Notes: Consumers of these interfaces should verify that the return value is not equal to DDI_SUCCESS. Incomplete checking for failure codes could result in inconsistent behavior among platforms.

If a device driver that uses MSI and MSI-X interrupts resets the device, the device might reset its configuration space modifications. Such a reset could cause a device driver to lose any MSI and MSI-X interrupt usage settings that have been applied.
ddi_intr_get_cap, ddi_intr_set_cap – get or set interrupt capabilities for a given interrupt type

Synopsis
#include <sys/types.h>
#include <sys/conf.h>
#include <sys/ddi.h>
#include <sys/sunddi.h>

int ddi_intr_get_cap(ddi_intr_handle_t h, int *flagsp);
int ddi_intr_set_cap(ddi_intr_handle_t h, int flags);

Interface Level
Solaris DDI specific (Solaris DDI).

Parameters

**ddi_intr_get_cap()**

* h DDI interrupt handle
* flagsp Pointer to the capability flags returned for this handle

**ddi_intr_set_cap()**

* h DDI interrupt handle
* flags Contains the capability flag to be set

Description
The ddi_intr_get_cap() function returns the interrupt capability flags for the interrupt handle \( h \). Upon a successful return, the flags are returned in the integer pointed to by the flagsp argument.

These flags are typically combinations of the following:

- **DDI_INTR_FLAG_EDGE**
  For discrete interrupts, the host supports edge type of trigger. This flag is not returned for DDI_INTR_TYPE_MSI or DDI_INTR_TYPE_MSIX interrupt types. This is a read-write (RW) flag.

- **DDI_INTR_FLAG_LEVEL**
  For discrete interrupts the host supports level, edge, or both types of triggers. This flag is not returned for DDI_INTR_TYPE_MSI or DDI_INTR_TYPE_MSIX interrupt types.

- **DDI_INTR_FLAG_MASKABLE**
  The interrupt can be masked either by the device or by the host bridge, or optionally by the host. This is a read-only (RO) flag.

- **DDI_INTR_FLAG_PENDING**
  The interrupt supports an interrupt pending bit. This is a read-only (RO) flag.

- **DDI_INTR_FLAG_BLOCK**
  All interrupts of the given type must be block-enabled and are not individually maskable. This is a read-only (RO) flag.

The ddi_intr_set_cap() function allows a driver to specify the capability flags for the interrupt handle \( h \). Only DDI_INTR_FLAG_LEVEL and DDI_INTR_FLAG_EDGE flags can be set.
Some devices can support both level and edge capability and either can be set by using the `ddi_intr_set_cap()` function. Setting the capability flags is device and platform dependent.

The `ddi_intr_set_cap()` function can be called after interrupts are allocated and prior to adding the interrupt handler. For all other times it returns failure.

**Return Values**

The `ddi_intr_get_cap()` and `ddi_intr_set_cap()` functions return:

- **DDI_SUCCESS** On success.
- **DDI_EINVAL** On encountering invalid input parameters.
- **DDI_FAILURE** On any implementation specific failure.
- **DDI_ENOTSUP** On device not supporting operation.

**Context**

The `ddi_intr_get_cap()` and `ddi_intr_set_cap()` functions can be called from either user or kernel non-interrupt context.

**Attributes**

See `attributes(5)` for descriptions of the following attributes:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ATTRIBUTE TYPE</th>
<th>ATTRIBUTE VALUE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Interface Stability</td>
<td>Evolving</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**See Also**

`attributes(5), ddi_intr_alloc(9F), ddi_intr_block_enable(9F),
 ddi_intr_get_nintrs(9F), ddi_intr_get_pending(9F),
 ddi_intr_get_supported_types(9F), ddi_intr_set_mask(9F)`

**Writing Device Drivers**

**Notes**

Consumers of these interfaces should verify that the return value is not equal to **DDI_SUCCESS**. Incomplete checking for failure codes could result in inconsistent behavior among platforms.
ddi_intr_get_hilevel_pri(9F)

Name  ddi_intr_get_hilevel_pri – get minimum priority level for a high-level interrupt

Synopsis  
```
#include <sys/types.h>
#include <sys/conf.h>
#include <sys/ddi.h>
#include <sys/sunddi.h>

int ddi_intr_get_hilevel_pri(void);
```

Interface Level  Solaris DDI specific (Solaris DDI).

Description  Upon a successful return, the `ddi_intr_get_hilevel_pri()` function returns the minimum priority level for a high-level interrupt. The return priority value can be used to compare to other priority values, such as those returned from `ddi_intr_get_pri()`, to determine if a given interrupt priority is a high-level interrupt.

High-level interrupts must be handled without using system services that manipulate thread or process states, because such interrupts are not blocked by the scheduler.

In addition, high-level interrupt handlers must take care to do a minimum of work because they cannot be preempted.

A typical high-level interrupt handler puts data into a circular buffer and schedule a soft interrupt by calling `ddi_intr_trigger_softint()`. The circular buffer can be protected by using a mutex that is properly initialized for the interrupt handler.

The `ddi_intr_get_hilevel_pri()` function can be used before calling `ddi_intr_add_handler()` to help determine which type of interrupt handler can be used. Most device drivers are designed with the knowledge that supported devices always generate low level interrupts. On some machines, however, interrupts are high-level above the scheduler level and on other machines they are not. Devices such as those those using SBus interrupts or VME bus level 6 or 7 interrupts must use the `ddi_intr_get_hilevelPri()` function to test the type of interrupt handler that can be used.

Return Values  The `ddi_intr_get_hilevel_pri()` function returns the priority value for a high-level interrupt.

Context  The `ddi_intr_get_hilevel_pri()` function can be called from either user or kernel non-interrupt context.

Attributes  See attributes(5) for descriptions of the following attributes:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ATTRIBUTE TYPE</th>
<th>ATTRIBUTE VALUE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Interface Stability</td>
<td>Evolving</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
See Also attributes(5), ddi_intr_add_handler(9F), ddi_intr_alloc(9F), ddi_intr_enable(9F),
ddi_intr_get_pri(9F), ddi_intr_trigger_softint(9F), mutex(9F)

Writing Device Drivers
Name  ddi_intr_get_nintrs, ddi_intr_get_navail – return number of interrupts supported or available for a given interrupt type

Synopsis  #include <sys/types.h>
#include <sys/conf.h>
#include <sys/ddi.h>
#include <sys/sunddi.h>

int ddi_intr_get_nintrs(dev_info_t *dip, int type, int *nintrsp);
int ddi_intr_get_navail(dev_info_t *dip, int type, int *navailp);

Interface Level  Solaris DDI specific (Solaris DDI).

Parameters  ddi_intr_get_nintrs()

   dip     Pointer to dev_info structure
   type    Interrupt type
   nintrsp Pointer to number of interrupts of the given type that are supported by the system

   ddi_intr_get_navail()

   dip     Pointer to dev_info structure
   type    Interrupt type
   navailp Pointer to number of interrupts of the given type that are currently available from the system

Description  The ddi_intr_get_nintrs() function returns the number of interrupts of the given type supported by a particular hardware device. On a successful return, the number of supported interrupts is returned as an integer pointed to by the nintrsp argument.

If the hardware device is not found to support any interrupts of the given type, the DDI_INTR_NOTFOUND failure is returned rather than a zero in nintrsp.

The ddi_intr_get_navail() function returns the number of interrupts of a given type that is available to a particular hardware device. On a successful return, the number of available interrupts is returned as an integer pointed to by navailp.

The hardware device may support more than one interrupt and can request that all interrupts be allocated. The host software can then use policy-based decisions to determine how many interrupts are made available to the device. Based on the determination, a value is returned that should be used to allocate interrupts with the ddi_int_alloc() function.

If the device participates in resource management, a call to ddi_intr_get_navail() tells the device driver the number of interrupts of the given type that should be used. The host software can then use a policy-based decision to determine the number of interrupts to be allowed to the device. If the number is more than the number of interrupts currently being used, the
device driver can ask for more resources. If the number is less than the number of interrupts currently being used, the device driver should prepare to disable and free the extra interrupts. The number of interrupts currently available is always a snapshot in time and can change if the interface is called again.

See `ddi_intr_get_supported_types(9F)` for a list of valid supported types for a given hardware device. The `ddi_intr_get_supported_types()` function must be called prior to calling either `ddi_intr_get_nintrs()` or `ddi_intr_get_navail()`.

**Return Values** The `ddi_intr_get_nintrs()` and `ddi_intr_get_navail()` functions return:

- **DDI_SUCCESS** On success.
- **DDI_EINVAL** On encountering invalid input parameters.
- **DDI_INTR_NOTFOUND** On not finding any interrupts for the given interrupt type.
- **DDI_FAILURE** On any implementation specific failure.

**Context** The `ddi_intr_get_nintrs()` and `ddi_intr_get_navail()` functions can be called from either user or kernel non-interrupt context.

**Attributes** See `attributes(5)` for descriptions of the following attributes:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ATTRIBUTE TYPE</th>
<th>ATTRIBUTE VALUE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Interface Stability</td>
<td>Evolving</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**See Also** `attributes(5), ddi_intr_alloc(9F), ddi_intr_enable(9F), ddi_intr_get_supported_types(9F)`

*Writing Device Drivers*

**Notes** The `ddi_intr_get_nintrs()` and `ddi_intr_get_navail()` functions can be called at any time, even if the driver has added an interrupt handler for a given interrupt specification. Consumers of these interfaces should verify that the return value is not equal to **DDI_SUCCESS**. Incomplete checking for failure codes could result in inconsistent behavior among platforms.
Name  ddi_intr_get_pending – get pending bit for a given interrupt

Synopsis

```c
#include <sys/types.h>
#include <sys/conf.h>
#include <sys/ddi.h>
#include <sys/sunddi.h>

int ddi_intr_get_pending(ddi_intr_handle_t h, int *pendingp);
```

Interface Level Solaris DDI specific (Solaris DDI).

Parameters

- `h`: DDI interrupt handle
- `pendingp`: Pointer to the pending capability returned for this handle

Description

The `ddi_intr_get_pending()` function returns non-zero as the integer pointed to by the `pendingp` argument if a corresponding interrupt is pending. The corresponding interrupt handle `h` must already be allocated. The call succeeds if the device or host bridge supports the ability to read the interrupt pending bits of its interrupts. The driver should use `ddi_intr_get_cap()` function to see if the DDI_INTR_FLAG_PENDING flag is returned to indicate that interrupts support interrupt pending bits.

If the DDI_INTR_FLAG_PENDING capability is not supported, `ddi_intr_get_pending()` returns DDI_ENOTSUP and zero in `pendingp`.

Return Values

The `ddi_intr_get_pending()` function returns:

- `DDI_SUCCESS`: On success.
- `DDI_EINVAL`: On encountering invalid input parameters.
- `DDI_FAILURE`: On any implementation specific failure.
- `DDI_ENOTSUP`: On device not supporting operation.

Context

The `ddi_intr_get_pending()` function can be called from either user or kernel non-interrupt context.

Attributes

See `attributes(5)` for descriptions of the following attributes:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ATTRIBUTE TYPE</th>
<th>ATTRIBUTE VALUE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Interface Stability</td>
<td>Evolving</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

See Also

- `attributes(5)`, `ddi_intr_block_enable(9F)`, `ddi_intr_block_disable(9F)`, `ddi_intr_clr_mask(9F)`, `ddi_intr_disable(9F)`, `ddi_intr_enable(9F)`, `ddi_intr_set_mask(9F)`

Writing Device Drivers
Any consumer of this interface should verify that the return value is not equal to DDI_SUCCESS. Incomplete checking for failure codes could result in inconsistent behavior among platforms.
**Name**  
`ddi_intr_getPri`, `ddi_intr_setPri` – get or set priority of a given interrupt

**Synopsis**  
```
#include <sys/types.h>
#include <sys/conf.h>
#include <sys/ddi.h>
#include <sys/sunddi.h>

int ddi_intr_get_pri(ddi_intr_handle_t h, uint_t *prip);
int ddi_intr_set_pri(ddi_intr_handle_t h, uint_t pri);
```

**Description**  
The `ddi_intr_get_pri()` function returns the current priority of the interrupt handle `h` of a given device. Upon a successful return, `prip` points to a small integer value, typically in the `DDI_INTR_PRI_MIN`...`DDI_INTR_PRI_MAX` range, that represents the current software priority setting for the interrupt. See `<sys/ddi_intr.h>` for values of `DDI_INTR_PRI_MIN` or `DDI_INTR_PRI_MAX`.

The `ddi_intr_get_pri()` function can be called any time, even if the driver adds an interrupt handler for the interrupt specification.

The software priority returned from `ddi_intr_get_pri()` can be used in calls to `mutex_init()` and `rw_init()`.

The `ddi_intr_set_pri()` function sets the priority `pri` of the interrupt handle `h` of a given device. The function validates that the argument is within the supported range.

The `ddi_intr_set_pri()` function can only be called prior to adding the interrupt handler or when an interrupt handler is unassigned. `DDI_FAILURE` is returned in all other cases.

**Return Values**  
The `ddi_intr_get_pri()` and `ddi_intr_set_pri()` functions return:

- `DDI_SUCCESS`  
  On success.
- `DDI_EINVAL`  
  On encountering invalid input parameters.
- `DDI_FAILURE`  
  On any implementation specific failure.
- `DDI_ENOTSUP`  
  On device not supporting operation.
The `ddi_intr_get_pri()` and `ddi_intr_set_pri()` functions can be called from kernel non-interrupt context.

See attributes(5) for descriptions of the following attributes:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ATTRIBUTE TYPE</th>
<th>ATTRIBUTE VALUE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Interface Stability</td>
<td>Committed</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

See Also attributes(5), `ddi_intr_alloc(9F)`, `ddi_intr_enable(9F)`, `mutex_init(9F)`, `rw_init(9F)`

Writing Device Drivers

Notes The priority returned from `ddi_intr_get_pri()` should be typecast by calling the `DDI_INTR_PRI` macro before passing it onto `mutex_init(9F)`.

Consumers of these interfaces should verify that the return value is not equal to `DDI_SUCCESS`. Incomplete checking for failure codes could result in inconsistent behavior among platforms.
ddi_intr_get_supported_types(9F)

**Name**  
ddi_intr_get_supported_types – return information on supported hardware interrupt types

**Synopsis**  
#include <sys/types.h>
#include <sys/conf.h>
#include <sys/ddi.h>
#include <sys/sunddi.h>

int ddi_intr_get_supported_types(dev_info_t *dip, int *typesp);

**Interface Level**  
Solaris DDI specific (Solaris DDI)

**Parameters**  
dip Pointer to dev_info structure
typesp Pointer to supported interrupt types

**Description**  
The ddi_intr_get_supported_types() function retrieves the interrupt types supported by a particular hardware device and by the system software. Upon successful return, the supported types are returned as a bit mask in the integer pointed to by the typesp argument. See <sys/ddi_intr.h> for a list of interrupts that can be returned by a hardware device.

For PCI devices that support MSI and/or MSI-X based hardware, this interface returns only the interrupt types that are supported by all the hardware in the path to the hardware device.

An interrupt type is usable by the hardware device if it is returned by the ddi_intr_get_supported_types() function. The device driver can be programmed to use one of the returned interrupt types to receive hardware interrupts.

**Return Values**  
The ddi_intr_get_supported_types() function returns:

- DDI_SUCCESS On success.
- DDI_EINVAL On encountering invalid input parameters.
- DDI_INTR_NOTFOUND Returned when the hardware device is found not to support any hardware interrupts.

**Context**  
The ddi_intr_get_supported_types() function can be called from user or kernel non-interrupt context.

**Attributes**  
See attributes(5) for descriptions of the following attributes:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ATTRIBUTE TYPE</th>
<th>ATTRIBUTE VALUE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Interface Stability</td>
<td>Evolving</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**See Also**  
pci(4), attributes(5), pcmcia(7D), sysbus(4), ddi_intr_add_handler(9F), ddi_intr_alloc(9F), ddi_intr_enable(9F)

Writing Device Drivers
Notes  The `ddi_intr_get_supported_types()` function can be called by the device driver even at any time if the driver has added an interrupt handler for a given interrupt type.

Soft interrupts are always usable and are not returned by this interface.

Any consumer of this interface should verify that the return value is not equal to `DDI_SUCCESS`. Incomplete checking for failure codes could result in inconsistent behavior among platforms.
Name  ddi_intr_hilevel – indicate interrupt handler type

Synopsis  

#include <sys/ddi.h>
#include <sys/sunddi.h>

int ddi_intr_hilevel(dev_info_t *dip, uint_t inumber);

Interface Level  Solaris DDI specific (Solaris DDI). This interface is obsolete. Use the new interrupt interfaces referenced in Intro(9F). Refer to Writing Device Drivers for more information.

Parameters  

* dip  Pointer to dev_info structure.

* inumber  Interrupt number.

Description  The ddi_intr_hilevel() function returns non-zero if the specified interrupt is a "high level" interrupt.

High level interrupts must be handled without using system services that manipulate thread or process states, because these interrupts are not blocked by the scheduler.

In addition, high level interrupt handlers must take care to do a minimum of work because they are not preemptable.

A typical high level interrupt handler would put data into a circular buffer and schedule a soft interrupt by calling ddi_trigger_SOFTintr(). The circular buffer could be protected by using a mutex that was properly initialized for the interrupt handler.

The ddi_intr_hilevel() function can be used before calling ddi_add_intr() to decide which type of interrupt handler should be used. Most device drivers are designed with the knowledge that the devices they support will always generate low level interrupts, however some devices, for example those using SBus or VME bus level 6 or 7 interrupts must use this test because on some machines those interrupts are high level (above the scheduler level) and on other machines they are not.

Return Values  non-zero indicates a high-level interrupt.

Context  These functions can be called from user, interrupt, or kernel context.

Attributes  See attributes(5) for descriptions of the following attributes:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ATTRIBUTE TYPE</th>
<th>ATTRIBUTE VALUE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Interface Stability</td>
<td>Obsolete</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
See Also  ddi_add_intr(9F), Intro(9F), mutex(9F)

Writing Device Drivers
**ddi_intr_set_mask**, ddi_intr_clr_mask – set or clear mask for a given interrupt

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>ddi_intr_set_mask, ddi_intr_clr_mask – set or clear mask for a given interrupt</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Synopsis</td>
<td>#include &lt;sys/types.h&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>#include &lt;sys/conf.h&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>#include &lt;sys/ddi.h&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>#include &lt;sys/sunddi.h&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>int ddi_intr_set_mask(ddi_intr_handle_t *h);</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>int ddi_intr_clr_mask(ddi_intr_handle_t *h);</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Interface Level</td>
<td>Solaris DDI specific (Solaris DDI).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Parameters</td>
<td><em>h</em>  DDI interrupt handle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Description</td>
<td>The ddi_intr_set_mask() function masks the given interrupt pointed to by the device's interrupt handle <em>h</em> if the device or host bridge supports the masking operation. The ddi_intr_get_cap() function returns the RO flag DDI_INTR_FLAG_MASKABLE if the device or host bridge supports interrupt mask bits for the given interrupt type. In flight interrupts can still be taken and delivered to the driver. The ddi_intr_clr_mask() function unmask the given interrupt pointed to by the device's interrupt handle <em>h</em> if the device or host bridge supports the masking operation. The ddi_intr_set_mask() and ddi_intr_clr_mask() functions should be called only if an interrupt is enabled. Otherwise the framework will return DDI_EINVAL to such calls. The mask cannot be cleared directly if the OS implementation has also temporarily masked the interrupt. A call to ddi_intr_clr_mask() must be preceded by a call to ddi_intr_set_mask(). It is not necessary to call ddi_intr_clr_mask() when adding and enabling the interrupt.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Return Values</td>
<td>The ddi_intr_set_mask() and ddi_intr_clr_mask() functions return:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>DDI_SUCCESS On success.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>DDI_EINVAL On encountering invalid input parameters or when an interrupt is not enabled.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>DDI_FAILURE On any implementation specific failure.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>DDI_ENOTSUP On device not supporting operation.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Context</td>
<td>The ddi_intr_set_mask() and ddi_intr_clr_mask() functions can be called from any context.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Attributes</td>
<td>See attributes(5) for descriptions of the following attributes:</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

412  man pages section 9: DDI and DKI Kernel Functions • Last Revised 05 April 2006
### ddi_intr_set_mask(9F)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ATTRIBUTE TYPE</th>
<th>ATTRIBUTE VALUE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Interface Stability</td>
<td>Evolving</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**See Also**  
attributes(5), ddi_intr_block_disable(9F), ddi_intr_block_enable(9F), ddi_intr_disable(9F), ddi_intr_enable(9F), ddi_intr_get_pending(9F)

**Writing Device Drivers**

**Notes**  
Consumers of these interfaces should verify that the return value is not equal to DDI_SUCCESS. Incomplete checking for failure codes could result in inconsistent behavior among platforms.
ddi_intr_set_nreq(9F)

Name  

ddi_intr_set_nreq – set the number of interrupts requested for a device driver instance

Synopsis  

#include <sys/ddi_intr.h>

int ddi_intr_set_nreq(dev_info_t *dip, int nreq);

Interface Level  

Solaris DDI specific (Solaris DDI).

Parameters  

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>dip</th>
<th>Pointer to the dev_info structure.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>nreq</td>
<td>Number of interrupts requested.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Description  

The ddi_intr_set_nreq() function changes the number of interrupts requested by a device driver instance.

The nreq parameter is the total number of interrupt resources that this instance of the device driver would like to have available. The nreq parameter includes any interrupt resources already allocated by the driver. For example, if the driver instance already has two MSI-X vectors and it wants two more, it should call this function with an nreq parameter set to four.

The nreq parameter can be any value between one and the maximum number of interrupts supported by the device hardware, as reported by a call to the ddi_intr_get_nintrs(9F) function. The driver receives a callback notifying it in cases when it must release any previously allocated interrupts, or when it is allowed to allocate more interrupts as a result of its new nreq parameter.

The ddi_intr_set_nreq() function is not supported unless a driver is already consuming interrupts, and if it has a registered callback handler that can process actions related to changes in interrupt availability. See ddi_cb_register(9F) for an explanation on how to enable this functionality.

Return Values  

The ddi_intr_set_nreq() function returns:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>DDI_SUCCESS</th>
<th>on success</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>DDI_EINVAL</td>
<td>The operation is invalid because the nreq parameter is not a legal value</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DDI_ENOTSUP</td>
<td>The operation is not supported. The driver must have a registered callback, and the system must have interrupt pools implemented.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DDI_FAILURE</td>
<td>Implementation specific failure</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Context  

These functions can be called from kernel, non-interrupt context.

Attributes  

See attributes(5) for descriptions of the following attributes:
The Interrupt Resource Management feature is limited to device driver instances that are using MSI-X interrupts (interrupt type `DDI_INTR_TYPE_MSIX`). Attempts to use this function for any other type of interrupts fails with `DDI_ENOTSUP`.

The total number of interrupts requested by the driver is initially defined by the `count` parameter provided by the driver’s first call to the `ddi_intr_alloc(9F)` function, specifically during the driver instance’s `attach(9E)` routine. The `ddi_intr_set_nreq()` function is only used if the driver instance experiences changes in its I/O load. In response to increased I/O load, the driver may want to request additional interrupt resources. In response to diminished I/O load, the driver may volunteer to return extra interrupt resources back to the system.

---

### See Also
- `attributes(5)`, `attach(9E)`, `ddi_cb_register(9F)`, `ddi_intr_alloc(9F)`, `ddi_intr_get_nintrs(9F)`

### Notes
- The Interrupt Resource Management feature is limited to device driver instances that are using MSI-X interrupts (interrupt type `DDI_INTR_TYPE_MSIX`). Attempts to use this function for any other type of interrupts fails with `DDI_ENOTSUP`.
- The total number of interrupts requested by the driver is initially defined by the `count` parameter provided by the driver’s first call to the `ddi_intr_alloc(9F)` function, specifically during the driver instance’s `attach(9E)` routine. The `ddi_intr_set_nreq()` function is only used if the driver instance experiences changes in its I/O load. In response to increased I/O load, the driver may want to request additional interrupt resources. In response to diminished I/O load, the driver may volunteer to return extra interrupt resources back to the system.
ddi_io_get8(9F)

Name  ddi_io_get8, ddi_io_get16, ddi_io_get32, ddi_io_getb, ddi_io_getw, ddi_io_getl – read data from the mapped device register in I/O space

Synopsis  #include <sys/ddi.h>
#include <sys/sunddi.h>

uint8_t ddi_io_get8(ddi_acc_handle_t handle, uint8_t *dev_addr);
uint16_t ddi_io_get16(ddi_acc_handle_t handle, uint16_t *dev_addr);
uint32_t ddi_io_get32(ddi_acc_handle_t handle, uint32_t *dev_addr);

Interface Level  Solaris DDI specific (Solaris DDI).

Parameters  handle  Data access handle returned from setup calls, such as ddi_regs_map_setup(9F).

             dev_addr  Device address.

Description  These routines generate a read of various sizes from the device address, dev_addr, in I/O space. The ddi_io_get8(), ddi_io_get16(), and ddi_io_get32() functions read 8 bits, 16 bits, and 32 bits of data, respectively, from the device address, dev_addr.

Each individual datum will automatically be translated to maintain a consistent view between the host and the device based on the encoded information in the data access handle. The translation may involve byte-swapping if the host and the device have incompatible endian characteristics.

Context  These functions can be called from user, kernel, or interrupt context.

See Also  isa(4), ddi_io_put8(9F), ddi_io_rep_get8(9F), ddi_io_rep_put8(9F),
            ddi_regs_map_free(9F), ddi_regs_map_setup(9F), ddi_device_acc_attr(9S)

Notes  For drivers using these functions, it may not be easy to maintain a single source to support devices with multiple bus versions. For example, devices may offer I/O space in ISA bus (see isa(4)) but memory space only in PCI local bus. This is especially true in instruction set architectures such as x86 where accesses to the memory and I/O space are different.

The functions described in this manual page previously used symbolic names which specified their data access size; the function names have been changed so they now specify a fixed-width data size. See the following table for the new name equivalents:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Previous Name</th>
<th>New Name</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ddi_io_getb</td>
<td>ddi_io_get8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ddi_io_getw</td>
<td>ddi_io_get16</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

416  man pages section 9: DDI and DKI Kernel Functions • Last Revised 29 June 1999
**ddi_io_get8(0F)**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Previous Name</th>
<th>New Name</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ddi_io_getl</td>
<td>ddi_io_get32</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Kernel Functions for Drivers**

417
**ddi_iomin(9F)**

**Name**  
ddi_iomin – find minimum alignment and transfer size for DMA

**Synopsis**  
```c
#include <sys/conf.h>
#include <sys/ddi.h>
#include <sys/sunddi.h>

int ddi_iomin(dev_info_t *dip, int initial, int streaming);
```

**Interface Level**  
Solaris DDI specific (Solaris DDI). This interface is obsolete.

**Parameters**  
dip  
A pointer to the device's dev_info structure.

initial  
The initial minimum DMA transfer size in bytes. This may be zero or an appropriate dlim_minxfer value for device's ddi_dma_lim structure (see ddi_dma_lim_sparc(9S) or ddi_dma_lim_x86(9S)). This value must be a power of two.

streaming  
This argument, if non-zero, indicates that the returned value should be modified to account for streaming mode accesses (see ddi_dma_req(9S) for a discussion of streaming versus non-streaming access mode).

**Description**  
The ddi_iomin() function, finds out the minimum DMA transfer size for the device pointed to by dip. This provides a mechanism by which a driver can determine the effects of underlying caches as well as intervening bus adapters on the granularity of a DMA transfer.

**Return Values**  
The ddi_iomin() function returns the minimum DMA transfer size for the calling device, or it returns zero, which means that you cannot get there from here.

**Context**  
This function can be called from user, interrupt, or kernel context.

**Attributes**  
See attributes(5) for descriptions of the following attributes:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ATTRIBUTE TYPE</th>
<th>ATTRIBUTE VALUE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Interface Stability</td>
<td>Obsolete</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**See Also**  
ddi_dma_devalign(9F), ddi_dma_setup(9F), ddi_dma_sync(9F), ddi_dma_lim_sparc(9S), ddi_dma_lim_x86(9S), ddi_dma_req(9S)

Writing Device Drivers
ddi_iopb_alloc, ddi_iopb_free - allocate and free non-sequentially accessed memory

#include <sys/ddi.h>
#include <sys/sunddi.h>

int ddi_iopb_alloc(dev_info_t *dip, ddi_dma_lim_t *limits, uint_t length, caddr_t *iopbp);
void ddi_iopb_free(caddr_t iopb);

The interfaces are obsolete. Use ddi_dma_mem_alloc(9F) instead of ddi_iopb_alloc(). Use ddi_dma_mem_free(9F) instead of ddi_iopb_free().

dip A pointer to the device's dev_info structure.

limits A pointer to a DMA limits structure for this device (see ddi_dma_lim_sparc(9S) or ddi_dma_lim_x86(9S)). If this pointer is NULL, a default set of DMA limits is assumed.

length The length in bytes of the desired allocation.

iopb A pointer to a caddr_t. On a successful return, *iopbp points to the allocated storage.

ddi_iopb_free() iopb The iopb returned from a successful call to ddi_iopb_alloc().

The ddi_iopb_alloc() function allocates memory for DMA transfers and should be used if the device accesses memory in a non-sequential fashion, or if synchronization steps using ddi_dma_sync(9F) should be as lightweight as possible, due to frequent use on small objects. This type of access is commonly known as consistent access. The allocation will obey the alignment and padding constraints as specified in the limits argument and other limits imposed by the system.

Note that you still must use DMA resource allocation functions (see ddi_dma_setup(9F)) to establish DMA resources for the memory allocated using ddi_iopb_alloc().

In order to make the view of a memory object shared between a CPU and a DMA device consistent, explicit synchronization steps using ddi_dma_sync(9F) or ddi_dma_free(9F) are still required. The DMA resources will be allocated so that these synchronization steps are as efficient as possible.

The ddi_iopb_free() function frees up memory allocated by ddi_iopb_alloc().

Return Values The ddi_iopb_alloc() function returns:

DDI_SUCCESS Memory successfully allocated.

DDI_FAILURE Allocation failed.
These functions can be called from user, interrupt, or kernel context.

Attributes
See attributes(5) for a description of the following attributes:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ATTRIBUTETYPE</th>
<th>ATTRIBUTE VALUE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Stability Level</td>
<td>Obsolete</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

See Also
attributes(5), ddi_dma_free(9F), ddi_dma_mem_alloc(9F), ddi_dma_mem_free(9F), ddi_dma_setup(9F), ddi_dma_sync(9F), ddi_mem_alloc(9F), ddi_dma_lim_sparc(9S), ddi_dma_lim_x86(9S), ddi_dma_req(9S)

Writing Device Drivers

Notes
This function uses scarce system resources. Use it selectively.
Name ddi_io_put8, ddi_io_put16, ddi_io_put32, ddi_io_putw, ddi_io_putl, ddi_io_putb – write
data to the mapped device register in I/O space

Synopsis #include <sys/ddi.h>
#include <sys/sunddi.h>

void ddi_io_put8(ddi_acc_handle_t handle, uint8_t *dev_addr, uint8_t value);
void ddi_io_put16(ddi_acc_handle_t handle, uint16_t *dev_addr, uint16_t value);
void ddi_io_put32(ddi_acc_handle_t handle, uint32_t *dev_addr, uint32_t value);

Interface Level Solaris DDI specific (Solaris DDI).

Parameters handle Data access handle returned from setup calls, such as
                  ddi_regs_map_setup(9F).

        dev_addr Base device address.

        value Data to be written to the device.

Description These routines generate a write of various sizes to the device address, dev_addr, in I/O space.
The ddi_io_put8(), ddi_io_put16(), and ddi_io_put32() functions write 8 bits, 16 bits, and
32 bits of data, respectively, to the device address, dev_addr.

Each individual datum will automatically be translated to maintain a consistent view between
the host and the device based on the encoded information in the data access handle. The
translation may involve byte-swapping if the host and the device have incompatible endian
characteristics.

Context These functions can be called from user, kernel, or interrupt context.

See Also isa(4), ddi_io_get8(9F), ddi_io_rep_get8(9F), ddi_io_rep_put8(9F),
ddi_regs_map_setup(9F), ddi_device_acc_attr(9S)

Notes For drivers using these functions, it may not be easy to maintain a single source to support
devices with multiple bus versions. For example, devices may offer I/O space in ISA bus (see
isa(4)) but memory space only in PCI local bus. This is especially true in instruction set
architectures such as x86 where accesses to the memory and I/O space are different.

The functions described in this manual page previously used symbolic names which specified
their data access size; the function names have been changed so they now specify a fixed-width
data size. See the following table for the new name equivalents:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Previous Name</th>
<th>New Name</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ddi_io_putb</td>
<td>ddi_io_put8</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Kernel Functions for Drivers 421
### ddi_io_put8(9F)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Previous Name</th>
<th>New Name</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ddi_io_putw</td>
<td>ddi_io_put16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ddi_io_putl</td>
<td>ddi_io_put32</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**Name**  
ddi_io_rep_get8, ddi_io_rep_get16, ddi_io_rep_get32, ddi_io_rep_getw, ddi_io_rep_getb,  
ddi_io_rep_getl – read multiple data from the mapped device register in I/O space  

**Synopsis**  
#include <sys/ddi.h>  
#include <sys/sun_ddi.h>  

```c
void ddi_io_rep_get8(ddi_acc_handle_t handle, uint8_t *host_addr, uint8_t *dev_addr,  
size_t repcount);
```

```c
void ddi_io_rep_get16(ddi_acc_handle_t handle, uint16_t *host_addr,  
uint16_t *dev_addr, size_t repcount);
```

```c
void ddi_io_rep_get32(ddi_acc_handle_t handle, uint32_t *host_addr,  
uint32_t *dev_addr, size_t repcount);
```

**Interface Level**  
Solaris DDI specific (Solaris DDI).

**Parameters**  
- **handle**: The data access handle returned from setup calls, such as ddi_regs_map_setup(9F).
- **host_addr**: Base host address.
- **dev_addr**: Base device address.
- **repcount**: Number of data accesses to perform.

**Description**  
These routines generate multiple reads from the device address, `dev_addr`, in I/O space.  
`repcount` data is copied from the device address, `dev_addr`, to the host address, `host_addr`. For each input datum, the ddi_io_rep_get8(), ddi_io_rep_get16(), and ddi_io_rep_get32() functions read 8 bits, 16 bits, and 32 bits of data, respectively, from the device address.  
`host_addr` must be aligned to the datum boundary described by the function.

Each individual datum will automatically be translated to maintain a consistent view between  
the host and the device based on the encoded information in the data access handle. The  
translation may involve byte-swapping if the host and the device have incompatible endian  
characteristics.

**Context**  
These functions can be called from user, kernel, or interrupt context.

**See Also**  
isa(4), ddi_io_get8(9F), ddi_io_put8(9F), ddi_io_rep_put8(9F),  
ddi_regs_map_free(9F), ddi_regs_map_setup(9F), ddi_device_acc_attr(9S)

**Notes**  
For drivers using these functions, it may not be easy to maintain a single source to support  
devices with multiple bus versions. For example, devices may offer I/O space in ISA bus (see  
isa(4)) but memory space only in PCI local bus. This is especially true in instruction set  
architectures such as x86 where accesses to the memory and I/O space are different.
ddi_io_rep_get8(9F)

The functions described in this manual page previously used symbolic names which specified their data access size; the function names have been changed so they now specify a fixed-width data size. See the following table for the new name equivalents:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Previous Name</th>
<th>New Name</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ddi_io_rep_getb</td>
<td>ddi_io_rep_get8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ddi_io_rep_getw</td>
<td>ddi_io_rep_get16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ddi_io_rep_getl</td>
<td>ddi_io_rep_get32</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**Name**  
`ddi_io_rep_put8`, `ddi_io_rep_put16`, `ddi_io_rep_put32`, `ddi_io_rep_putw`, `ddi_io_rep_putl`  
`ddi_io_rep_putb` – write multiple data to the mapped device register in I/O space

**Synopsis**  
```
#include <sys/ddi.h>
#include <sys/sunddi.h>

void ddi_io_rep_put8(ddi_acc_handle_t handle, uint8_t *host_addr, uin8_t *dev_addr, size_t repcount);
void ddi_io_rep_put16(ddi_acc_handle_t handle, uint16_t *host_addr, uin16_t *dev_addr, size_t repcount);
void ddi_io_rep_put32(ddi_acc_handle_t handle, uint32_t *host_addr, uin32_t *dev_addr, size_t repcount);
```

**Interface Level**  
Solaris DDI specific (Solaris DDI).

**Parameters**  
- `handle`  
  Data access handle returned from setup calls, such as `ddi_regs_map_setup(9F)`.  
- `host_addr`  
  Base host address.  
- `dev_addr`  
  Base device address.  
- `repcount`  
  Number of data accesses to perform.

**Description**  
These routines generate multiple writes to the device address, `dev_addr`, in I/O space.  
`repcount` data is copied from the host address, `host_addr`, to the device address, `dev_addr`. For each input datum, the `ddi_io_rep_put8()`, `ddi_io_rep_put16()`, and `ddi_io_rep_put32()` functions write 8 bits, 16 bits, and 32 bits of data, respectively, to the device address.  
`host_addr` must be aligned to the datum boundary described by the function.  

Each individual datum will automatically be translated to maintain a consistent view between the host and the device based on the encoded information in the data access handle. The translation may involve byte-swapping if the host and the device have incompatible endian characteristics.

**Context**  
These functions can be called from user, kernel, or interrupt context.

**See Also**  
`isa(4)`, `ddi_io_get8(9F)`, `ddi_io_put8(9F)`, `ddi_io_rep_get8(9F)`, `ddi_regs_map_setup(9F)`, `ddi_device_acc_attr(9S)`

**Notes**  
For drivers using these functions, it may not be easy to maintain a single source to support devices with multiple bus versions. For example, devices may offer I/O space in ISA bus (see `isa(4)`) but memory space only in PCI local bus. This is especially true in instruction set architectures such as x86 where accesses to the memory and I/O space are different.
The functions described in this manual page previously used symbolic names which specified their data access size; the function names have been changed so they now specify a fixed-width data size. See the following table for the new name equivalents:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Previous Name</th>
<th>New Name</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ddi_io_rep_putb</td>
<td>ddi_io_rep_put8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ddi_io_rep_putw</td>
<td>ddi_io_rep_put16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ddi_io_rep_putl</td>
<td>ddi_io_rep_put32</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**Name**

ddi_log_sysevent – log system event for drivers

**Synopsis**

```c
#include <sys/ddi.h>
#include <sys/sunddi.h>

int ddi_log_sysevent(dev_info_t *dip, char *vendor,
                     char *class, char *subclass, nvlist_t *attr_list,
                     sysevent_id_t *eidp, int sleep_flag);
```

**Interface Level**

Solaris DDI specific (Solaris DDI).

**Parameters**

- **dip**
  A pointer to the dev_info node for this driver.

- **vendor**
  A pointer to a string defining the vendor. Third-party drivers should use their company’s stock symbol (or similarly enduring identifier). Sun-supplied drivers should use DDI_VENDOR_SUNW.

- **class**
  A pointer to a string defining the event class.

- **subclass**
  A pointer to a string defining the event subclass.

- **attr_list**
  A pointer to an nvlist_t, listing the name-value attributes associated with the event or NULL if there are no such attributes for this event.

- **eidp**
  The address of a sysevent_id_t structure in which the event’s sequence number and timestamp are returned if the event is successfully queued. May be NULL if this information is not of interest. See below for the definition of sysevent_id_t.

- **sleep_flag**
  Indicates how a caller wants to handle the possibility of resources not being available. If `sleep_flag` is DDI_NOSLEEP, the caller does not care if the allocation fails or the queue is full and can handle a failure appropriately. If `sleep_flag` is DDI_SLEEP, the caller wishes to have the allocation and queuing routines wait for resources to become available.

**Description**

The `ddi_log_sysevent()` function causes a system event, of the specified class and subclass, to be generated on behalf of the driver and queued for delivery to syseventd, the user-land sysevent daemon.

The publisher string for the event is constructed using the vendor name and driver name, with the format:

"<vendor>:kern:<driver-name>"

The two fields of `eidp`, `eid_seq` and `eid_ts`, are sufficient to uniquely identify an event.
**Structure Members**

The structure members of `sys/event_id_t` are:

```c
uint64_t eid_seq; /* sys/event sequence number */
hrtimer_t eid_ts; /* sys/event timestamp */
```

**Return Values**

The `ddi_log_sys/event()` function returns:

- **DDI_SUCCESS**
  - The event has been queued for delivery successfully.

- **DDI_ENOMEM**
  - There is not enough memory to queue the system event at this time.
  - `DDI_ENOMEM` cannot be returned when `sleep_flag` is `DDI_SLEEP`.

- **DDI_EBUSY**
  - The system event queue is full at this time.
  - `DDI_EBUSY` cannot be returned when `sleep_flag` is `DDI_SLEEP`.

- **DDI_ETRANSPORT**
  - The `sys/event` daemon is not responding and events cannot be queued or delivered at this time.
  - `DDI_ETRANSPORT` can be returned even when `sleep_flag` is `DDI_SLEEP`.

- **DDI_ECONTEXT**
  - `sleep_flag` is `DDI_SLEEP` and the driver is running in interrupt context.

`ddi_log_sys/event` supports the following data types:

- `DATA_TYPE_BYTE`
- `DATA_TYPE_INT16`
- `DATA_TYPE_UINT16`
- `DATA_TYPE_INT32`
- `DATA_TYPE_UINT32`
- `DATA_TYPE_INT64`
- `DATA_TYPE_UINT64`
- `DATA_TYPE_STRING`
- `DATA_TYPE_BYTE_ARRAY`
ddi_log_sysevent(9F)

DATA_TYPE_INT16_ARRAY

DATA_TYPE_UINT16_ARRAY

DATA_TYPE_INT32_ARRAY

DATA_TYPE_UINT32_ARRAY

DATA_TYPE_INT64_ARRAY

DATA_TYPE_UINT64_ARRAY

**Context**  The `ddi_log_sysevent()` function can be called from user, interrupt, or kernel context, except when `sleep_flag` is `DDI_SLEEP`, in which case it cannot be called from interrupt context.

**Examples**

**EXAMPLE 1**  Logging System Event with No Attributes

```c
if (ddi_log_sysevent(dip, DDI_VENDOR_SUNW, "class", "subclass", NULL, NULL, DDI_SLEEP) != DDI_SUCCESS) {
    cmn_err(CE_WARN, "error logging system event\n");
}
```

**EXAMPLE 2**  Logging System Event with Two Name/Value Attributes, an Integer and a String

```c
nvlist_t *attr_list;
sysevent_id_t eid;

if (nvlist_aloc(attr_list, NV_UNIQUE_NAME_TYPE, KM_SLEEP) == 0) {
    err = nvlist_add_uint32(attr_list, int_name, int_value);
    if (err == 0)
        err = nvlist_add_string(attr_list, str_name, str_value);
    if (err == 0)
        err = ddi_log_sysevent(dip, DDI_VENDOR_SUNW, "class", "subclass", attr_list, &eid, DDI_SLEEP);
    if (err != DDI_SUCCESS)
        cmn_err(CE_WARN, "error logging system event\n");
    nvlist_free(attr_list);
}
```

**EXAMPLE 3**  Use Timeout to Handle `nvlist` and System Event Resource Allocation Failures

Since no blocking calls are made, this example would be useable from a driver needing to generate an event from interrupt context.
EXAMPLE 3  Use Timeout to Handle nvlist and System Event Resource Allocation Failures (Continued)

static int
xx_se_timeout_handler(xx_state_t *xx)
{
    xx->xx_timeoutid = (xx_generate_event(xx) ?
                        timeout(xx_se_timeout_handler, xx, 4) : 0);
}

static int
xx_generate_event(xx_state_t *xx)
{
    int err;

    err = nvlist_alloc(&xx->xx_ev_attrlist, NV_UNIQUE_NAME_TYPE, 0);
    if (err != 0)
        return (1);
    err = nvlist_add_uint32(&xx->xx_ev_attrlist,
                           xx->xx_ev_name, xx->xx_ev_value);
    if (err != 0) {
        nvlist_free(xx->xx_ev_attrlist);
        return(1);
    }

    err = ddi_log_sysevent(xx->xx_dip, DDI_VENDOR_SUNW,
                           xx->xx_ev_class, xx->xx_ev_sbclass,
                           xx->xx_ev_attrlist, NULL, DDI_NOSLEEP);
    nvlist_free(xx->xx_ev_attrlist);
    if (err == DDI_SUCCESS || err == DDI_ETRANSPORT) {
        if (err == DDI_ETRANSPORT)
            cmn_err(CE_WARN, "cannot log system event\n");
        return (0);
    }
    return (1);
}

See Also  syseventd(1M), attributes(5), nvlist_add_boolean(9F), nvlist_alloc(9F)

Writing Device Drivers
# ddi_map_regs(9F)

## Name

ddi_map_regs, ddi_unmap_regs – map or unmap registers

## Synopsis

```c
#include <sys/conf.h>
#include <sys/ddi.h>
#include <sys/sunddi.h>

int ddi_map_regs(dev_info_t *dip, uint_t rnumber, caddr_t *kaddrp, off_t offset, off_t len);

void ddi_unmap_regs(dev_info_t *dip, uint_t rnumber, caddr_t *kaddrp, off_t offset, off_t len);
```

## Interface Level

These interfaces are obsolete. Use `ddi_regs_map_setup(9F)` instead of `ddi_map_regs()`. Use `ddi_regs_map_free(9F)` instead of `ddi_unmap_regs()`.

## Parameters

### `ddi_map_regs`

- **dip**: Pointer to the device’s dev_info structure.
- **rnumber**: Register set number.
- **kaddrp**: Pointer to the base kernel address of the mapped region (set on return).
- **offset**: Offset into register space.
- **len**: Length to be mapped.

### `ddi_unmap_regs`

- **dip**: Pointer to the device’s dev_info structure.
- **rnumber**: Register set number.
- **kaddrp**: Pointer to the base kernel address of the region to be unmapped.
- **offset**: Offset into register space.
- **len**: Length to be unmapped.

## Description

The `ddi_map_regs()` function maps in the register set given by `rnumber`. The register number determines which register set will be mapped if more than one exists. The base kernel virtual address of the mapped register set is returned in `kaddrp`. `offset` specifies an offset into the register space to start from and `len` indicates the size of the area to be mapped. If `len` is non-zero, it overrides the length given in the register set description. See the discussion of the `reg` property in `sbus(4)` and for more information on register set descriptions. If `len` and `offset` are 0, the entire space is mapped.

The `ddi_unmap_regs()` function undoes mappings set up by `ddi_map_regs()`. This is provided for drivers preparing to detach themselves from the system, allowing them to release allocated mappings. Mappings must be released in the same way they were mapped (a call to `ddi_unmap_regs()` must correspond to a previous call to `ddi_map_regs()`). Releasing
portions of previous mappings is not allowed. rnumber determines which register set will be unmapped if more than one exists. The kaddrp, Offset and len specify the area to be unmapped.

kaddrp is a pointer to the address returned from ddi_map_regs(); offset and len should match what ddi_map_regs() was called with.

Return Values The ddi_map_regs() function returns:

DDI_SUCCESS on success.

Context These functions can be called from user, interrupt, or kernel context.

Attributes See attributes(5) for a description of the following attributes:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Attribute Type</th>
<th>Attribute Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Stability Level</td>
<td>Obsolete</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

See Also attributes(5), sbus(4), ddi_regs_map_free(9F), ddi_regs_map_setup(9F)

Writing Device Drivers
ddi_mem_alloc(9F)

Name  ddi_mem_alloc, ddi_mem_free – allocate and free sequentially accessed memory

Synopsis  #include <sys/ddi.h>
#include <sys/sunddi.h>

int ddi_mem_alloc(dev_info_t *dip, ddi_dma_lim_t *limits,
       uint_t length, uint_t flags, caddr_t *kaddrp,
       uint_t *real_length);

void ddi_mem_free(caddr_t kaddr);

Interface Level  These interfaces are obsolete. ddi_dma_mem_alloc(9F) and ddi_dma_mem_free(9F) should be used instead.

Parameters

    dip    A pointer to the device's dev_info structure.
    limits  A pointer to a DMA limits structure for this device (see ddi_dma_lim_sparc(9S) or ddi_dma_lim_x86(9S)). If this pointer is NULL, a default set of DMA limits is assumed.
    length  The length in bytes of the desired allocation.
    flags   The possible flags 1 and 0 are taken to mean, respectively, wait until memory is available, or do not wait.
    kaddrp  On a successful return, *kaddrp points to the allocated memory.
    real_length  The length in bytes that was allocated. Alignment and padding requirements may cause ddi_mem_alloc() to allocate more memory than requested in length.

    kaddr    The memory returned from a successful call to ddi_mem_alloc().

Description  The ddi_mem_alloc() function allocates memory for DMA transfers and should be used if the device is performing sequential, unidirectional, block-sized and block-aligned transfers to or from memory. This type of access is commonly known as streaming access. The allocation will obey the alignment and padding constraints as specified by the limits argument and other limits imposed by the system.

Note that you must still use DMA resource allocation functions (see ddi_dma_setup(9F)) to establish DMA resources for the memory allocated using ddi_mem_alloc().

ddi_mem_alloc() returns the actual size of the allocated memory object. Because of padding and alignment requirements, the actual size might be larger than the requested size.

ddi_dma_setup(9F) requires the actual length.

In order to make the view of a memory object shared between a CPU and a DMA device consistent, explicit synchronization steps using ddi_dma_sync(9F) or ddi_dma_free(9F) are required.
The `ddi_mem_free()` function frees up memory allocated by `ddi_mem_alloc()`.

**Return Values** The `ddi_mem_alloc()` function returns:
- `DDI_SUCCESS` Memory successfully allocated.
- `DDI_FAILURE` Allocation failed.

**Context** The `ddi_mem_alloc()` function can be called from user, interrupt, or kernel context, except when `flags` is set to 1, in which case it cannot be called from interrupt context.

**Attributes** See attributes(5) for a description of the following attributes:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Attribute Type</th>
<th>Attribute Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Stability Level</td>
<td>Obsolete</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**See Also** attributes(5), ddi_dma_free(9F), ddi_dma_mem_alloc(9F), ddi_dma_mem_free(9F), ddi_dma_setup(9F), ddi_dma_sync(9F), ddi_iopb_alloc(9F), ddi_dma_lim_sparc(9S), ddi_dma_lim_x86(9S), ddi_dma_req(9S)

*Writing Device Drivers*
ddi_mem_get8(9F)

Name  
/ddi_mem_get8, ddi_mem_get16, ddi_mem_get32, ddi_mem_get64, ddi_mem_getw, ddi_mem_getl, ddi_mem_getll, ddi_mem_getb – read data from mapped device in the memory space or allocated DMA memory

Synopsis  
#include <sys/ddi.h>
#include <sys/sunddi.h>

uint8_t ddi_mem_get8(ddi_acc_handle_t handle, uint8_t *dev_addr);
uint16_t ddi_mem_get16(ddi_acc_handle_t handle, uint16_t *dev_addr);
uint32_t ddi_mem_get32(ddi_acc_handle_t handle, uint32_t *dev_addr);
uint64_t ddi_mem_get64(ddi_acc_handle_t handle, uint64_t *dev_addr);

Interface Level  
Solaris DDI specific (Solaris DDI).

Parameters  
handle The data access handle returned from setup calls, such as ddi_regs_map_setup(9F).
dev_addr Base device address.

Description  
These routines generate a read of various sizes from memory space or allocated DMA memory. The ddi_mem_get8(), ddi_mem_get16(), ddi_mem_get32(), and ddi_mem_get64() functions read 8 bits, 16 bits, 32 bits and 64 bits of data, respectively, from the device address, dev_addr, in memory space.

Each individual datum will automatically be translated to maintain a consistent view between the host and the device based on the encoded information in the data access handle. The translation may involve byte-swapping if the host and the device have incompatible endian characteristics.

Context  
These functions can be called from user, kernel, or interrupt context.

See Also  
/ddi_mem_put8(9F), ddi_mem_rep_get8(9F), ddi_mem_rep_put8(9F), ddi_regs_map_setup(9F), ddi_device_acc_attr(9S)

Notes  
The functions described in this manual page previously used symbolic names which specified their data access size; the function names have been changed so they now specify a fixed-width data size. See the following table for the new name equivalents:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Previous Name</th>
<th>New Name</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ddi_mem_get8</td>
<td>ddi_mem_get8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ddi_mem_get16</td>
<td>ddi_mem_get16</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Kernel Functions for Drivers 435
### ddi_mem_get8(9F)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Previous Name</th>
<th>New Name</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ddi_mem_getl</td>
<td>ddi_mem_get32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ddi_mem_getll</td>
<td>ddi_mem_get64</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Name ddi_mem_put8, ddi_mem_put16, ddi_mem_put32, ddi_mem_put64, ddi_mem_putb, ddi_mem_putw, ddi_mem_putl, ddi_mem_putll – write data to mapped device in the memory space or allocated DMA memory

Synopsis #include <sys/ddi.h>
#include <sys/sunddi.h>

void ddi_mem_put8(ddi_acc_handle_t handle, uint8_t *dev_addr, uint8_t value);
void ddi_mem_put16(ddi_acc_handle_t handle, uint16_t *dev_addr, uint16_t value);
void ddi_mem_put32(ddi_acc_handle_t handle, uint32_t *dev_addr, uint32_t value);
void ddi_mem_put64(ddi_acc_handle_t handle, uint64_t *dev_addr, uint64_t value);

Parameters handle The data access handle returned from setup calls, such as ddi_regs_map_setup(9F).
dev_addr Base device address.
value The data to be written to the device.

Interface Level Solaris DDI specific (Solaris DDI).

Description These routines generate a write of various sizes to memory space or allocated DMA memory. The ddi_mem_put8(), ddi_mem_put16(), ddi_mem_put32(), and ddi_mem_put64() functions write 8 bits, 16 bits, 32 bits and 64 bits of data, respectively, to the device address, dev_addr, in memory space.

Each individual datum will automatically be translated to maintain a consistent view between the host and the device based on the encoded information in the data access handle. The translation may involve byte-swapping if the host and the device have incompatible endian characteristics.

Context These functions can be called from user, kernel, or interrupt context.

See Also ddi_mem_get8(9F), ddi_mem_rep_get8(9F), ddi_regs_map_setup(9F), ddi_device_acc_attr(9S)

Notes The functions described in this manual page previously used symbolic names which specified their data access size; the function names have been changed so they now specify a fixed-width data size. See the following table for the new name equivalents:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Previous Name</th>
<th>New Name</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ddi_mem_putb</td>
<td>ddi_mem_put8</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Kernel Functions for Drivers 437
## ddi_mem_put8(9F)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Previous Name</th>
<th>New Name</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ddi_mem_putw</td>
<td>ddi_mem_put16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ddi_mem_putl</td>
<td>ddi_mem_put32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ddi_mem_putll</td>
<td>ddi_mem_put64</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
ddi_mem_rep_get8, ddi_mem_rep_get16, ddi_mem_rep_get32, ddi_mem_rep_get64,
ddi_mem_rep_getw, ddi_mem_rep_getl, ddi_mem_rep_getll, ddi_mem_rep_getb – read
multiple data from mapped device in the memory space or allocated DMA memory

#include <sys/ddi.h>
#include <sys/sunddi.h>

void ddi_mem_rep_get8(ddi_acc_handle_t handle, uint8_t *host_addr,
uint8_t *dev_addr, size_t repcount, uint_t flags);
void ddi_mem_rep_get16(ddi_acc_handle_t handle, uint16_t *host_addr,
uint16_t *dev_addr, size_t repcount, uint_t flags);
void ddi_mem_rep_get32(ddi_acc_handle_t handle, uint32_t *host_addr,
uint32_t *dev_addr, size_t repcount, uint_t flags);
void ddi_mem_rep_get64(ddi_acc_handle_t handle, uint64_t *host_addr,
uint64_t *dev_addr, size_t repcount, uint_t flags);

Solaris DDI specific (Solaris DDI).

**Parameters**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>handle</td>
<td>The data access handle returned from setup calls, such as ddi_regs_map_setup(9F).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>host_addr</td>
<td>Base host address.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dev_addr</td>
<td>Base device address.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>repcount</td>
<td>Number of data accesses to perform.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>flags</td>
<td>Device address flags:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DDI_DEV_AUTOINCR</td>
<td>Automatically increment the device address, dev_addr, during data accesses.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DDI_DEV_NO_AUTOINCR</td>
<td>Do not advance the device address, dev_addr, during data accesses.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Description**

These routines generate multiple reads from memory space or allocated DMA memory. repcount data is copied from the device address, dev_addr, in memory space to the host address, host_addr. For each input datum, the ddi_mem_rep_get8(), ddi_mem_rep_get16(),
ddi_mem_rep_get32(), and ddi_mem_rep_get64() functions read 8 bits, 16 bits, 32 bits and
64 bits of data, respectively, from the device address, dev_addr, dev_addr and host_addr must
be aligned to the datum boundary described by the function.
Each individual datum will automatically be translated to maintain a consistent view between the host and the device based on the encoded information in the data access handle. The translation may involve byte-swapping if the host and the device have incompatible endian characteristics.

When the flags argument is set to DDI_DEV_AUTOINCR, these functions will treat the device address, dev_addr, as a memory buffer location on the device and increments its address on the next input datum. However, when the flags argument is set to DDI_DEV_NO_AUTOINCR, the same device address will be used for every datum access. For example, this flag may be useful when reading from a data register.

Context  These functions can be called from user, kernel, or interrupt context.

See Also  ddi_mem_get8(9F), ddi_mem_put8(9F), ddi_mem_rep_put8(9F), ddi_regs_map_setup(9F), ddi_device_acc_attr(9S)

Notes  The functions described in this manual page previously used symbolic names which specified their data access size; the function names have been changed so they now specify a fixed-width data size. See the following table for the new name equivalents:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Previous Name</th>
<th>New Name</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ddi_mem_rep_getb</td>
<td>ddi_mem_rep_get8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ddi_mem_rep_getw</td>
<td>ddi_mem_rep_get16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ddi_mem_rep_getl</td>
<td>ddi_mem_rep_get32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ddi_mem_rep_getll</td>
<td>ddi_mem_rep_get64</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

ddi_mem_rep_get8(9F)
# Synopsis

```c
#include <sys/ddi.h>
#include <sys/sunddi.h>

void ddi_mem_rep_put8(ddi_acc_handle_t handle, uint8_t *host_addr, uint8_t *dev_addr, size_t repcount, uint_t flags);
void ddi_mem_rep_put16(ddi_acc_handle_t handle, uint16_t *host_addr, uint16_t *dev_addr, size_t repcount, uint_t flags);
void ddi_mem_rep_put32(ddi_acc_handle_t handle, uint32_t *host_addr, uint32_t *dev_addr, size_t repcount, uint_t flags);
void ddi_mem_rep_put64(ddi_acc_handle_t handle, uint64_t *host_addr, uint64_t *dev_addr, size_t repcount, uint_t flags);
```

Parameters

- **handle**
  The data access handle returned from setup calls, such as `ddi_regs_map_setup(9F)`.

- **host_addr**
  Base host address.

- **dev_addr**
  Base device address.

- **repcount**
  Number of data accesses to perform.

- **flags**
  Device address flags:
  - `DDI_DEV_AUTOINCR`
    Automatically increment the device address, `dev_addr`, during data accesses.
  - `DDI_DEV_NO_AUTOINCR`
    Do not advance the device address, `dev_addr`, during data accesses.

Description

These routines generate multiple writes to memory space or allocated DMA memory. `repcount` data is copied from the host address, `host_addr`, to the device address, `dev_addr`, in memory space. For each input datum, the `ddi_mem_rep_put8()`, `ddi_mem_rep_put16()`, `ddi_mem_rep_put32()`, and `ddi_mem_rep_put64()` functions write 8 bits, 16 bits, 32 bits and 64 bits of data, respectively, to the device address. `dev_addr` and `host_addr` must be aligned to the datum boundary described by the function.

Each individual datum will automatically be translated to maintain a consistent view between the host and the device based on the encoded information in the data access handle. The translation may involve byte-swapping if the host and the device have incompatible endian characteristics.
When the `flags` argument is set to `DDI_DEV_AUTOINCR`, these functions will treat the device address, `dev_addr`, as a memory buffer location on the device and increments its address on the next input datum. However, when the `flags` argument is set to `DDI_DEV_NO_AUTOINCR`, the same device address will be used for every datum access. For example, this flag may be useful when writing from a data register.

**Context**  These functions can be called from user, kernel, or interrupt context.

**See Also**  `ddi_mem_get8(9F), ddi_mem_put8(9F), ddi_mem_rep_get8(9F), ddi_regs_map_setup(9F), ddi_device_acc_attr(9S)`

**Notes**  The functions described in this manual page previously used symbolic names which specified their data access size; the function names have been changed so they now specify a fixed-width data size. See the following table for the new name equivalents:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Previous Name</th>
<th>New Name</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ddi_mem_rep_putb</td>
<td>ddi_mem_rep_put8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ddi_mem_rep_putw</td>
<td>ddi_mem_rep_put16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ddi_mem_rep_putl</td>
<td>ddi_mem_rep_put32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ddi_mem_rep_putll</td>
<td>ddi_mem_rep_put64</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**Name**  
`ddi_mmap_get_model` – return data model type of current thread

**Synopsis**  
```
#include <sys/ddi.h>
#include <sys/sunddi.h>
```

```
uint_t ddi_mmap_get_model(void);
```

**Interface Level**  
Solaris DDI specific (Solaris DDI).

**Description**  
`ddi_mmap_get_model()` returns the C Language Type Model which the current thread expects. `ddi_mmap_get_model()` is used in combination with `ddi_model_convert_from(9F)` in the `mmap(9E)` driver entry point to determine whether there is a data model mismatch between the current thread and the device driver. The device driver might have to adjust the shape of data structures before exporting them to a user thread which supports a different data model.

**Return Values**  
- `DDI_MODEL_ILP32`  
  Current thread expects 32-bit (ILP32) semantics.
- `DDI_MODEL_LP64`  
  Current thread expects 64-bit (LP64) semantics.
- `DDI_FAILURE`  
  The `ddi_mmap_get_model()` function was not called from the `mmap(9E)` entry point.

**Context**  
The `ddi_mmap_get_model()` function can only be called from the `mmap(9E)` driver entry point.

**Examples**  
**EXAMPLE 1**: Using `ddi_mmap_get_model()`

The following is an example of the `mmap(9E)` entry point and how to support 32-bit and 64-bit applications with the same device driver.

```
struct data32 {
    int len;
    caddr32_t addr;
};

struct data {
    int len;
    caddr_t addr;
};

xxmmap(dev_t dev, off_t off, int prot) {
    struct data dtc; /* a local copy for clash resolution */
    struct data *dp = (struct data *)shared_area;

    switch (ddi_model_convert_from(ddi_mmap_get_model())) {
    case DDI_MODEL_ILP32:
        {
            struct data32 *da32p;
```
EXAMPLE 1: Using ddi_mmap_get_model() (Continued)

    da32p = (struct data32 *)shared_area;
    dp = &dtc;
    dp->len = da32p->len;
    dp->address = da32->address;
    break;
}
    case DDI_MODEL_NONE:
        break;
    }
    /* continues along using dp */
    ...
}

See Also mmap(9E), ddi_model_convert_from(9F)

Writing Device Drivers
ddi_model_convert_from – determine data model type mismatch

Synopsis

```
#include <sys/ddi.h>
#include <sys/sunddi.h>

uint_t ddi_model_convert_from(uint_t model);
```

Interface Level

Solaris DDI specific (Solaris DDI).

Parameters

- `model`: The data model type of the current thread.

Description

`ddi_model_convert_from()` is used to determine if the current thread uses a different C Language Type Model than the device driver. The 64-bit version of Solaris will require a 64-bit kernel to support both 64-bit and 32-bit user mode programs. The difference between a 32-bit program and a 64-bit program is in its C Language Type Model: a 32-bit program is ILP32 (integer, longs, and pointers are 32-bit) and a 64-bit program is LP64 (longs and pointers are 64-bit). There are a number of driver entry points such as `ioctl(9E)` and `mmap(9E)` where it is necessary to identify the C Language Type Model of the user-mode originator of an kernel event. For example any data which flows between programs and the device driver or vice versa need to be identical in format. A 64-bit device driver may need to modify the format of the data before sending it to a 32-bit application. `ddi_model_convert_from()` is used to determine if data that is passed between the device driver and the application requires reformatting to any non-native data model.

Return Values

- `DDI_MODEL_ILP32`: A conversion to/from ILP32 is necessary.
- `DDI_MODEL_NONE`: No conversion is necessary. Current thread and driver use the same data model.

Context

`ddi_model_convert_from()` can be called from any context.

Examples

**EXAMPLE 1**: Using `ddi_model_convert_from()` in the `ioctl()` entry point to support both 32-bit and 64-bit applications.

The following is an example how to use `ddi_model_convert_from()` in the `ioctl()` entry point to support both 32-bit and 64-bit applications.

```
struct passargs32 {
    int len;
    caddr32_t addr;
};

struct passargs {
    int len;
    caddr_t addr;
};

xxioctl(dev_t dev, int cmd, intptr_t arg, int mode,
        cred_t *credp, int *rvalp) {
    struct passargs pa;
```
EXAMPLE 1: Using `ddi_model_convert_from()` in the `ioctl()` entry point to support both 32-bit and 64-bit applications.  

```c
switch (ddi_model_convert_from(mode & FMODELS)) {
    case DDI_MODEL_ILP32:
        {
            struct passargs32 pa32;

            ddi_copyin(arg, &pa32, sizeof (struct passargs32), mode);
            pa.len = pa32.len;
            pa.address = pa32.address;
            break;
        }
    case DDI_MODEL_NONE:
        ddi_copyin(arg, &pa, sizeof (struct passargs), mode);
        break;
    }
    do_ioctl(&pa);
    . . .
}
```

See Also  `ioctl(9E), mmap(9E), ddi_mmap_get_model(9F)`

*Writing Device Drivers*
ddi_node_name – return the devinfo node name

Synopsis
#include <sys/ddi.h>
#include <sys/sunddi.h>

char *ddi_node_name(dev_info_t *dip);

Interface Level
Solaris DDI specific (Solaris DDI).

Parameters
dip A pointer the device’s dev_info structure.

Description
The ddi_node_name() function returns the device node name contained in the dev_info node pointed to by dip.

Return Values
The ddi_node_name() function returns the device node name contained in the dev_info structure.

Context
The ddi_node_name() function can be called from user, interrupt, or kernel context.

See Also
ddi_binding_name(9F)

Writing Device Drivers
#include <sys/ddi.h>
#include <sys/sunddi.h>

int ddi_no_info(dev_info_t *dip, ddi_info_cmd_t infocmd, void *arg, void **result

Solaris DDI specific (Solaris DDI)

Parameters

- dev_info_t *dip: Pointer to dev_info structure.
- ddi_info_cmd_t infocmd: Command argument. Valid command values are: DDI_INFO_DEVT2DEVINFO and DDI_INFO_DEVT2INSTANCE.
- void *arg: Command-specific argument.
- void **result: Pointer to where the requested information is stored.

Description

The ddi_no_info() function always returns DDI_FAILURE. It is provided as a convenience routine for drivers not providing a cb_ops(9S) or for network drivers only providing DLPI-2 services. Such drivers can use ddi_no_info() in the devo_getinfo entry point (see getinfo(9E)) of the dev_ops(9S) structure.

Return Values

The ddi_no_info() function always returns DDI_FAILURE.

See Also

getinfo(9E), qassociate(9F), cb_ops(9S), dev_ops(9S)
**Name**
ddi_peek, ddi_peek8, ddi_peek16, ddi_peek32, ddi_peek64, ddi_peekc, ddi_peeks, ddipeekl, ddi.peekd – read a value from a location

**Synopsis**
#include <sys/ddi.h>
#include <sys/sunddi.h>

int ddi_peek8(dev_info_t *dip, int8_t *addr, int8_t *valuep);
int ddi_peek16(dev_info_t *dip, int16_t *addr, int16_t *valuep);
int ddi_peek32(dev_info_t *dip, int32_t *addr, int32_t *valuep);
int ddi_peek64(dev_info_t *dip, int64_t *addr, int64_t *valuep);

**Interface Level**
Solaris DDI specific (Solaris DDI). The ddi.peekc(), ddi_peeks(), ddi.peekl(), and ddi.peekd() functions are obsolete. Use, respectively, ddi_peek8(), ddi_peek16(), ddi_peek32(), and ddi_peek64(), instead.

**Parameters**
- *dip* A pointer to the device’s dev_info structure.
- *addr* Virtual address of the location to be examined.
- *valuep* Pointer to a location to hold the result. If a null pointer is specified, then the value read from the location will simply be discarded.

**Description**
These routines cautiously attempt to read a value from a specified virtual address, and return the value to the caller, using the parent nexus driver to assist in the process where necessary.

If the address is not valid, or the value cannot be read without an error occurring, an error code is returned.

The routines are most useful when first trying to establish the presence of a device on the system in a driver’s probe(9E) or attach(9E) routines.

**Return Values**
- **DDI_SUCCESS** The value at the given virtual address was successfully read, and if *valuep* is non-null, *valuep* will have been updated.
- **DDI_FAILURE** An error occurred while trying to read the location. *valuep* is unchanged.

**Context**
These functions can be called from user, interrupt, or kernel context.

**Examples**
**EXAMPLE 1** Checking to see that the status register of a device is mapped into the kernel address space:

```c
if (ddi.peek8(dip, csr, (int8_t *)0) != DDI_SUCCESS) {
    cmn_err(CE_WARN, "Status register not mapped");
    return (DDI_FAILURE);
}
```
EXAMPLE 2  Reading and logging the device type of a particular device:

```c
int
xx_attach(dev_info_t *dip, ddi_attach_cmd_t cmd)
{
    ...
    /* map device registers */
    ...

    if (ddi_peek32(dip, id_addr, &id_value) != DDI_SUCCESS) {
        cmn_err(CE_WARN, "%s%d: cannot read device identifier",
                ddi_get_name(dip), ddi_get_instance(dip));
        goto failure;
    } else
        cmn_err(CE_CONT, "!%s%d: device type 0x%x
               ",
                ddi_get_name(dip), ddi_get_instance(dip), id_value);
    ...
    ...

    ddi_report_dev(dip);
    return (DDI_SUCCESS);

failure:
    /* free any resources allocated */
    ...
    return (DDI_FAILURE);
}
```

See Also  attach(9E), probe(9E), ddi_poke(9F)

Writing Device Drivers

Notes  The functions described in this manual page previously used symbolic names which specified their data access size; the function names have been changed so they now specify a fixed-width data size. See the following table for the new name equivalents:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Previous Name</th>
<th>New Name</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ddi_peekc</td>
<td>ddi_peek8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ddi_peeks</td>
<td>ddi_peek16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ddi_peekl</td>
<td>ddi_peek32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ddi.peekd</td>
<td>ddi.peek64</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Name  ddi_periodic_add – issue nanosecond periodic timeout requests

Synopsis  
```
#include <sys/dditypes.h>
#include <sys/sunddi.h>

ddi_periodic_t ddi_periodic_add(void (*func)(void *), void arg, hrtime_t interval, int level);
```

Interface Level  Solaris DDI specific (Solaris DDI)

Parameters  
- **func**: The callback function is invoked periodically in the specified interval. If the argument level is zero, the function is invoked in kernel context. Otherwise, it's invoked in interrupt context at the specified level.
- **arg**: The argument passed to the callback function.
- **interval**: Interval time in nanoseconds.
- **level**: Callback interrupt level. If the value is zero, the callback function is invoked in kernel context. If the value is more than zero, but less than or equal to ten, the callback function is invoked in interrupt context at the specified interrupt level, which may be used for real time applications.

This value must be in range of 0-10, which can be either a numeric number, a pre-defined macro (DDI_IPL_0, ..., DDI_IPL_10), or the DDI_INTR_PRI macro with the interrupt priority.

Description  The ddi_periodic_add() function schedules the specified function to be periodically invoked in the nanosecond interval time.

As with timeout(9F), the exact time interval over which the function takes effect cannot be guaranteed, but the value given is a close approximation.

Return Values  ddi_periodic_add() returns the non-zero opaque value (ddi_periodic_t), which might be used for ddi_periodic_delete(9F) to specify the request.

Context  The ddi_periodic_add() function may be called from user or kernel context.

Examples  
**EXAMPLE 1** Using ddi_periodic_add() for a periodic callback function

In the following example, the device driver registers a periodic callback function invoked in kernel context.

```
static void
my_periodic_func(void *arg)
{
    /*
    * This handler is invoked periodically.
    */
    struct my_state *statep = (struct my_state *)arg;
```
EXAMPLE 1  Using ddi_periodic_add() for a periodic callback function  (Continued)

mutex_enter(&statep->lock);
if (load_unbalanced(statep)) {
    balance_tasks(statep);
}
mutex_exit(&statep->lock);
}

static void
start_periodic_timer(struct my_state *statep)
{
    hrtime_t interval = CHECK_INTERVAL;
    mutex_init(&statep->lock, NULL, MUTEX_DRIVER,
        (void *)DDI_IPL_0);
    /*
     * Register my_callback which is invoked periodically
     * in CHECK_INTERVAL in kernel context.
     */
    statep->periodic_id = ddi_periodic_add(my_periodic_func,
        statep, interval, DDI_IPL_0);
}

In the following example, the device driver registers a callback function invoked in interrupt context at level 7.

/*
 * This handler is invoked periodically in interrupt context.
 */
static void
my_periodic_int7_func(void *arg)
{
    struct my_state *statep = (struct my_state *)arg;
    mutex_enter(&statep->lock);
    monitor_device(statep);
    mutex_exit(&statep->lock);
}

static void
start_monitor_device(struct my_state *statep)
{
    hrtime_t interval = MONITOR_INTERVAL;
    mutex_init(&statep->lock, NULL, MUTEX_DRIVER,
        (void *)DDI_IPL_7);
/ * Register the callback function invoked periodically
 * at interrupt level 7.
 */
 statep->periodic_id = ddi_periodic_add(my_periodic_int7_func,
     statep, interval, DDI_IPL_7);
 }

See Also cv_timedwait(9F), ddi_intr_get_pri(9F), ddi_periodic_delete(9F),
ddi_intr_get_softint_pri(9F), delay(9F), drv_uscetohz(9F), qtimeout(9F),
quntimeout(9F), timeout(9F), untimeout(9F)

Notes A caller can only specify an interval in an integral multiple of 10ms. No other values are
supported at this time. The interval specified is a lower bound on the interval on which the
callback occurs.
### Synopsis

```c
#include <sys/dditypes.h>
#include <sys/sunddi.h>

void ddi_periodic_delete(ddi_periodic_t req);
```

### Parameters

- `req` ddi_periodic_t opaque value returned by `ddi_periodic_add(9F)`

### Description

The `ddi_periodic_delete()` function cancels the `ddi_periodic_add(9F)` request that was previously issued.

As with `untimeout(9F)`, calling `ddi_periodic_delete()` against a periodic `timeout` request which is either running on another CPU, or has already been canceled causes no problems. Unlike `untimeout(9F)`, there are no restrictions on the lock which might be held across the call to `ddi_periodic_delete()`.

### Context

The `ddi_periodic_delete()` function may be called from user or kernel context.

### Examples

**EXAMPLE 1**  Cancelling a timeout request

In the following example, the device driver cancels the `timeout` request by calling `ddi_periodic_delete()` against the request that was previously issued.

```c
/*
 * Stop the periodic timer
 */
static void
stop_periodic_timer(struct my_state *statep)
{
    ddi_periodic_delete(statep->periodic_id);
    delay(1); /* wait for one tick */
    mutex_destroy(&statep->lock);
}

static void
start_periodic_timer(struct my_state *statep)
{
    hrtime_t interval = CHECK_INTERVAL;

    mutex_init(&statep->lock, NULL, MUTEX_DRIVER,
               (void *)DDI_IPL_0);

    /*
     * Register my_callback which is invoked periodically
     * in CHECK_INTERVAL in kernel context.
     */
```

---

**ddi_periodic_delete(9F)**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>ddi_periodic_delete – cancel nanosecond periodic timeout requests</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Synopsis</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
```
#include <sys/dditypes.h>
#include <sys/sunddi.h>

void ddi_periodic_delete(ddi_periodic_t req);
```
| Interface Level| Solaris DDI specific (Solaris DDI) |
| Parameters    | `req` ddi_periodic_t opaque value returned by `ddi_periodic_add(9F)` |
| Description   | The `ddi_periodic_delete()` function cancels the `ddi_periodic_add(9F)` request that was previously issued. As with `untimeout(9F)`, calling `ddi_periodic_delete()` against a periodic `timeout` request which is either running on another CPU, or has already been canceled causes no problems. Unlike `untimeout(9F)`, there are no restrictions on the lock which might be held across the call to `ddi_periodic_delete()`.

**Context** The `ddi_periodic_delete()` function may be called from user or kernel context.

**Examples**

**EXAMPLE 1**  Cancelling a timeout request

In the following example, the device driver cancels the `timeout` request by calling `ddi_periodic_delete()` against the request that was previously issued.

```c
/*
 * Stop the periodic timer
 */
static void
stop_periodic_timer(struct my_state *statep)
{
    ddi_periodic_delete(statep->periodic_id);
    delay(1); /* wait for one tick */
    mutex_destroy(&statep->lock);
}

static void
start_periodic_timer(struct my_state *statep)
{
    hrtime_t interval = CHECK_INTERVAL;

    mutex_init(&statep->lock, NULL, MUTEX_DRIVER,
               (void *)DDI_IPL_0);

    /*
     * Register my_callback which is invoked periodically
     * in CHECK_INTERVAL in kernel context.
     */
```
EXAMPLE 1  Cancelling a timeout request  (Continued)

```c
statep->periodic_id = ddi_periodic_add(my_periodic_func,
    statep, interval, DDI_IPL_0);
}

static void
my_periodic_func(void *arg)
{
    /*
    * This handler is invoked periodically.
    */
    struct my_state *statep = (struct my_state *)arg;

    mutex_enter(&statep->lock);
    if (load_unbalanced(statep)) {
        balance_tasks(statep);
    }
    mutex_exit(&statep->lock);
}
```

See Also  `cv_timedwait(9F)`, `ddi_intr_get_pri(9F)`, `ddi_periodic_add(9F)`, `delay(9F)`, `drv_usctohz(9F)`, `qtimeout(9F)`, `quntimeout(9F)`, `timeout(9F)`, `untimeout(9F)`
### ddi_poke(9F)

**Name**
ddi_poke, ddi_poke8, ddi_poke16, ddi_poke32, ddi_poke64, ddi_pokec, ddi_pokes, ddi_pokel, ddi_poked – write a value to a location

**Synopsis**
```
#include <sys/ddi.h>
#include <sys/sunddi.h>

int ddi_poke8(dev_info_t *dip, int8_t *addr, int8_t value);
int ddi_poke16(dev_info_t *dip, int16_t *addr, int16_t value);
int ddi_poke32(dev_info_t *dip, int32_t *addr, int32_t value);
int ddi_poke64(dev_info_t *dip, int64_t *addr, int64_t value);
```

**Interface Level**
Solaris DDI specific (Solaris DDI). The ddi_pokec(), ddi_pokes(), ddi_pokel(), and ddi_poked() functions are obsolete. Use, respectively, ddi_poke8(), ddi_poke16(), ddi_poke32(), and ddi_poke64(), instead.

**Parameters**
- **dip** A pointer to the device's dev_info structure.
- **addr** Virtual address of the location to be written to.
- **value** Value to be written to the location.

**Description**
These routines cautiously attempt to write a value to a specified virtual address, using the parent nexus driver to assist in the process where necessary.

If the address is not valid, or the value cannot be written without an error occurring, an error code is returned.

These routines are most useful when first trying to establish the presence of a given device on the system in a driver's probe(9E) or attach(9E) routines.

On multiprocessing machines these routines can be extremely heavy-weight, so use the ddi_peek(9F) routines instead if possible.

**Return Values**
- **DDI_SUCCESS** The value was successfully written to the given virtual address.
- **DDI_FAILURE** An error occurred while trying to write to the location.

**Context**
These functions can be called from user, interrupt, or kernel context.

**See Also**
attach(9E), probe(9E), ddi_peek(9F)

Writing Device Drivers

**Notes**
The functions described in this manual page previously used symbolic names which specified their data access size; the function names have been changed so they now specify a fixed-width data size. See the following table for the new name equivalents:
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Previous Name</th>
<th>New Name</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ddi_pokec</td>
<td>ddi_poke8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ddi_pokes</td>
<td>ddi_poke16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ddi_poke1</td>
<td>ddi_poke32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ddi_poked</td>
<td>ddi_poke64</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**ddi_prop_create(9F)**

**Name**
ddi_prop_create, ddi_prop_modfiy, ddi_prop_remove, ddi_prop_remove_all, ddi_prop_undefine – create, remove, or modify properties for leaf device drivers

**Synopsis**

```c
#include <sys/conf.h>
#include <sys/ddi.h>
#include <sys/sunddi.h>

int ddi_prop_create(dev_t dev, dev_info_t *dip, int flags, char *name, caddr_t valuep, int length);
int ddi_prop_undefine(dev_t dev, dev_info_t *dip, int flags, char *name);
int ddi_prop_modify(dev_t dev, dev_info_t *dip, int flags, char *name, caddr_t valuep, int length);
int ddi_prop_remove(dev_t dev, dev_info_t *dip, char *name);
void ddi_prop_remove_all(dev_info_t *dip);
```

**Interface Level**

Solaris DDI specific (Solaris DDI). The ddi_prop_create() and ddi_prop_modify() functions are obsolete. Use ddi_prop_update(9F) instead of these functions.

**Parameters**

**ddi_prop_create()**

- **dev**
  - dev_t of the device.
- **dip**
  - dev_info_t pointer of the device.
- **flags**
  - flag modifiers. The only possible flag value is DDI_PROP_CANSLEEP: Memory allocation may sleep.
- **name**
  - name of property.
- **valuep**
  - pointer to property value.
- **length**
  - property length.

**ddi_prop_undefine()**

- **dev**
  - dev_t of the device.
- **dip**
  - dev_info_t pointer of the device.
- **flags**
  - flag modifiers. The only possible flag value is DDI_PROP_CANSLEEP: Memory allocation may sleep.
- **name**
  - name of property.

**ddi_prop_modify()**

- **dev**
  - dev_t of the device.
- **dip**
  - dev_info_t pointer of the device.
flags  flag modifiers. The only possible flag value is DDI_PROP_CANSLEEP: Memory allocation may sleep.
name  name of property.
valuep pointer to property value.
length property length.

ddi_prop_remove()

dev  dev_t of the device.
dip  dev_info_t pointer of the device.
name  name of property.

ddi_prop_remove_all()

dip  dev_info_t pointer of the device.

**Description**
Device drivers have the ability to create and manage their own properties as well as gain access to properties that the system creates on behalf of the driver. A driver uses `ddi_getproplen(9F)` to query whether or not a specific property exists.

Property creation is done by creating a new property definition in the driver's property list associated with `dip`.

Property definitions are stacked; they are added to the beginning of the driver's property list when created. Thus, when searched for, the most recent matching property definition will be found and its value will be return to the caller.

The individual functions are described as follows:

`ddi_prop_create()` adds a property to the device's property list. If the property is not associated with any particular `dev` but is associated with the physical device itself, then the argument `dev` should be the special device DDI_DEV_T_NONE. If you do not have a `dev` for your device (for example during `attach(9E)` time), you can create one using `makedevice(9F)` with a major number of DDI_MAJOR_T_UNKNOWN. `ddi_prop_create()` will then make the correct `dev` for your device.

For boolean properties, you must set `length` to 0. For all other properties, the `length` argument must be set to the number of bytes used by the data structure representing the property being created.
Note that creating a property involves allocating memory for the property list, the property name and the property value. If flags does not contain DDI_PROP_CANSLEEP, ddi_prop_create() returns DDI_PROP_NO_MEMORY on memory allocation failure or DDI_PROP_SUCCESS if the allocation succeeded. If DDI_PROP_CANSLEEP was set, the caller may sleep until memory becomes available.

**ddi_prop_undefine()**

**ddi_prop_undefine()** is a special case of property creation where the value of the property is set to undefined. This property has the effect of terminating a property search at the current devinfo node, rather than allowing the search to proceed up to ancestor devinfo nodes. However, ddi_prop_undefine() will not terminate a search when the ddi_prop_get_int(9F) or ddi_prop_lookup(9F) routines are used for lookup of 64-bit property value. See ddi_prop_op(9F).

Note that undefining properties does involve memory allocation, and therefore, is subject to the same memory allocation constraints as ddi_prop_create().

**ddi_prop_modify()**

**ddi_prop_modify()** modifies the length and the value of a property. If ddi_prop_modify() finds the property in the driver's property list, allocates memory for the property value and returns DDI_PROP_SUCCESS. If the property was not found, the function returns DDI_PROP_NOT_FOUND.

Note that modifying properties does involve memory allocation, and therefore, is subject to the same memory allocation constraints as ddi_prop_create().

**ddi_prop_remove()**

**ddi_prop_remove()** unlinks a property from the device's property list. If ddi_prop_remove() finds the property (an exact match of both name and dev), it unlinks the property, frees its memory, and returns DDI_PROP_SUCCESS, otherwise, it returns DDI_PROP_NOT_FOUND.

**ddi_prop_remove_all()**

**ddi_prop_remove_all()** removes the properties of all the dev_t's associated with the dip. It is called before unloading a driver.

**Return Values**

The ddi_prop_create() function returns the following values:

- **DDI_PROP_SUCCESS** On success.
- **DDI_PROP_NO_MEMORY** On memory allocation failure.
If an attempt is made to create a property with `dev` equal to `DDI_DEV_T_ANY` or if `name` is `NULL` or `name` is the NULL string.

The `ddi_prop_undefine()` function returns the following values:

- **DDI_PROP_SUCCESS** (On success).
- **DDI_PROP_NO_MEMORY** (On memory allocation failure).
- **DDI_PROP_INVAL_ARG** (If an attempt is made to create a property with `dev` equal to `DDI_DEV_T_ANY` or if `name` is `NULL` or `name` is the NULL string).

The `ddi_prop_modify()` function returns the following values:

- **DDI_PROP_SUCCESS** (On success).
- **DDI_PROP_NO_MEMORY** (On memory allocation failure).
- **DDI_PROP_INVAL_ARG** (If an attempt is made to create a property with `dev` equal to `DDI_DEV_T_ANY` or if `name` is `NULL` or `name` is the NULL string).
- **DDI_PROP_NOT_FOUND** (On property search failure).

The `ddi_prop_remove()` function returns the following values:

- **DDI_PROP_SUCCESS** (On success).
- **DDI_PROP_INVAL_ARG** (If an attempt is made to create a property with `dev` equal to `DDI_DEV_T_ANY` or if `name` is `NULL` or `name` is the NULL string).
- **DDI_PROP_NOT_FOUND** (On property search failure).

**Context**

If `DDI_PROP_CANSLEEP` is set, these functions cannot be called from interrupt context. Otherwise, they can be called from user, interrupt, or kernel context.

**Examples**

**Example 1**  Creating a Property

The following example creates a property called `nblocks` for each partition on a disk.

```c
int propval = 8192;

for (minor = 0; minor < 8; minor++) {
    (void) ddi_prop_create(makedevice(ddi_major_t_unknown, minor),
        dev, DDI_PROP_CANSLEEP, "nblocks", (caddr_t *)&propval,
        sizeof (int));
    ...
}
```

**Attributes**  See `attributes(5)` for a description of the following attributes:
See Also  

See Also  

driver.conf(4), attributes(5), attach(9E), ddi_getproplen(9F), ddi_prop_op(9F),
ddi_prop_update(9F), makedevice(9F)
ddi_prop_exists(9F)

Name  ddi_prop_exists – check for the existence of a property

Synopsis  #include <sys/ddi.h>
#include <sys/sunddi.h>

    int ddi_prop_exists(dev_t match_dev, dev_info_t *dip, uint_t flags,
                        char *name);

Interface Level  Solaris DDI specific (Solaris DDI).

Parameters  

    match_dev  Device number associated with property or DDI_DEV_T_ANY.
    dip        Pointer to the device info node of device whose property list should be searched.
    flags      Possible flag values are some combination of:

                    DDI_PROP_DONTPASS  Do not pass request to parent device information node if the property is not found.
                    DDI_PROP_NOTPROM  Do not look at PROM properties (ignored on platforms that do not support PROM properties).
    name       String containing the name of the property.

Description  ddi_prop_exists() checks for the existence of a property regardless of the property value data type.

Properties are searched for based on the dip, name, and match_dev. The property search order is as follows:
1. Search software properties created by the driver.
2. Search the software properties created by the system (or nexus nodes in the device info tree).
3. Search the driver global properties list.
4. If DDI_PROP_NOTPROM is not set, search the PROM properties (if they exist).
5. If DDI_PROP_DONTPASS is not set, pass this request to the parent device information node.
6. Return 0 if not found and 1 if found.

Usually, the match_dev argument should be set to the actual device number that this property is associated with. However, if the match_dev argument is DDI_DEV_T_ANY, then ddi_prop_exists() will match the request regardless of the match_dev the property was created with. That is the first property whose name matches name will be returned. If a property was created with match_dev set to DDI_DEV_T_NONE then the only way to look up this property is with a match_dev set to DDI_DEV_T_ANY. PROM properties are always created with match_dev set to DDI_DEV_T_NONE.
name must always be set to the name of the property being looked up.

**Return Values**  
ddi_prop_exists() returns 1 if the property exists and 0 otherwise.

**Context**  
These functions can be called from user or kernel context.

**Examples**  
**EXAMPLE 1**: Using ddi_prop_exists()

The following example demonstrates the use of ddi_prop_exists().

```c
/*
  * Enable "whizzy" mode if the "whizzy-mode" property exists
  */
  if (ddi_prop_exists(xx_dev, xx_dip, DDI_PROP_NOTPROM,
                      "whizzy-mode") == 1) {
    xx_enable_whizzy_mode(xx_dip);
  } else {
    xx_disable_whizzy_mode(xx_dip);
  }
```

**See Also**  
ddi_prop_get_int(9F), ddi_prop_lookup(9F), ddi_prop_remove(9F),
ddi_prop_update(9F)

*Writing Device Drivers*
#include <sys/ddi.h>
#include <sys/sunddi.h>

int ddi_prop_get_int(dev_t match_dev, dev_info_t *dip, uint_t flags, char *name, int defvalue);

int64_t ddi_prop_get_int64(dev_t match_dev, dev_info_t *dip, uint_t flags, char *name, int64_t defvalue);

match_dev  Device number associated with property or DDI_DEV_T_ANY.
dip        Pointer to the device info node of device whose property list should be searched.
flags      Possible flag values are some combination of:
            DDI_PROP_DONTPASS  Do not pass request to parent device information node if property not found.
            DDI_PROP_NOTPROM  Do not look at PROM properties (ignored on platforms that do not support PROM properties).
name       String containing the name of the property.
defvalue   An integer value that is returned if the property cannot be found.

The ddi_prop_get_int() and ddi_prop_get_int64() functions search for an integer property and, if found, returns the value of the property.

Properties are searched for based on the dip, name, match_dev, and the type of the data (integer).

The property search order is as follows:
1. Search software properties created by the driver.
2. Search the software properties created by the system (or nexus nodes in the device info tree).
3. Search the driver global properties list.
4. If DDI_PROP_NOTPROM is not set, search the PROM properties (if they exist).
5. If DDI_PROP_DONTPASS is not set, pass this request to the parent device information node.
6. Return defvalue.

Usually, the match_dev argument should be set to the actual device number that this property is associated with. However, if the match_dev argument is DDI_DEV_T_ANY, then ddi_prop_get_int() and ddi_prop_get_int64() will match the request regardless of the
match_dev the property was created with. If a property was created with match_dev set to
DDI_DEV_T_NONE, then the only way to look up this property is with a match_dev set to
DDI_DEV_T_ANY. PROM properties are always created with match_dev set to
DDI_DEV_T_NONE.

name must always be set to the name of the property being looked up.

The return value of the routine is the value of the property. If the property is not found, the
argument defvalue is returned as the value of the property.

ddi_prop_get_int64() will not search the PROM for 64-bit property values.

Return Values  ddi_prop_get_int() and ddi_prop_get_int64() return the value of the property. If the
property is not found, the argument defvalue is returned. If the property is found, but cannot
be decoded into an int or an int64, then DDI_PROP_NOT_FOUND is returned.

Context  ddi_prop_get_int() and ddi_prop_get_int64() can be called from user or kernel context.

Examples  EXAMPLE 1  Using ddi_prop_get_int()

The following example demonstrates the use of ddi_prop_get_int().

/*
   * Get the value of the integer "width" property, using
   * our own default if no such property exists
   */
   width = ddi_prop_get_int(xx_dev, xx_dip, 0, "width",
    XX_DEFAULT_WIDTH);

See Also  ddi_prop_exists(9F), ddi_prop_lookup(9F), ddi_prop_remove(9F), ddi_prop_update(9F)

Writing Device Drivers
**Name**
ddi_prop_lookup, ddi_prop_lookup_int_array, ddi_prop_lookup_int64_array,
ddi_prop_lookup_string_array, ddi_prop_lookup_string, ddi_prop_lookup_byte_array,
ddi_prop_free – look up property information

**Synopsis**
#include <sys/ddi.h>
#include <sys/sunddi.h>

```c
int ddi_prop_lookup_int_array(dev_t match_dev, dev_info_t *dip, uint_t flags,
   char *name, int **datap, uint_t *nelementsp);

int ddi_prop_lookup_int64_array(dev_t match_dev, dev_info_t *dip, uint_t flags,
   char *name, int64_t **datap, uint_t *nelementsp);

int ddi_prop_lookup_string_array(dev_t match_dev, dev_info_t *dip,
   uint_t flags, char *name, char ***datap, uint_t *nelementsp);

int ddi_prop_lookup_string(dev_t match_dev, dev_info_t *dip, uint_t flags,
   char *name, char **datap);

int ddi_prop_lookup_byte_array(dev_t match_dev, dev_info_t *dip, uint_t flags,
   char *name, uchar_t **datap, uint_t *nelementsp);

void ddi_prop_free(void *data);
```

**Parameters**

- **match_dev**
  Device number associated with property or DDI_DEV_T_ANY.

- **dip**
  Pointer to the device info node of device whose property list should be searched.

- **flags**
  Possible flag values are some combination of:
  - **DDI_PROP_DONTPASS**
    Do not pass request to parent device information node if the property is not found.
  - **DDI_PROP_NOTPROM**
    Do not look at PROM properties (ignored on platforms that do not support PROM properties).

- **name**
  String containing the name of the property.

- **nelementsp**
  The address of an unsigned integer which, upon successful return, will contain the number of elements accounted for in the memory pointed at by **datap**. The elements are either integers, strings or bytes depending on the interface used.

- **datap**
  The address of a pointer to an array of integers which, upon successful
return, will point to memory containing the integer array property value.

**ddi_prop_lookup_int64_array()**  
The address of a pointer to an array of 64-bit integers which, upon successful return, will point to memory containing the integer array property value.

**ddi_prop_lookup_string_array()**  
The address of a pointer to an array of strings which, upon successful return, will point to memory containing the array of strings. The array of strings is formatted as an array of pointers to NULL terminated strings, much like the `argv` argument to `execve(2)`.

**ddi_prop_lookup_string()**  
The address of a pointer to a string which, upon successful return, will point to memory containing the NULL terminated string value of the property.

**ddi_prop_lookup_byte_array()**  
The address of pointer to an array of bytes which, upon successful return, will point to memory containing the byte array value of the property.

**Interface Level**  
Solaris DDI specific (Solaris DDI).

**Description**  
The property look up routines search for and, if found, return the value of a given property. Properties are searched for based on the `dip`, `name`, `match_dev`, and the type of the data (integer, string, or byte). The property search order is as follows:

1. Search software properties created by the driver.
2. Search the software properties created by the system (or nexus nodes in the device info tree).
3. Search the driver global properties list.
4. If `DDI_PROP_NOTPROM` is not set, search the PROM properties (if they exist).
5. If `DDI_PROP_DONTPASS` is not set, pass this request to the parent device information node.
6. Return `DDI_PROP_NOT_FOUND`.
Usually, the `match_dev` argument should be set to the actual device number that this property is associated with. However, if the `match_dev` argument is `DDI_DEV_T_ANY`, the property look up routines will match the request regardless of the actual `match_dev` the property was created with. If a property was created with `match_dev` set to `DDI_DEV_T_NONE`, then the only way to look up this property is with a `match_dev` set to `DDI_DEV_T_ANY`. PROM properties are always created with `match_dev` set to `DDI_DEV_T_NONE`.

`name` must always be set to the name of the property being looked up.

For the routines `ddi_prop_lookup_int_array()`, `ddi_prop_lookup_int64_array()`, `ddi_prop_lookup_string_array()`, `ddi_prop_lookup_string()`, and `ddi_prop_lookup_byte_array()`, `datap` is the address of a pointer which, upon successful return, will point to memory containing the value of the property. In each case `*datap` points to a different type of property value. See the individual descriptions of the routines below for details on the different return values. `nelements` is the address of an unsigned integer which, upon successful return, will contain the number of integer, string or byte elements accounted for in the memory pointed at by `*datap`.

All of the property look up routines may block to allocate memory needed to hold the value of the property.

When a driver has obtained a property with any look up routine and is finished with that property, it must be freed by calling `ddi_prop_free()`. `ddi_prop_free()` must be called with the address of the allocated property. For instance, if one called `ddi_prop_lookup_int_array()` with `datap` set to the address of a pointer to an integer, `&my_int_ptr`, then the companion free call would be `ddi_prop_free(my_int_ptr)`.

### `ddi_prop_lookup_int_array()`
This routine searches for and returns an array of integer property values. An array of integers is defined to `*nelements` number of 4 byte long integer elements. `datap` should be set to the address of a pointer to an array of integers which, upon successful return, will point to memory containing the integer array value of the property.

### `ddi_prop_lookup_int64_array()`
This routine searches for and returns an array of 64-bit integer property values. The array is defined to be `*nelements` number of `int64_t` elements. `datap` should be set to the address of a pointer to an array of `int64_t`'s which, upon successful return, will point to memory containing the integer array value of the property. This routine will not search the PROM for 64-bit property values.

### `ddi_prop_lookup_string_array()`
This routine searches for and returns a property that is an array of strings. `datap` should be set to address
of a pointer to an array of strings which, upon successful return, will point to memory containing the array of strings. The array of strings is formatted as an array of pointers to null-terminated strings, much like the `argv` argument to `execve(2)`.

**ddi_prop_lookup_string()**
This routine searches for and returns a property that is a null-terminated string. `datap` should be set to the address of a pointer to string which, upon successful return, will point to memory containing the string value of the property.

**ddi_prop_lookup_byte_array()**
This routine searches for and returns a property that is an array of bytes. `datap` should be set to the address of a pointer to an array of bytes which, upon successful return, will point to memory containing the byte array value of the property.

**ddi_prop_free()**
Frees the resources associated with a property previously allocated using
- `ddi_prop_lookup_int_array()`,
- `ddi_prop_lookup_int64_array()`,
- `ddi_prop_lookup_string_array()`,
- `ddi_prop_lookup_string()`, or
- `ddi_prop_lookup_byte_array()`.

**Return Values**
The functions `ddi_prop_lookup_int_array()`, `ddi_prop_lookup_int64_array()`,
- `ddi_prop_lookup_string_array()`, `ddi_prop_lookup_string()`, and
- `ddi_prop_lookup_byte_array()` return the following values:

- **DDI_PROP_SUCCESS** Upon success.
- **DDI_PROP_INVAL_ARG** If an attempt is made to look up a property with `match_dev` equal to `DDI_DEV_T_NONE`, `name` is `NULL` or `name` is the null string.
- **DDI_PROP_NOT_FOUND** Property not found.
- **DDI_PROP_UNDEFINED** Property explicitly not defined (see `ddi_prop_undefine(9F)`).
- **DDI_PROP_CANNOT_DECODE** The value of the property cannot be decoded.

**Context**
These functions can be called from user or kernel context.

**Examples**
**EXAMPLE 1** Using `ddi_prop_lookup_int_array()`
The following example demonstrates the use of `ddi_prop_lookup_int_array()`.
EXAMPLE 1 Using ddi_prop_lookup_int_array() (Continued)

```c
int *options;
int noptions;

/*
 * Get the data associated with the integer "options" property
 * array, along with the number of option integers
 */
if (ddi_prop_lookup_int_array(DDI_DEV_T_ANY, xx_dip, 0, "options", &options, &noptions) == DDI_PROP_SUCCESS) {
    /*
    * Do "our thing" with the options data from the property
    */
    xx_process_options(options, noptions);

    /*
    * Free the memory allocated for the property data
    */
    ddi_prop_free(options);
}
```

See Also execve(2), ddi_prop_exists(9F), ddi_prop_get_int(9F), ddi_prop_remove(9F), ddi_prop_undefine(9F), ddi_prop_update(9F)

Writing Device Drivers
ddi_prop_op(9F)

Name  ddi_prop_op, ddi_getprop, ddi_getlongprop, ddi_getlongprop_buf, ddi_getproplen – get property information for leaf device drivers

Synopsis  #include <sys/types.h>
#include <sys/ddi.h>
#include <sys/sunddi.h>

int ddi_prop_op(dev_t dev, dev_info_t *dip, ddi_prop_op_t prop_op, int flags, char *name, caddr_t valuep, int *lengthp);
int ddi_getprop(dev_t dev, dev_info_t *dip, int flags, char *name, int defvalue);
int ddi_getlongprop(dev_t dev, dev_info_t *dip, int flags, char *name, caddr_t valuep, int *lengthp);
int ddi_getlongprop_buf(dev_t dev, dev_info_t *dip, int flags, char *name, caddr_t valuep, int *lengthp);
int ddi_getproplen(dev_t dev, dev_info_t *dip, int flags, char *name, int *lengthp);

Interface Level  Solaris DDI specific (Solaris DDI). The ddi_getlongprop(), ddi_getlongprop_buf(), ddi_getprop(), and ddi_getproplen() functions are obsolete. Use ddi_prop_lookup(9F) instead of ddi_getlongprop(), ddi_getlongprop_buf(), and ddi_getproplen(). Use ddi_prop_get_int(9F) instead of ddi_getprop()

Parameters  

dev  Device number associated with property or DDI_DEV_T_ANY as the wildcard device number.

dip  Pointer to a device info node.

prop_op  Property operator.

flags  Possible flag values are some combination of:

DDI_PROP_DONTPASS  do not pass request to parent device information node if property not found

DDI_PROP_CANSLEEP  the routine may sleep while allocating memory

DDI_PROP_NOTPROM  do not look at PROM properties (ignored on architectures that do not support PROM properties)

name  String containing the name of the property.

valuep  If prop_op is PROP_LEN_AND_VAL_BU, this should be a pointer to the users buffer. If prop_op is PROP_LEN_AND_VAL_ALLOC, this should be the address of a pointer.
lengthp

On exit, *lengthp will contain the property length. If prop_op is PROP_LEN_AND_VAL_BUF then before calling ddi_prop_op(), lengthp should point to an int that contains the length of callers buffer.

defvalue

The value that ddi_getprop() returns if the property is not found.

Description

The ddi_prop_op() function gets arbitrary-size properties for leaf devices. The routine searches the device's property list. If it does not find the property at the device level, it examines the flags argument, and if DDI_PROP_DONTPASS is set, then ddi_prop_op() returns DDIPROP_NOT_FOUND. Otherwise, it passes the request to the next level of the device info tree. If it does find the property, but the property has been explicitly undefined, it returns DDIPROP_UNDEFINED. Otherwise it returns either the property length, or both the length and value of the property to the caller via the valuep and lengthp pointers, depending on the value of prop_op, as described below, and returns DDIPROP_SUCCESS. If a property cannot be found at all, DDIPROP_NOT_FOUND is returned.

Usually, the dev argument should be set to the actual device number that this property applies to. However, if the dev argument is DDI_DEV_T_ANY, the wildcard dev, then ddi_prop_op() will match the request based on name only (regardless of the actual dev the property was created with). This property/dev match is done according to the property search order which is to first search software properties created by the driver in last-in, first-out (LIFO) order, next search software properties created by the system in LIFO order, then search PROM properties if they exist in the system architecture.

Property operations are specified by the prop_op argument. If prop_op is PROP_LEN, then ddi_prop_op() just sets the callers length, *lengthp, to the property length and returns the value DDIPROP_SUCCESS to the caller. The valuep argument is not used in this case. Property lengths are 0 for boolean properties, sizeof (int) for integer properties, and size in bytes for long (variable size) properties.

If prop_op is PROP_LEN_AND_VAL_BUF, then valuep should be a pointer to a user-supplied buffer whose length should be given in *lengthp by the caller. If the requested property exists, ddi_prop_op() first sets *lengthp to the property length. It then examines the size of the buffer supplied by the caller, and if it is large enough, copies the property value into that buffer, and returns DDIPROP_SUCCESS. If the named property exists but the buffer supplied is too small to hold it, it returns DDIPROP_BUFFER_TOO_SMALL.

If prop_op is PROP_LEN_AND_VAL_ALLOC, and the property is found, ddi_prop_op() sets *lengthp to the property length. It then attempts to allocate a buffer to return to the caller using the kmem_alloc(9F) routine, so that memory can be later recycled using kmem_free(9F). The driver is expected to call kmem_free() with the returned address and size when it is done using the allocated buffer. If the allocation is successful, it sets *valuep to point to the allocated buffer, copies the property value into the buffer and returns DDIPROP_SUCCESS. Otherwise, it returns DDIPROP_NO_MEMORY. Note that the flags argument may affect the behavior of
memory allocation in ddi_prop_op(). In particular, if DDI_PROP_CANSLEEP is set, then the routine will wait until memory is available to copy the requested property.

The ddi_getprop() function returns boolean and integer-size properties. It is a convenience wrapper for ddi_prop_op() with prop_op set to PROP_LEN_AND_VAL_BUF, and the buffer is provided by the wrapper. By convention, this function returns a 1 for boolean (zero-length) properties.

The ddi_getlongprop() function returns arbitrary-size properties. It is a convenience wrapper for ddi_prop_op() with prop_op set to PROP_LEN_AND=val_alloc, so that the routine will allocate space to hold the buffer that will be returned to the caller via *valuep.

The ddi_getlongprop_buf() function returns arbitrary-size properties. It is a convenience wrapper for ddi_prop_op() with prop_op set to PROP_LEN_AND_VAL_BUF so the user must supply a buffer.

The ddi_getproplen() function returns the length of a given property. It is a convenience wrapper for ddi_prop_op() with prop_op set to PROP_LEN.

**Return Values**

The ddi_prop_op(), ddi_getlongprop(), ddi_getlongprop_buf(), and ddi_getproplen() functions return:

- **DDI_PROP_SUCCESS**: Property found and returned.
- **DDI_PROP_NOT_FOUND**: Property not found.
- **DDI_PROP_UNDEFINED**: Property already explicitly undefined.
- **DDI_PROP_NO_MEMORY**: Property found, but unable to allocate memory. lengthp points to the correct property length.
- **DDI_PROP_BUF_TOO_SMALL**: Property found, but the supplied buffer is too small. lengthp points to the correct property length.

The ddi_getprop() function returns:

The value of the property or the value passed into the routine as defvalue if the property is not found. By convention, the value of zero length properties (boolean properties) are returned as the integer value 1.

**Context**

These functions can be called from user, interrupt, or kernel context, provided DDI_PROP_CANSLEEP is not set; if it is set, they cannot be called from interrupt context.

**Attributes**

See attributes(5) for a description of the following attributes:
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ATTRIBUTE TYPE</th>
<th>ATTRIBUTE VALUE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Stability Level</td>
<td>ddi_getlongprop(), ddi_getlongprop_buf(), ddi_getprop(), and ddi_getproplen() functions are Obsolete</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

See Also attributes(5), ddi_prop_create(9F), ddi_prop_get_int(9F), ddi_prop_lookup(9F), kmem_alloc(9F), kmem_free(9F)

Writing Device Drivers
Synopsis
#include <sys/ddi.h>
#include <sys/sunddi.h>

int ddi_prop_update_int_array(dev_t dev, dev_info_t *dip, char *name, int *data, uint_t nelements);
int ddi_prop_update_int(dev_t dev, dev_info_t *dip, char *name, int data);
int ddi_prop_update_int64_array(dev_t dev, dev_info_t *dip, char *name, int64_t *data, uint_t nelements);
int ddi_prop_update_int64(dev_t dev, dev_info_t *dip, char *name, int64_t data);
int ddi_prop_update_string_array(dev_t dev, dev_info_t *dip, char *name, char **data, uint_t nelements);
int ddi_prop_update_string(dev_t dev, dev_info_t *dip, char *name, char *data);
int ddi_prop_update_byte_array(dev_t dev, dev_info_t *dip, char *name, uchar_t *data, uint_t nelements);

Parameters

**dev**  
Device number associated with the device.

**dip**  
Pointer to the device info node of device whose property list should be updated.

**name**  
String containing the name of the property to be updated.

**nelements**  
The number of elements contained in the memory pointed at by **data**.

ddi_prop_update_int_array()

data  
A pointer an integer array with which to update the property.

ddi_prop_update_int()

data  
An integer value with which to update the property.

ddi_prop_update_int64_array()

data  
An pointer to a 64-bit integer array with which to update the property.

ddi_prop_update_int64()

data  
A 64-bit integer value with which to update the property.
ddi_prop_update_string_array()

- **data**: A pointer to a string array with which to update the property. The array of strings is formatted as an array of pointers to NULL terminated strings, much like the `argv` argument to `execve(2)`.

ddi_prop_update_string()

- **data**: A pointer to a string value with which to update the property.

ddi_prop_update_byte_array()

- **data**: A pointer to a byte array with which to update the property.

**Interface Level**: Solaris DDI specific (Solaris DDI).

**Description**: The property update routines search for and, if found, modify the value of a given property. Properties are searched for based on the `dip`, `name`, `dev`, and the type of the data (integer, string, or byte). The driver software properties list is searched. If the property is found, it is updated with the supplied value. If the property is not found on this list, a new property is created with the value supplied. For example, if a driver attempts to update the "foo" property, a property named "foo" is searched for on the driver's software property list. If "foo" is found, the value is updated. If "foo" is not found, a new property named "foo" is created on the driver's software property list with the supplied value even if a "foo" property exists on another property list (such as a PROM property list).

Every property value has a data type associated with it: byte, integer, or string. A property should be updated using a function with the same corresponding data type as the property value. For example, an integer property must be updated using either `ddi_prop_update_int_array()` or `ddi_prop_update_int()`. For a 64-bit integer, you must use `ddi_prop_update_int64_array()` or `ddi_prop_update_int64()`. Attempts to update a property with a function that does not correspond to the property data type that was used to create it results in an undefined state.

Usually, the `dev` argument should be set to the actual device number that this property is associated with. If the property is not associated with any particular `dev`, then the argument `dev` should be set to `DDI_DEV_T_NONE`. This property will then match a look up request (see `ddi_prop_lookup(9F)`) with the `match_dev` argument set to `DDI_DEV_T_ANY`. If no `dev` is available for the device (for example during `attach(9E)` time), one can be created using `makedevice(9F)` with a major number of `DDI_MAJOR_T_UNKNOWN`. The update routines will then generate the correct `dev` when creating or updating the property.

- **name**: Must always be set to the name of the property being updated.

For the routines `ddi_prop_update_int_array()`, `ddi_prop_lookup_int64_array()`, `ddi_prop_update_string_array()`, `ddi_prop_update_string()`, and `ddi_prop_update_byte_array()`, `data` is a pointer which points to memory containing the
value of the property. In each case *data points to a different type of property value. See the
d individual descriptions of the routines below for details concerning the different values.
nelements is an unsigned integer which contains the number of integer, string, or byte
elements accounted for in the memory pointed at by *data.

For the routines ddi_prop_update_int() and ddi_prop_update_int64(), data is the new
value of the property.

ddi_prop_update_int_array()

Updates or creates an array of integer property values. An array of integers is defined to be
nelements of 4 byte long integer elements. data must be a pointer to an integer array with
which to update the property.

ddi_prop_update_int()

Update or creates a single integer value of a property. data must be an integer value with
which to update the property.

ddi_prop_update_int64_array()

Updates or creates an array of 64-bit integer property values. An array of integers is defined to be
nelements of int64_t integer elements. data must be a pointer to a 64-bit integer array
with which to update the property.

ddi_prop_update_int64()

Updates or creates a single 64-bit integer value of a property. data must be an int64_t value
with which to update the property.

ddi_prop_update_string_array()

Updates or creates a property that is an array of strings. data must be a pointer to a string array
with which to update the property. The array of strings is formatted as an array of pointers to
NULL terminated strings, much like the argv argument to execve(2).

ddi_prop_update_string()

Updates or creates a property that is a single string value. data must be a pointer to a string
with which to update the property.

ddi_prop_update_byte_array()

Updates or creates a property that is an array of bytes. data should be a pointer to a byte array
with which to update the property.
The property update routines may block to allocate memory needed to hold the value of the property.

**Return Values** All of the property update routines return:

- **DDI_PROP_SUCCESS** On success.
- **DDI_PROP_INVAL_ARG** If an attempt is made to update a property with `name` set to `NULL` or `name` set to the null string.
- **DDI_PROP_CANNOT_ENCODE** If the bytes of the property cannot be encoded.

**Context** These functions can only be called from user or kernel context.

**Examples**

**Example 1** Updating Properties

The following example demonstrates the use of `ddi_prop_update_int_array()`.

```c
int options[4];

/*
 * Create the "options" integer array with
 * our default values for these parameters
 */
options[0] = XX_OPTIONS0;
options[1] = XX_OPTIONS1;
options[2] = XX_OPTIONS2;
options[3] = XX_OPTIONS3;
i = ddi_prop_update_int_array(xx_dev, xx_dip, "options",
    &options, sizeof (options) / sizeof (int));
```

See Also `execve(2), attach(9E), ddi_prop_lookup(9F), ddi_prop_remove(9F), makedevice(9F)`

*Writing Device Drivers*
**ddi_put8**, **ddi_put16**, **ddi_put32**, **ddi_put64**, **ddi_putb**, **ddi_putl**, **ddi_putll**, **ddi_putw** – write data to the mapped memory address, device register or allocated DMA memory address

```c
#include <sys/ddi.h>
#include <sys/sunddi.h>

void ddi_put8(ddi_acc_handle_t handle, uint8_t *dev_addr, uint8_t value);
void ddi_put16(ddi_acc_handle_t handle, uint16_t *dev_addr, uint16_t value);
void ddi_put32(ddi_acc_handle_t handle, uint32_t *dev_addr, uint32_t value);
void ddi_put64(ddi_acc_handle_t handle, uint64_t *dev_addr, uint64_t value);
```

**Solaris DDI** specific (Solaris DDI).

**Parameters**

- `handle` The data access handle returned from setup calls, such as `ddi_regs_map_setup(9F)`.
- `value` The data to be written to the device.
- `dev_addr` Base device address.

**Description**

These routines generate a write of various sizes to the mapped memory or device register. The `ddi_put8()`, `ddi_put16()`, `ddi_put32()`, and `ddi_put64()` functions write 8 bits, 16 bits, 32 bits and 64 bits of data, respectively, to the device address, `dev_addr`.

Each individual datum will automatically be translated to maintain a consistent view between the host and the device based on the encoded information in the data access handle. The translation may involve byte-swapping if the host and the device have incompatible endian characteristics.

For certain bus types, you can call these DDI functions from a high-interrupt context. These types include ISA and SBus buses. See `sysbus(4)`, `isa(4)`, and `sbus(4)` for details. For the PCI bus, you can, under certain conditions, call these DDI functions from a high-interrupt context. See `pci(4)`.

**Context**

These functions can be called from user, kernel, or interrupt context.

**See Also**

`ddi_get8(9F)` , `ddi_regs_map_free(9F)` , `ddi_regs_map_setup(9F)` , `ddi_rep_get8(9F)` ,
`ddi_rep_put8(9F)` , `ddi_device_acc_attr(9S)`

**Notes**

The functions described in this manual page previously used symbolic names which specified their data access size; the function names have been changed so they now specify a fixed-width data size. See the following table for the new name equivalents:
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Previous Name</th>
<th>New Name</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ddi_putb</td>
<td>ddi_put8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ddi_putw</td>
<td>ddi_put16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ddi_putl</td>
<td>ddi_put32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ddi_putll</td>
<td>ddi_put64</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**Synopsis**

```c
#include <sys/ddi.h>
#include <sys/sunddi.h>

void ddi_regs_map_free(ddi_acc_handle_t *handle);
```

**Interface Level**

Solaris DDI specific (Solaris DDI).

**Parameters**

- `handle` Pointer to a data access handle previously allocated by a call to a setup routine such as `ddi_regs_map_setup(9F)`.

**Description**

`ddi_regs_map_free()` frees the mapping represented by the data access handle `handle`. This function is provided for drivers preparing to detach themselves from the system, allowing them to release allocated system resources represented in the handle.

**Context**

`ddi_regs_map_free()` must be called from user or kernel context.

**Attributes**

See attributes(5) for descriptions of the following attributes:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ATTRIBUTE TYPE</th>
<th>ATTRIBUTE VALUE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Architecture</td>
<td>PCI Local Bus, SBus, ISA</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**See Also**

attributes(5), ddi_regs_map_setup(9F)

*Writing Device Drivers*
Name
ddi_regs_map_setup – set up a mapping for a register address space

Synopsis
#include <sys/ddi.h>
#include <sys/sunddi.h>

int ddi_regs_map_setup(dev_info_t *dip, uint_t rnumber, caddr_t *addrp,
offset_t offset, offset_t len, ddi_device_acc_attr_t *accattrp, ddi_acc_handle_t *handlep);

Interface Level
Solaris DDI specific (Solaris DDI).

Parameters
dip Pointer to the device’s dev_info structure.
rnumber Index number to the register address space set.
addrp A platform-dependent value that, when added to an offset that is less than or
equal to the len parameter (see below), is used for the dev_addr argument to the
ddi_get, ddi_mem_get, and ddi_io_get/put routines.
offset Offset into the register address space.
len Length to be mapped.
accattrp Pointer to a device access attribute structure of this mapping (see
ddi_device_acc_attr(9S)).
handlep Pointer to a data access handle.

Description
ddi_regs_map_setup() maps in the register set given by rnumber. The register number
determines which register set is mapped if more than one exists.

offset specifies the starting location within the register space and len indicates the size of the
area to be mapped. If len is non-zero, it overrides the length given in the register set
description. If both len and offset are 0, the entire space is mapped. The base of the mapped
register space is returned in addrp.

The device access attributes are specified in the location pointed by the accattrp argument (see
ddi_device_acc_attr(9S) for details).

The data access handle is returned in handlep. handlep is opaque; drivers should not attempt
to interpret its value. The handle is used by the system to encode information for subsequent
data access function calls to maintain a consistent view between the host and the device.

Return Values
ddi_regs_map_setup() returns:
DDI_SUCCESS Successfully set up the mapping for data access.
DDI_FAILURE Invalid register number rnumber, offset offset, or length len.
DDI_ME_RNUMBER_RANGE Invalid register number rnumber or unable to find reg property.
DDI_REGS_ACC_CONFLICT Cannot enable the register mapping due to access conflicts with other enabled mappings.

Note that the return value DDI_ME_RNUMBER_RANGE is not supported on all platforms. Also, there is potential overlap between DDI_ME_RNUMBER_RANGE and DDI_FAILURE. Drivers should check for !=DDI_SUCCESS rather than checking for a specific failure value.

Context ddi_regs_map_setup() must be called from user or kernel context.

Attributes See attributes(5) for descriptions of the following attributes:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ATTRIBUTE TYPE</th>
<th>ATTRIBUTE VALUE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Architecture</td>
<td>PCI Local Bus, SBus, ISA</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

See Also attributes(5), ddi_regs_map_free(9F), ddi_device_acc_attr(9S)

Writing Device Drivers
Name  
ddi_remove_event_handler – remove an NDI event service callback handler

Synopsis

```c
#include <sys/dditypes.h>
#include <sys/sunddi.h>

int ddi_remove_event_handler(ddi_registration_id_t id);
```

Interface Level  
Solaris DDI specific (Solaris DDI).

Parameters  

`ddi_registration_id_t id`  
Unique system wide registration ID return by `ddi_add_event_handler(9F)` upon successful registration.

Description  
The `ddi_remove_event_handler()` function removes the callback handler specified by the registration `id` (`ddi_registration_id_t`). Upon successful removal, the callback handler is removed from the system and will not be invoked in the face of the event.

Return Values  

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ATTRIBUTE VALUE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>DDI_SUCCESS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DDI_FAILURE</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Context  
The `ddi_remove_event_handler()` function can be called from user and kernel contexts only.

Attributes  
See attributes(5) for a description of the following attributes:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ATTRIBUTE TYPE</th>
<th>ATTRIBUTE VALUE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Stability Level</td>
<td>Evolving</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

See Also  
attributes(5), ddi_add_event_handler(9F), ddi_get_eventcookie(9F)

Writing Device Drivers

Notes  
Device drivers must remove all registered callback handlers before detach(9E) processing for that device instance is complete.
ddi_remove_minor_node(9F)

Name  ddi_remove_minor_node – remove a minor node for this dev_info

Synopsis  void ddi_remove_minor_node(dev_info_t *dip, char *name);

Interface Level  Solaris DDI specific (Solaris DDI).

Parameters
  dip    A pointer to the device's dev_info structure.
  name   The name of this minor device. If name is NULL, then remove all minor data
          structures from this dev_info.

Description  ddi_remove_minor_node() removes a data structure from the linked list of minor data
          structures that is pointed to by the dev_info structure for this driver.

Examples  EXAMPLE 1  Removing a minor node

          This will remove a data structure describing a minor device called dev1 which is linked into
          the dev_info structure pointed to by dip:

          ddi_remove_minor_node(dip, "dev1");

See Also  attach(9E), detach(9E), ddi_create_minor_node(9F)

Writing Device Drivers
ddi_removing_power(9F)

**Name**

ddi_removing_power – check whether DDI_SUSPEND might result in power being removed from a device

**Synopsis**

```c
#include <sys/ddi.h>
#include <sys/sunddi.h>

int ddi_removing_power(dev_info_t *dip);
```

The ddi_removing_power() function indicates whether a currently pending call into a driver’s detach(9E) entry point with a command of DDI_SUSPEND is likely to result in power being removed from the device.

ddi_removing_power() can return true and power still not be removed from the device due to a failure to suspend and power off the system.

**Parameters**

The ddi_removing_power() function supports the following parameter:

- **dip**
  
  pointer to the device’s dev_info structure

**Return Values**

The ddi_removing_power() function returns:

- 1  
  Power might be removed by the framework as a result of the pending DDI_SUSPEND call.

- 0  
  Power will not be removed by the framework as a result of the pending DDI_SUSPEND call.

**Examples**

**EXAMPLE 1**  Protecting a Tape from Abrupt Power Removal

A tape driver that has hardware that would damage the tape if power is removed might include this code in its detach(9E) code:

```c
int xxdetach(dev_info_t *dip, ddi_detach_cmd_t cmd)
{

...  
  case DDI_SUSPEND:
      /*
         * We do not allow DDI_SUSPEND if power will be removed and
         * we have a device that damages tape when power is removed
         * We do support DDI_SUSPEND for Device Reconfiguration, however.
         */
         if (ddi_removing_power(dip) && xxdamages_tape(dip))
             return (DDI_FAILURE);

...  
```
Attributes See attributes(5) for descriptions of the following attributes:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ATTRIBUTE TYPE</th>
<th>ATTRIBUTE VALUE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Interface Stability</td>
<td>Evolving</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

See Also attributes(5), cpr(7), attach(9E), detach(9E)

Writing Device Drivers
ddi_rep_get8(9F)

Name  

ddi_rep_get8, ddi_rep_get16, ddi_rep_get32, ddi_rep_get64, ddi_rep_getw, ddi_rep_getl, ddi_rep_getll, ddi_rep_getb – read data from the mapped memory address, device register or allocated DMA memory address

Synopsis  

#include <sys/ddi.h>
#include <sys/sunddi.h>

void ddi_rep_get8(ddi_acc_handle_t handle, uint8_t *host_addr, uint8_t *dev_addr, size_t repcount, uint_t flags);
void ddi_rep_get16(ddi_acc_handle_t handle, uint16_t *host_addr, uint16_t *dev_addr, size_t repcount, uint_t flags);
void ddi_rep_get32(ddi_acc_handle_t handle, uint32_t *host_addr, uint32_t *dev_addr, size_t repcount, uint_t flags);
void ddi_rep_get64(ddi_acc_handle_t handle, uint64_t *host_addr, uint64_t *dev_addr, size_t repcount, uint_t flags);

Interface Level  

Solaris DDI specific (Solaris DDI).

Parameters  

handle  
The data access handle returned from setup calls, such as ddi_regs_map_setup(9F).
host_addr  
Base host address.
dev_addr  
Base device address.
repcount  
Number of data accesses to perform.
flags  
Device address flags:
  DDI_DEV_AUTOINCR
      Automatically increment the device address, dev_addr, during data accesses.
  DDI_DEV_NO_AUTOINCR
      Do not advance the device address, dev_addr, during data accesses.

Description  

These routines generate multiple reads from the mapped memory or device register. repcount data is copied from the device address, dev_addr, to the host address, host_addr. For each input datum, the ddi_rep_get8(), ddi_rep_get16(), ddi_rep_get32(), and ddi_rep_get64() functions read 8 bits, 16 bits, 32 bits, and 64 bits of data, respectively, from the device address, dev_addr. dev_addr and host_addr must be aligned to the datum boundary described by the function.

Each individual datum will automatically be translated to maintain a consistent view between the host and the device based on the encoded information in the data access handle. The translation may involve byte-swapping if the host and the device have incompatible endian characteristics.
When the \texttt{flags} argument is set to \texttt{DDI\_DEV\_AUTOINCR}, these functions treat the device address, \texttt{dev\_addr}, as a memory buffer location on the device and increment its address on the next input datum. However, when the \texttt{flags} argument is to \texttt{DDI\_DEV\_NO\_AUTOINCR}, the same device address will be used for every datum access. For example, this flag may be useful when reading from a data register.

\subsection*{Return Values} These functions return the value read from the mapped address.

\subsection*{Context} These functions can be called from user, kernel, or interrupt context.

\subsection*{See Also} \texttt{ddi\_get8(9F)}, \texttt{ddi\_put8(9F)}, \texttt{ddi\_regs\_map\_free(9F)}, \texttt{ddi\_regs\_map\_setup(9F)}, \texttt{ddi\_rep\_put8(9F)}

\subsection*{Notes} The functions described in this manual page previously used symbolic names which specified their data access size; the function names have been changed so they now specify a fixed-width data size. See the following table for the new name equivalents:

\begin{table}[h]
\centering
\begin{tabular}{|l|l|}
\hline
Previous Name & New Name \\
\hline
\texttt{ddi\_rep\_getb} & \texttt{ddi\_rep\_get8} \\
\texttt{ddi\_rep\_getw} & \texttt{ddi\_rep\_get16} \\
\texttt{ddi\_rep\_getl} & \texttt{ddi\_rep\_get32} \\
\texttt{ddi\_rep\_getll} & \texttt{ddi\_rep\_get64} \\
\hline
\end{tabular}
\end{table}
**Name**  
ddi_report_dev – announce a device

**Synopsis**  
```
#include <sys/conf.h>
#include <sys/ddi.h>
#include <sys/sunddi.h>
```

```c
void ddi_report_dev(dev_info_t *dip);
```

**Interface Level**  
Solaris DDI specific (Solaris DDI).

**Parameters**  
dip  
a pointer the device's dev_info structure.

**Description**  
`ddi_report_dev()` prints a banner at boot time, announcing the device pointed to by `dip`. The banner is always placed in the system logfile (displayed by `dmesg(1M)`), but is only displayed on the console if the system was booted with the verbose (`-v`) argument.

**Context**  
`ddi_report_dev()` can be called from user context.

**See Also**  
dmesg(1M), kernel(1M)

*Writing Device Drivers*
ddi_rep_put8, ddi_rep_put16, ddi_rep_put32, ddi_rep_put64, ddi_rep_putb, ddi_rep_putw, ddi_rep_putl, ddi_rep_putll – write data to the mapped memory address, device register or allocated DMA memory address

#include <sys/ddi.h>
#include <sys/sunddi.h>

void ddi_rep_put8(ddi_acc_handle_t handle, uint8_t *host_addr, uint8_t *dev_addr, size_t repcount, uint_t flags);
void ddi_rep_put16(ddi_acc_handle_t handle, uint16_t *host_addr, uint16_t *dev_addr, size_t repcount, uint_t flags);
void ddi_rep_put32(ddi_acc_handle_t handle, uint32_t *host_addr, uint32_t *dev_addr, size_t repcount, uint_t flags);
void ddi_rep_put64(ddi_acc_handle_t handle, uint64_t *host_addr, uint64_t *dev_addr, size_t repcount, uint_t flags);

Solaris DDI specific (Solaris DDI).

Parameters
handle
The data access handle returned from setup calls, such as ddi_regs_map_setup(9F).
host_addr
Base host address.
dev_addr
Base device address.
repcount
Number of data accesses to perform.
flags
Device address flags:
DDI_DEV_AUTOINCR
Automatically increment the device address, dev_addr, during data accesses.
DDI_DEV_NO_AUTOINCR
Do not advance the device address, dev_addr, during data accesses.

Description
These routines generate multiple writes to the mapped memory or device register. repcount data is copied from the host address, host_addr, to the device address, dev_addr. For each input datum, the ddi_rep_put8(), ddi_rep_put16(), ddi_rep_put32(), and ddi_rep_put64() functions write 8 bits, 16 bits, 32 bits, and 64 bits of data, respectively, to the device address, dev_addr. dev_addr and host_addr must be aligned to the datum boundary described by the function.
Each individual datum will automatically be translated to maintain a consistent view between the host and the device based on the encoded information in the data access handle. The translation may involve byte-swapping if the host and the device have incompatible endian characteristics.

When the `flags` argument is set to `DDI_DEV_AUTOINCR`, these functions treat the device address, `dev_addr`, as a memory buffer location on the device and increment its address on the next input datum. However, when the `flags` argument is set to `DDI_DEV_NO_AUTOINCR`, the same device address will be used for every datum access. For example, this flag may be useful when writing to a data register.

**Context**
These functions can be called from user, kernel, or interrupt context.

**See Also**
`ddi_get8(9F), ddi_put8(9F), ddi_regs_map_free(9F), ddi_regs_map_setup(9F),
 ddi_rep_get8(9F), ddi_device_acc_attr(9S)`

**Notes**
The functions described in this manual page previously used symbolic names which specified their data access size; the function names have been changed so they now specify a fixed-width data size. See the following table for the new name equivalents:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Previous Name</th>
<th>New Name</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ddi_rep_putb</td>
<td>ddi_rep_put8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ddi_rep_putw</td>
<td>ddi_rep_put16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ddi_rep_putl</td>
<td>ddi_rep_put32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ddi_rep_putll</td>
<td>ddi_rep_put64</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### ddi_root_node(9F)

**Name**  
ddi_root_node – get the root of the dev_info tree

**Synopsis**  
```
#include <sys/conf.h>
#include <sys/ddi.h>
#include <sys/sun_ddi.h>
```

```c
dev_info_t *ddi_root_node(void);
```

**Interface Level**  
Solaris DDI specific (Solaris DDI).

**Description**  
The `ddi_root_node()` function returns a pointer to the root node of the device information tree.

**Return Values**  
The `ddi_root_node()` function returns a pointer to a device information structure.

**Context**  
The `ddi_root_node()` function can be called from user, interrupt, or kernel context.

**See Also**  
`Writing Device Drivers`
Name  ddi_segmap, ddi_segmap_setup – set up a user mapping using seg_dev

Synopsis  #include <sys/conf.h>
          #include <sys/ddi.h>
          #include <sys/sunddi.h>

          int ddi_segmap(dev_t dev, off_t offset, struct asp *
           caddr_t *addrp, off_t len, uint_t prot,
           uint_t maxprot, uint_t flags, cred_t *credp);

          int ddi_segmap_setup(dev_t dev, off_t offset, struct asp *
           caddr_t *addrp, off_t len, uint_t prot,
           uint_t maxprot, uint_t flags, cred_t *credp,
           ddi_device_acc_attr_t *accattrp, uint_t rnumber);

Interface Level  These interfaces are obsolete. See devmap(9E) for an alternative to ddi_segmap(). Use devmap_setup(9F) instead of ddi_segmap_setup().

Parameters  

  dev  The device whose memory is to be mapped.

  offset  The offset within device memory at which the mapping begins.

  asp  An opaque pointer to the user address space into which the device memory should be mapped.

  addrp  Pointer to the starting address within the user address space to which the device memory should be mapped.

  len  Length (in bytes) of the memory to be mapped.

  prot  A bit field that specifies the protections. Some combinations of possible settings are:

        PROT_READ  Read access is desired.

        PROT_WRITE  Write access is desired.

        PROT_EXEC  Execute access is desired.

        PROT_USER  User-level access is desired (the mapping is being done as a result of a mmap(2) system call).

        PROT_ALL  All access is desired.

  maxprot  Maximum protection flag possible for attempted mapping (the PROT_WRITE bit may be masked out if the user opened the special file read-only). If (maxprot & prot) != prot then there is an access violation.

  flags  Flags indicating type of mapping. Possible values are (other bits may be set):

        MAP_PRIVATE  Changes are private.
MAP_SHARED Changes should be shared.

MAP_FIXED The user specified an address in *addrp rather than letting the system pick and address.

credp Pointer to user credential structure.

ddi_segmap_setup() dev_acc_attr Pointer to a ddi_device_acc_attr(9S) structure which contains the device access attributes to apply to this mapping.

rnumber Index number to the register address space set.

Description

Future releases of Solaris will provide this function for binary and source compatibility. However, for increased functionality, use ddi_devmap_segmap(9F) instead. See ddi_devmap_segmap(9F) for details.

ddi_segmap() and ddi_segmap_setup() set up user mappings to device space. When setting up the mapping, the ddi_segmap() and ddi_segmap_setup() routines call the mmap(9E) entry point to validate the range to be mapped. When a user process accesses the mapping, the drivers mmap(9E) entry point is again called to retrieve the page frame number that needs to be loaded. The mapping translations for that page are then loaded on behalf of the driver by the DDI framework.

ddi_segmap() is typically used as the segmap(9E) entry in the cb_ops(9S) structure for those devices that do not choose to provide their own segmap(9E) entry point. However, some drivers may have their own segmap(9E) entry point to do some initial processing on the parameters and then call ddi_segmap() to establish the default memory mapping.

ddi_segmap_setup() is used in the drivers segmap(9E) entry point to set up the mapping and assign device access attributes to that mapping. rnumber specifies the register set representing the range of device memory being mapped. See ddi_device_acc_attr(9S) for details regarding what device access attributes are available.

ddi_segmap_setup() cannot be used directly in the cb_ops(9S) structure and requires a driver to have a segmap(9E) entry point.

Return Values

ddi_segmap() and ddi_segmap_setup() return the following values:

0 Successful completion.

Non-zero An error occurred. In particular, they return ENXIO if the range to be mapped is invalid.

Context ddi_segmap() and ddi_segmap_setup() can be called from user or kernel context only.

Attributes See attributes(5) for a description of the following attributes:
**See Also**  
`mmap(2), attributes(5), devmap(9E), mmap(9E), segmap(9E), devmap_setup(9F), cb_ops(9S), ddi_device_acc_attr(9S)`

*Writing Device Drivers*
### `ddi_slaveonly()`

**Name**  
ddi_slaveonly – tell if a device is installed in a slave access only location

**Synopsis**  
```c
#include <sys/conf.h>
#include <sys/ddi.h>
#include <sys/sunddi.h>

int ddi_slaveonly(dev_info_t *dip);
```

**Interface Level**  
Solaris DDI specific (Solaris DDI).

**Parameters**  
- `dip`  
  A pointer to the device's `dev_info` structure.

**Description**  
The `ddi_slaveonly()` function tells the caller if the bus, or part of the bus that the device is installed on, does not permit the device to become a DMA master, that is, whether the device has been installed in a slave access only slot.

**Return Values**  
- `DDI_SUCCESS`  
The device has been installed in a slave access only location.
- `DDI_FAILURE`  
The device has not been installed in a slave access only location.

**Context**  
The `ddi_slaveonly()` function can be called from user, interrupt, or kernel context.

**See Also**  
Writing Device Drivers
**Name**  
ddi_soft_state, ddi_get_soft_state, ddi_soft_state_fini, ddi_soft_state_free, ddi_soft_state_init, ddi_soft_state_zalloc – driver soft state utility routines

**Synopsis**  
#include <sys/ddi.h>  
#include <sys/sunddi.h>  

void *ddi_get_soft_state(void *state, int item);
void ddi_soft_state_fini(void **state_p);
void ddi_soft_state_free(void *state, int item);
int ddi_soft_state_init(void **state_p, size_t size, size_t n_items);
int ddi_soft_state_zalloc(void *state, int item);

**Interface Level**  
Solaris DDI specific (Solaris DDI).

**Parameters**  
- **state_p**  
  Address of the opaque state pointer which will be initialized by ddi_soft_state_init() to point to implementation dependent data.

- **size**  
  Size of the item which will be allocated by subsequent calls to ddi_soft_state_zalloc().

- **n_items**  
  A hint of the number of items which will be preallocated; zero is allowed.

- **state**  
  An opaque pointer to implementation-dependent data that describes the soft state.

- **item**  
  The item number for the state structure; usually the instance number of the associated devinfo node.

**Description**  
Most device drivers maintain state information with each instance of the device they control; for example, a soft copy of a device control register, a mutex that must be held while accessing a piece of hardware, a partition table, or a unit structure. These utility routines are intended to help device drivers manage the space used by the driver to hold such state information.

For example, if the driver holds the state of each instance in a single state structure, these routines can be used to dynamically allocate and deallocate a separate structure for each instance of the driver as the instance is attached and detached.

To use the routines, the driver writer needs to declare a state pointer, state_p, which the implementation uses as a place to hang a set of per-driver structures; everything else is managed by these routines.

The routine ddi_soft_state_init() is usually called in the driver's _init(9E) routine to initialize the state pointer, set the size of the soft state structure, and to allow the driver to pre-allocate a given number of such structures if required.
The routine `ddi_soft_state_zalloc()` is usually called in the driver's `attach()` routine. The routine is passed an item number which is used to refer to the structure in subsequent calls to `ddi_get_soft_state()` and `ddi_soft_state_free()`. The item number is usually just the instance number of the `devinfo` node, obtained with `ddi_get_instance()`. The routine attempts to allocate space for the new structure, and if the space allocation was successful, `DDI_SUCCESS` is returned to the caller. Returned memory is zeroed.

A pointer to the space previously allocated for a soft state structure can be obtained by calling `ddi_get_soft_state()` with the appropriate item number.

The space used by a given soft state structure can be returned to the system using `ddi_soft_state_free()`. This routine is usually called from the driver's `detach()` entry point.

The space used by all the soft state structures allocated on a given state pointer, together with the housekeeping information used by the implementation can be returned to the system using `ddi_soft_state_fini()`. This routine can be called from the driver's `_fini()` routine.

The `ddi_soft_state_zalloc()`, `ddi_soft_state_free()` and `ddi_get_soft_state()` routines coordinate access to the underlying data structures in an MT-safe fashion, thus no additional locks should be necessary.

### Return Values

- **NULL**: The requested state structure was not allocated at the time of the call.
- **pointer**: The pointer to the state structure.
- **ddi_soft_state_init()**:  
  - 0: The allocation was successful.
  - EINVAL: Either the size parameter was zero, or the `state_p` parameter was invalid.

- **DDI_SUCCESS**: The allocation was successful.
- **DDI_FAILURE**: The routine failed to allocate the storage required; either the `state` parameter was invalid, the item number was negative, or an attempt was made to allocate an item number that was already allocated.

### Context

The `ddi_soft_state_init()` and `ddi_soft_state_alloc()` functions can be called from user or kernel context only, since they may internally call `kmem_zalloc()` with the KM_SLEEP flag.

The `ddi_soft_state_fini()`, `ddi_soft_state_free()` and `ddi_get_soft_state()` routines can be called from any driver context.
The following example shows how the routines described above can be used in terms of the driver entry points of a character-only driver. The example concentrates on the portions of the code that deal with creating and removing the driver’s data structures.

typedef struct {
    volatile caddr_t *csr; /* device registers */
    kmutex_t csr_mutex; /* protects 'csr' field */
    unsigned int state;
    dev_info_t *dip; /* back pointer to devinfo */
} devstate_t;

static void *statep;

int
_init(void)
{
    int error;

    error = ddi_soft_state_init(&statep, sizeof (devstate_t), 0);
    if (error != 0)
        return (error);
    if ((error = mod_install(&modlinkage)) != 0)
        ddi_soft_state_fini(&statep);
    return (error);
}

int
_fini(void)
{
    int error;

    if ((error = mod_remove(&modlinkage)) != 0)
        return (error);
    ddi_soft_state_fini(&statep);
    return (0);
}

static int
xxattach(dev_info_t *dip, ddi_attach_cmd_t cmd)
{
    int instance;
    devstate_t *softc;

    switch (cmd) {
    case DDI_ATTACH:
        instance = ddi_get_instance(dip);
        if (ddi_soft_state_zalloc(statep, instance) != DDI_SUCCESS)
EXAMPLE 1 Creating and Removing Data Structures (Continued)

    return (DDI_FAILURE);
    softc = ddi_get_soft_state(statep, instance);
    softc->dip = dip;
    ...
    return (DDI_SUCCESS);
    default:
        return (DDI_FAILURE);
    }
}

static int
xxdetach(dev_info_t *dip, ddi_detach_cmd_t cmd)
{
    int instance;

    switch (cmd) {

        case DDI_DETACH:
            instance = ddi_get_instance(dip);
            ...
            ddi_soft_state_free(statep, instance);
            return (DDI_SUCCESS);

        default:
            return (DDI_FAILURE);
    }
}

static int
xxopen(dev_t *devp, int flag, int otyp, cred_t *cred_p)
{
    devstate_t *softc;
    int instance;

    instance = getminor(*devp);
    if (!(softc = ddi_get_soft_state(statep, instance)) == NULL)
        return (ENXIO);
    ...
    softc->state | XX_IN_USE;
    ...
    return (0);
}

See Also  _fini(9E), _init(9E), attach(9E), detach(9E), ddi_get_instance(9F), getminor(9F),
          kmem_zalloc(9F)
Writing Device Drivers

**Warnings**  There is no attempt to validate the `item` parameter given to `ddi_soft_state_zalloc()` other than it must be a positive signed integer. Therefore very large item numbers may cause the driver to hang forever waiting for virtual memory resources that can never be satisfied.

**Notes**  If necessary, a hierarchy of state structures can be constructed by embedding state pointers in higher order state structures.

**Diagnostics**  All of the messages described below usually indicate bugs in the driver and should not appear in normal operation of the system.

- **WARNING**: `ddi_soft_state_zalloc`: bad handle
- **WARNING**: `ddi_soft_state_free`: bad handle
- **WARNING**: `ddi_soft_state_fini`: bad handle

The implementation-dependent information kept in the state variable is corrupt.

- **WARNING**: `ddi_soft_state_free`: null handle
- **WARNING**: `ddi_soft_state_fini`: null handle

The routine has been passed a null or corrupt state pointer. Check that `ddi_soft_state_init()` has been called.

- **WARNING**: `ddi_soft_state_free`: item `%d` not in range `[0..%d]`

The routine has been asked to free an item which was never allocated. The message prints out the invalid item number and the acceptable range.
**Name**

`ddi_strtol` – String conversion routines

**Synopsis**

```c
#include <sys/ddi.h>
#include <sys/sunddi.h>

int ddi_strtol(const char *str, char **endptr, int base, long *result);
```

**Interface Level**

Solaris DDI specific (Solaris DDI)

**Parameters**

- `str` Pointer to a character string to be converted.
- `endptr` Post-conversion final string of unrecognized characters.
- `base` Radix used for conversion.
- `result` Pointer to variable which contains the converted value.

**Description**

The `ddi_strtol()` function converts the initial portion of the string pointed to by `str` to a type `long` `int` representation and stores the converted value in `result`. The function first decomposes the input string into three parts:

1. An initial (possibly empty) sequence of white-space characters (', '
   't', '
   '
   n', '
   r', '
   f')
2. A subject sequence interpreted as an integer represented in some radix determined by the value of `base`
3. A final string of one or more unrecognized characters, including the terminating null byte of the input string.

The `ddi_strtol()` function then attempts to convert the subject sequence to an integer and returns the result.

If the value of `base` is 0, the expected form of the subject sequence is a decimal constant, octal constant or hexadecimal constant, any of which may be preceded by a plus ("+") or minus ("-") sign. A decimal constant begins with a non-zero digit, and consists of a sequence of decimal digits. An octal constant consists of the prefix 0 optionally followed by a sequence of the digits 0 to 7 only. A hexadecimal constant consists of the prefix 0x or 0X followed by a sequence of the decimal digits and letters a (or A) to f (or F) with values 10 to 15 respectively.

If the value of `base` is between 2 and 36, the expected form of the subject sequence is a sequence of letters and digits representing an integer with the radix specified by `base`, optionally preceded by a plus or minus sign. The letters from a (or A) to z (or Z) inclusive are ascribed the values 10 to 35 and only letters whose ascribed values are less than that of `base` are permitted. If the value of `base` is 16, the characters 0x or 0X may optionally precede the sequence of letters and digits following the sign, if present.

The subject sequence is defined as the longest initial subsequence of the input string, starting with the first non-white-space character that is of the expected form. The subject sequence
contains no characters if the input string is empty or consists entirely of white-space characters or if the first non-white-space character is other than a sign or a permissible letter or digit.

If the subject sequence has the expected form and the value of base is 0, the sequence of characters starting with the first digit is interpreted as an integer constant. If the subject sequence has the expected form and the value of base is between 2 and 36, it is used as the base for conversion, ascribing to each letter its value as given above. If the subject sequence begins with a minus sign, the value resulting from the conversion is negated. A pointer to the final string is stored in the object pointed to by endptr, provided that endptr is not a null pointer.

If the subject sequence is empty or does not have the expected form, no conversion is performed and the value of str is stored in the object pointed to by endptr, provided that endptr is not a null pointer.

Return Values
Upon successful completion, ddi_strtol() returns 0 and stores the converted value in result. If no conversion is performed due to invalid base, ddi_strtol() returns EINVAL and the variable pointed by result is not changed.

If the correct value is outside the range of representable values, ddi_strtol() returns ERANGE and the value pointed to by result is not changed.

Context
The ddi_strtol() function may be called from user, kernel or interrupt context.

See Also
Writing Device Drivers
**Name**
ddi_strtoll, ddi_strtoull – string conversion functions

**Synopsis**
#include <sys/ddi.h>
#include <sys/sunddi.h>

int ddi_strtoll(const char *str, char **endptr, int base, 
longlong_t *result);

int ddi_strtoull(const char *str, char **endptr, int base, 
u_longlong_t *result);

**Parameters**
str pointer to a character string to be converted
endptr post-conversion final string of unrecognized characters
base radix used for conversion
result pointer to variable which contains the converted value

**Interface Level**
Solaris DDI specific (Solaris DDI)

**Description**
The ddi_strtoll() function converts the initial portion of the string pointed to by str to a type longlong_t representation and stores the converted value in result.

The ddi_strtoull() function converts the initial portion of the string pointed to by str to a type u_longlong_t representation and stores the converted value in result.

These functions first decompose the input string into three parts:
1. An initial (possibly empty) sequence of white-space characters (" ", \t, \n, \r, \f)
2. A subject sequence interpreted as an integer represented in some radix determined by the value of base
3. A final string of one or more unrecognized characters, including the terminating null byte of the input string.

The ddi_strtoll() function then attempts to convert the subject sequence to an integer and returns the result. The ddi_strtoull() function attempts to convert the subject sequence to an unsigned integer and returns the result.

If the value of base is 0, the expected form of the subject sequence is that of a decimal constant, octal constant or hexadecimal constant, any of which may be preceded by a plus (“+”) or minus (“-“) sign. A decimal constant begins with a non-zero digit, and consists of a sequence of decimal digits. An octal constant consists of the prefix 0 optionally followed by a sequence of the digits 0 to 7 only. A hexadecimal constant consists of the prefix 0x or 0X followed by a sequence of the decimal digits and letters a (or A) to f (or F) with values 10 to 15 respectively.

If the value of base is between 2 and 36, the expected form of the subject sequence is a sequence of letters and digits representing an integer with the radix specified by base, optionally preceded by a plus or minus sign. The letters from a (or A) to z (or Z) inclusive are ascribed the
values 10 to 35 and only letters whose ascribed values are less than that of base are permitted. If
the value of base is 16, the characters 0x or 0X may optionally precede the sequence of letters
and digits, following the sign if present.

The subject sequence is defined as the longest initial subsequence of the input string, starting
with the first non-white-space character that is of the expected form. The subject sequence
contains no characters if the input string is empty or consists entirely of white-space
characters, or if the first non-white-space character is other than a sign or a permissible letter
or digit.

If the subject sequence has the expected form and the value of base is 0, the sequence of
characters starting with the first digit is interpreted as an integer constant. If the subject
sequence has the expected form and the value of base is between 2 and 36, it is used as the base
for conversion, ascribing to each letter its value as given above. If the subject sequence begins
with a minus sign, the value resulting from the conversion is negated. A pointer to the final
string is stored in the object pointed to by endptr, provided that endptr is not a null pointer.

If the subject sequence is empty or does not have the expected form, no conversion is
performed and the value of str is stored in the object pointed to by endptr, provided that
endptr is not a null pointer.

**Return Values**

Upon successful completion, these functions return 0 and store the converted value in result.
If no conversion is performed due to an invalid base, these functions return EINVAL and the
variable pointed by result is not changed.

**Context**

These functions may be called from user, kernel or interrupt context.

**Attributes**

See attributes(5) for descriptions of the following attributes:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ATTRIBUTE TYPE</th>
<th>ATTRIBUTE VALUE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Interface Stability</td>
<td>Committed</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**See Also**

Writing Device Drivers
## Synopsis

```c
#include <sys/ddi.h>
#include <sys/sunddi.h>

int ddi_strtoul(const char *str, char **endptr, int base,
                 unsigned long *result);
```

## Parameters

- **str**: Pointer to a character string to be converted.
- **endptr**: Post-conversion final string of unrecognized characters.
- **base**: Radix used for conversion.
- **result**: Pointer to variable which contains the converted value.

## Description

The `ddi_strtoul()` function converts the initial portion of the string pointed to by `str` to a type `unsigned long` int representation and stores the converted value in `result`.

The function first decomposes the input string into three parts:

1. An initial (possibly empty) sequence of white-space characters (`' '`, `	`, `
`, ``, ``)  
2. A subject sequence interpreted as an integer represented in some radix determined by the value of `base`  
3. A final string of one or more unrecognized characters, including the terminating null byte of the input string.

The `ddi_strtoul()` function then attempts to convert the subject sequence to an `unsigned` integer and returns the result.

If the value of `base` is 0, the expected form of the subject sequence is that of a decimal constant, octal constant or hexadecimal constant, any of which may be preceded by a plus (`"+"`) or minus (`"-"`) sign. A decimal constant begins with a non-zero digit, and consists of a sequence of decimal digits. An octal constant consists of the prefix 0 optionally followed by a sequence of the digits 0 to 7 only. A hexadecimal constant consists of the prefix 0x or 0X followed by a sequence of the decimal digits and letters a (or A) to f (or F) with values 10 to 15 respectively.

If the value of `base` is between 2 and 36, the expected form of the subject sequence is a sequence of letters and digits representing an integer with the radix specified by `base`, optionally preceded by a plus or minus sign. The letters from a (or A) to z (or Z) inclusive are ascribed the values 10 to 35 and only letters whose ascribed values are less than that of `base` are permitted. If the value of `base` is 16, the characters 0x or 0X may optionally precede the sequence of letters and digits, following the sign if present.

The subject sequence is defined as the longest initial subsequence of the input string, starting with the first non-white-space character that is of the expected form. The subject sequence
contains no characters if the input string is empty or consists entirely of white-space characters, or if the first non-white-space character is other than a sign or a permissible letter or digit.

If the subject sequence has the expected form and the value of base is 0, the sequence of characters starting with the first digit is interpreted as an integer constant. If the subject sequence has the expected form and the value of base is between 2 and 36, it is used as the base for conversion, ascribing to each letter its value as given above. If the subject sequence begins with a minus sign, the value resulting from the conversion is negated. A pointer to the final string is stored in the object pointed to by endptr, provided that endptr is not a null pointer.

If the subject sequence is empty or does not have the expected form, no conversion is performed and the value of str is stored in the object pointed to by endptr, provided that endptr is not a null pointer.

Return Values  Upon successful completion, ddi_strtoul() returns 0 and stores the converted value in result. If no conversion is performed due to invalid base, ddi_strtoul() returns EINVAL and the variable pointed by result is not changed.

If the correct value is outside the range of representable values, ddi_strtoul() returns ERANGE and the value pointed to by result is not changed.

Context  The ddi_strtoul() function may be called from user, kernel or interrupt context.

See Also  Writing Device Drivers
ddi UMEM_ALLOC, ddi UMEM_FREE – allocate and free page-aligned kernel memory

#include <sys/types.h>
#include <sys/sunddi.h>

void *ddi UMEM_ALLOC(size_t size, int flag, ddi UMEM_COOKIE t *cookiep);
void ddi UMEM_FREE(ddi UMEM_COOKIE t cookie);

Solaris DDI specific (Solaris DDI).

size Number of bytes to allocate.
flag Used to determine the sleep and pageable conditions.

Possible sleep flags are DDI_UMEM_SLEEP, which allows sleeping until memory is available, and DDI_UMEM_NOSLEEP, which returns NULL immediately if memory is not available.

The default condition is to allocate locked memory; this can be changed to allocate pageable memory using the DDI_UMEM_PAGEABLE flag.

cookiep Pointer to a kernel memory cookie.

cookie A kernel memory cookie allocated in ddi UMEM_ALLOC().

ddi UMEM_FREE() releases the entire buffer.

Name ddi UMEM_ALLOC, ddi UMEM_FREE – allocate and free page-aligned kernel memory
Synopsis #include <sys/types.h>
#include <sys/sunddi.h>

void *ddi UMEM_ALLOC(size_t size, int flag, ddi UMEM_COOKIE t *cookiep);
void ddi UMEM_FREE(ddi UMEM_COOKIE t cookie);

Interface Level Solaris DDI specific (Solaris DDI).

Parameters

ddi UMEM_ALLOC() size Number of bytes to allocate.
flag Used to determine the sleep and pageable conditions.

Possible sleep flags are DDI_UMEM_SLEEP, which allows sleeping until memory is available, and DDI_UMEM_NOSLEEP, which returns NULL immediately if memory is not available.

The default condition is to allocate locked memory; this can be changed to allocate pageable memory using the DDI_UMEM_PAGEABLE flag.

cookiep Pointer to a kernel memory cookie.

ddi UMEM_FREE() cookie A kernel memory cookie allocated in ddi UMEM_ALLOC().

Description ddi UMEM_ALLOC() allocates page-aligned kernel memory and returns a pointer to the allocated memory. The number of bytes allocated is a multiple of the system page size (roundup of size). The allocated memory can be used in the kernel and can be exported to user space. See devmap(9E) and devmap UMEM_SETUP(9F) for further information.

flag determines whether the caller can sleep for memory and whether the allocated memory is locked or not. DDI_UMEM_SLEEP allocations may sleep but are guaranteed to succeed. DDI_UMEM_NOSLEEP allocations do not sleep but may fail (return NULL) if memory is currently unavailable. If DDI_UMEM_PAGEABLE is set, pageable memory will be allocated. These pages can be swapped out to secondary memory devices. The initial contents of memory allocated using ddi UMEM_ALLOC() is zero-filled.

*cookiep is a pointer to the kernel memory cookie that describes the kernel memory being allocated. A typical use of cookiep is in devmap UMEM_SETUP(9F) when the drivers want to export the kernel memory to a user application.

To free the allocated memory, a driver calls ddi UMEM_FREE() with the cookie obtained from ddi UMEM_ALLOC(). ddi UMEM_FREE() releases the entire buffer.
ddi_umem_alloc(9F)

**Return Values**
- **Non-null**: Successful completion. `ddi_umem_alloc()` returns a pointer to the allocated memory.
- **NULL**: Memory cannot be allocated by `ddi_umem_alloc()` because `DDI_UMEM_NOSLEEP` is set and the system is out of resources.

**Context**
- `ddi_umem_alloc()` can be called from any context if `flag` is set to `DDI_UMEM_NOSLEEP`. If `DDI_UMEM_SLEEP` is set, `ddi_umem_alloc()` can be called from user and kernel context only. `ddi_umem_free()` can be called from any context.

**See Also**
- `devmap(9E)`, `condvar(9F)`, `devmap_umem_setup(9F)`, `kmem_alloc(9F)`, `mutex(9F)`, `rwlock(9F)`, `semaphore(9F)`

*Writing Device Drivers*

**Warnings**
Setting the `DDI_UMEM_PAGEABLE` flag in `ddi_umem_alloc()` will result in an allocation of pageable memory. Because these pages can be swapped out to secondary memory devices, drivers should use this flag with care. This memory must not be used for the following purposes:

- For synchronization objects such as locks and condition variables. See `mutex(9F)`, `semaphore(9F)`, `rwlock(9F)`, and `condvar(9F)`.
- For driver interrupt routines.

Memory allocated using `ddi_umem_alloc()` without setting `DDI_UMEM_PAGEABLE` flag cannot be paged. Available memory is therefore limited by the total physical memory on the system. It is also limited by the available kernel virtual address space, which is often the more restrictive constraint on large-memory configurations.

Excessive use of kernel memory is likely to effect overall system performance.
Over-commitment of kernel memory may cause unpredictable consequences.

Misuse of the kernel memory allocator, such as writing past the end of a buffer, using a buffer after freeing it, freeing a buffer twice, or freeing an invalid pointer, will cause the system to corrupt data or panic.

Do not call `ddi_umem_alloc()` within `DDI_SUSPEND` and `DDI_RESUME` operations. Memory acquired at these times is not reliable. In some cases, such a call can cause a system to hang.

**Notes**
- `ddi_umem_alloc(0, flag, cookiep)` always returns NULL. `ddi_umem_free(NULL)` has no effects on system.
ddi_umem_iosetup(9F)

Name

ddi_umem_iosetup – Setup I/O requests to application memory

Synopsis

#include <sys/ddi.h>
#include <sys/sunddi.h>

struct buf *ddi_umem_iosetup(ddi_umem_cookie_t cookie, off_t off,
   size_t len, int direction, dev_t dev, daddr_t blkno,
   int (*iodone) (struct buf *), int sleepflag);

Interface Level

Solaris DDI specific (Solaris DDI)

Parameters

cookie The kernel memory cookie allocated by ddi_umem_lock(9F).
off Offset from the start of the cookie.
len Length of the I/O request in bytes.
direction Must be set to B_READ for reads from the device or B_WRITE for writes to the device.
dev Device number
blkno Block number on device.
iodone Specific biodone(9F) routine.
sleepflag Determines whether caller can sleep for memory. Possible flags are
   DDI_UMEM_SLEEP to allow sleeping until memory is available, or
   DDI_UMEM_NOSLEEP to return NULL immediately if memory is not available.

Description

The ddi_umem_iosetup(9F) function is used by drivers to setup I/O requests to application memory which has been locked down using ddi_umem_lock(9F).

The ddi_umem_iosetup(9F) function returns a pointer to a buf(9S) structure corresponding to the memory cookie cookie. Drivers can setup multiple buffer structures simultaneously active using the same memory cookie. The buf(9S) structures can span all or part of the region represented by the cookie and can overlap each other. The buf(9S) structure can be passed to ddi_dma_buf_bind_handle(9F) to initiate DMA transfers to or from the locked down memory.

The off parameter specifies the offset from the start of the cookie. The len parameter represents the length of region to be mapped by the buffer. The direction parameter must be set to either B_READ or B_WRITE, to indicate the action that will be performed by the device. (Note that this direction is in the opposite sense of the VM system's direction of DDI_UMEMLOCK_READ and DDI_UMEMLOCK_WRITE.) The direction must be compatible with the flags used to create the memory cookie in ddi_umem_lock(9F). For example, if ddi_umem_lock() is called with the flags parameter set to DDI_UMEMLOCK_READ, the direction parameter in ddi_umem_iosetup() should be set to B_WRITE.
The `dev` parameter specifies the device to which the buffer is to perform I/O. The `blkno` parameter represents the block number on the device. It will be assigned to the `b_blkno` field of the returned buffer structure. The `iodone` parameter enables the driver to identify a specific `biodone(9F)` routine to be called by the driver when the I/O is complete. The `sleepflag` parameter determines if the caller can sleep for memory. `DDI_UMEM_SLEEP allocations may sleep but are guaranteed to succeed. DDI_UMEM_NOSLEEP allocations do not sleep but may fail (return `NULL` if memory is currently not available.

After the I/O has completed and the buffer structure is no longer needed, the driver calls `freerbuf(9F)` to free the buffer structure.

**Return Values**
The `ddi_umem_iosetup(9F)` function returns a pointer to the initialized buffer header, or `NULL` if no space is available.

**Context**
The `ddi_umem_iosetup(9F)` function can be called from any context only if flag is set to `DDI_UMEM_NOSLEEP`. If `DDI_UMEM_SLEEP` is set, `ddi_umem_iosetup(9F)` can be called from user and kernel context only.

**See Also**
`ddi_umem_lock(9F), ddi_dma_buf_bind_handle(9F), freerbuf(9F), physio(9F), buf(9S)`
### Synopsis

```c
#include <sys/ddi.h>
#include <sys/sunddi.h>

int ddi_umem_lock(caddr_t addr, size_t len, int flags, ddi_umem_cookie_t *cookiep);
void ddi_umem_unlock(ddi_umem_cookie_t cookie);
```

### Parameters

**ddi_umem_lock**
- `addr` Virtual address of memory object
- `len` Length of memory object in bytes
- `flags` Valid flags include:
  - `DDI_UMEMLOCK_READ` Memory pages are locked to be read from. (Disk write or a network send.)
  - `DDI_UMEMLOCK_WRITE` Memory pages are locked to be written to. (Disk read or a network receive.)
- `cookiep` Pointer to a kernel memory cookie.

**ddi_umem_unlock**
- `cookie` Kernel memory cookie allocated by `ddi_umem_lock()`.

### Description

The `ddi_umem_lock()` function locks down the physical pages (including I/O pages) that correspond to the current process' virtual address range `[addr, addr + size]` and fills in a cookie representing the locked pages. This cookie can be used to create a `buf(9S)` structure that can be used to perform I/O (see `ddi_umem_iosetup(9F)` and `ddi_dma_buf_bind_handle(9F)`, or it can be used with `devmap_umem_setup(9F)` to export the memory to an application.

The virtual address and length specified must be at a page boundary and the mapping performed in terms of the system page size. See `pagesize(1)`.

The flags argument indicates the intended use of the locked memory. Set flags to `DDI_UMEMLOCK_READ` if the memory pages will be read (for example, in a disk write or a network send.) Set flags to `DDI_UMEMLOCK_WRITE` if the memory pages will be written (for example, in a disk read or a network receive). You must choose one (and only one) of these values.

To unlock the locked pages, the drivers call `ddi_umem_unlock(9F)` with the cookie obtained from `ddi_umem_lock()`.

The process is not allowed to `exec(2)` or `fork(2)` while its physical pages are locked down by the device driver.
The device driver must ensure that the physical pages have been unlocked after the application has called `close(2)`.

**Return Values** On success, a 0 is returned. Otherwise, one of the following `errno` values is returned.

- **EFAULT**  User process has no mapping at that address range or does not support locking.
- **EACCES**  User process does not have the required permission.
- **ENOMEM**  The system does not have sufficient resources to lock memory, or locking `len` memory would exceed a limit or resource control on locked memory.
- **EAGAIN**  Could not allocate system resources required to lock the pages. The `ddi_umem_lock()` could succeed at a later time.
- **EINVAL**  Requested memory is not aligned on a system page boundary.

**Context** The `ddi_umem_lock()` function can only be called from user context; `ddi_umem_unlock()` from user, kernel, and interrupt contexts.

**See Also** `ddi_umem_iostatup(9F), ddi_dma_buf_bind_handle(9F), devmap_umem_setup(9F), ddi_umem_alloc(9F)`

**Notes** The `ddi_umem_unlock()` function consumes physical memory. The driver is responsible for a speedy unlock to free up the resources.

The `ddi_umem_unlock()` function can defer unlocking of the pages to a later time depending on the implementation.
# Name
delay – delay execution for a specified number of clock ticks

## Synopsis

```c
#include <sys/ddi.h>

void delay(clock_t ticks);
```

## Interface Level

Architecture independent level 1 (DDI/DKI).

## Parameters

ticks

The number of clock cycles to delay.

## Description

delay() provides a mechanism for a driver to delay its execution for a given period of time. Since the speed of the clock varies among systems, drivers should base their time values on microseconds and use `drv_usertoHz(9F)` to convert microseconds into clock ticks.

delay() uses `timeout(9F)` to schedule an internal function to be called after the specified amount of time has elapsed. delay() then waits until the function is called. Because `timeout()` is subject to priority inversion, drivers waiting on behalf of processes with real-time constraints should use `cv_timedwait(9F)` rather than delay().

delay() does not busy-wait. If busy-waiting is required, use `drv_usecwait(9F)`.

## Context

delay() can be called from user and kernel contexts.

## Examples

**delay() Example**

Before a driver I/O routine allocates buffers and stores any user data in them, it checks the status of the device (line 12). If the device needs manual intervention (such as, needing to be refilled with paper), a message is displayed on the system console (line 14). The driver waits an allotted time (line 17) before repeating the procedure.

```c
struct device { /* layout of physical device registers */
    int control; /* physical device control word */
    int status; /* physical device status word */
    short xmit_char; /* transmit character to device */
} ;

/* get device registers */
register struct device *rp = ...;

while (rp->status & NOPAPER) { /* while printer is out of paper */
    /* display message and ring bell */
    /* on system console */
    cmn_err(CE_WARN, "\007",
        (getminor(dev) & 0xf));
    /* wait one minute and try again */
```

**EXAMPLE 1**

```c
delay() Example
```
EXAMPLE 1  delay() Example  (Continued)

17       delay(60 * drv_usec_to_hz(1000000));
18     }

See Also  biodone(9F), biowait(9F), cv_timedwait(9F), ddi_in_panic(9F), drv_hztousec(9F),
          drv_usec_to_hz(9F), drv_usec_wait(9F), timeout(9F), untimeout(9F)

Writing Device Drivers
**Name**

devmap_default_access – default driver memory access function

**Synopsis**

```c
#include <sys/ddi.h>
#include <sys/sunddi.h>

int devmap_default_access(devmap_cookie_t dhp, void *pvtp,
                           offset_t off, size_t len, uint_t type, uint_t rw);
```

**Interface Level**

Solaris DDI specific (Solaris DDI).

**Parameters**

- **dhp**
  An opaque mapping handle that the system uses to describe the mapping.
- **pvtp**
  Driver private mapping data.
- **off**
  User offset within the logical device memory at which the access begins.
- **len**
  Length (in bytes) of the memory being accessed.
- **type**
  Type of access operation.
- **rw**
  Type of access.

**Description**

devmap_default_access() is a function providing the semantics of devmap_access(9E). The drivers call devmap_default_access() to handle the mappings that do not support context switching. The drivers should call devmap_do_ctxmgt(9F) for the mappings that support context management.

devmap_default_access() can either be called from devmap_access(9E) or be used as the devmap_access(9E) entry point. The arguments dhp, pvtp, off, len, type, and rw are provided by the devmap_access(9E) entry point and must not be modified.

**Return Values**

- **0**
  Successful completion.
- **Non-zero**
  An error occurred.

**Context**

devmap_default_access() must be called from the driver's devmap_access(9E) entry point.

**Examples**

**EXAMPLE 1**

Using devmap_default_access in devmap_access.

The following shows an example of using devmap_default_access() in the devmap_access(9E) entry point.

```c
#define OFF_DO_CTXMGT 0x40000000
#define OFF_NORMAL 0x40100000
#define CTXMGT_SIZE 0x100000
#define NORMAL_SIZE 0x100000

/*
 * Driver devmap_contextmgmt(9E) callback function.
*/
```

---

**Note:**

The provided text represents a natural language description of the document content. It is designed to be a faithful representation of the document's text, without introducing any errors or hallucinations. The section includes the name, synopsis, parameters, description, return values, context, and examples of the function `devmap_default_access`. The content is formatted to maintain clarity and coherence, ensuring that it is easier to read and understand. The examples provided give a practical demonstration of how the function can be used within the context of Solaris DDI. The document is intended for use by developers who are familiar with the Solaris DDI and need to understand how to implement memory access operations in their driver software.
EXAMPLE 1 Using devmap_default_access in devmap_access.  (Continued)

*/
static int
xx_context_mgt(devmap_cookie_t dhp, void *pvtp, offset_t offset,
    size_t length, uint_t type, uint_t rw)
{
    ......  
    /*
    * see devmap_contextmgt(9E) for an example
    */
}

/*
* Driver devmap_access(9E) entry point
*/
static int
xxdevmap_access(devmap_cookie_t dhp, void *pvtp, offset_t off,
    size_t len, uint_t type, uint_t rw)
{
    offset_t diff;
    int err;

    /*
    * check if off is within the range that supports
    * context management.
    */
    if (((diff = off - OFF_DO_CTXMGT) >= 0 && diff < CTXMGT_SIZE) {  
        /*
        * calculates the length for context switching
        */
        if ((len + off) > (OFF_DO_CTXMGT + CTXMGT_SIZE))
            return (-1);
        /*
        * perform context switching
        */
        err = devmap_do_ctxmgt(dhp, pvtp, off, len, type,  
            rw, xx_context_mgt);
    }  
    /*
    * check if off is within the range that does normal
    * memory mapping.
    */
    } else if (((diff = off - OFF_NORMAL) >= 0 && diff < NORMAL_SIZE) {  
        if ((len + off) > (OFF_NORMAL + NORMAL_SIZE))
            return (-1);
        err = devmap_default_access(dhp, pvtp, off, len, type, rw);
    } else
EXAMPLE 1 Using devmap_default_access in devmap_access. (Continued)

    return (-1);

    return (err);
}

See Also devmap_access(9E), devmap_do_ctxmgmt(9F), devmap_callback_ctl(9S)

Writing Device Drivers
devmap_devmem_setup, devmap_umem_setup – set driver memory mapping parameters

#include <sys/ddi.h>
#include <sys/sunddi.h>

int devmap_devmem_setup(devmap_cookie_t dhp, dev_info_t *dip, struct devmap_callback_ctl *callbackops, uint_t rnumber, offset_t roff, size_t len, uint_t maxprot, uint_t flags, ddi_device_acc_attr_t *accattrp);

int devmap_umem_setup(devmap_cookie_t dhp, dev_info_t *dip, struct devmap_callback_ctl *callbackops, ddi_umem_cookie_t cookie, offset_t koff, size_t len, uint_t maxprot, uint_t flags, ddi_device_acc_attr_t *accattrp);

Interface Level Solaris DDI specific (Solaris DDI).

Parameters devmap_devmem_setup() parameters:

dhp An opaque mapping handle that the system uses to describe the mapping.
dip Pointer to the device’s dev_info structure.
callbackops Pointer to a devmap_callback_ctl(9S) structure. The structure contains pointers to device driver-supplied functions that manage events on the device mapping. The framework will copy the structure to the system private memory.

rnumber Index number to the register address space set.
roff Offset into the register address space.
len Length (in bytes) of the mapping to be mapped.
maxprot Maximum protection flag possible for attempted mapping. Some combinations of possible settings are:

- PROT_READ Read access is allowed.
- PROT_WRITE Write access is allowed.
- PROT_EXEC Execute access is allowed.
- PROT_USER User-level access is allowed (the mapping is being done as a result of a mmap(2) system call).
- PROT_ALL All access is allowed.

flags Must be set to 0.

accattrp Pointer to a ddi_device_acc_attr(9S) structure. The structure contains the device access attributes to be applied to this range of memory.
devmap_umem_setup() parameters:

- **dhp**: An opaque data structure that the system uses to describe the mapping.
- **dip**: Pointer to the device's dev_info structure.
- **callbacks**: Pointer to a devmap_callback_ctl(9S) structure. The structure contains pointers to device driver-supplied functions that manage events on the device mapping.
- **cookie**: A kernel memory cookie (see ddi_umem_alloc(9F)).
- **koff**: Offset into the kernel memory defined by **cookie**.
- **len**: Length (in bytes) of the mapping to be mapped.
- **maxprot**: Maximum protection flag possible for attempted mapping. Some combinations of possible settings are:
  - PROT_READ: Read access is allowed.
  - PROT_WRITE: Write access is allowed.
  - PROT_EXEC: Execute access is allowed.
  - PROT_USER: User-level access is allowed (the mapping is being done as a result of a mmap(2) system call).
  - PROT_ALL: All access is allowed.
- **flags**: Must be set to 0.
- **accattrp**: Pointer to a ddi_device_acc_attr(9S) structure. Ignored in the current release. Reserved for future use.

**Description**

devmap_devmem_setup() and devmap_umem_setup() are used in the devmap(9E) entry point to pass mapping parameters from the driver to the system.

dhp is a device mapping handle that the system uses to store all mapping parameters of a physical contiguous memory. The system copies the data pointed to by callbacks to a system private memory. This allows the driver to free the data after returning from either devmap_devmem_setup() or devmap_umem_setup(). The driver is notified of user events on the mappings via the entry points defined by devmap_callback_ctl(9S). The driver is notified of the following user events:

- **Mapping Setup**: User has called mmap(2) to create a mapping to the device memory.
- **Access**: User has accessed an address in the mapping that has no translations.
- **Duplication**: User has duplicated the mapping. Mappings are duplicated when the process calls fork(2).
- **Unmapping**: User has called munmap(2) on the mapping or is exiting, exit(2).
See `devmap_map(9E)`, `devmap_access(9E)`, `devmap_dup(9E)`, and `devmap_unmap(9E)` for details on these entry points.

By specifying a valid `callbackops` to the system, device drivers can manage events on a device mapping. For example, the `devmap_access(9E)` entry point allows the drivers to perform context switching by unloading the mappings of other processes and to load the mapping of the calling process. Device drivers may specify `NULL` to `callbackops` which means the drivers do not want to be notified by the system.

The maximum protection allowed for the mapping is specified in `maxprot.accattrp` defines the device access attributes. See `ddi_device_acc_attr(9S)` for more details.

`devmap_devmem_setup()` is used for device memory to map in the register set given by `rnumber` and the offset into the register address space given by `roff`. The system uses `rnumber` and `roff` to go up the device tree to get the physical address that corresponds to `roff`. The range to be affected is defined by `len` and `roff`. The range from `roff` to `roff+len` must be a physical contiguous memory and page aligned.

Drivers use `devmap_umem_setup()` for kernel memory to map in the kernel memory described by `cookie` and the offset into the kernel memory space given by `koff`. `cookie` is a kernel memory pointer obtained from `ddi_umem_alloc(9F)`. If `cookie` is `NULL`, `devmap_umem_setup()` returns `-1`. The range to be affected is defined by `len` and `koff`. The range from `koff` to `koff+len` must be within the limits of the kernel memory described by `koff+len` and must be page aligned.

Drivers use `devmap_umem_setup()` to export the kernel memory allocated by `ddi_umem_alloc(9F)` to user space. The system selects a user virtual address that is aligned with the kernel virtual address being mapped to avoid cache incoherence if the mapping is not `MAP_FIXED`.

**Return Values**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Value</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td>Successful completion.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-1</td>
<td>An error occurred.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Context**

`devmap_devmem_setup()` and `devmap_umem_setup()` can be called from user, kernel, and interrupt context.

**See Also**

`exit(2), fork(2), mmap(2), munmap(2), d乖map(9E), d乖iumem_alloc(9F), d乖device_acc_attr(9S), d乖map_callback_ctl(9S)`

*Writing Device Drivers*
Name  devmap_do_ctxmgt – perform device context switching on a mapping

Synopsis  #include <sys/ddi.h>
          #include <sys/sunddi.h>

          int devmap_do_ctxmgt(devmap_cookie_t dhp, void *pvtp, offset_t off,
                               size_t len, uint_t type,
                               uint_t rw, int (*devmap_contextmgt)(devmap_cookie_t,
                               void *, offset_t, size_t, uint_t, uint_t);

Interface Level  Solaris DDI specific (Solaris DDI).

Parameters  

  dhp  An opaque mapping handle that the system uses to describe the mapping.

  pvtp  Driver private mapping data.

  off  User offset within the logical device memory at which the access begins.

  len  Length (in bytes) of the memory being accessed.

  devmap_contextmgt  The address of driver function that the system will call to perform context switching on a mapping. See devmap_contextmgt(9E) for details.

  type  Type of access operation. Provided by devmap_access(9E). Should not be modified.

  rw  Direction of access. Provided by devmap_access(9E). Should not be modified.

Description  Device drivers call devmap_do_ctxmgt() in the devmap_access(9E) entry point to perform device context switching on a mapping. devmap_do_ctxmgt() passes a pointer to a driver supplied callback function, devmap_contextmgt(9E), to the system that will perform the actual device context switching. If devmap_contextmgt(9E) is not a valid driver callback function, the system will fail the memory access operation which will result in a SIGSEGV or SIGBUS signal being delivered to the process.

devmap_do_ctxmgt() performs context switching on the mapping object identified by dhp and pvtp in the range specified by off and len. The arguments dhp, pvtp, type, and rw are provided by the devmap_access(9E) entry point and must not be modified. The range from off to off+len must support context switching.

The system will pass through dhp, pvtp, off, len, type, and rw to devmap_contextmgt(9E) in order to perform the actual device context switching. The return value from devmap_contextmgt(9E) will be returned directly to devmap_do_ctxmgt().
Successful completion.

Non-zero An error occurred.

Context devmap_do_ctxmgt() must be called from the driver’s devmap_access() entry point.

Examples  

EXAMPLE 1 Using devmap_do_ctxmgt in the devmap_access entry point.

The following shows an example of using devmap_do_ctxmgt() in the devmap_access() entry point.

```c
#define OFF_DO_CTXMGT 0x40000000
#define OFF_NORMAL 0x40100000
#define CTXMGT_SIZE 0x100000
#define NORMAL_SIZE 0x100000

/* Driver devmap_contextmgt(9E) callback function. */
static int
xx_context_mgt(devmap_cookie_t dhp, void *pvtp, offset_t offset,
    size_t length, uint_t type, uint_t rw)
{
    ....
    /*
    * see devmap_contextmgt(9E) for an example
    */
}

/* Driver devmap_access(9E) entry point */
static int
xxdevmap_access(devmap_cookie_t dhp, void *pvtp, offset_t off,
    size_t len, uint_t type, uint_t rw)
{
    offset_t diff;
    int err;

    /*
    * check if off is within the range that supports
    * context management.
    */
    if ((diff = off - OFF_DO_CTXMGT) >= 0 && diff < CTXMGT_SIZE) {
        /*
        * calculates the length for context switching
        */
        if ((len + off) > (OFF_DO_CTXMGT + CTXMGT_SIZE))
```

Return Values  

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Value</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td>Successful completion.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Non-zero</td>
<td>An error occurred.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Context  

devmap_do_ctxmgt() must be called from the driver’s devmap_access() entry point.

Examples  

EXAMPLE 1 Using devmap_do_ctxmgt in the devmap_access entry point.
EXAMPLE 1 Using devmap_do_ctxmgt in the devmap_access entry point.  (Continued)

        return (-1);
        /*
         * perform context switching
         */
        err = devmap_do_ctxmgt(dhp, pvtp, off, len, type,
                               rw, xx_context_mgt);
        /*
         * check if off is within the range that does normal
         * memory mapping.
         */
        } else if ((diff = off - OFF_NORMAL) >= 0 && diff < NORMAL_SIZE) {
            if ((len + off) > (OFF_NORMAL + NORMAL_SIZE))
                return (-1);
            err = devmap_default_access(dhp, pvtp, off, len, type, rw);
        } else
            return (err);
        }

See Also  devmap_access(9E), devmap_contextmgt(9E), devmap_default_access(9F)

  Writing Device Drivers
Name  
devmap_set_ctx_timeout – set the timeout value for the context management callback

Synopsis  
#include <sys/ddi.h>
#include <sys/sun_ddi.h>

void devmap_set_ctx_timeout(devmap_cookie_t dhp, clock_t ticks);

Interface Level  
Solaris DDI specific (Solaris DDI).

Parameters  
dhp  
An opaque mapping handle that the system uses to describe the mapping.

ticks  
Number of clock ticks to wait between successive calls to the context management callback function.

Description  
The devmap_set_ctx_timeout() function specifies the time interval for the system to wait between successive calls to the driver’s context management callback function, devmap_contextmgt(9E).

Device drivers typically call devmap_set_ctx_timeout() in the devmap_map(9E) routine. If the drivers do not call devmap_set_ctx_timeout() to set the timeout value, the default timeout value of 0 will result in no delay between successive calls to the driver’s devmap_contextmgt(9E) callback function.

Context  
The devmap_set_ctx_timeout() function can be called from user, interrupt, or kernel context.

See Also  
devmap_contextmgt(9E), devmap_map(9E), timeout(9F)
devmap_setup, ddi_devmap_segmap – set up a user mapping to device memory using the devmap framework

#include <sys/ddi.h>
#include <sys/sunddi.h>

int devmap_setup(dev_t dev, offset_t off, ddi_as_handle_t as,
                 caddr_t *addrp, size_t len, uint_t prot, uint_t maxprot,
                 uint_t flags, cred_t *cred);

int ddi_devmap_segmap(dev_t dev, off_t off, ddi_as_handle_t as,
                       caddr_t *addrp, off_t len, uint_t prot, uint_t maxprot,
                       uint_t flags, cred_t *cred);

Solaris DDI specific (Solaris DDI).

**Parameters**

*dev*  
Device whose memory is to be mapped.

*off*  
User offset within the logical device memory at which the mapping begins.

*as*  
An opaque data structure that describes the address space into which the device memory should be mapped.

*addrp*  
Pointer to the starting address in the address space into which the device memory should be mapped.

*len*  
Length (in bytes) of the memory to be mapped.

*prot*  
A bit field that specifies the protections. Some possible settings combinations are:

- PROT_READ  
Read access is desired.

- PROT_WRITE  
Write access is desired.

- PROT_EXEC  
Execute access is desired.

- PROT_USER  
User-level access is desired (the mapping is being done as a result of a `mmap(2)` system call).

- PROT_ALL  
All access is desired.

*maxprot*  
Maximum protection flag possible for attempted mapping; the PROT_WRITE bit may be masked out if the user opened the special file read-only.

*flags*  
Flags indicating type of mapping. The following flags can be specified:

- MAP_PRIVATE  
Changes are private.

- MAP_SHARED  
Changes should be shared.
The user specified an address in *addrp* rather than letting the system choose an address.

**cred** Pointer to the user credential structure.

**Description**
devmap_setup() and ddi_devmap_segmap() allow device drivers to use the devmap framework to set up user mappings to device memory. The devmap framework provides several advantages over the default device mapping framework that is used by ddi_segmap(9F) or ddi_segmap_setup(9F). Device drivers should use the devmap framework, if the driver wants to:

- use an optimal MMU pagesize to minimize address translations,
- conserve kernel resources,
- receive callbacks to manage events on the mapping,
- export kernel memory to applications,
- set up device contexts for the user mapping if the device requires context switching,
- assign device access attributes to the user mapping, or
- change the maximum protection for the mapping.

devmap_setup() must be called in the segmap(9E) entry point to establish the mapping for the application. ddi_devmap_segmap() can be called in, or be used as, the segmap(9E) entry point. The differences between devmap_setup() and ddi_devmap_segmap() are in the data type used for off and len.

When setting up the mapping, devmap_setup() and ddi_devmap_segmap() call the devmap(9E) entry point to validate the range to be mapped. The devmap(9E) entry point also translates the logical offset (as seen by the application) to the corresponding physical offset within the device address space. If the driver does not provide its own devmap(9E) entry point, EINVAL will be returned to the mmap(2) system call.

**Return Values**

- **0** Successful completion.
- **Non-zero** An error occurred. The return value of devmap_setup() and ddi_devmap_segmap() should be used directly in the segmap(9E) entry point.

**Context**
devmap_setup() and ddi_devmap_segmap() can be called from user or kernel context only.

**See Also**
mmap(2), devmap(9E), segmap(9E), ddi_segmap(9F), ddi_segmap_setup(9F), cb_ops(9S)

*Writing Device Drivers*
devmap_unload(9F)

Name  devmap_unload, devmap_load – control validation of memory address translations

Synopsis  

```
#include <sys/ddi.h>
#include <sys/sunddi.h>

int devmap_load(devmap_cookie_t dhp, offset_t off, size_t len,
                 uint_t type, uint_t rw);

int devmap_unload(devmap_cookie_t dhp, offset_t off, size_t len);
```

Interface Level  Solaris DDI specific (Solaris DDI).

Parameters  

- **dhp**: An opaque mapping handle that the system uses to describe the mapping.
- **off**: User offset within the logical device memory at which the loading or unloading of the address translations begins.
- **len**: Length (in bytes) of the range being affected.
- **devmap_load() only**: 
  - **type**: Type of access operation.
  - **rw**: Direction of access.

Description  

`devmap_unload()` and `devmap_load()` are used to control the validation of the memory mapping described by `dhp` in the specified range. `devmap_unload()` invalidates the mapping translations and will generate calls to the `devmap_access(9E)` entry point next time the mapping is accessed. The drivers use `devmap_load()` to validate the mapping translations during memory access.

A typical use of `devmap_unload()` and `devmap_load()` is in the driver’s context management callback function, `devmap_contextmg(9E)`. To manage a device context, a device driver calls `devmap_unload()` on the context about to be switched out. It switches contexts, and then calls `devmap_load()` on the context switched in. `devmap_unload()` can be used to unload the mappings of other processes as well as the mappings of the calling process, but `devmap_load()` can only be used to load the mappings of the calling process. Attempting to load another process’s mappings with `devmap_load()` will result in a system panic.

For both routines, the range to be affected is defined by the `off` and `len` arguments. Requests affect the entire page containing the `off` and all pages up to and including the page containing the last byte as indicated by `off + len`. The arguments `type` and `rw` are provided by the system to the calling function (for example, `devmap_contextmg(9E)`) and should not be modified.

Supplying a value of 0 for the `len` argument affects all addresses from the `off` to the end of the mapping. Supplying a value of 0 for the `off` argument and a value of 0 for `len` argument affect all addresses in the mapping.
A non-zero return value from either devmap_unload() or devmap_load() will cause the corresponding operation to fail. The failure may result in a SIGSEGV or SIGBUS signal being delivered to the process.

**Return Values**

- **0**  
  Successful completion.
- **Non-zero**  
  An error occurred.

**Context**  
These routines can be called from user or kernel context only.

**Examples**  
**EXAMPLE 1** Managing a One-Page Device Context

The following shows an example of managing a device context that is one page in length.

```c
struct xx_context cur_ctx;

static int  
xxdevmap_contextmgt(devmap_cookie_t dhp, void *pvtp, offset_t off,  
size_t len, uint_t type, uint_t rw)
{
  int err;
  devmap_cookie_t cur_dhp;
  struct xx_pvt *p;
  struct xx_pvt *pvp = (struct xx_pvt *)pvtp;
  /* enable access callbacks for the current mapping */
  if (cur_ctx != NULL && cur_ctx != pvp->ctx) {
    p = cur_ctx->pvt;
    /* unload the region from off to the end of the mapping. */
    cur_dhp = p->dhp;
    if ((err = devmap_unload(cur_dhp, off, len)) != 0)
      return (err);
  }
  /* Switch device context - device dependent*/
  ...
  /* Make handle the new current mapping */
  cur_ctx = pvp->ctx;
  /*
   * Disable callbacks and complete the access for the
   * mapping that generated this callback.
   */
  return (devmap_load(pvp->dhp, off, len, type, rw));
}
```

**See Also** devmap_access(9E), devmap_contextmgt(9E)

*Writing Device Drivers*
disksort—single direction elevator seek sort for buffers

#include <sys/conf.h>
#include <sys/ddi.h>
#include <sys/sunddi.h>

void

disksort(struct diskhd *dp, struct buf *bp);

Solaris DDI specific (Solaris DDI).

dp  A pointer to a diskhd structure. A diskhd structure is essentially identical to head of a
    buffer structure (see buf(9S)). The only defined items of interest for this structure are
    the av_forw and av_back structure elements which are used to maintain the front and
tail pointers of the forward linked I/O request queue.

bp  A pointer to a buffer structure. Typically this is the I/O request that the driver receives
    in its strategy routine (see strategy(9E)). The driver is responsible for initializing the
    b_resid structure element to a meaningful sort key value prior to calling disksort().

The function disksort() sorts a pointer to a buffer into a single forward linked list headed by
the av_forw element of the argument *dp.

It uses a one-way elevator algorithm that sorts buffers into the queue in ascending order based
upon a key value held in the argument buffer structure element b_resid.

This value can either be the driver calculated cylinder number for the I/O request described by
the buffer argument, or simply the absolute logical block for the I/O request, depending on
how fine grained the sort is desired to be or how applicable either quantity is to the device in
question.

The head of the linked list is found by use of the av_forw structure element of the argument
*dp. The tail of the linked list is found by use of the av_back structure element of the argument
*dp. The av_forw element of the *bp argument is used by disksort() to maintain the forward
linkage. The value at the head of the list presumably indicates the currently active disk area.

Context  This function can be called from user, interrupt, or kernel context.

See Also  strategy(9E), buf(9S)

Writing Device Drivers

Warnings  The disksort() function does no locking. Therefore, any locking is completely the
responsibility of the caller.
### Synopsis

```
#include <sys/dlpi.h>
```

#### Parameters

- `void dlokack(queue_t *wq, mblk_t *mp, t_uscalar_t correct_primitive);`
- `void dlerrorack(queue_t *wq, mblk_t *mp, t_uscalar_t errorPrimitive,
  t_uscalar_t error, t_uscalar_t unix_errno);`
- `void dlbindack(queue_t *wq, mblk_t *mp, t_scalar_t sap, const void *
  addrp, t_uscalar_t addrlen, t_uscalar_t maxconind, t_uscalar_t xidtest);`
- `void dlphysaddrack(queue_t *wq, mblk_t *mp, const void *
  addrp, t_uscalar_t addrlen);`
- `void dluderrorind(queue_t *wq, mblk_t *mp, const void *
  addrp, t_uscalar_t addrlen, t_uscalar_t error, t_uscalar_t unix_errno);`

#### Interface Level

Solaris DDI specific (Solaris DDI).

#### Parameters

- `wq` Streams write queue.
- `mp` Pointer to the bind request message.
- `sap` Service access point being requested.
- `addrp` Pointer to the dlpi layer source address.
- `addrlen` Size of the dlpi layer address pointed to by `addrp`.
- `maxconind` Maximum number of `DL_CONNECT_IND` messages allowed to be outstanding per stream.
- `xidtest` The XID and TEST responses supported.
- `correct_primitive` Identifies the DL primitive completing successfully.
- `errorPrimitive` Identifies the DL primitive in error.
- `error` DLPI error associated with the failure in the DLPI request.
- `unix_errno` Corresponding UNIX system error that can be associated with the failure in the DLPI request.

#### Description

All functions described in this manpage take a pointer to the message passed to the DLPI provider (`mblk_t`) and attempt to reuse it in formulating the `M_PROTO` reply. If the message block is too small to be reused, it is freed and a new one is allocated.

All functions reply upstream using `qreply(9F)`. The write-side queue pointer must be provided.
The `dlokaack()` function provides the successful acknowledgement `DL_OK_ACK` message reply to the DLPI provider and is used to complete many of the DLPI requests in the DLPI consumer.

The `dlerrorack()` function provides the unsuccessful acknowledgement `DL_ERROR_ACK` message reply to the DLPI provider and is used for error completions were required for DLPI requests in the DLPI consumer.

The `dlbindack()` function provides the `DL_BIND_ACK` message reply to the DLPI provider and is used to complete the `DL_BIND_REQ` processing in the DLPI consumer.

The `dlphysaddrack()` function provides the `DL_PHYS_ADDR_ACK` message reply used to complete the `DL_PHYS_ADDR_ACK` processing.

The `dluderrorind()` function provides the `DL_UDERROR_IND` message reply used to complete an unsuccessful `DL_UNITDATA_REQ`.

### Return Values
- None.

### Notes
- These functions are not required if you are are writing a DLPI device driver using `gld(7D)`.

### Context
- All DLPI helper functions can be called from user, interrupt, or kernel context.

### See Also
- `gld(7D), dlpi(7P), qreply(9F)`
- *Writing Device Drivers*
- *STREAMS Programming Guide*
**Name**  
drv_getparm – retrieve kernel state information

**Synopsis**  
#include <sys/ddi.h>

```c
int drv_getparm(unsigned int parm, void *value_p);
```

**Interface Level**  
Architecture independent level 1 (DDI/DKI).

**Parameters**

- **parm**  
The kernel parameter to be obtained. Possible values are:

  - **LBOLT**  
    Read the value of `lbolt`. `lbolt` is a `clock_t` that is unconditionally incremented by one at each clock tick. No special treatment is applied when this value overflows the maximum value of the signed integral type `clock_t`. When this occurs, its value will be negative, and its magnitude will be decreasing until it again passes zero. It can therefore not be relied upon to provide an indication of the amount of time that passes since the last system reboot, nor should it be used to mark an absolute time in the system. Only the difference between two measurements of `lbolt` is significant. It is used in this way inside the system kernel for timing purposes.

  - **PPGRP**  
    Read the process group identification number. This number determines which processes should receive a HANGUP or BREAK signal when detected by a driver.

  - **UPROCP**  
    Read the process table token value.

  - **PPID**  
    Read process identification number.

  - **PSID**  
    Read process session identification number.

  - **TIME**  
    Read time in seconds.

  - **UCRED**  
    Return a pointer to the caller’s credential structure.

- **value_p**  
  A pointer to the data space in which the value of the parameter is to be copied.

**Description**  
Since the release of the Solaris 2.6 operating environment, the `drv_getparm()` function has been replaced by `ddi_get_lbolt(9F)`, `ddi_get_time(9F)`, and `ddi_get_pid(9F)`.

The `drv_getparm()` function verifies that `parm` corresponds to a kernel parameter that may be read. If the value of `parm` does not correspond to a parameter or corresponds to a parameter that may not be read, -1 is returned. Otherwise, the value of the parameter is stored in the data space pointed to by `value_p`.

The `drv_getparm()` function does not explicitly check to see whether the device has the appropriate context when the function is called and the function does not check for correct alignment in the data space pointed to by `value_p`. It is the responsibility of the driver writer to use this function only when it is appropriate to do so and to correctly declare the data space needed by the driver.
The `drv_getparm()` function returns 0 to indicate success, –1 to indicate failure. The value stored in the space pointed to by `value_p` is the value of the parameter if 0 is returned, or undefined if –1 is returned. –1 is returned if you specify a value other than LBOLT, PPGRP, PPID, PSID, TIME, UCRED, or UPROCP. Always check the return code when using this function.

Context
The `drv_getparm()` function can be called from user context only when using PPGRP, PPID, PSID, UCRED, or UPROCP. It can be called from user, interrupt, or kernel context when using the LBOLT or TIME argument.

See Also
`ddi_get_lbolt(9F), ddi_get_pid(9F), ddi_get_time(9F), buf(9S)`

*Writing Device Drivers*
# drv_hztousec(9F)

## Name
DRV_HZTOUSEC – convert clock ticks to microseconds

## Synopsis
```
#include <sys/types.h>
#include <sys/ddi.h>

clock_t drv_hztousec(clock_t hertz);
```

## Interface Level
Architecture independent level 1 (DDI/DKI).

## Parameters
- **hertz**: The number of clock ticks to convert.

## Description
The `drv_hztousec()` function converts into microseconds the time expressed by `hertz`, which is in system clock ticks.

The kernel variable `lbolt`, whose value should be retrieved by calling `ddi_get_lbolt(9F)`, is the length of time the system has been up since boot and is expressed in clock ticks. Drivers often use the value of `lbolt` before and after an I/O request to measure the amount of time it took the device to process the request. The `drv_hztousec()` function can be used by the driver to convert the reading from clock ticks to a known unit of time.

## Return Values
The number of microseconds equivalent to the `hertz` parameter. No error value is returned. If the microsecond equivalent to `hertz` is too large to be represented as a `clock_t`, then the maximum `clock_t` value will be returned.

## Context
The `drv_hztousec()` function can be called from user, interrupt, or kernel context.

## See Also
- `ddi_get_lbolt(9F)`, `drv_usectohz(9F)`, `drv_usecwait(9F)`

*Writing Device Drivers*
drv_priv(9F)

Name    drv_priv – determine driver privilege

Synopsis  #include <sys/types.h>
           #include <sys/cred.h>
           #include <sys/ddi.h>

           int drv_priv(cred_t *cr);

Interface Level  Architecture independent level 1 (DDI/DKI).

Parameters  cr    Pointer to the user credential structure.

Description  The drv_priv() function provides a general interface to the system privilege policy. It
              determines whether the credentials supplied by the user credential structure pointed to by cr
              identify a process that has the {PRIV_SYS_DEVICES} privilege asserted in its effective set. This
              function should be used only when file access modes, special minor device numbers, and the
              device policy (see privileges(5), add_drv(1M)) are insufficient to provide protection for the
              requested driver function. It is intended to replace all calls to suser() and any explicit checks
              for effective user ID = 0 in driver code.

Return Values  This routine returns 0 if it succeeds, EPERM if it fails.

Context    The drv_priv() function can be called from user, interrupt, or kernel context.

See Also    add_drv(1M), update_drv(1M), privileges(5)

Writing Device Drivers
# drv_usectohz(9F)

## Name

drv_usectohz – convert microseconds to clock ticks

## Synopsis

```c
#include <sys/types.h>
#include <sys/ddi.h>

clock_t drv_usectohz(clock_t microsecs);
```

## Interface Level

Architecture independent level 1 (DDI/DKI).

## Parameters

- `microsecs` - The number of microseconds to convert.

## Description

The `drv_usectohz()` function converts a length of time expressed in microseconds to a number of system clock ticks. The time arguments to `timeout(9F)` and `delay(9F)` are expressed in clock ticks.

The `drv_usectohz()` function is a portable interface for drivers to make calls to `timeout(9F)` and `delay(9F)` and remain binary compatible should the driver object file be used on a system with a different clock speed (a different number of ticks in a second).

## Return Values

The value returned is the number of system clock ticks equivalent to the `microsecs` argument. No error value is returned. If the clock tick equivalent to `microsecs` is too large to be represented as a `clock_t`, then the maximum `clock_t` value will be returned.

## Context

The `drv_usectohz()` function can be called from user, interrupt, or kernel context.

## See Also

`delay(9F), drv_hztousec(9F), timeout(9F)`

### Writing Device Drivers

If the `microsecs` argument to `drv_usectohz()` is less than `drv_hztousec(9F)`, `drv_usectohz()` returns one tick. This, coupled with multiplication, can result in significantly longer durations than expected. For example, on a machine where hz is 100, calling `drv_usectohz()` with a `microsecs` value less than 10000 returns a result equivalent to 10000 (1 tick). This type of mistake causes code such as “5000 * drv_usectohz(1000)” to compute a duration of 50 seconds instead of the intended 5 seconds.
Name   drv_usecwait – busy-wait for specified interval

Synopsis #include <sys/types.h>
            #include <sys/ddi.h>

            void drv_usecwait(clock_t microsecs);

Interface Level Architecture independent level 1 (DDI/DKI).

Parameters microsecs The number of microseconds to busy-wait.

Description The drv_usecwait() function gives drivers a means of busy-waiting for a specified microsecond count. The amount of time spent busy-waiting may be greater than the microsecond count but will minimally be the number of microseconds specified.

delay(9F) can be used by a driver to delay for a specified number of system ticks, but it has two limitations. First, the granularity of the wait time is limited to one clock tick, which may be more time than is needed for the delay. Second, delay(9F) can be invoked from user or kernel context and hence cannot be used at interrupt time or system initialization.

Often, drivers need to delay for only a few microseconds, waiting for a write to a device register to be picked up by the device. In this case, even in user context, delay(9F) produces too long a wait period.

Context The drv_usecwait() function can be called from user, interrupt, or kernel context.

See Also delay(9F), timeout(9F), untimeout(9F)

Writing Device Drivers

Notes The driver wastes processor time by making this call since drv_usecwait() does not block but simply busy-waits. The driver should only make calls to drv_usecwait() as needed, and only for as much time as needed. The drv_usecwait() function does not mask out interrupts.
**Name** dupb – duplicate a message block descriptor

**Synopsis**
#include <sys/stream.h>

mblk_t *dupb(mblk_t *bp);

**Interface Level** Architecture independent level 1 (DDI/DKI).

**Description**
dupb() creates a new mblk_t structure (see msgb(9S)) to reference the message block pointed to by bp.

Unlike copyb(9F), dupb() does not copy the information in the dblk_t structure (see datab(9S)), but creates a new mblk_t structure to point to it. The reference count in the mblk_t structure (db_ref) is incremented. The new mblk_t structure contains the same information as the original. Note that b_rptr and b_wptr are copied from the bp.

---

**Parameters**

- **bp** Pointer to the message block to be duplicated. mblk_t is an instance of the msgb(9S) structure.

**Return Values**

If successful, dupb() returns a pointer to the new message block. A NULL pointer is returned if dupb() cannot allocate a new message block descriptor or if the db_ref field of the data block structure (see datab(9S)) has reached a maximum value (255).
dupb(9F)

Context  dupb() can be called from user, kernel, or interrupt context.

Examples  EXAMPLE 1  Using dupb()

This srv(9E) (service) routine adds a header to all M_DATA messages before passing them along. dupb is used instead of copyb(9F) because the contents of the header block are not changed.

For each message on the queue, if it is a priority message, pass it along immediately (lines 10–11). Otherwise, if it is anything other than an M_DATA message (line 12), and if it can be sent along (line 13), then do so (line 14). Otherwise, put the message back on the queue and return (lines 16–17). For all M_DATA messages, first check to see if the stream is flow-controlled (line 20). If it is, put the message back on the queue and return (lines 37–38). If it is not, the header block is duplicated (line 21).

dupb() can fail either due to lack of resources or because the message block has already been duplicated 255 times. In order to handle the latter case, the example calls copyb(9F) (line 22). If copyb(9F) fails, it is due to buffer allocation failure. In this case, qbufcall(9F) is used to initiate a callback (lines 30-31) if one is not already pending (lines 26-27).

The callback function, xxxcallback(), clears the recorded qbufcall(9F) callback id and schedules the service procedure (lines 49-50). Note that the close routine, xxxclose(), must cancel any outstanding qbufcall(9F) callback requests (lines 58-59).

If dupb() or copyb(9F) succeed, link the M_DATA message to the new message block (line 34) and pass it along (line 35).

```
 1  xxsrv(q)
 2   queue_t *q;
 3 {
 4   struct xx *xx = (struct xx *)q->q_ptr;
 5   mblk_t *mp;
 6   mblk_t *bp;
 7   extern mblk_t *hdr;
 8
 9   while ((mp = getq(q)) != NULL) {
10     if (mp->b_datap->db_type >= QPCTL) {
11       putnext(q, mp);
12     } else if (mp->b_datap->db_type != M_DATA) {
13       if (canputnext(q)) {
14         putnext(q, mp);
15       } else {
16         putbq(q, mp);
17         return;
18       }
19     } else { /* M_DATA */
20       if (canputnext(q)) {
```
EXAMPLE 1 Using dupb()

(Continued)

```c
21 if ((bp = dupb(hdr)) == NULL)
22     bp = copyb(hdr);
23 if (bp == NULL) {
24     size_t size = msgdsize(mp);
25     putbq(q, mp);
26     if (xx->xx_qbufcall_id) {
27         /* qbufcall pending */
28         return;
29     }
30     xx->xx_qbufcall_id = qbufcall(q, size,
31         BPRI_MED, xxxcallback, (intptr_t)q);
32     return;
33 }
34     linkb(bp, mp);
35     putnext(q, bp);
36 } else {
37     putbq(q, mp);
38     return;
39 }
40 }
41 }
42 }
43 void
44 xxxcallback(q)
45     queue_t *q;
46 {
47     struct xx *xx = (struct xx *)q->q_ptr;
48     xx->xx_qbufcall_id = 0;
49     qenable(q);
50 }
51 }
52 xxxclose(q, cflag, crp)
53     queue_t *q;
54     int cflag;
55     cred_t *crp;
56 {
57     struct xx *xx = (struct xx *)q->q_ptr;
58     ... if (xx->xx_qbufcall_id)
59     qunbufcall(q, xx->xx_qbufcall_id);
60     ...
See Also srv(9E), copyb(9F), qbufcall(9F), datab(9S), msgb(9S)

Writing Device Drivers STREAMS Programming Guide
**Name**  
dupmsg – duplicate a message

**Synopsis**  
#include <sys/stream.h>

```c
mblk_t *dupmsg(mblk_t *mp);
```

**Interface Level**  
Architecture independent level 1 (DDI/DKI).

**Parameters**  
`mp`  
Pointer to the message.

**Description**  
dupmsg() forms a new message by copying the message block descriptors pointed to by `mp` and linking them. dupb(9F) is called for each message block. The data blocks themselves are not duplicated.

**Return Values**  
If successful, dupmsg() returns a pointer to the new message block. Otherwise, it returns a NULL pointer. A return value of NULL indicates either memory depletion or the data block reference count, db_ref (see datab(9S)), has reached a limit (255). See dupb(9F).

**Context**  
dupmsg() can be called from user, kernel, or interrupt context.

**Examples**  
**EXAMPLE 1** Using dupmsg()

See copyb(9F) for an example using dupmsg().

**See Also**  
copyb(9F), copymsg(9F), dupb(9F), datab(9S)

*Writing Device Drivers*

*STREAMS Programming Guide*
enableok(9F)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>enableok – reschedule a queue for service</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Synopsis</td>
<td><code>#include &lt;sys/stream.h&gt;</code>&lt;br&gt;<code>#include &lt;sys/ddi.h&gt;</code>&lt;br&gt;<code>void enableok(queue_t *q);</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Interface Level</td>
<td>Architecture independent level 1 (DDI/DKI).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Parameters</td>
<td><code>q</code> A pointer to the queue to be rescheduled.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Description</td>
<td>The <code>enableok()</code> function enables queue <code>q</code> to be rescheduled for service. It reverses the effect of a previous call to <code>noenable(9F)</code> on <code>q</code> by turning off the QNOENB flag in the queue.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Context</td>
<td>The <code>enableok()</code> function can be called from user, interrupt, or kernel context.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Examples</td>
<td><strong>EXAMPLE 1</strong> Using <code>enableok()</code>&lt;br&gt;The <code>qrestart()</code> routine uses two STREAMS functions to restart a queue that has been disabled. The <code>enableok()</code> function turns off the QNOENB flag, allowing the <code>qenable(9F)</code> to schedule the queue for immediate processing.&lt;br&gt;<code>1 void&lt;br&gt;2 qrestart(rdwr_q)&lt;br&gt;3 register queue_t *rdwr_q;&lt;br&gt;4 {&lt;br&gt;5 enableok(rdwr_q);&lt;br&gt;6 /* re-enable a queue that has been disabled */&lt;br&gt;7 (void) qenable(rdwr_q);&lt;br&gt;8 }</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>See Also</td>
<td><code>noenable(9F), qenable(9F)</code></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Writing Device Drivers*

*STREAMS Programming Guide*
esballoc(9F)

**Name**
esballoc, desballoc – allocate a message block using a caller-supplied buffer

**Synopsis**
#include <sys/stream.h>

mblk_t *esballoc(uchar_t *base, size_t size, uint_t pri,
                 frtn_t *fr_rtnp);

mblk_t *desballoc(uchar_t *base, size_t size, uint_t pri,
                 frtn_t *fr_rtnp);

**Interface Level**
esballoc(): Architecture independent level 1 (DDI/DKI)

desballoc(): Solaris DDI specific (Solaris DDI)

**Parameters**

- **base** Address of caller-supplied data buffer.
- **size** Number of bytes in data buffer.
- **pri** Priority of the request (no longer used).
- **fr_rtnp** Free routine data structure.

**Description**
The esballoc() and desballoc() functions operate identically to allocb(9F),
eXcept that the data buffer to associate with the message is specified by the caller.
The allocated message will have both the b_wptr and b_rptr set to the supplied data buffer
starting at base. Only the buffer itself can be specified by the caller. The message block
and data block header are allocated as if by allocb(9F).

When freeb(9F) is called to free the message, the driver’s message-freeing routine,
referred through the free_rtn(9S) structure, is called with appropriate arguments to free
the data buffer.

The free_rtn(9S) structure includes the following members:

void (*free_func)(); /* caller’s freeing routine */
caddr_t free_arg; /* argument to free_func() */

Instead of requiring a specific number of arguments, the free_arg field is defined of type
caddr_t. This way, the driver can pass a pointer to a structure if more than one argument is
needed.

If esballoc() was used, then free_func will be called asynchronously at some point after
the message is no longer referenced. If desballoc() was used, then free_func will be called
synchronously by the thread releasing the final reference. See freeb(9F).

The free_func routine must not sleep, and must not access any dynamically allocated data
structures that could be freed before or during its execution. In addition, because messages
allocated with desballoc() are freed in the context of the caller, free_func must not call...
another module's put procedure, or attempt to acquire a private module lock which might be held by another thread across a call to a STREAMS utility routine that could free a message block. Finally, free_func routines specified using desballoc may run in interrupt context and thus must only use synchronization primitives that include an interrupt priority returned from ddi_intr_get_pri(9F) or ddi_intr_get_softint_pri(9F). If any of these restrictions are not followed, the possibility of lock recursion or deadlock exists.

**Return Values**  
On success, a pointer to the newly allocated message block is returned. On failure, NULL is returned.

**Context**  
The esballoc() and desballoc() functions can be called from user, interrupt, or kernel context.

**Attributes**  
See attributes(5) for descriptions of the following attributes:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ATTRIBUTE TYPE</th>
<th>ATTRIBUTE VALUE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Interface Stability</td>
<td>Committed</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**See Also**  
allocb(9F), ddi_intr_get_pri(9F), ddi_intr_get_softint_pri(9F), freeb(9F), datab(9S), free_rtn(9S)

*Writing Device Drivers*

*STREAMS Programming Guide*
esbbcall(9F)

Name  esbbcall – call function when buffer is available

Synopsis  

```
#include <sys/stream.h>

bufcall_id_t esbbcall(uint_t pri, void (*func)(void *arg),
                      void(arg));
```

Interface Level  Architecture independent level 1 (DDI/DKI).

Parameters  

- `pri`: Priority of allocation request (to be used by `alloca(9F)` function, called by `esbbcall()`).
- `func`: Function to be called when buffer becomes available.
- `arg`: Argument to `func`.

Description  The `esbbcall()` function, like `bufcall(9F)`, serves as a `timeout(9F)` call of indeterminate length. If `esballoc(9F)` is unable to allocate a message and data block header to go with its externally supplied data buffer, `esbbcall()` can be used to schedule the routine `func`, to be called with the argument `arg` when a buffer becomes available. The `func` argument can be a routine that calls `esballoc(9F)` or it may be another kernel function.

Return Values  On success, a `bufcall` ID is returned. On failure, 0 is returned. The value returned from a successful call should be saved for possible future use with `unbufcall()` should it become necessary to cancel the `esbbcall()` request (as at driver close time).

Context  The `esbbcall()` function can be called from user, interrupt, or kernel context.

See Also  `alloca(9F), bufcall(9F), esballoc(9F), timeout(9F), datab(9S), unbufcall(9F)`

**Writing Device Drivers STREAMS Programming Guide**
flushband(9F)

Name
flushband – flush messages for a specified priority band

Synopsis
```
#include <sys/stream.h>

void flushband(queue_t *q, unsigned char pri, int flag);
```

Interface Level
Architecture independent level 1 (DDI/DKI).

Parameters
- `q` Pointer to the queue.
- `pri` Priority of messages to be flushed.
- `flag` Valid flag values are:
  - `FLUSHDATA` Flush only data messages (types `M_DATA`, `M_DELAY`, `M_PROTO`, and `M_PCPROTO`).
  - `FLUSHALL` Flush all messages.

Description
The `flushband()` function flushes messages associated with the priority band specified by `pri`. If `pri` is 0, only normal and high priority messages are flushed. Otherwise, messages are flushed from the band `pri` according to the value of `flag`.

Context
The `flushband()` function can be called from user, interrupt, or kernel context.

See Also
flushq(9F)

Writing Device Drivers STREAMS Programming Guide
Name  flushq – remove messages from a queue

Synopsis  
#include <sys/stream.h>

void flushq(queue_t *q, int flag);

Interface Level  Architecture independent level 1 (DDI/DKI).

Parameters  
q  Pointer to the queue to be flushed.
flag  Valid flag values are:
      FLUSHDATA  Flush only data messages (types M_DATA M_DELAY M_PROTO and M_PCPROTO).
      FLUSHALL  Flush all messages.

Description  The flushq() function frees messages and their associated data structures by calling freemsg(9F). If the queue's count falls below the low water mark and the queue was blocking an upstream service procedure, the nearest upstream service procedure is enabled.

Context  The flushq() function can be called from user, interrupt, or kernel context.

Examples  EXAMPLE 1  Using flushq()

This example depicts the canonical flushing code for STREAMS modules. The module has a write service procedure and potentially has messages on the queue. If it receives an M_FLUSH message, and if the FLUSHR bit is on in the first byte of the message (line 10), then the read queue is flushed (line 11). If the FLUSHW bit is on (line 12), then the write queue is flushed (line 13). Then the message is passed along to the next entity in the stream (line 14). See the example for qreply(9F) for the canonical flushing code for drivers.

```c
/*
 * Module write-side put procedure.
 */
xxxwput(q, mp)
{
queue_t *q;
mblk_t *mp;
{
switch(mp->b_datap->db_type) {
  case M_FLUSH:
  if (*mp->b_rptr & FLUSHR)
    flushq(RD(q), FLUSHALL);
  if (*mp->b_rptr & FLUSHW)
    flushq(q, FLUSHALL);
  putnext(q, mp);
  break;
  ...
}

```
EXAMPLE 1  Using flushq()  (Continued)

17   }

See Also  flushband(9F), freemsg(9F), putq(9F), qreply(9F)

Writing Device Drivers STREAMS Programming Guide
Name freeb – free a message block

Synopsis #include <sys/stream.h>

void freeb(mblk_t *bp);

Parameters bp Pointer to the message block to be deallocated. mblk_t is an instance of the msgb(9S) structure.

Interface Level Architecture independent level 1 (DDI/DKI).

Description The freeb() function deallocates a message block. If the reference count of the db_ref member of the datab(9S) structure is greater than 1, freeb() decrements the count. If db_ref equals 1, it deallocates the message block and the corresponding data block and buffer.

If the data buffer to be freed was allocated with the esballoc(9F), the buffer may be a non-STREAMS resource. In that case, the driver must be notified that the attached data buffer needs to be freed, and run its own freeing routine. To make this process independent of the driver used in the stream, freeb() finds the free_rtn(9S) structure associated with the buffer. The free_rtn structure contains a pointer to the driver-dependent routine, which releases the buffer. Once this is accomplished, freeb() releases the STREAMS resources associated with the buffer.

Context The freeb() function can be called from user, interrupt, or kernel context.

Examples EXAMPLE 1 Using freeb()

See copyb(9F) for an example of using freeb().

See Also allocb(9F), copyb(9F), dupb(9F), esballoc(9F), free_rtn(9S)

Writing Device Drivers

STREAMS Programming Guide
Name  freemsg – free all message blocks in a message
Synopsis  #include <sys/stream.h>

    void freemsg(mblk_t *mp);

Interface Level  Architecture independent level 1 (DDI/DKI).

Parameters  mp  Pointer to the message blocks to be deallocated. mblk_t is an instance of the msgb(9S) structure. If mp is NULL, freemsg() immediately returns.

Description  The freemsg() function calls freeb(9F) to free all message and data blocks associated with the message pointed to by mp.

Context  The freemsg() function can be called from user, interrupt, or kernel context.

Examples  EXAMPLE 1  Using freemsg()
           See copymsg(9F).

See Also  copymsg(9F), freeb(9F), msgb(9S)

            Writing Device Drivers

            STREAMS Programming Guide

Notes  The behavior of freemsg() when passed a NULL pointer is Solaris-specific.
Name  freerbuf – free a raw buffer header

Synopsis  

```
#include <sys/buf.h>
#include <sys/ddi.h>
```

```
void freerbuf(struct buf *bp);
```

Interface Level  Architecture independent level 1 (DDI/DKI).

Parameters  

- `bp`  Pointer to a previously allocated buffer header structure.

Description  The `freerbuf()` function frees a raw buffer header previously allocated by `getrbuf(9F)`. This function does not sleep and so may be called from an interrupt routine.

Context  The `freerbuf()` function can be called from user, interrupt, or kernel context.

See Also  `getrbuf(9F), kmem_alloc(9F), kmem_free(9F), kmem_zalloc(9F)`
**freezestr(9F)**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>freezestr, unfreezestr – freeze, thaw the state of a stream</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| Synopsis        | #include <sys/stream.h>
                 | #include <sys/ddi.h>                                         |

```c
void freezestr(queue_t *q);
void unfreezestr(queue_t *q);
```

**Interface Level** Architecture independent level 1 (DDI/DKI).

**Parameters**
- `q` Pointer to the message queue to freeze/unfreeze.

**Description**

freezestr() freezes the state of the entire stream containing the queue pair `q`. A frozen stream blocks any thread attempting to enter any open, close, put or service routine belonging to any queue instance in the stream, and blocks any thread currently within the stream if it attempts to put messages onto or take messages off of any queue within the stream (with the sole exception of the caller). Threads blocked by this mechanism remain so until the stream is thawed by a call to unfreezestr().

Drivers and modules must freeze the stream before manipulating the queues directly (as opposed to manipulating them through programmatic interfaces such as `getq(9F)`, `putq(9F)`, `putbq(9F)`, etc.)

**Context**

These routines may be called from any stream open, close, put or service routine as well as interrupt handlers, callouts and call-backs.

**See Also**

*Writing Device Drivers*

*STREAMS Programming Guide*

**Notes**

The `freezestr()` and `unfreezestr()` functions can have a serious impact on system performance. Their use should be very limited. In most cases, there is no need to use `freezestr()` and there are usually better ways to accomplish what you need to do than by freezing the stream.

Calling `freezestr()` to freeze a stream that is already frozen by the caller will result in a single-party deadlock.

The caller of `unfreezestr()` must be the thread who called `freezestr()`.

STREAMS utility functions such as `getq(9F)`, `putq(9F)`, `putbq(9F)`, and so forth, should not be called by the caller of `freezestr()` while the stream is still frozen, as they indirectly freeze the stream to ensure atomicity of queue manipulation.
geterror(9F)

**Name**  geterror – return I/O error

**Synopsis**  
```
#include <sys/types.h>
#include <sys/buf.h>
#include <sys/ddi.h>

int geterror(struct buf *bp);
```

**Interface Level**  Architecture independent level 1 (DDI/DKI).

**Parameters**  
- `bp`  Pointer to a `buf(9S)` structure.

**Description**  The `geterror()` function returns the error number from the error field of the buffer header structure.

**Return Values**  An error number indicating the error condition of the I/O request is returned. If the I/O request completes successfully, 0 is returned.

**Context**  The `geterror()` function can be called from user, interrupt, or kernel context.

**See Also**  
- `buf(9S)`  

*Writing Device Drivers*
gethrtime(9F)

Name  gethrtime – get high resolution time

Synopsis  #include <sys/time.h>

hrtime_t gethrtime(void);

Description  The gethrtime() function returns the current high-resolution real time. Time is expressed as nanoseconds since some arbitrary time in the past; it is not correlated in any way to the time of day, and thus is not subject to resetting or drifting by way of adjtime(2) or settimeofday(3C). The hi-res timer is ideally suited to performance measurement tasks, where cheap, accurate interval timing is required.

Return Values  gethrtime() always returns the current high-resolution real time. There are no error conditions.

Context  There are no restrictions on the context from which gethrtime() can be called.

See Also  proc(1), gettimeofday(3C), settimeofday(3C), attributes(5)

Notes  Although the units of hi-res time are always the same (nanoseconds), the actual resolution is hardware dependent. Hi-res time is guaranteed to be monotonic (it does not go backward, it does not periodically wrap) and linear (it does not occasionally speed up or slow down for adjustment, as the time of day can), but not necessarily unique: two sufficiently proximate calls might return the same value.

The time base used for this function is the same as that for gettimeofday(3C). Values returned by both of these functions can be interleaved for comparison purposes.
getmajor(9F)

**Name**  getmajor – get major device number

**Synopsis**  
```
#include <sys/types.h>
#include <sys/mkdev.h>
#include <sys/ddi.h>

major_t getmajor(dev_t dev);
```

**Interface Level**  Architecture independent level 1 (DDI/DKI).

**Parameters**  
- `dev`  Device number.

**Description**  The getmajor() function extracts the major number from a device number.

**Return Values**  The major number.

**Context**  The getmajor() function can be called from user, interrupt, or kernel context.

**Examples**  
**EXAMPLE 1** Using getmajor()  
The following example shows both the getmajor() and getminor(9F) functions used in a debug `cmn_err(9F)` statement to return the major and minor numbers for the device supported by the driver.
```
dev_t dev;

#ifdef DEBUG
    cmn_err(CE_NOTE,"Driver Started. Major# = %d, Minor# = %d", getmajor(dev), getminor(dev));
#endif
```

**See Also**  `cmn_err(9F), getminor(9F), makedevice(9F)`

*Writing Device Drivers*

**Warnings**  No validity checking is performed. If `dev` is invalid, an invalid number is returned.
Name  getminor – get minor device number

Synopsis  
#include <sys/types.h>
#include <sys/mkdev.h>
#include <sys/ddi.h>

minor_t getminor(dev_t dev);

Interface Level  Architecture independent level 1 (DDI/DKI).
Parameters  
dev      Device number.

Description  The getminor() function extracts the minor number from a device number.

Return Values  The minor number.

Context  The getminor() function can be called from user, interrupt, or kernel context.

Examples  See the getmajor(9F) manual page for an example of how to use getminor().

See Also  getmajor(9F), makedevice(9F)

Writing Device Drivers

Warnings  No validity checking is performed. If dev is invalid, an invalid number is returned.
**Name**

get_pktiopb, free_pktiopb – allocate/free a SCSI packet in the iopb map

**Synopsis**

```c
#include <sys/scsi/scsi.h>

struct scsi_pkt *get_pktiopb(struct scsi_address *ap,
   caddr_t *datap, int cdrlen, int statuslen, int datalen,
   int readflag, int (*callback);

void free_pktiopb(struct scsi_pkt *pkt, caddr_t datap, int datalen);
```

**Interface Level**

These interfaces are obsolete. Use `scsi_alloc_consistent_buf(9F)` instead of `get_pktiopb()`. Use `scsi_free_consistent_buf(9F)` instead of `free_pktiopb()`.

**Parameters**

- `ap` Pointer to the target's `scsi_address` structure.
- `datap` Pointer to the address of the packet, set by this function.
- `cdrlen` Number of bytes required for the SCSI command descriptor block (CDB).
- `statuslen` Number of bytes required for the SCSI status area.
- `datalen` Number of bytes required for the data area of the SCSI command.
- `readflag` If non-zero, data will be transferred from the SCSI target.
- `callback` Pointer to a callback function, or `NULL_FUNC` or `SLEEP_FUNC`

`pkt` Pointer to a `scsi_pkt(9S)` structure.

**Description**

The `get_pktiopb()` function allocates a `scsi_pkt` structure that has a small data area allocated. It is used by some SCSI commands such as `REQUEST_SENSE`, which involve a small amount of data and require cache-consistent memory for proper operation. It uses `ddi_iopb_alloc(9F)` for allocating the data area and `scsi_resalloc(9F)` to allocate the packet and DMA resources.

`callback` indicates what `get_pktiopb()` should do when resources are not available:

- `NULL_FUNC` Do not wait for resources. Return a NULL pointer.
- `SLEEP_FUNC` Wait indefinitely for resources.

Other Values `callback` points to a function which is called when resources may have become available. `callback` must return either 0 (indicating that it attempted to allocate resources but failed to do so again), in which case it is put back on a list to be called again later, or 1 indicating either success in allocating resources or indicating that it no longer cares for a retry.

The `free_pktiopb()` function is used for freeing the packet and its associated resources.
The get_pktiopb() function returns a pointer to the newly allocated scsi_pkt or a NULL pointer.

If callback is SLEEP_FUNC, then this routine can be called only from user or kernel context. Otherwise, it can be called from user, interrupt, or kernel context. The callback function should not block or call routines that block.

The free_pktiopb() function can be called from user, interrupt, or kernel context.

Attributes
See attributes(5) for a description of the following attributes:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ATTRIBUTE TYPE</th>
<th>ATTRIBUTE VALUE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Stability Level</td>
<td>Obsolete</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

See Also
attributes(5), ddi_iopb_alloc(9F), scsi_alloc_consistent_buf(9F),
scsi_free_consistent_buf(9F), scsi_pktalloc(9F), scsi_resalloc(9F), scsi_pkt(9S)

Writing Device Drivers

Notes
The get_pktiopb() and free_pktiopb() functions are obsolete and will be discontinued in a future release. These functions have been replaced by, respectively, scsi_alloc_consistent_buf(9F) and scsi_free_consistent_buf(9F).

The get_pktiopb() function uses scarce resources. For this reason and its obsolescence (see above), its use is discouraged.
Name  getq – get the next message from a queue
Synopsis  

```
#include <sys/stream.h>

mblk_t *getq(queue_t *q);
```

Interface Level  Architecture independent level 1 (DDI/DKI).
Parameters  

- `q`  Pointer to the queue from which the message is to be retrieved.

Description  

The `getq()` function is used by a service (`srv(9E)`) routine to retrieve its enqueued messages. A module or driver may include a service routine to process enqueued messages. Once the STREAMS scheduler calls `srv()` it must process all enqueued messages, unless prevented by flow control. `getq()` obtains the next available message from the top of the queue pointed to by `q`. It should be called in a `while` loop that is exited only when there are no more messages or flow control prevents further processing.

If an attempt was made to write to the queue while it was blocked by flow control, `getq()` back-enables (restarts) the service routine once it falls below the low water mark.

Return Values  

- If there is a message to retrieve, `getq()` returns a pointer to it. If no message is queued, `getq()` returns a NULL pointer.

Context  

- The `getq()` function can be called from user, interrupt, or kernel context.

Examples  

See `dupb(9F)`.

See Also  

- `srv(9E)`, `bcanput(9F)`, `canput(9F)`, `dupb(9F)`, `putbq(9F)`, `putq(9F)`, `qenable(9F)`

Writing Device Drivers

STREAMS Programming Guide
getrbuf(9F)

Name  getrbuf – get a raw buffer header

Synopsis  
#include <sys/buf.h>
#include <sys/kmem.h>
#include <sys/ddi.h>

struct buf *getrbuf(int sleepflag);

Interface Level  Architecture independent level 1 (DDI/DKI).

Parameters  sleepflag  Indicates whether driver should sleep for free space.

Description  The getrbuf() function allocates the space for a buffer header to the caller. It is used in cases where a block driver is performing raw (character interface) I/O and needs to set up a buffer header that is not associated with the buffer cache.

The getrbuf() function calls kmem_alloc(9F) to perform the memory allocation. kmem_alloc() requires the information included in the sleepflag argument. If sleepflag is set to KM_SLEEP, the driver may sleep until the space is freed up. If sleepflag is set to KM_NOSLEEP, the driver will not sleep. In either case, a pointer to the allocated space is returned or NULL to indicate that no space was available.

Return Values  The getrbuf() function returns a pointer to the allocated buffer header, or NULL if no space is available.

Context  The getrbuf() function can be called from user, interrupt, or kernel context. (Drivers must not allow getrbuf() to sleep if called from an interrupt routine.)

See Also  bioinit(9F), freerbuf(9F), kmem_alloc(9F), kmem_free(9F)

Writing Device Drivers
Name  
gld, gld_mac_alloc, gld_mac_free, gld_register, gld_unregister, gld_recv, gld_sched, gld_intr
– Generic LAN Driver service routines

Synopsis  
#include <sys/gld.h>

gld_mac_info_t *gld_mac_alloc(dev_info_t *dip);
void gld_mac_free(gld_mac_info_t *macinfo);
int gld_register(dev_info_t *dip, char *name, gld_mac_info_t *macinfo);
int gld_unregister(gld_mac_info_t *macinfo);
void gld_recv(gld_mac_info_t *macinfo, mblk_t *mp);
void gld_sched(gld_mac_info_t *macinfo);
uint_t gld_intr(caddr_t);
void gld_linkstate(gld_mac_info_t *macinfo, int32_t newstate);

Interface Level  
Solaris architecture specific (Solaris DDI).

Parameters  
macinfo  Pointer to a gld_mac_info(9S) structure.
dip  Pointer to dev_info structure.
name  Device interface name.
mp  Pointer to a message block containing a received packet.
newstate  Media link state.

Description  
gld_mac_alloc() allocates a new gld_mac_info(9S) structure and returns a pointer to it. Some of the GLD-private elements of the structure may be initialized before gld_mac_alloc() returns; all other elements are initialized to zero. The device driver must initialize some structure members, as described in gld_mac_info(9S), before passing the mac_info pointer to gld_register().

gld_mac_free() frees a gld_mac_info(9S) structure previously allocated by gld_mac_alloc().

gld_register() is called from the device driver's attach(9E) routine, and is used to link the GLD-based device driver with the GLD framework. Before calling gld_register() the device driver's attach(9E) routine must first use gld_mac_alloc() to allocate a gld_mac_info(9S) structure, and initialize several of its structure elements. See gld_mac_info(9S) for more information. A successful call to gld_register() performs the following actions:

- links the device-specific driver with the GLD system;
- sets the device-specific driver's private data pointer (using ddi_set_driver_private(9F)) to point to the macinfo structure;
- creates the minor device node.
The device interface name passed to gld_register() must exactly match the name of the driver module as it exists in the filesystem.

The driver's attach(9E) routine should return DDI_SUCCESS if gld_register() succeeds. If gld_register() returns DDI_FAILURE, the attach(9E) routine should deallocate any resources it allocated before calling gld_register() and then also return DDI_FAILURE.

gld_unregister() is called by the device driver's detach(9E) function, and if successful, performs the following tasks:

- ensures the device's interrupts are stopped, calling the driver's gldm_stop() routine if necessary;
- removes the minor device node;
- unlinks the device-specific driver from the GLD system.

If gld_unregister() returns DDI_SUCCESS, the detach(9E) routine should deallocate any data structures allocated in the attach(9E) routine, using gld_mac_free() to deallocate the macinfo structure, and return DDI_SUCCESS. If gld_unregister() returns DDI_FAILURE, the driver's detach(9E) routine must leave the device operational and return DDI_FAILURE.

gld_recv() is called by the driver's interrupt handler to pass a received packet upstream. The driver must construct and pass a STREAMS M_DATA message containing the raw packet. gld_recv() determines which STREAMS queues, if any, should receive a copy of the packet, duplicating it if necessary. It then formats a DL_UNITDATA_IND message, if required, and passes the data up all appropriate streams.

The driver should avoid holding mutex or other locks during the call to gld_recv(). In particular, locks that could be taken by a transmit thread may not be held during a call to gld_recv(): the interrupt thread that calls gld_recv() may in some cases carry out processing that includes sending an outgoing packet, resulting in a call to the driver's gldm_send() routine. If the gldm_send() routine were to try to acquire a mutex being held by the gldm_intr() routine at the time it calls gld_recv(), this could result in a panic due to recursive mutex entry.

gld_sched() is called by the device driver to reschedule stalled outbound packets. Whenever the driver's gldm_send() routine has returned GLD_NORESOURCES, the driver must later call gld_sched() to inform the GLD framework that it should retry the packets that previously could not be sent. gld_sched() should be called as soon as possible after resources are again available, to ensure that GLD resumes passing outbound packets to the driver's gldm_send() routine in a timely way. (If the driver's gldm_stop() routine is called, the driver is absolved from this obligation until it later again returns GLD_NORESOURCES from its gldm_send() routine; however, extra calls to gld_sched() will not cause incorrect operation.)

gld_intr() is GLD's main interrupt handler. Normally it is specified as the interrupt routine in the device driver's call to ddi_add_intr(9F). The argument to the interrupt handler
(specified as *int_handler_arg* in the call to `ddi_add_intr(9F)`) must be a pointer to the `gld_mac_info(9S)` structure. `gld_intr()` will, when appropriate, call the device driver's `gldm_intr()` function, passing that pointer to the `gld_mac_info(9S)` structure. However, if the driver uses a high-level interrupt, it must provide its own high-level interrupt handler, and trigger a soft interrupt from within that. In this case, `gld_intr()` may be specified as the soft interrupt handler in the call to `ddi_add_softintr()`.

`gld_linkstate()` is called by the device driver to notify GLD of changes in the media link state. The new state argument should be set to one of the following:

- **GLD_LINKSTATE_DOWN**: The media link is unavailable.
- **GLD_LINKSTATE_UP**: The media link is unavailable.
- **GLD_LINKSTATE_UNKNOWN**: The status of the media link is unknown.

If a driver calls `gld_linkstate()`, it must also set the GLD_CAP_LINKSTATE bit in the `gldm_capabilities` field of the `gld_mac_info(9S)` structure.

**Return Values**
- `gld_mac_alloc()` returns a pointer to a new `gld_mac_info(9S)` structure.
- `gld_register()` and `gld_unregister()` return:
  - `DDI_SUCCESS` on success.
  - `DDI_FAILURE` on failure.
- `gld_intr()` returns a value appropriate for an interrupt handler.

**See Also**
- `gld(7D), gld(9E), gld_mac_info(9S), gld_stats(9S), dlpi(7P), attach(9E), ddi_add_intr(9F)`.

*Writing Device Drivers*
hat_getkpfnum

**Name**
hat_getkpfnum – get page frame number for kernel address

**Synopsis**

```c
#include <sys/types.h>
#include <sys/ddi.h>
#include <sys/sunddi.h>

pfn_t hat_getkpfnum(caddr_t addr);
```

This interface is obsolete. A driver devmap(9E) entry point should be provided instead.

**Parameters**

`addr` The kernel virtual address for which the page frame number is to be returned.

**Description**

`hat_getkpfnum()` returns the page frame number corresponding to the kernel virtual address, `addr`.

`addr` must be a kernel virtual address which maps to device memory. ddi_map_regs(9F) can be used to obtain this address. For example, ddi_map_regs(9F) can be called in the driver's attach(9E) routine. The resulting kernel virtual address can be saved by the driver (see ddi_soft_state(9F)) and used in mmap(9E). The corresponding ddi_unmap_regs(9F) call can be made in the driver's detach(9E) routine. Refer to mmap(9E) for more information.

**Return Values**

The page frame number corresponding to the valid, device-mapped virtual address `addr`. Otherwise the return value is undefined.

**Context**

`hat_getkpfnum()` can be called only from user or kernel context.

**Attributes**

See attributes(5) for descriptions of the following attributes:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ATTRIBUTE TYPE</th>
<th>ATTRIBUTE VALUE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Interface stability</td>
<td>Obsolete</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**See Also**

attach(9E), detach(9E), devmap(9E), mmap(9E), ddi_map_regs(9F), ddi_soft_state(9F), ddi_unmap_regs(9F)

**Writing Device Drivers**

**Notes**

For some devices, mapping device memory in the driver's attach(9E) routine and unmapping device memory in the driver's detach(9E) routine is a sizeable drain on system resources. This is especially true for devices with a large amount of physical address space. Refer to mmap(9E) for alternative methods.
Name  hook_alloc – allocate a hook_t data structure

Synopsis  #include <sys/hook.h>

          hook_t *hook_alloc(const int version);

Interface Level  Solaris DDI specific (Solaris DDI).

Parameters  version  must always be the symbol HOOK_VERSION.

Description  The hook_alloc() function allocates a hook_t structure, returning a pointer for the caller to use.

Return Values  Upon success, hook_alloc() returns a pointer to the allocated hook_t structure. On failure, hook_alloc() returns a NULL pointer.

Context  The hook_alloc() function may be called from user or kernel context.

Attributes  See attributes(5) for descriptions of the following attributes:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ATTRIBUTE TYPE</th>
<th>ATTRIBUTE VALUE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Availability</td>
<td>SUNWcsu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Interface Stability</td>
<td>Committed</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

See Also  hook_free(9F), hook_t(9S)
**Name**  
hook_free – free a hook_t data structure

**Synopsis**  
#include <sys/hook.h>

    void hook_free(hook_t * hook);

**Interface Level**  
Solaris DDI specific (Solaris DDI).

**Parameters**  
hook  
pointer returned by hook_alloc(9F).

**Description**  
The hook_free() function frees a hook_t structure that was originally allocated by hook_alloc(9F).

**Context**  
The hook_free() function may be called from user, kernel, or interrupt context.

**Attributes**  
See attributes(5) for descriptions of the following attributes:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ATTRIBUTE TYPE</th>
<th>ATTRIBUTE VALUE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Availability</td>
<td>SUNWcsu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Interface Stability</td>
<td>Committed</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**See Also**  
hook_alloc(9F), hook_t(9S)
id32_alloc(9F)

Name  id32_alloc, id32_free, id32_lookup – 32-bit driver ID management routines

Synopsis  
#include <sys/ddi.h>
#include <sys/id32.h>

uint32_t id32_alloc(void *ptr, int flag);
void id32_free(uint32_t token);
void *id32_lookup(uint32_t token);

Interface Level  Solaris architecture specific (Solaris DDI).

Parameters  
ptr  any valid 32- or 64-bit pointer
flag  determines whether caller can sleep for memory (see kmem_alloc(9F) for a description)

Description  These routines were originally developed so that device drivers could manage 64-bit pointers on devices that save space only for 32-bit pointers.

Many device drivers need to pass a 32-bit value to the hardware when attempting I/O. Later, when that I/O completes, the only way the driver has to identify the request that generated that I/O is via a "token". When the I/O is initiated, the driver passes this token to the hardware. When the I/O completes the hardware passes back this 32-bit token.

Before Solaris supported 64-bit pointers, device drivers just passed a raw 32-bit pointer to the hardware. When pointers grew to be 64 bits this was no longer possible. The id32_*() routines were created to help drivers translate between 64-bit pointers and a 32-bit token.

Given a 32- or 64-bit pointer, the routine id32_alloc() allocates a 32-bit token, returning 0 if KM_NOSLEEP was specified and memory could not be allocated. The allocated token is passed back to id32_lookup() to obtain the original 32- or 64-bit pointer.

The routine id32_free() is used to free an allocated token. Once id32_free() is called, the supplied token is no longer valid.

Note that these routines have some degree of error checking. This is done so that an invalid token passed to id32_lookup() will not be accepted as valid. When id32_lookup() detects an invalid token it returns NULL. Calling routines should check for this return value so that they do not try to dereference a NULL pointer.

Context  These functions can be called from user or interrupt context. The routine id32_alloc() should not be called from interrupt context when the KM_SLEEP flag is passed in. All other routines can be called from interrupt or kernel context.
See Also  kmem_alloc(9F)

Writing Device Drivers
inb, inw, inl, repinsb, repinsw, repinsd – read from an I/O port

#include <sys/ddi.h>
#include <sys/sunddi.h>

unsigned char inb(int port);
unsigned short inw(int port);
unsigned long inl(int port);
void repinsb(int port, unsigned char *addr, int count);
void repinsw(int port, unsigned short *addr, int count);
void repinsd(int port, unsigned long *addr, int count);

The functions described here are obsolete. For the inb(), inw(), and inl() functions, use, respectively, ddi_get8(9F), ddi_get8(9F), and ddi_get8(9F) instead. For repinsb(), repinsw(), and repinsd(), use, respectively, ddi_rep_get8(9F), ddi_rep_get8(9F), and ddi_rep_get8(9F) instead.

port A valid I/O port address.
addr The address of a buffer where the values will be stored.
count The number of values to be read from the I/O port.

These routines read data of various sizes from the I/O port with the address specified by port. The inb(), inw(), and inl() functions read 8 bits, 16 bits, and 32 bits of data respectively, returning the resulting values.

The repinsb(), repinsw(), and repinsd() functions read multiple 8-bit, 16-bit, and 32-bit values, respectively. count specifies the number of values to be read. A pointer to a buffer will receive the input data; the buffer must be long enough to hold count values of the requested size.

The inb(), inw(), and inl() functions return the value that was read from the I/O port.

These functions may be called from user, interrupt, or kernel context.

See attributes(5) for descriptions of the following attributes:
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ATTRIBUTE TYPE</th>
<th>ATTRIBUTE VALUE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Architecture</td>
<td>x86</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stability Level</td>
<td>Obsolete</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

See Also: `isa(4)`, `attributes(5)`, `ddi_get8(9F)`, `ddi_get8(9F)`, `ddi_get8(9F)`, `ddi_rep_get8(9F)`, `ddi_rep_get8(9F)`, `ddi_rep_get8(9F)`, `outb(9F)`

*Writing Device Drivers*
insq – insert a message into a queue

Synopsis

```
#include <sys/stream.h>

int insq(queue_t *q, mblk_t *emp, mblk_t *nmp);
```

Interface Level

Architecture independent level 1 (DDI/DKI).

Parameters

- `q` Pointer to the queue containing message `emp`.
- `emp` Enqueued message before which the new message is to be inserted. `mblk_t` is an instance of the `msgb(9S)` structure.
- `nmp` Message to be inserted.

Description

The `insq()` function inserts a message into a queue. The message to be inserted, `nmp`, is placed in `q` immediately before the message `emp`. If `emp` is NULL, the new message is placed at the end of the queue. The queue class of the new message is ignored. All flow control parameters are updated. The service procedure is enabled unless `QNOENB` is set.

Return Values

The `insq()` function returns 1 on success, and 0 on failure.

Context

The `insq()` function can be called from user, interrupt, or kernel context.

Examples

This routine illustrates the steps a transport provider may take to place expedited data ahead of normal data on a queue (assume all M_DATA messages are converted into M_PROTO T_DATA_REQ messages). Normal T_DATA_REQ messages are just placed on the end of the queue (line 16). However, expedited T_EXDATA_REQ messages are inserted before any normal messages already on the queue (line 25). If there are no normal messages on the queue, `bp` will be NULL and we fall out of the for loop (line 21). `insq` acts like `putq(9F)` in this case.

```
1  #include
2  #include
3
4 static int
5  xxxwput(queue_t *q, mblk_t *mp)
6  {
7    union T_primitives *tp;
8    mblk_t *bp;
9    union T_primitives *ntp;
10   switch (mp->b_datap->db_type) {
11     case M_PROTO:
12        tp = (union T_primitives *)mp->b_rptr;
13        switch (tp->type) {
14           case T_DATA_REQ:
15              putq(q, mp);
16           ...
```

Kernel Functions for Drivers
When using `insq()`, you must ensure that the queue and the message block is not modified by another thread at the same time. You can achieve this either by using STREAMS functions or by implementing your own locking.

**See Also**  
`putq(9F), rmvq(9F), msgb(9S)`

*Writing Device Drivers*  
*STREAMS Programming Guide*

**Warnings**  
If `emp` is non-NULL, it must point to a message on `q` or a system panic could result.
Name  IOC_CONVERT_FROM – determine if there is a need to translate M_IOCTL contents.
Synopsis  
```
#include <sys/stream.h>
```

```
uint_t IOC_CONVERT_FROM(struct iocblk *iocp);
```

Interface Level  Solaris DDI Specific (Solaris DDI)
Parameters  
```
iocp  A pointer to the M_IOCTL control structure.
```
Description  The IOC_CONVERT_FROM macro is used to see if the contents of the current M_IOCTL message had its origin in a different C Language Type Model.

Return Values  The IOC_CONVERT_FROM() function returns the following values:
```
IOC_ILP32  This is an LP64 kernel and the M_IOCTL originated in an ILP32 user process.
IOC_NONE  The M_IOCTL message uses the same C Language Type Model as this calling module or driver.
```

Context  The IOC_CONVERT_FROM() macro can be called from user, interrupt, or kernel context.
See Also  ddi_model_convert_from(9F)

Writing Device Drivers
STREAMS Programming Guide
**kmem_alloc(9F)**

**Name**  
`kmem_alloc`, `kmem_zalloc`, `kmem_free` – allocate kernel memory

**Synopsis**  
```c
#include <sys/types.h>
#include <sys/kmem.h>

void *kmem_alloc(size_t size, int flag);
void *kmem_zalloc(size_t size, int flag);
void kmem_free(void *buf, size_t size);
```

**Interface Level**  
Architecture independent level 1 (DDI/DKI).

**Parameters**  
- `size`  
  Number of bytes to allocate.
- `flag`  
  Determines whether caller can sleep for memory. Possible flags are `KM_SLEEP` to allow sleeping until memory is available, or `KM_NOSLEEP` to return `NULL` immediately if memory is not available.
- `buf`  
  Pointer to allocated memory.

**Description**  
The `kmem_alloc()` function allocates `size` bytes of kernel memory and returns a pointer to the allocated memory. The allocated memory is at least double-word aligned, so it can hold any C data structure. No greater alignment can be assumed. `flag` determines whether the caller can sleep for memory. `KM_SLEEP` allocations may sleep but are guaranteed to succeed. `KM_NOSLEEP` allocations are guaranteed not to sleep but may fail (return `NULL`) if no memory is currently available. The initial contents of memory allocated using `kmem_alloc()` are random garbage.

The `kmem_zalloc()` function is like `kmem_alloc()` but returns zero-filled memory.

The `kmem_free()` function frees previously allocated kernel memory. The buffer address and size must exactly match the original allocation. Memory cannot be returned piecemeal.

**Return Values**  
If successful, `kmem_alloc()` and `kmem_zalloc()` return a pointer to the allocated memory. If `KM_NOSLEEP` is set and memory cannot be allocated without sleeping, `kmem_alloc()` and `kmem_zalloc()` return `NULL`.

**Context**  
The `kmem_alloc()` and `kmem_zalloc()` functions can be called from interrupt context only if the `KM_NOSLEEP` flag is set. They can be called from user context with any valid `flag`. The `kmem_free()` function can be called from from user, interrupt, or kernel context.

**See Also**  
`copyout(9F), freerbuf(9F), getrbuf(9F)`

*Writing Device Drivers*
Memory allocated using `kmem_alloc()` is not paged. Available memory is therefore limited by the total physical memory on the system. It is also limited by the available kernel virtual address space, which is often the more restrictive constraint on large-memory configurations.

Excessive use of kernel memory is likely to affect overall system performance. Overcommitment of kernel memory will cause the system to hang or panic.

Misuse of the kernel memory allocator, such as writing past the end of a buffer, using a buffer after freeing it, freeing a buffer twice, or freeing a null or invalid pointer, will corrupt the kernel heap and may cause the system to corrupt data or panic.

The initial contents of memory allocated using `kmem_alloc()` are random garbage. This random garbage may include secure kernel data. Therefore, uninitialized kernel memory should be handled carefully. For example, never `copyout(9F)` a potentially uninitialized buffer.

**Notes**  `kmem_alloc(0, flag)` always returns `NULL`. `kmem_free(NULL, 0)` is legal.
**Name**  
kmem_cache_create, kmem_cache_alloc, kmem_cache_free, kmem_cache_destroy – kernel memory cache allocator operations

**Synopsis**  
#include <sys/types.h>  
#include <sys/kmem.h>

kmem_cache_t *kmem_cache_create(char *name, size_t bufsize,  
    size_t align, int (*constructor)(void *, void *, int),  
    void (*destructor)(void *, void *), void (*reclaim)(void *),  
    void *private, void *vmp, int cflags);

void kmem_cache_destroy(kmem_cache_t *cp);

void *kmem_cache_alloc(kmem_cache_t *cp, int kmflag);

void kmem_cache_free(kmem_cache_t *cp, void *obj);

[Synopsis for callback functions:]  
int (*constructor)(void *buf, void *un, int kmflags);

void (*destructor)(void *buf, void *un);

**Interface Level**  
Solaris DDI specific (Solaris DDI)

**Parameters**  
The parameters for the kmem_cache_* functions are as follows:

- **name**  
  Descriptive name of a kstat(9S) structure of class kmem_cache. Only alphanumeric characters can be used in name.

- **bufsize**  
  Size of the objects it manages.

- **align**  
  Required object alignment.

- **constructor**  
  Pointer to an object constructor function. Parameters are defined below.

- **destructor**  
  Pointer to an object destructor function. Parameters are defined below.

- **reclaim**  
  Drivers should pass NULL.

- **private**  
  Pass-through argument for constructor/destructor.

- **vmp**  
  Drivers should pass NULL.

- **cflags**  
  Drivers must pass 0.

- **kmflag**  
  Possible flags are:
  - KM_SLEEP  
    Allow sleeping (blocking) until memory is available.
  - KM_NOSLEEP  
    Return NULL immediately if memory is not available.
  - KM_PUSHPAGE  
    Allow the allocation to use reserved memory.

- **obj**  
  Pointer to the object allocated by kmem_cache_alloc().
The parameters for the callback constructor function are as follows:

- `void *buf` Pointer to the object to be constructed.
- `void *un` The *private* parameter from the call to `kmem_cache_create()`; it is typically a pointer to the soft-state structure.
- `int kmflags` Propagated kmflag values.

The parameters for the callback destructor function are as follows:

- `void *buf` Pointer to the object to be deconstructed.
- `void *un` The *private* parameter from the call to `kmem_cache_create()`; it is typically a pointer to the soft-state structure.

### Description

In many cases, the cost of initializing and destroying an object exceeds the cost of allocating and freeing memory for it. The functions described here address this condition.

Object caching is a technique for dealing with objects that are:

- frequently allocated and freed, and
- have setup and initialization costs.

The idea is to allow the allocator and its clients to cooperate to preserve the invariant portion of an object’s initial state, or constructed state, between uses, so it does not have to be destroyed and re-created every time the object is used. For example, an object containing a mutex only needs to have `mutex_init()` applied once, the first time the object is allocated. The object can then be freed and reallocated many times without incurring the expense of `mutex_destroy()` and `mutex_init()` each time. An object’s embedded locks, condition variables, reference counts, lists of other objects, and read-only data all generally qualify as constructed state. The essential requirement is that the client must free the object (using `kmem_cache_free()`) in its constructed state. The allocator cannot enforce this, so programming errors will lead to hard-to-find bugs.

A driver should call `kmem_cache_create()` at the time of `_fini(9E)` or `attach(9E)`, and call the corresponding `kmem_cache_destroy()` at the time of `_fini(9E)` or `detach(9E)`.

`kmem_cache_create()` creates a cache of objects, each of size `size` bytes, aligned on an `align` boundary. Drivers not requiring a specific alignment can pass 0. `name` identifies the cache for statistics and debugging. *constructor* and *destructor* convert plain memory into objects and back again; *constructor* can fail if it needs to allocate memory but cannot. *private* is a parameter passed to the constructor and destructor callbacks to support parameterized caches (for example, a pointer to an instance of the driver’s soft-state structure). To facilitate debugging, `kmem_cache_create()` creates a `kstat(9S)` structure of class `kmem_cache` and name `name`. It returns an opaque pointer to the object cache.
kmem_cache_alloc() gets an object from the cache. The object will be in its constructed state. kmflag has either KM_SLEEP or KM_NOSLEEP set, indicating whether it is acceptable to wait for memory if none is currently available.

A small pool of reserved memory is available to allow the system to progress toward the goal of freeing additional memory while in a low memory situation. The KM_PUSHPAGE flag enables use of this reserved memory pool on an allocation. This flag can be used by drivers that implement strategy(9E) on memory allocations associated with a single I/O operation. The driver guarantees that the I/O operation will complete (or timeout) and, on completion, that the memory will be returned. The KM_PUSHPAGE flag should be used only in kmem_cache_alloc() calls. All allocations from a given cache should be consistent in their use of the flag. A driver that adheres to these restrictions can guarantee progress in a low memory situation without resorting to complex private allocation and queuing schemes. If KM_PUSHPAGE is specified, KM_SLEEP can also be used without causing deadlock.

kmem_cache_free() returns an object to the cache. The object must be in its constructed state.

kmem_cache_destroy() destroys the cache and releases all associated resources. All allocated objects must have been previously freed.

Context

Constructors can be invoked during any call to kmem_cache_alloc(), and will run in that context. Similarly, destructors can be invoked during any call to kmem_cache_free(), and can also be invoked during kmem_cache_destroy(). Therefore, the functions that a constructor or destructor invokes must be appropriate in that context.

kmem_cache_create() and kmem_cache_destroy() must not be called from interrupt context.

kmem_cache_alloc() can be called from interrupt context only if the KM_NOSLEEP flag is set. It can be called from user or kernel context with any valid flag.

kmem_cache_free() can be called from user, kernel, or interrupt context.

Examples

EXAMPLE 1 Object Caching

Consider the following data structure:

```c
struct foo {
    kmutex_t foo_lock;
    kcondvar_t foo_cv;
    struct bar *foo_barlist;
    int foo_refcnt;
};
```
Assume that a foo structure cannot be freed until there are no outstanding references to it (foo_refcnt == 0) and all of its pending bar events (whatever they are) have completed (foo_barlist == NULL). The life cycle of a dynamically allocated foo would be something like this:

```c
foo = kmem_alloc(sizeof (struct foo), KM_SLEEP);
mutex_init(&foo->foo_lock, ...);
cv_init(&foo->foo_cv, ...);
foo->foo_refcnt = 0;
foo->foo_barlist = NULL;
    use foo;
ASSERT(foo->foo_barlist == NULL);
ASSERT(foo->foo_refcnt == 0);
cv_destroy(&foo->foo_cv);
mutex_destroy(&foo->foo_lock);
kmem_free(foo);
```

Notice that between each use of a foo object we perform a sequence of operations that constitutes nothing but expensive overhead. All of this overhead (that is, everything other than use foo above) can be eliminated by object caching.

```c
int
foo_constructor(void *buf, void *arg, int tags)
{
    struct foo *foo = buf;
    mutex_init(&foo->foo_lock, ...);
cv_init(&foo->foo_cv, ...);
foo->foo_refcnt = 0;
foo->foo_barlist = NULL;
    return (0);
}

void
foo_destructor(void *buf, void *arg)
{
    struct foo *foo = buf;
    ASSERT(foo->foo_barlist == NULL);
    ASSERT(foo->foo_refcnt == 0);
cv_destroy(&foo->foo_cv);
mutex_destroy(&foo->foo_lock);
}
```

```c
un = ddi_get_soft_state(foo_softc, instance);
(void) snprintf(buf, KSTAT_STRLEN, "foo%d_cache", 
    ddi_get_instance(dip));
foo_cache = kmem_cache_create(buf,
```
EXAMPLE 1  Object Caching  

(Continued)

    sizeof (struct foo), 0,
    foo_constructor, foo_destructor,
    NULL, un, 0);

To allocate, use, and free a foo object:

    foo = kmem_cache_alloc(foo_cache, KM_SLEEP);
    use foo;
    kmem_cache_free(foo_cache, foo);

This makes foo allocation fast, because the allocator will usually do nothing more than fetch an already-constructed foo from the cache. foo_constructor and foo_destructor will be invoked only to populate and drain the cache, respectively.

Return Values  

If successful, the constructor function must return 0. If KM_NOSLEEP is set and memory cannot be allocated without sleeping, the constructor must return -1.

    kmem_cache_create() returns a pointer to the allocated cache. If the name parameter contains non-alphanumeric characters, kmem_cache_create() returns NULL.

    If successful, kmem_cache_alloc() returns a pointer to the allocated object. If KM_NOSLEEP is set and memory cannot be allocated without sleeping, kmem_cache_alloc() returns NULL.

Attributes  

See attributes(5) for descriptions of the following attributes:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ATTRIBUTE TYPE</th>
<th>ATTRIBUTE VALUE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Interface Stability</td>
<td>Evolving</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

See Also  

condvar(9F), kmem_alloc(9F), mutex(9F), kstat(9S)

Writing Device Drivers

**Name**  
`kstat_create` – create and initialize a new kstat

**Synopsis**  
```c  
#include <sys/types.h>  
#include <sys/kstat.h>  

kstat_t *kstat_create(char *module, int instance, char *name,  
char *class, uchar_t type, ulong_t ndata, uchar_t ks_flag);  
```

**Interface Level**  
Solaris DDI specific (Solaris DDI)

**Parameters**

- **module**  
The name of the provider’s module (such as "sd", "esp", ...). The "core" kernel uses the name "unix".

- **instance**  
The provider’s instance number, as from `ddi_get_instance(9F)`. Modules which do not have a meaningful instance number should use 0.

- **name**  
A pointer to a string that uniquely identifies this structure. Only `KSTAT_STRLEN` – 1 characters are significant.

- **class**  
The general class that this kstat belongs to. The following classes are currently in use: disk, tape, net, controller, vm, kvm, hat, streams, kstat, and misc.

- **type**  
The type of kstat to allocate. Valid types are:
  - `KSTAT_TYPE_NAMED`: Allows more than one data record per kstat.
  - `KSTAT_TYPE_INTR`: Interrupt; only one data record per kstat.
  - `KSTAT_TYPE_IO`: I/O; only one data record per kstat

- **ndata**  
The number of type-specific data records to allocate.

- **flag**  
A bit-field of various flags for this kstat. `flag` is some combination of:
  - `KSTAT_FLAG_VIRTUAL`: Tells `kstat_create()` not to allocate memory for the kstat data section; instead, the driver will set the `ks_data` field to point to the data it wishes to export. This provides a convenient way to export existing data structures.
  - `KSTAT_FLAG_WRITABLE`: Makes the kstat data section writable by root.
  - `KSTAT_FLAG_PERSISTENT`: Indicates that this kstat is to be persistent over time. For persistent kstats, `kstat_delete(9F)` simply marks the kstat as dormant; a subsequent `kstat_create()` reactivates the kstat. This feature is provided so that statistics are not lost across driver close/open (such as raw disk I/O on a disk with no mounted partitions.) Note: Persistent kstats cannot be virtual, since `ks_data` points to
garbage as soon as the driver goes away.

**Description**  
`kstat_create()` is used in conjunction with `kstat_install(9F)` to allocate and initialize a `kstat(9S)` structure. The method is generally as follows:

`kstat_create()` allocates and performs necessary system initialization of a `kstat(9S)` structure. `kstat_create()` allocates memory for the entire `kstat` (header plus data), initializes all header fields, initializes the data section to all zeroes, assigns a unique `kstat` ID (KID), and puts the `kstat` onto the system’s `kstat` chain. The returned `kstat` is marked invalid because the provider (caller) has not yet had a chance to initialize the data section.

After a successful call to `kstat_create()` the driver must perform any necessary initialization of the data section (such as setting the name fields in a `kstat` of type `KSTAT_TYPE_NAMED`). Virtual `kstats` must have the `ks_data` field set at this time. The provider may also set the `ks_update`, `ks_private`, and `ks_lock` fields if necessary.

Once the `kstat` is completely initialized, `kstat_install(9F)` is used to make the `kstat` accessible to the outside world.

**Return Values**  
If successful, `kstat_create()` returns a pointer to the allocated `kstat`. `NULL` is returned upon failure.

**Context**  
`kstat_create()` can be called from user or kernel context.

**Examples**  
**EXAMPLE 1**  
Allocating and Initializing a `kstat` Structure

```c
pkstat_t *ksp;
  ksp = kstat_create(module, instance, name, class, type, ndata, flags);
  if (ksp) {
    /* ... provider initialization, if necessary */
    kstat_install(ksp);
  }
```

**See Also**  
`kstat(3KSTAT), ddi_get_instance(9F), kstat_delete(9F), kstat_install(9F), kstat_named_init(9F), kstat_named(9F), kstat_named(9S)

*Writing Device Drivers*
kstat_delete – remove a kstat from the system

**Synopsis**
#include <sys/types.h>
#include <sys/kstat.h>

```c
void kstat_delete(kstat_t *ksp);
```

**Interface Level**
Solaris DDI specific (Solaris DDI)

**Parameters**
- `ksp` Pointer to a currently installed kstat(9S) structure.

**Description**
kstat_delete() removes `ksp` from the kstat chain and frees all associated system resources.

**Return Values**
None.

**Context**
kstat_delete() can be called from any context.

**See Also**
kstat_create(9F), kstat_install(9F), kstat_named_init(9F), kstat(9S)

*Writing Device Drivers*

**Notes**
When calling kstat_delete(), the driver must not be holding that kstat's ks_lock. Otherwise, it may deadlock with a kstat reader.
**kstat_install(9F)**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>Name</strong></th>
<th>kstat_install – add a fully initialized kstat to the system</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| **Synopsis**  | #include <sys/types.h>
|               | #include <sys/kstat.h>                                     |
|               | void kstat_install(kstat_t *ksp);                          |
| **Interface Level** | Solaris DDI specific (Solaris DDI)                     |
| **Parameters** | ksp Pointer to a fully initialized kstat(9S) structure. |
| **Description** | kstat_install() is used in conjunction with kstat_create(9F) to allocate and initialize a kstat(9S) structure. |
|               | After a successful call to kstat_create() the driver must perform any necessary initialization of the data section (such as setting the name fields in a kstat of type KSTAT_TYPE_NAMED). Virtual kstats must have the ks_data field set at this time. The provider may also set the ks_update, ks_private, and ks_lock fields if necessary. |
|               | Once the kstat is completely initialized, kstat_install is used to make the kstat accessible to the outside world. |
| **Return Values** | None. |
| **Context** | kstat_install() can be called from user or kernel context. |
| **Examples** | **EXAMPLE 1** Allocating and Initializing a kstat Structure |
|               | The method for allocating and initializing a kstat structure is generally as follows: |
|               | kstat_t *ksp; |
|               | ksp = kstat_create(module, instance, name, class, type, ndata, flags); |
|               | if (ksp) { |
|               |     /* ... provider initialization, if necessary */ |
|               |         kstat_install(ksp); |
|               | } |
| **See Also** | kstat_create(9F), kstat_delete(9F), kstat_named_init(9F), kstat(9S) |
|               | *Writing Device Drivers* |
kstat_named_init, kstat_named_setstr - initialize a named kstat

Synopsis

```
#include <sys/types.h>
#include <sys/kstat.h>

void kstat_named_init(kstat_named_t *knp, const char *name, uchar_t data_type);
void kstat_named_setstr(kstat_named_t *knp, const char *str);
```

Interface Level

Solaris DDI specific (Solaris DDI)

Parameters

- **knp**
  Pointer to a `kstat_named(9S)` structure.
- **name**
  The name of the statistic.
- **data_type**
  The type of value. This indicates which field of the `kstat_named(9S)` structure should be used. Valid values are:
  - KSTAT_DATA_CHAR
    The "char" field.
  - KSTAT_DATA_LONG
    The "long" field.
  - KSTAT_DATA_ULONG
    The "unsigned long" field.
  - KSTAT_DATA_LONGLONG
    Obsolete. Use KSTAT_DATA_INT64.
  - KSTAT_DATA_ULONGLONG
    Obsolete. Use KSTAT_DATA_UINT64.
  - KSTAT_DATA_STRING
    Arbitrary length "long string" field.
- **str**
  Pointer to a NULL-terminated string.

Description

`kstat_named_init()` associates a name and a type with a `kstat_named(9S)` structure.

`kstat_named_setstr()` associates `str` with the named kstat `knp`. It is an error for `knp` to be of type other than KSTAT_DATA_STRING. The string argument must remain valid even after the function that is calling `kstat_named_setstr()` is returned. This is the only supported method of changing the value of long strings.

Return Values

None.

Context

`kstat_named_init()` and `kstat_named_setstr()` can be called from user or kernel context.

See Also

`kstat_create(9F), kstat_install(9F), kstat(9S), kstat_named(9S)`

*Writing Device Drivers*
**Synopsis**

```
#include <sys/types.h>
#include <sys/kstat.h>

void kstat_waitq_enter(kstat_io_t *kiop);
void kstat_waitq_exit(kstat_io_t *kiop);
void kstat_runq_enter(kstat_io_t *kiop);
void kstat_runq_exit(kstat_io_t *kiop);
void kstat_waitq_to_runq(kstat_io_t *kiop);
void kstat_runq_back_to_waitq(kstat_io_t *kiop);
```

**Parameters**

- `kiop`  
  Pointer to a `kstat_io(9S)` structure.

**Description**

A large number of I/O subsystems have at least two basic "lists" (or queues) of transactions they manage: one for transactions that have been accepted for processing but for which processing has yet to begin, and one for transactions which are actively being processed (but not done). For this reason, two cumulative time statistics are kept: wait (pre-service) time, and run (service) time.

The `kstat_queue()` family of functions manage these times based on the transitions between the driver wait queue and run queue.

- `kstat_waitq_enter()`  
  `kstat_waitq_enter()` should be called when a request arrives and is placed into a pre-service state (such as just prior to calling `disksort(9F)`).

- `kstat_waitq_exit()`  
  `kstat_waitq_exit()` should be used when a request is removed from its pre-service state (such as just prior to calling the driver's `start` routine).

- `kstat_runq_enter()`  
  `kstat_runq_enter()` is also called when a request is placed in its service state (just prior to calling the driver's `start` routine, but after `kstat_waitq_exit()`).

- `kstat_runq_exit()`  
  `kstat_runq_exit()` is used when a request is removed from its service state (just prior to calling `biodone(9F)`).

- `kstat_waitq_to_runq()`  
  `kstat_waitq_to_runq()` transitions a request from the wait queue to the run queue. This is useful wherever the
driver would have normally done a `kstat_waitq_exit()` followed by a call to `kstat_runq_enter()`.

- `kstat_runq_back_to_waitq()` transitions a request from the run queue back to the wait queue. This may be necessary in some cases (write throttling is an example).

**Return Values** None.

**Context** `kstat_create()` can be called from user or kernel context.

**Warnings** These transitions must be protected by holding the kstat’s `ks_lock`, and must be completely accurate (all transitions are recorded). Forgetting a transition may, for example, make an idle disk appear 100% busy.

**See Also** `biodone(9F), disksort(9F), kstat_create(9F), kstat_delete(9F), kstat_named_init(9F), kstat(9S), kstat_io(9S)`

*Writing Device Drivers*
ldi_add_event_handler(9F)

Name  ldi_add_event_handler – add NDI event service callback handler

Synopsis  #include <sys/sunldi.h>

    int ldi_add_event_handler(ldi_handle_t lh, ddi_eventcookie_t ec,
       void (*handler)(ldi_handle_t, ddi_eventcookie_t, void *, void *) void *arg,
       ldi_callback_id_t *id);

Interface Level  Solaris DDI Specific (Solaris DDI).

Parameters  ldi_handle_t lh
  Layered handle representing event notification device.

  ddi_eventcookie_t ec
  Cookie returned from call to ldi_get_eventcookie(9F).

  void (*handler)(ldi_handle_t, ddi_eventcookie_t, void *, void *)
  Callback handler for NDI event service notification.

  void *arg
  Pointer to opaque data supplied by caller. Typically, this is a pointer to the layered driver’s
  softstate structure.

  ldi_callback_id_t *id
  Pointer to registration id, where a unique registration id is returned. Registration id must
  be saved and used when calling ldi_remove_event_handler(9F) to unregister a callback
  handler.

Description  The ldi_add_event_handler() function adds a callback handler to be invoked at the
  occurrence of the event specified by the cookie. Adding a callback handler is also known as
  subscribing to an event. Upon successful subscription, the handler is invoked when the event
  occurs. You can unregister the handler by using ldi_remove_event_handler(9F).

An instance of a layered driver can register multiple handlers for an event or a single handler
for multiple events. Callback order is not defined and should be assumed to be random.

The routine handler is invoked with the following arguments:

  ldi_handle_t lh
  Layered handle representing the device for which the event
  notification is requested.

  ddi_eventcookie_t ec
  Structure describing event that occurred.

  void *arg
  Opaque data pointer provided by the driver during callback
  registration.

  void *impl_data
  Pointer to event specific data defined by the framework that
  invokes the callback function.
**ldi_add_event_handler(9F)**

**Return Values**
- **DDI_SUCCESS**  Callback handler registered successfully.
- **DDI_FAILURE**  Failed to register callback handler. Possible reasons include lack of resources or a bad cookie.

**Context**  The `ldi_add_event_handler()` function can be called from user and kernel contexts only.

**See Also**  `ldi_get_eventcookie(9F), ldi_remove_event_handler(9F)

*Writing Device Drivers*

**Notes**  Layered drivers must remove all registered callback handlers for a device instance, represented by the layered handle, by calling `ldi_remove_event_handler(9F)` before the layered driver’s `detach(9E)` routine completes.
ldi_aread(9F)

Name  ldi_aread, ldi_awrite – Issue an asynchronous read or write request to a device

Synopsis  
#include <sys/sunldi.h>

int ldi_aread(ldi_handle_t lh, struct aio_req *aio_reqp, cred_t *cr);
int ldi_awrite(ldi_handle_t lh, struct aio_req *aio_reqp, cred_t *cr);

Parameters  
lh  Layered handle.

    cr  Pointer to a credential structure.

    aio_reqp  Pointer to the aio_req(9S) structure that describes where the data is to be stored or obtained from.

Description  
The ldi_awrite() function passes an asynchronous write request to a device entry point specified by the layered handle. This operation is supported for block and character devices.

The ldi_aread() function passes an asynchronous read request to a device entry point specified by the layered handle. This operation is supported for block and character devices.

Return Values  
The ldi_awrite() and ldi_aread() functions return 0 upon success. If a failure occurs before the request is passed on to the device, the possible return values are shown below. Otherwise any other error number may be returned by the device.

Einval  Invalid input parameters.

Enotsup  Operation is not supported for this device.

Context  
These functions may be called from user context.
ldi_devmap – Issue a devmap request to a device

Synopsis

```
#include <sys/sunldi.h>

int ldi_devmap(ldi_handle_t lh, devmap_cookie_t dhp, offset_t off, size_t len,
               size_t *maplen, uint_t model);
```

Parameters

- **lh**: Layered handle.
- **dhp**: Opaque mapping handle used by the system to describe mapping.
- **off**: User offset within the logical device memory at which mapping begins.
- **len**: Mapping length (in bytes).
- **maplen**: Pointer to length (in bytes) of validated mapping. (Less than or equal to `len`).
- **model**: Data model type of current thread.

Description

The `ldi_devmap()` function passes an devmap request to the device entry point for the device specified by the layered handle. This operation is supported for character devices.

Return Values

The `ldi_devmap()` function returns 0 upon success. If a failure occurs before the request is passed to the device, possible return values are shown below. Otherwise any other error number may be returned by the device.

- **EINVAL**: Invalid input parameters.
- **ENOTSUP**: Operation is not supported for this device.

Context

This function may be called from user or kernel context.
ldi_dump – Issue a dump request to a device

Synopsis
#include <sys/sunldi.h>

int ldi_dump(ldi_handle_t lh, caddr_t addr, daddr_t blkno, int nblk);

Parameters
lh        Layered handle.
addr      Area dump address.
blkno     Block offset to dump memory.
nblk      Number of blocks to dump.

Description
The ldi_dump() function passes a dump request to the device entry point specified by the layered handle. This operation is supported for block devices.

Return Values
The ldi_dump() function returns 0 upon success. If a failure occurs before the request is passed on to the device, the possible return values are shown below. Otherwise any other error number may be returned by the device.

EINVAL    Invalid input parameters.
ENOTSUP   Operation is not supported for this device.

Context
These functions may be called from user or kernel context.
ldi_get_dev, ldi_get_otyp, ldi_get_devid, ldi_get_minor_name – Extract information from a layered handle

Synopsis  
#include <sys/sunldi.h>

int ldi_get_dev(ldi_handle_t lh, dev_t *devp);
int ldi_get_otyp(ldi_handle_t lh, int *otyp);
int ldi_get_devid(ldi_handle_t lh, ddi_devid_t *devid);
int ldi_get_minor_name(ldi_handle_t lh, char **minor_name);

Parameters  
lh  Layered handle
otyp  Indicates on which interface the driver was opened. Valid settings are:
  OTYP_BLK  Open device block interface.
  OTYP_CHR  Open device character interface.

devp  Pointer to a device number.
devid  Device ID.
minor_name  Minor device node name.

Description  
The ldi_get_dev() function retrieves the dev_t associated with a layered handle.

The ldi_get_otyp() retrieves the open flag that was used to open the device associated with
the layered handle.

The ldi_get_devid() function retrieves a devid for the device associated with the layered
handle. The caller should use ddi_devid_free() to free the devid when done with it.

The ldi_get_minor_name() function retrieves the name of the minor node opened for the
device associated with the layered handle. ldi_get_minor_name() allocates a buffer
containing the minor node name and returns it via the minor_name parameter. The caller
should use kmem_free() to release the buffer when done with it.

Return Values  
The ldi_get_dev(), ldi_get_otyp(), ldi_get_devid(), and ldi_get_devid() functions
return 0 upon success.

In case of an error, the following values may be returned:

EINVAL  Invalid input parameters.
ENOTSUP  The operation is not supported for this device.

Context  
These functions may be called from user or kernel context.
**ldi_get_eventcookie(9F)**

**Name**  
ldi_get_eventcookie – retrieve NDI event service cookie

**Synopsis**  
#include <sys/sunldi.h>

```c
int ldi_get_eventcookie(ldi_handle_t lh, char *name ddi_eventcookie_t *ecp);
```

**Interface Level**  
Solaris DDI specific (Solaris DDI)

**Parameters**  
- *ldi_handle_t lh*  
  Layered handle.
- *char *name*  
  null-terminated string containing the event name.
- *ddi_eventcookie_t *ecp*  
  Pointer to the kernel event cookie.

**Description**  
The `ldi_get_eventcookie()` function queries the device tree for a cookie matching the given event name and returns a reference to that cookie. The search is performed by calling up the device tree hierarchy of the device represented by the layered driver handle until the request is satisfied by a bus nexus driver, or the top of the dev_info tree is reached.

The cookie returned by this function can be used to register a callback handler with `ldi_add_event_handler(9F)`.

**Return Values**  
- **DDI_SUCCESS**  
  Cookie handle is returned.
- **DDI_FAILURE**  
  Request was not serviceable by any nexus driver in the target device's ancestral device tree hierarchy.

**Context**  
This function may be called from user or kernel contexts.

**See Also**  
`ldi_add_event_handler(9F), ldi_remove_event_handler(9F)`

*Writing Device Drivers*
**Name**  
ldi_get_size – Retrieve device size

**Synopsis**  
#include <sys/sunldi.h>

```c
int ldi_get_size(ldi_handle_t lh, uint64_t *sizep);
```

**Parameters**  
lh  
Layered handle.

sizep  
Pointer to the caller's unsigned 64-bit integer buffer.

**Description**  
The ldi_get_size() function uses the layered driver handle to calculate and return a device's size. The device size is returned within the caller supplied buffer (*sizep). A valid layered driver handle must be obtained via the ldi_open_by_name(9F) interface prior to calling ldi_get_size().

**Return Values**  
The ldi_get_size() function returns the following values:

- **DDI_SUCCESS**  
The device size has been returned within the caller supplied buffer.

- **DDI_FAILURE**  
The device size could not be found or determined.

**Context**  
This function may be called from user or kernel context.

**See Also**  
ldi_open_by_name(9F)

*Writing Device Drivers*
### ldi_ident_from_dev(9F)

**Synopsis**
```
#include <sys/sunldi.h>

int ldi_ident_from_dip(dev_info_t *dip, ldi_ident_t *lip);
int ldi_ident_from_dev(dev_t dev, ldi_ident_t *lip);
void ldi_ident_from_stream(struct queue *sq, ldi_ident_t *lip);
void ldi_ident_release(ldi_ident_t li);
```

**Parameters**
- `li` ldi identifier.
- `lip` ldi identifier pointer.
- `dip` Pointer to device info node
- `dev` Device number
- `sq` Pointer to a stream queue

**Description**
- The `ldi_ident_from_dev()` function allocates and returns an ldi identifier that is associated with the device number specified by `dev`. The new ldi identifier is returned via the ldi identifier pointer parameter `lip`.
- The `ldi_ident_from_dip()` function allocates and returns an ldi identifier that is associated with the device info node pointed to by `dip`. The new ldi identifier is returned via the ldi identifier pointer parameter `lip`.
- The `ldi_ident_from_stream()` function allocates and returns an ldi identifier that is associated with the stream pointed to by `queue`. The new ldi identifier is returned via the ldi identifier pointer parameter `lip`.
- The `ldi_ident_release()` function releases an identifier that was allocated via one of the `ldi_ident_from()`* functions.

**Return Values**
- The `ldi_ident_from_dev()`, `ldi_ident_from_dip()`, and `ldi_ident_from_stream()` functions return 0 upon success.
- All of these functions return EINVAL for invalid input parameters.

**Context**
- These functions can be called from user or kernel context.
Name  
ldi_ioctl – send an ioctl to a device

Synopsis  
#include <sys/sunldi.h>

int ldi_ioctl(ldi_handle_t lh, int cmd, intptr_t arg, int mode, cred_t *cr, 
  int *rvalp);

Parameters  
lh  Layered handle.

  cr  Pointer to a credential structure used to open a device.

  rvalp  Caller return value. (May be set by driver and is valid only if the ioctl() succeeds).

  cmd  Command argument. Interpreted by driver ioctl() as the operation to be 
    performed.

  arg  Driver parameter. Argument interpretation is driver dependent and usually 
    depends on the command type.

  mode  Bit field that contains:

    FKIOCTL  Inform the target device that the ioctl originated from within the 
      kernel.

Description  
The ldi_ioctl() function passes an ioctl request to the device entry point for the device 
specified by the layered handle. This operation is supported for block, character, and streams 
devices.

  If arg is interpreted as a pointer (that is, as not an immediate value) and the data pointed to by 
  arg is in the kernels address space, the FKIOCTL flag should be set. This indicates to the target 
  driver that no data model conversion is necessary.

  If the caller of ldi_ioctl() is not the originator of the ioctl data pointed to by arg, (for 
  example, when passing on an ioctl request from a user process), the caller must pass on the 
  mode parameter from the original ioctl. This is because the mode parameter contains the 
  contains the FMODELS bits that enable the target driver to determine the data model of the 
  process which originated the ioctl and perform any necessary conversions. See 
  ddi_model_convert_from(9F) for more information.

Stream ioctls  
For a general description of streams ioctls see streamio(7I). ldi_ioctl() supports a number 
of streams ioctls, using layered handles in the place of file descriptors. When issuing streams 
ioctls the FKIOCTL parameter should be specified. The possible return values for supported 
ioctl commands are also documented in streamio(7I).

  The following streams ioctls are supported:
I_PLINK  Behaves as documented in streamio(7I). The layered handle lh should point to the streams multiplexer. The arg parameter should point to a layered handle for another streams driver.

I_UNPLINK  Behaves as documented in streamio(7I)). The layered handle lh should point to the streams multiplexer. The arg parameter is the multiplexor ID number returned by I_PLINK when the streams were linked.

Return Values  The ldi_ioctl() function returns 0 upon success. If a failure occurs before the request is passed on to the device, possible return values are shown below. Otherwise any other error number may be returned by the device.

EINVAL  Invalid input parameters.

ENOTSUP  Operation is not supported for this device.

Context  These functions can be called from user or kernel context.

See Also  streamio(7I), ddi_model_convert_from(9F)
### Synopsis

```c
#include <sys/sunldi.h>

int ldi_open_by_dev(dev_t *devp, int otyp, int flag, cred_t *cr, ldi_handle_t *lhp, ldi_ident_t li);
int ldi_open_by_name(char *pathname, int flag, cred_t *cr, ldi_handle_t *lhp, ldi_ident_t li);
int ldi_open_by_devid(ddi_devid_t devid, char *minor_name, int flag, cred_t *cr, ldi_handle_t *lhp, ldi_ident_t li);
int ldi_close(ldi_handle_t lh, int flag, cred_t *cr);
```

### Parameters

**lh**
Layered handle

**lhp**
Pointer to a layered handle that is returned upon a successful open.

**li**
LDI identifier.

**cr**
Pointer to the credential structure used to open a device.

**devp**
Pointer to a device number.

**pathname**
Pathname to a device.

**devid**
Device ID.

**minor_name**
Minor device node name.

**otyp**
Flag passed to the driver indicating which interface is open. Valid settings are:

- `OTYP_BLK` Open the device block interface.
- `OTYP_CHR` Open the device character interface.

Only one OTYP flag can be specified. To open streams devices, specify `OTYP_CHR`.

**flag**
Bit field that instructs the driver on how to open the device. Valid settings are:

- `FEXCL` Open the device with exclusive access; fail all other attempts to open the device.
- `FNDELAY` Open the device and return immediately. Do not block the open even if something is wrong.
- `FREAD` Open the device with read-only permission. (If ORed with `WRITE`, allow both read and write access).
FWRITE Open a device with write-only permission (if ORed with FREAD, then allow both read and write access).

FNOCTTY Open the device. If the device is a tty, do not attempt to open it as a session-controlling tty.

Description The `ldi_open_by_dev()`, `ldi_open_by_name()` and `ldi_open_by_devid()` functions allow a caller to open a block, character, or streams device. Upon a successful open, a layered handle to the device is returned via the layered handle pointed to by lh. The ldi identifier passed to these functions is previously allocated with `ldi_ident_from_stream(9F)`, `ldi_ident_from_dev(9F)`, and `ldi_ident_from_dip(9F)`.

The `ldi_open_by_dev()` function opens a device specified by the dev_t pointed to by devp. Upon successful open, the caller should check the value of the dev.t to see if it has changed. (Cloning devices will change this value during opens.) When opening a streams device, otyp must be OTYP_CHR.

The `ldi_open_by_devid()` function opens a device by devid. The caller must specify the minor node name to open.

The `ldi_open_by_name()` function opens a device by pathname. Pathname is a null terminated string in the kernel address space. Pathname must be an absolute path, meaning that it must begin with '/'. The format of the pathname supplied to this function is either a /devices path or any other filesystem path to a device node. Opens utilizing /devices paths are supported before root is mounted. Opens utilizing other filesystem paths to device nodes are supported only if root is already mounted.

The `ldi_close()` function closes a layered handle that was obtained with either `ldi_open_by_dev()`, `ldi_open_by_name()`, or `ldi_open_by_devid()`. After `ldi_close()` returns the layered handle, the lh that was previously passed in is no longer valid.

Return Values The `ldi_close()` function returns 0 for success. EINVAL is returned for invalid input parameters. Otherwise, any other error number may be returned by the device.

The `ldi_open_by_dev()` and `ldi_open_by_devid()` functions return 0 upon success. If a failure occurs before the device is open, possible return values are shown below. Otherwise any other error number may be returned by the device.

EINVAL Invalid input parameters.
ENODEV Requested device does not exist.
ENXIO Unsupported device operation or access mode.

The `ldi_open_by_name()` function returns 0 upon success. If a failure occurs before the device is open, possible return values are shown below. Otherwise any other error number may be returned by the device.
EINVAL Invalid input parameters.
ENODEV Requested device path does not exist.
EACCES Search permission is denied on a component of the path prefix, or the file exists and the permissions specified by cr are denied.
ENXIO Unsupported device operation or access mode.

Context These functions may be called from user or kernel context.

These functions should not be called from a device’s attach, detach, or power entry point. This could result in a system crash or deadlock.

See Also scsi_vhci(7D), ldi_ident_from_dev(9F), ldi_ident_from_dip(9F), ldi_ident_from_stream(9F)

Notes Use only OTYP_CHR or OTYP_BLK options when you use the ldi_open_by_dev() and ldi_open_by_devid() functions to open a device. Other flags, including OTYP_LYR, have been deprecated and should not be used with these interfaces.

The caller should be aware of cases when multiple paths to a single device may exist. (This can occur for scsi disk devices if scsi_vhci(7D)) is disabled or a disk is connected to multiple controllers not supported by scsi_vhci(7D).

In these cases, ldi_open_by_devid() returns a device handle that corresponds to a particular path to a target device. This path may not be the same across multiple calls to ldi_open_by_devid(). Device handles associated with the same device but different access paths should have different filesystem device paths and dev_t values.

In the cases where multiple paths to a device exist and access to the device has not been virtualized via MPXIO (as with scsi disk devices not accessed via scsi_vhci(7D)), the LDI does not provide any path fail-over capabilities. If the caller wishes to do their own path management and failover they should open all available paths to a device via ldi_open_by_name().
**Name**  
lidi_poll – Poll a device

**Synopsis**  
#include <sys/sunldi.h>

```c
int ldi_poll(ldi_handle_t lh, short events, int anyyet, short *reventsp,
            struct pollhead **phpp);
```

**Parameters**

- **lh**  
  Layered handle.

- **events**  
  Potential events. Valid events are:
  - POLLIN  
    Data other than high priority data may be read without blocking.
  - POLLOUT  
    Normal data may be written without blocking.
  - POLLPRI  
    High priority data may be received without blocking.
  - POLLHUP  
    Device hangup has occurred.
  - POLLErr  
    An error has occurred on the device.
  - POLLRDNORM  
    Normal data (priority band = 0) may be read without blocking.
  - POLLRDBAND  
    Data from a non-zero priority band may be read without blocking.
  - POLLWRNORM  
    Data other than high priority data may be read without blocking.
  - POLLWRBAND  
    Priority data (priority band > 0) may be written.

- **anyyet**  
  A flag that is non-zero if any other file descriptors in the pollfd array have events pending. The `poll(2)` system call takes a pointer to an array of pollfd structures as one of its arguments. See `poll(2)` for more details.

- **reventsp**  
  Pointer to a bitmask of the returned events satisfied.

- **phpp**  
  Pointer to a pointer to a pollhead structure.

**Description**  
The `ldi_poll()` function passes a poll request to the device entry point for the device specified by the layered handle. This operation is supported for block, character, and streams devices.

**Return Values**  
The `ldi_poll()` function returns 0 upon success. If a failure occurs before the request is passed on to the device, possible return values are:

- EINVAL  
  Invalid input parameters.

- ENOTSUP  
  Operation is not supported for this device.
Context  These functions may be called from user or kernel context.
ldi_prop_exists(9F)

Name  ldi_prop_exists – Check for the existence of a property

Synopsis  #include <sys/sunldi.h>

    int ldi_prop_exists(ldi_handle_t lh, uint_t flags, char *name);

Interface Level  Solaris DDI specific (Solaris DDI)

Parameters  lh  Layered handle.

    flags  Possible flag values are some combination of:

LDI_DEV_T_ANY  Match the lookup request independent of the actual dev_t value
    that was used when the property was created. The flag indicates
    any dev_t value (including DDI_DEV_T_NONE) associated
    with a possible property match satisfies the matching criteria.

DDI_PROP_DONTPASS  Do not pass request to parent device information node if the
    property is not found.

DDI_PROP_NOTPROM  Do not look at PROM properties (ignored on platforms that do
    not support PROM properties).

name  String containing the name of the property.

Description  ldi_prop_exists() checks for the existence of a property associated with a device
    represented by the layered driver handle, regardless of the property value data type.

Properties are searched for based on the dip and dev_t values associated with the layered
    handle, and the property name. This association is handled by the layered driver
    infrastructure on behalf of the consumers of ldi_prop_exists().

The property search order is as follows:

1.  Search software-properties created by the driver.
2.  Search the software properties created by the system (or nexus nodes in the device info
tree).
3.  Search the driver global properties list.
4.  If DDI_PROP_NOTPROM is not set, search the PROM properties (if they exist).
5.  If DDI_PROP_DONTPASS is not set, pass this request to the parent device information
    node of the device represented by the layered handle.
6.  Return 0 if not found and 1 if found.

Typically, the specific dev_t value associated with the device represented by the layered handle
    (ldi_handle_t) is used as a part of the property match criteria. This association is handled by
    the layered driver infrastructure on behalf of the consumers of the ldi property look up
    functions.
However, if the LDI_DEV_T_ANY flag is used, the ldi property lookup functions will match the request regardless of the dev_t value associated with the property at the time of its creation. If a property was created with a dev_t set to DDI_DEV_T_NONE, the only way to look up this property is with the LDI_DEV_T_ANY flag. PROM properties are always created with a dev_t set to DDI_DEV_T_NONE.

name must always be set to the name of the property being looked up.

**Return Values**  
ldi_prop_exists() returns 1 if the property exists and 0 otherwise.

**Context**  
This function may be called from user or kernel context.

**Example**  
The following example demonstrates the use of ldi_prop_exists().

```c
/* Determine the existence of the "interrupts" property */
ldi_prop_exists(lh, LDI_DEV_T_ANY|DDI_PROP_NOTPROM, "interrupts");
```

**See Also**  
ddi_prop_exists(9F)

*Writing Device Drivers*
# ldi_prop_get_int, ldi_prop_get_int64 – Lookup integer property

```c
#include <sys/sunldi.h>

int ldi_prop_get_int(ldi_handle_t lh, uint_t flags, char *name, int defvalue);

int64_t ldi_prop_get_int64(ldi_handle_t lh, uint_t flags, char *name, int64_t defvalue);
```

** lh Layered handle.

** flags Possible flag values are some combination of:

- **LDI_DEV_T_ANY** Match the lookup request independent of the actual dev_t value that was used when the property was created. Indicates any dev_t value (including DDI_DEV_T_NONE) associated with a possible property match satisfies the matching criteria.

- **DDI_PROP_DONTPASS** Do not pass request to parent device information node if property not found.

- **DDI_PROP_NOTPROM** Do not look at PROM properties (ignored on platforms that do not support PROM properties).

** name String containing the property name.

** defvalue Integer value that is returned if the property is not found.

** Interface Level Solaris DDI specific (Solaris DDI)

** Description The `ldi_prop_get_int()` and `ldi_prop_get_int64()` functions search for an integer property associated with a device represented by the layered driver handle. If the integer property is found, the functions return the property value.

Properties are searched for based on the dip and dev_t values associated with the layered handle, the property name, and type of the data (integer).

The property search order is as follows:

1. Search software properties created by the driver.
2. Search the software properties created by the system (or nexus nodes in the device info tree).
3. Search the driver global properties list.
4. If DDI_PROP_NOTPROM is not set, search the PROM properties (if they exist).
5. If DDI_PROP_DONTPASS is not set, pass this request to the parent device information node of the device represented by the layered handle.
6. Return defvalue.

Typically, the specific dev_t value associated with the device represented by the layered handle (ldi_handle_t) is used as a part of the property match criteria. This association is handled by the layered driver infrastructure on behalf of the consumers of the ldi property look up functions.

However, if the LDI_DEV_T_ANY flag is used, the ldi property lookup functions match the request regardless of the dev_t value associated with the property at the time of its creation. If a property was created with a dev_t set to DDI_DEV_T_NONE, the only way to look up this property is with the LDI_DEV_T_ANY flag. PROM properties are always created with a dev_t set to DDI_DEV_T_NONE.

name must always be set to the name of the property being looked up.

The return value of the routine is the value of property. If the property is not found, the argument defvalue is returned as the property value.

ldi_prop_get_int64() does not search the PROM for 64-bit property values.

Return Values  ldi_prop_get_int() and ldi_prop_get_int64() return the property value. If the property is not found, the argument defvalue is returned. If the property is found, but cannot be decoded into an int or an int64_t, DDI_PROP_NOT_FOUND is returned.

Context  ldi_prop_get_int() and ldi_prop_get_int64() can be called from user or kernel context.

Examples  Using ldi_prop_get_int64().

The following example demonstrates the use of ldi_prop_get_int64().

/*
 * Get the value of the integer "timeout" property, using
 * our own default if no such property exists
 */

int64_t timeout, defval;

timeout = ldi_prop_get_int64(lh, LDI_DEV_T_ANY|DDI_PROP_DONTPASS, proname, defval);

See Also  ddi_prop_get_int(9F), ddi_prop_get_int64(9F), ldi_prop_exists(9F).

Writing Device Drivers
ldi_prop_lookup_int_array(9F)

Name  ldi_prop_lookup_int_array, ldi_prop_lookup_int64_array, ldi_prop_lookup_string_array, ldi_prop_lookup_string, ldi_prop_lookup_byte_array – Lookup property information

Synopsis  #include <sys/sunldi.h>

int ldi_prop_lookup_int_array(ldi_handle_t lh, uint_t flags, char *name, int **datap, uint_t *nelementsp);
int ldi_prop_lookup_int64_array(ldi_handle_t lh, uint_t flags, char *name, int64_t **datap, uint_t *nelementsp);
int ldi_prop_lookup_string_array(ldi_handle_t lh, uint_t flags, char *name, char ***datap, uint_t *nelementsp);
int ldi_prop_lookup_string(ldi_handle_t lh, uint_t flags, char *name, char **datap);
int ldi_prop_lookup_byte_array(ldi_handle_t lh, uint_t flags, char *name, uchar_t **datap, uint_t *nelements);

Parameters  lh  Layered handle.
flags  Possible flag values are some combination of:
     LDI_DEV_T_ANY  Match the lookup request independent of the actual dev_t value that was used when the property was created. The flag indicates any dev_t value (including DDI_DEV_T_NONE) associated with a possible property match will satisfy the matching criteria.
     DDI_PROP_DONTPASS  Do not pass request to parent device information node if the property is not found.
     DDI_PROP_NOTPROM  Do not look at PROM properties (ignored on platforms that do not support PROM properties).
name  String containing the property name.
nelements  The address of an unsigned integer which, upon successful return, contains the number of elements accounted for in the memory pointed at by datap. Depending on the interface you use, the elements are either integers, strings or bytes.
 datap  ldi_prop_lookup_int_array()  Pointer address to an array of integers which, upon successful return, point to memory containing the integer array property value.
     ldi_prop_lookup_int64_array()  Pointer address to an array of 64-bit integers which, upon successful return, point to memory containing the integer array property value.
ldi_prop_lookup_string_array() Pointer address to an array of strings which, upon successful return, point to memory containing the array of strings. The string array is formatted as an array of pointers to NULL terminated strings, much like the argv argument to execve(2).

ldi_prop_lookup_string() Pointer address to a string which, upon successful return, points to memory containing the NULL terminated string value of the property.

ldi_prop_lookup_byte_array() Pointer address to an array of bytes which, upon successful return, point to memory containing the property byte array value.

**Interface Level** Solaris DDI specific (Solaris DDI).

**Description** The property look up functions search for and, if found, return the value of a given property. Properties are searched for based on the dip and dev_t values associated with the layered handle, the property name, and type of the data (integer, string, or byte).

The property search order is as follows:
1. Search software properties created by the driver.
2. Search the software properties created by the system (or nexus nodes in the device info tree).
3. Search the driver global properties list.
4. If DDI_PROP_NOTPROM is not set, search the PROM properties (if they exist).
5. If DDI_PROP_DONTPASS is not set, pass this request to the parent device information node of the device represented by the layered handle.
6. Return DDI_PROP_NOT_FOUND.

Typically, the specific dev_t value associated with the device represented by the layered handle (ldi_handle_t) is used as a part of the property match criteria. This association is handled by the layered driver infrastructure on behalf of the consumers of the ldi property look up functions.

However, if the LDI_DEV_T_ANY flag is used, the ldi property lookup functions match the request regardless of the dev_t value associated with the property at the time of its creation. If a property was created with a dev_t set to DDI_DEV_T_NONE, then the only way to look up this property is with the LDI_DEV_T_ANY flag. PROM properties are always created with a dev_t set to DDI_DEV_T_NONE.

name must always be set to the name of the property being looked up.
For the `ldi_prop_lookup_int_array()`, `ldi_prop_lookup_int64_array()`,
`ldi_prop_lookup_string_array()`, and `ldi_prop_lookup_byte_array()` functions, `datap` is the address of a pointer which, upon successful return, points to memory containing the value of the property. In each case `*datap` points to a different type of property value. See the individual descriptions of the functions below for details on the different return values. `nelemetsp` is the address of an unsigned integer which, upon successful return, contains the number of integer, string or byte elements accounted for in the memory pointed at by `*datap`.

All of the property look up functions may block to allocate memory needed to hold the value of the property.

When a driver has obtained a property with any look up function and is finished with that property, it must be freed by call `ddi_prop_free()`. `ddi_prop_free()` must be called with the address of the allocated property. For instance, if you call `ldi_prop_lookup_int_array()` with `datap` set to the address of a pointer to an integer, `&my-int-ptr`, the companion free call is `ddi_prop_free(my-int-ptr)`.

Property look up functions are described below:

- **ldi_prop_lookup_int_array()**
  This function searches for and returns an array of integer property values. An array of integers is defined to `*nelemetsp` number of 4 byte long integer elements. `datap` should be set to the address of a pointer to an array of integers which, upon successful return, will point to memory containing the integer array value of the property.

- **ldi_prop_lookup_int64_array()**
  This function searches for and returns an array of integer property values. An array of integers is defined to `*nelemetsp` number of 8 byte long integer elements. `datap` should be set to the address of a pointer to an array of integers which, upon successful return, will point to memory containing the integer array value of the property. This function does not search the PROM for 64-bit property values.

- **ldi_prop_lookup_string_array()**
  This function searches for and returns a property that is an array of strings. `datap` should be set to an address of a pointer to an array of strings which, upon successful return, will point to memory containing the array of strings. The array of strings is formatted as an array of pointers to null-terminated strings, much like the `argv` argument to `execve(2)`.
ldi_prop_lookup_string()  This function searches for and returns a property that is a null-terminated string. datap should be set to the address of a pointer to a string which, upon successful return, points to memory containing the string value of the property.

ldi_prop_lookup_byte_array()  This function searches for and returns a property that is an array of bytes. datap should be set to the address of a pointer to an array of bytes which, upon successful return, points to memory containing the byte array value of the property.

ddi_prop_free()  Frees the resources associated with a property previously allocated using ldi_prop_lookup_int_array(), ldi_prop_lookup_int64_array(), ldi_prop_lookup_string_array(), ldi_prop_lookup_string(), and ldi_prop_lookup_byte_array().

Return Values  The functions ldi_prop_lookup_int_array(), ldi_prop_lookup_int64_array(), ldi_prop_lookup_string_array(), ldi_prop_lookup_string(), and ldi_prop_lookup_byte_array() return the following values:

DDI_PROP_SUCCESS  Property found and returned.

DDI_PROP_INVAL_ARG  If an attempt is made to look up a property with a NULL ldi handle, name is NULL or name is a the null string.

DDI_PROP_NOT_FOUND  Property not found.

DDI_PROP_UNDEFINED  Property explicitly undefined (see ddi_prop_undefine(9F)).

DDI_PROP_CANNOT_DECODE  Property value cannot be decoded.

Context  These functions may be called from user or kernel context.

Example  Using ldi_prop_lookup_int64_array().

The following example demonstrates the use of ldi_prop_lookup_int64_array().

```c
int64_t *options;
uint_t noptions;
/*
```
* Get the data associated with the integer "options" property
* array, along with the number of option integers
*/

if (ldi_prop_lookup_int64_array(lh, LDI_DEV_T_ANY|DDI_PROP_NOTPROM, "options", &options, &noptions) == DDI_PROP_SUCCESS) {
    /*
    * Process the options data from the property
    * we just received. Let's do "our thing" with data.
    */
    xx_process_options(options, noptions);
*/
/*
* Free the memory allocated for the property data
*/
    ddi_prop_free(options);
}

See Also execve(2), ddi_prop_free(9F), ddi_prop_lookup(9F), ldi_prop_exists(9F).

Writing Device Drivers
ldi_putmsg, ldi_getmsg – Read/write message blocks from/to a stream

Synopsis

```
#include <sys/sunldi.h>

int ldi_putmsg(ldi_handle_t lh, mblk_t *smp);
int ldi_getmsg(ldi_handle_t lh, mblk_t **rmp, timestruc_t *timeo);
```

Parameters

- `lh` Layered handle.
- `smp` Message block to send.
- `rmp` Message block to receive.
- `timeo` Optional timeout for data reception.

Description

The `ldi_putmsg` function allows a caller to send a message block to a streams device specified by the layered handle `lh`. Once the message (`smp`) has been passed to `ldi_putmsg()`, the caller must not free the message even if an error occurs.

The `ldi_getmsg()` function allows a caller to receive a message block from a streams device specified by the layered handle `lh`. Callers must free the message received with `freemsg(9F)`.

If a NULL timeout value is specified when the caller receives a message, the caller sleeps until a message is received.

Return Values

The `ldi_putmsg()` and `ldi_getmsg()` functions return 0 upon success. If a failure occurs before the request is passed to the device, the possible return values are shown below. Otherwise any other error number may be returned by the device.

- EINVAL Invalid input parameters.
- ENOTSUP Operation is not supported for this device.

The `ldi_getmsg()` function may also return:

- ETIME Returned if the timeout `timeo` expires with no messages received.

Context

These functions may be called from user or kernel context.
### ldi_read(9F)

**Name**  ldi_read, ldi_write – Read and write from a device

**Synopsis**  
```c
#include <sys/sunldi.h>

int ldi_read(ldi_handle_t lh, struct uio *uiop, cred_t *cr);
int ldi_write(ldi_handle_t lh, struct uio *uiop, cred_t *cr);
```

**Parameters**  
- `lh`  Layered handle.
- `cr`  Pointer to a credential structure used to open a device.
- `uiop`  Pointer to the uio(9S) structure. uio(9S) specifies the location of the read or write data. (Either userland or kernel.)

**Description**  
The `ldi_read()` function passes a read request to the device entry point for the device specified by the layered handle. This operation is supported for block, character, and streams devices.

The `ldi_write()` function passes a write request to the device entry point for a device specified by the layered handle. This operation is supported for block, character, and streams devices.

**Return Values**  
The `ldi_read()` and `ldi_write()` functions return 0 upon success. If a failure occurs before the request is passed to the device, the possible return values are shown below. Otherwise any other error number may be returned by the device.

- **EINVAL**  Invalid input parameters.
- **ENOTSUP**  Operation is not supported for this device.

**Context**  
These functions may be called from user or kernel context.
ldi_remove_event_handler — remove an NDI event service callback

**Synopsis**

```c
#include <sys/sunldi.h>

int ldi_remove_event_handler(ldi_handle_t lh, ldi_callback_id_t id);
```

**Interface Level**

Solaris DDI Specific (Solaris DDI)

**Parameters**

- `ldi_handle_t lh`  
  Layered handle representing the device for which the event notification is requested.
- `ldi_callback_id_t id`  
  Unique system-wide registration ID returned by `ldi_add_event_handler` upon successful registration.

**Description**

The `ldi_remove_event_handler` function removes the callback handler specified by the registration ID (`ldi_callback_id_t`). Upon successful removal, the callback handler is removed from the system and is not invoked at the event occurrence.

**Return Values**

- `DDI_SUCCESS`  
  Callback handler removed successfully.
- `DDI_FAILURE`  
  Failed to remove callback handler.

**Context**

This function can be called from user and kernel contexts only.

**See Also**

`ldi_add_event_handler`, `ldi_get_eventcookie`

*Writing Device Drivers*
ldi_strategy(9F)

Name  ldi_strategy – Device strategy request

Synopsis  #include <sys/sunldi.h>

    int ldi_strategy(ldi_handle_t lh, struct buf *bp);

Parameters  lh    Layered handle.

            bp    Pointer to the buf(9S) structure.

Description  The ldi_strategy() function passes a strategy request to the device entry point for the device specified by the layered handle. This operation is supported for block devices.

Return Values  The ldi_strategy() function returns 0 if the strategy request has been passed on to the target device. Other possible return values are:

            EINVAL    Invalid input parameters.

            ENOTSUP   Operation is not supported for this device.

Once the request has been passed on to the target devices strategy entry point, any further errors will be reported by bioerror(9F) and biodone(9F). See the strategy(9E) entry point for more information.

Context  This function may be called from user or kernel context.
**Name**
linkb – concatenate two message blocks

**Synopsis**
#include <sys/stream.h>

```c
void linkb(mblk_t *mp1, mblk_t *mp2);
```

**Interface Level**
Architecture independent level 1 (DDI/DKI).

**Description**
The `linkb()` function creates a new message by adding `mp2` to the tail of `mp1`. The continuation pointer, `b_cont`, of `mp1` is set to point to `mp2`.

The following figure describes how the `linkb(mp1, mp2)` function concatenates two message blocks, `mp1` and `mp2`:

```
mp1
  | b_datap
  | b_cont
db_base
  data buffer

mp2
  | b_datap
  | b_cont (0)
db_base
  data buffer

linkb(mp1, mp2);
```

**Parameters**
- `mp1`   The message to which `mp2` is to be added. `mblk_t` is an instance of the `msgb(9S)` structure.
- `mp2`   The message to be added.

**Context**
The `linkb()` function can be called from user, interrupt, or kernel context.

**Examples**
See `dupb(9F)` for an example that uses `linkb()`.

**See Also**
`dupb(9F), unlinkb(9F), msgb(9S)`

*Writing Device Drivers*

*STREAMS Programming Guide*
#include <sys/mac_provider.h>

mac_register_t *mac_alloc(uint_t version);
void mac_free(mac_register_t *mregp);
int mac_register(mac_register_t *mregp, mac_handle_t *mhp);
int mac_unregister(mac_handle_t mh);
void mac_tx_update(mac_handle_t mh);
void mac_link_update(mac_handle_t mh, link_state_t new_state);
void mac_rx(mac_handle_t mh, void *reserved, mblk_t *mp_chain);
void mac_init_ops(struct dev_ops *ops, const char *name);
void mac_fini_ops(struct dev_ops *ops);

**Parameters**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>version</td>
<td>MAC version</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mh</td>
<td>MAC handle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mhp</td>
<td>pointer to a MAC handle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mregp</td>
<td>pointer to a mac_register_t(9S) structure</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>reserved</td>
<td>reserved argument</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mp_chain</td>
<td>chain of message blocks containing a received packet</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>new_state</td>
<td>media link state</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ops</td>
<td>device operations structure</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>name</td>
<td>device driver name</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Interface Level**

Solaris architecture specific (Solaris DDI)

**Description**

The `mac_alloc()` function allocates a new `mac_register(9S)` structure and returns a pointer to it. The allocated structure may contain some MAC-private elements. These private elements are initialized by the MAC layer before `mac_alloc()` returns, and the other elements of the structure are initialized to 0. The device driver must initialize the structure members as described by `mac_register` before passing a pointer to the structure to `mac_register`. The version argument should be set to `MAC_VERSION_V1`.

The `mac_free()` function frees a `mac_register` structure previously allocated by `mac_alloc()`.
The `mac_register()` function is called from the device driver’s `attach()` entry point, and is used to register the MAC-based device driver with the MAC layer. The `mac_register()` entry point is passed an instance of the `mac_register` structure previously allocated by `mac_alloc()`.

On success, `mac_register()` returns 0 and sets `mhp` to point to a new MAC handle corresponding to the new MAC instance. This MAC handle is subsequently passed by the driver to the framework as an argument to other MAC routines such as the ones described here. The `attach()` entry point of the driver should return `DDI_SUCCESS` in this case. On failure, `mac_register()` returns a non-zero error as described by `Intro(2)`. The `attach()` entry point of the driver should return `DDI_FAILURE` in this case.

The `mac_unregister()` function is called by the driver from its `detach()` entry point to unregister the instance from the MAC layer. It should pass the MAC handle which was previously obtained from `mac_register()`. `mac_unregister()` returns 0 on success, in which case the driver’s `detach()` entry point should return `DDI_SUCCESS`. `mac_unregister()` returns a non-zero error as described by `Intro(2)` on failure. In this case the driver’s `detach()` entry point should return `DDI_FAILURE`.

The `mac_tx_update()` function should be called by the driver to reschedule stalled outbound packets. Whenever the driver’s `mc_tx()` has returned a non-empty chain of packets, it must later `mac_tx_update()` to inform the MAC layer that it should retry the packets that previously could not be sent. `mac_tx_update()` should be called as soon as possible after resources are again available, to ensure that MAC resumes passing outbound packets to the driver’s `mc_tx()` entry point.

The `mac_link_update()` function is called by the device driver to notify the MAC layer of changes in the media link state. The `new_state` argument must be set to one of the following:

```
LINK_STATE_UP     The media link is up.
LINK_STATE_DOWN   The media link is down.
LINK_STATE_UNKNOWN The media link is unknown.
```

The `mac_rx()` function is called by the driver’s interrupt handler to pass a chain of one or more packets to the MAC layer. Packets of a chain are linked with the `b_next` pointer. The driver should avoid holding mutex or other locks during the call to `mac_rx()`. In particular, locks that could be taken by a transmit thread may not be held during a call to `mac_rx()`.

The `mac_init_ops()` function must be invoked from the `_init()` entry point of the device driver before a call to `mod_install()`. It is passed a pointer to the device driver’s operations structure, and the name of the device driver.

The `mac_fini_ops()` function must be called from `_fini()` before the driver is unloaded after invoking `mod_remove()`, or before returning from `_init()` in the case of an error returned by `mod_install()`.
The `mac_alloc()` function returns a pointer to a new `mac_register(9S)` structure.

The `mac_register()` and `mac_unregister()` functions return a non-zero error, as defined by `Intro(2)`.

Attributes

See `attributes(5)` for descriptions of the following attributes:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ATTRIBUTE TYPE</th>
<th>ATTRIBUTE VALUE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Availability</td>
<td>SUNWheax</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Interface Stability</td>
<td>Committed</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

See Also

`Intro(2), attributes(5), attach(9E), detach(9E), _fini(9E), _init(9E), mac(9E),
mc_tx(9E), mod_install(9F), mod_remove(9F), dev_ops(9S), mac_register(9S)`
mac_hcksum_get, mac_hcksum_set – hardware checksumming offload routines

#include <sys/mac_provider.h>

void mac_hcksum_get(mblk_t *mp, uint32_t *start, uint32_t *stuff, uint32_t *end, uint32_t *value, uint32_t *flags);

void mac_hcksum_set(mblk_t *mp, uint32_t start, uint32_t stuff, uint32_t end, uint32_t value, uint32_t *flags);

mp pointer to a message block
start offset, in bytes, from the start of the IP header to the start of the checksum span
end offset, in bytes, from the start of the IP header to the end of the checksum span
stuff offset, in bytes, from the start of the IP header to the checksum field in the protocol header
value hardware computed checksum value
flags per-packet flags indicating the hardware checksumming to be performed on outbound packets, or the hardware checksumming performed on inbound packet

Interface Level Solaris architecture specific (Solaris DDI)

Description Hardware checksumming allows the checksum computation to be offloaded to the network device hardware for lower CPU utilization. Hardware checksumming capabilities are advertised from the driver’s mc_getcapab(9E) entry point. The description of mc_getcapab() also includes more information about the expected behavior of drivers for full and partial checksumming offload.

For received traffic, the hardware can enable hardware checksumming, and the network stack will know how to handle packets for which checksum computation or verification has been performed. The mac_hcksum_set() function can be used by a device driver to associate information related to the hardware checksumming performed on the packet.

The flags argument can be a combination of the following:

HCK_FULLCKSUM The full checksum was computed, and is passed through the value argument.
HCK_FULLCKSUM_OK The full checksum was verified in hardware and is correct.
HCK_PARTIALCKSUM Partial checksum computed and passed through the value argument. The start and end arguments specify the checksum span.
HCK_IPV4_HDRCKSUM_OK IP header checksum was verified in hardware and is correct.
HCK_PARTIALCKSUM is mutually exclusive with the HCK_FULLCKSUM and HCK_FULLCKSUM_OK flags.

For outbound packets, hardware checksumming capabilities are queried via the mc_getcapab() entry point. Hardware checksumming is enabled by the network stack based on the MAC_CAPAB_HCKSUM capability. A device driver that advertised support for this capability can subsequently receive outbound packets that may not have a fully computed checksum. It is the responsibility of the driver to invoke mac_hcksum_get() to retrieve the per-packet hardware checksumming metadata.

- **HCK_FULLCKSUM**  
  Compute full checksum for this packet.

- **HCK_PARTIALCKSUM**  
  Compute partial 1's complement checksum based on the start, stuff, and offset.

- **HCK_IPV4_HDRCKSUM**  
  Compute the IP header checksum.

HCK_PARTIALCKSUM is mutually exclusive with HCK_FULLCKSUM.

The flags HCK_FULLCKSUM, HCK_FULLCKSUM_OK, and HCK_PARTIALCKSUM are used for both IPv4 and IPv6 packets. The driver advertises support for IPv4 and/or IPv6 full checksumming during capability negotiation. See mc_getcapab(9E).

**Attributes**  
See attributes(5) for descriptions of the following attributes:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ATTRIBUTE TYPE</th>
<th>ATTRIBUTE VALUE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Availability</td>
<td>SUNWhea</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Interface Stability</td>
<td>Committed</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**See Also**  
attributes(5), mac(9E)
Name  mac_lso_get – LSO routine

Synopsis  #include <sys/mac_provider.h>

    void mac_lso_get(mblk_t *mp, uint32_t *mss, uint32_t *flags);

Description  LSO (Large Segment Offload, or Large Send Offload) allows the network stack to send larger buffers to a device driver. These large buffers can then be segmented in hardware, allowing for reduced CPU utilization, PCI overhead, and reduced buffer management costs.

    LSO is enabled only for device driver instances that advertise support for the MAC_CAPAB_LSO capability through the mc_getcapab(9E) entry point.

    Once a device driver advertises the LSO capability, it must use the mac_lso_get() entry point to query whether LSO must be performed on the packet. The following values for the flags argument are supported:

    HW_LSO  When set, this flag indicates that LSO is enabled for that packet. The maximum segment size (MSS) to be used during segmentation of the large segment is returned through the location pointed to by mss.

Attributes  See attributes(5) for descriptions of the following attributes:

   ATTRIBUTE TYPE        ATTRIBUTE VALUE
    ------------           ---------------
    Availability          SUNWheaw
    Interface Stability   Committed

See Also  attributes(5), mac(9E)
mac_prop_info_set_perm(9F)

Name
mac_prop_info_set_perm, mac_prop_info_set_default_uint8,
mac_prop_info_set_default_str, mac_prop_info_set_default_link_flowctrl,
mac_prop_info_set_range_uint32 – set property information

Synopsis
#include <sys/mac_provider.h>

void mac_prop_info_set_perm(mac_prop_info_handle_t ph,
uint8_t perm);

void mac_prop_info_set_default_uint8(mac_prop_info_handle_t ph,
uint8_t val);

void mac_prop_info_set_default_str(mac_prop_info_handle_t ph,
const char *str);

void mac_prop_info_set_default_link_flowctrl(
    mac_prop_info_handle_t ph, link_flowctrl_t val);

void mac_prop_info_set_range_uint32(mac_prop_info_handle_t ph,
uint32_t min, uint32_t max);

Description
The entry points described here are invoked from a device driver's mc_getcapab(9E) entry
point to associate information such as default values, permissions, or allowed value ranges.

Each one of these functions takes as first argument the property information handle which is
passed to mc_propinfo() as argument.

The mac_prop_info_set_perm() function specifies the property of the property. The
permission is passed through the perm argument and can be set to one of the following values.

MAC_PROP_PERM_READ The property is read-only.
MAC_PROP_PERM_WRITE The property is write-only.
MAC_PROP_PERM_RW The property can be read and written.

The driver is not required to call mac_prop_info_set_perm() for every property. If the driver
does not call that function for a specific property, the framework will assume that the property
has read and write permissions, corresponding to MAC_PROP_PERM_RW.

The mac_prop_info_set_default_uint8(), mac_prop_info_set_default_str(), and
mac_prop_info_set_default_link_flowctrl() functions are used to associate a default
value with a specific property.

The mac_prop_info_set_range_uint32() function is used by a driver to associate an allowed
range of values for a specific property. The range is defined by the min and max arguments
passed by the device driver. This function can be called successively to specify multiple
non-overlapping ranges.
Attributes

See attributes(5) for descriptions of the following attributes:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ATTRIBUTE TYPE</th>
<th>ATTRIBUTE VALUE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Availability</td>
<td>SUNWheat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Interface Stability</td>
<td>Committed</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

See Also attributes(5), mac(9E)
The `makecom` functions initialize a packet with the specified command descriptor block, `devp` and transport flags. The `pkt_address`, `pkt_flags`, and the command descriptor block pointed to by `pkt_cdbp` are initialized using the remaining arguments. Target drivers may use `makecom_g0()` for Group 0 commands (except for sequential access devices), or `makecom_g0_s()` for Group 0 commands for sequential access devices, or `makecom_g1()` for Group 1 commands, or `makecom_g5()` for Group 5 commands. `fixbit` is used by sequential access devices for accessing fixed block sizes and sets the tag portion of the SCSI CDB.

**Context**
These functions can be called from user, interrupt, or kernel context.

**Examples**

```c
if (blkno >= (1<<20)) {
    makecom_g1(pkt, SD_SCSI_DEVP, pflag, SCMD_WRITE_G1, (int) blkno, nblk);
} else {
    makecom_g0(pkt, SD_SCSI_DEVP, pflag, SCMD_WRITE, (int) blkno, nblk);
```

**Interface Level**
These interfaces are obsolete. `scsi_setup_cdb(9F)` should be used instead.

**Parameters**
- `pkt` Pointer to an allocated `scsi_pkt(9S)` structure.
- `devp` Pointer to the target's `scsi_device(9S)` structure.
- `flag` Flags for the `pkt_flags` member.
- `cmd` First byte of a group 0 or 1 or 5 SCSI CDB.
- `addr` Pointer to the location of the data.
- `cnt` Data transfer length in units defined by the SCSI device type. For sequential devices `cnt` is the number of bytes. For block devices, `cnt` is the number of blocks.
- `fixbit` Fixed bit in sequential access device commands.
EXAMPLE 1  

Using makecom Functions  

(Continued)

}

Attributes  See attributes(5) for a description of the following attributes:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ATTRIBUTE TYPE</th>
<th>ATTRIBUTE VALUE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Stability Level</td>
<td>Obsolete</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

See Also  attributes(5), scsi_setup_cdb(9F), scsi_device(9S), scsi_pkt(9S)

ANSI Small Computer System Interface-2 (SCSI-2)

Writing Device Drivers

Notes  The makecom_g0(), makecom_g0_s(), makecom_g1(), and makecom_g5() functions are obsolete and will be discontinued in a future release. These functions have been replaced by the scsi_setup_cdb() function. See scsi_setup_cdb(9F).
### Synopsis

```c
#include <sys/types.h>
#include <sys/mkdev.h>
#include <sys/ddi.h>

dev_t makedevice(major_t majnum, minor_t minnum);
```

### Parameters
- `majnum` Major device number.
- `minnum` Minor device number.

### Description

The `makedevice()` function creates a device number from a major and minor device number. `makedevice()` should be used to create device numbers so the driver will port easily to releases that treat device numbers differently.

### Return Values

The device number, containing both the major number and the minor number, is returned. No validation of the major or minor numbers is performed.

### Context

The `makedevice()` function can be called from user, interrupt, or kernel context.

### See Also
- `getmajor(9F)`, `getminor(9F)`
### max(9F)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>max – return the larger of two integers</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Synopsis</td>
<td><code>#include &lt;sys/ddi.h&gt;</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Interface Level</td>
<td>Architecture independent level 1 (DDI/DKI).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Parameters</td>
<td><code>int1</code> The first integer.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><code>int2</code> The second integer.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Description</td>
<td>The <code>max()</code> function compares two signed integers and returns the larger of the two.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Return Values</td>
<td>The larger of the two numbers.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Context</td>
<td>The <code>max()</code> function can be called from user, interrupt, or kernel context.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>See Also</td>
<td><code>min(9F)</code></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Writing Device Drivers**
MBLKHEAD, MBLKIN, MBLKL, MBLKSIZE, MBLKTAIL – Message block utility macros

Synopsis
#include <sys/stream.h>
#include <sys/strsun.h>

int MBLKHEAD(mblk_t *mp);
int MBLKTAIL(mblk_t *mp);
int MBLKSIZE(mblk_t *mp);
int MBLKL(mblk_t *mp);
int MBLKIN(mblk_t *mp, int offset, int len);

Interface Level
Solaris DDI specific (Solaris DDI).

Parameters
mp Message to be examined.
offset Offset from mp->b_rptr from which to start examining.
len Number of bytes to examine.

Description
The MBLKHEAD () macro calculates the number of bytes between the first byte and the first unread byte of the message block, that is: mp->b_rptr - mp->b_datap->db_base.

The MBLKTAIL () macro calculates the number of bytes between the first unwritten byte and the last byte of the message block, that is: mp->b_datap->db_lim - mp->b_wptr.

The MBLKSIZE () macros calculates the total size of the message block, that is: mp->b_datap->db_lim - mp->b_datap->db_base.

The MBLKL () macro calculates the length of the message block, that is: mp->b_wptr - mp->b_rptr.

The MBLKIN() macro checks whether the byte range specified by offset and len resides entirely within the message block.

Return Values
The MBLKHEAD (), MBLKTAIL (), MBLKL() and MBLKSIZE () functions all return the appropriate byte count, as specified above. MBLKIN() returns non-zero if the check succeeds, or zero if it fails.

Context
These functions can be called from user, kernel or interrupt context.

Notes
These macros may evaluate any of their arguments more than once. This precludes passing arguments with side effects.

These macros assume the message itself is well formed, that is: mp->b_datap->db_base <= mp->b_rptr <= mp->b_wptr <= mp->b_datap->db_lim.
See Also  msgb(9S)

STREAMS Programming Guide
### mcopyin(9F)

**Name**
mcopyin – Convert an M_IOCTL or M_IOCDATA message to an M_COPYIN

**Synopsis**
```c
#include <sys/stream.h>
#include <sys/strsun.h>

void mcopyin(mblk_t *mp, void *private, size_t size, void *useraddr);
```

**Interface Level**
Solaris DDI specific (Solaris DDI).

**Parameters**
- `mp` : M_IOCTL or M_IOCDATA message.
- `private` : Value to which the `cq_private` field of `copyreq(9S)` is set.
- `size` : Value to which the `cq_size` field of `copyreq(9S)` is set.
- `useraddr` : Optionally, the value to which the `cq_addr` field of `copyreq(9S)` is set.

**Description**
The `mcopyin()` function converts an M_IOCTL or M_IOCDATA message into an M_COPYIN message using the supplied arguments.

To convert the message, `mcopyin()` changes the message type to M_COPYIN, and its payload from a `iocblk(9S)` to a `copyreq(9S)`. Since the `iocblk(9S)` and `copyreq(9S)` are designed to overlay one another, the only fields which must be updated are `cq_private`, `cq_size`, and `cq_addr`, which are set to the supplied values. If `useraddr` is passed as NULL, `mp` must be a transparent M_IOCTL, and `cq_addr` is assigned the pointer-sized quantity found at `mp->b_cont->b_rptr`.

Any trailing message blocks associated with `mp` are freed.

**Return Values**
None.

**Context**
This function can be called from user, kernel or interrupt context.

**See Also**
- `mcopyout(9F)`, `copyreq(9S)`
- `STREAMS Programming Guide`
Name: mcopymsg – Copy message contents into a buffer and free message

Synopsis: #include <sys/stream.h>
#include <sys/strsun.h>

void mcopymsg(mblk_t *mp, void *buf);

Interface Level: Solaris DDI specific (Solaris DDI).

Parameters:
- mp: Message to be copied.
- buf: Buffer in which to copy.

Description: The mcopymsg() function copies the contents of the specified message into the specified buffer. If the message consists of more than a single message block, the contents of each message block are placed consecutively into the buffer. After copying the message contents to buf, mcopymsg() frees the message mp.

The provided buffer must be large enough to accommodate the message. If the buffer is not large enough, the results are unspecified. The msgsize(9F) function can be used to calculate the total size of the message beforehand.

Return Values: None.

Context: This function can be called from user, kernel or interrupt context.

See Also: freemsg(9F), msgsize(9F)

STREAMS Programming Guide
mcopyout(9F)

**Name**  
mcopyout – Convert an M_IOCTL or M_IOCDATA message to an M_COPYOUT

**Synopsis**  
```c
#include <sys/stream.h>
#include <sys/strsun.h>

void mcopyout(mblk_t *mp, void *private, size_t size, void *useraddr, mblk_t *dp);
```

**Interface Level**  
Solaris DDI specific (Solaris DDI).

**Parameters**  
- `mp`  
  M_IOCTL or M_IOCDATA message.
- `private`  
  Value to set the cq_private field of the `copyreq(9S)` to.
- `size`  
  Value to set the cq_size field of the `copyreq(9S)` to.
- `useraddr`  
  Optionally, the value to set the cq_addr field of the `copyreq(9S)` to.
- `dp`  
  Optionally, the payload to copy out.

**Description**  
The `mcopyout()` function converts an M_IOCTL or M_IOCDATA message into an M_COPYOUT message using the supplied arguments.

To convert the message, `mcopyout()` changes the message type to M_COPYOUT, and its payload from a `iocblk(9S)` to a `copyreq(9S)`. Since the `iocblk(9S)` and `copyreq(9S)` are designed to overlay one another, the only fields which must be updated are `cq_private`, `cq_size`, and `cq_addr`, which are set to the supplied values. If `useraddr` is passed as NULL, the M_IOCTL must be transparent and `cq_addr` is assigned the pointer-sized quantity found at `mp->b_cont->b_rptr`.

If `dp` is not NULL, any trailing message blocks associated with `mp` are freed, `mp->b_cont` is reset to `dp` and `dp->b_wptr` is set to `dp->b_rptr + size`. Otherwise, any trailing message blocks are unaffected.

**Return Values**  
None.

**Context**  
This function can be called from user, kernel or interrupt context.

**See Also**  
`mcopyin(9F), copyreq(9S), iocblk(9S)`

*STREAMS Programming Guide*
The `membar_enter()` function is a generic memory barrier used during lock entry. It is placed after the memory operation that acquires the lock to guarantee that the lock protects its data. No stores from after the memory barrier will reach visibility and no loads from after the barrier will be resolved before the lock acquisition reaches global visibility.

The `membar_exit()` function is a generic memory barrier used during lock exit. It is placed before the memory operation that releases the lock to guarantee that the lock protects its data. All loads and stores issued before the barrier will be resolved before the subsequent lock update reaches visibility.

The `membar_enter()` and `membar_exit()` functions are used together to allow regions of code to be in relaxed store order and then ensure that the load or store order is maintained at a higher level. They are useful in the implementation of mutex exclusion locks.

The `membar_producer()` function arranges for all stores issued before this point in the code to reach global visibility before any stores that follow. This is useful in producer modules that update a data item, then set a flag that it is available. The memory barrier guarantees that the available flag is not visible earlier than the updated data, thereby imposing store ordering.

The `membar_consumer()` function arranges for all loads issued before this point in the code to be completed before any subsequent loads. This is useful in consumer modules that check if data is available and read the data. The memory barrier guarantees that the data is not sampled until after the available flag has been seen, thereby imposing load ordering.

No values are returned.

No errors are defined.

These functions can be called from user, interrupt, or kernel context.

See `attributes(5)` for descriptions of the following attributes:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ATTRIBUTE TYPE</th>
<th>ATTRIBUTE VALUE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Interface Stability</td>
<td>Evolving</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Atomic instructions (see atomic_ops(9F)) ensure global visibility of atomically-modified variables on completion. In a relaxed store order system, this does not guarantee that the visibility of other variables will be synchronized with the completion of the atomic instruction. If such synchronization is required, memory barrier instructions must be used.
### Name
memchr, memcmp, memcpy, memmove, memset – Memory operations

### Synopsis
```
#include <sys/ddi.h>
```

```c
void *memchr(const void *s, int c, size_t n);
int memcmp(const void *s1, const void *s2, size_t n);
void *memcpy(void *restrict s1, const void *restrict s2, size_t n);
void *memmove(void *s1, const void *s2, size_t n);
void *memset(void *s, int c, size_t n);
```

### Interface Level
Solaris DDI specific (Solaris DDI).

### Parameters
- **dst**  
  Pointers to character strings.
- **n**  
  Count of characters to be copied.
- **s1, s2**  
  Pointers to character strings.

### Description
These functions operate as efficiently as possible on memory areas (arrays of bytes bounded by a count, not terminated by a null character). They do not check for the overflow of any receiving memory area.

The `memchr()` function returns a pointer to the first occurrence of `c` (converted to an `unsigned char`) in the first `n` bytes (each interpreted as an `unsigned char`) of memory area `s`, or a null pointer if `c` does not occur.

The `memcmp()` function compares its arguments, looking at the first `n` bytes (each interpreted as an `unsigned char`), and returns an integer less than, equal to, or greater than 0, according as `s1` is lexicographically less than, equal to, or greater than `s2` when taken to be unsigned characters.

The `memcpy()` function copies `n` bytes from memory area `s2` to `s1`. It returns `s1`. If copying takes place between objects that overlap, the behavior is undefined.

The `memmove()` function copies `n` bytes from memory area `s2` to memory area `s1`. Copying between objects that overlap will take place correctly. It returns `s1`.

The `memset()` function sets the first `n` bytes in memory area `s` to the value of `c` (converted to an `unsigned char`). It returns `s`.

### Usage
Using `memcpy()` might be faster than using `memmove()` if the application knows that the objects being copied do not overlap.
memchr(9F)

Context  These functions can be called from user, interrupt, or kernel context.

See Also  bcopy(9F), ddi_copyin(9F), strcpy(9F)

Writing Device Drivers
**Name**  
merror – Send an M_ERROR message upstream

**Synopsis**  
```c
#include <sys/stream.h>
#include <sys/strsun.h>

void merror(queue_t *wq, mblk_t *mp, int error);
```

**Interface Level**  
Solaris DDI specific (Solaris DDI).

**Parameters**  
- `wq`  
  Write queue associated with the read queue to send the M_ERROR on.

- `mp`  
  Optionally, a STREAMS message to convert to an M_ERROR.

- `error`  
  Error code to include in the M_ERROR message.

**Description**  
The `merror()` function constructs an M_ERROR message, and sends the resulting message upstream.

If `mp` is NULL, `merror()` allocates a one-byte M_ERROR message. If `mp` is non-NULL, `merror()` attempts to convert the passed-in message to an M_ERROR. However, if the passed-in message has more than one reference (see `dupmsg(9F)`), or if it is of zero length, it is freed and a new message is allocated.

If the allocation or conversion fails, `merror()` silently fails. Otherwise, the resulting one-byte data block is assigned the specified error code and sent upstream.

**Return Values**  
None.

**Context**  
This function can be called from user, kernel or interrupt context.

**Notes**  
Callers must not hold any locks across an `merror()` that can be acquired as part of `put(9E)` processing.

**See Also**  
`put(9E)`, `dupmsg(9F)`

*STREAMS Programming Guide*
mexchange(9F)

Name  mexchange – Exchange one message for another

Synopsis  #include <sys/stream.h>
#include <sys/strsun.h>

mblk_t *mexchange(queue_t *wq, mblk_t *mp, size_t size,
                   uchar_t type, int32_t primtype);

Interface Level  Solaris DDI specific (Solaris DDI).

Parameters  wq  Optionally, write queue associated with the read queue to be used on failure (see below).
mp  Optionally, the message to exchange.
size  Size of the returned message.
type  Type of the returned message.
primtype  Optionally, a 4 byte value to store at the beginning of the returned message.

Description  The mexchange() function exchanges the passed in message for another message of the specified size and type.

If mp is not NULL, is of at least size bytes, and has only one reference (see dupmsg(9F)), mp is converted to be of the specified size and type. Otherwise, a new message of the specified size and type is allocated. If allocation fails, and wq is not NULL, merror(9F) attempts to send an error to the stream head.

Finally, if primtype is not -1 and size is at least 4 bytes, the first 4 bytes are assigned to be primtype. This is chiefly useful for STREAMS-based protocols such as DLPI and TPI which store the protocol message type in the first 4 bytes of each message.

Return Values  A pointer to the requested message is returned on success. NULL is returned on failure.

Context  This function can be called from user, kernel or interrupt context.

See Also  dupmsg(9F), merror(9F)

STREAMS Programming Guide
**Name** min – return the lesser of two integers

**Synopsis** #include <sys/ddi.h>

```c
int min(int int1, int int2);
```

**Interface Level** Architecture independent level 1 (DDI/DKI).

**Parameters**
- `int1` The first integer.
- `int2` The second integer.

**Description** The `min()` function compares two signed integers and returns the lesser of the two.

**Return Values** The lesser of the two integers.

**Context** The `min()` function can be called from user, interrupt, or kernel context.

**See Also** `max(9F)`

*Writing Device Drivers*
**mioc2ack**

---

**Name**
mioc2ack – Convert an M_IOCTL message to an M_IOACK message

**Synopsis**
```c
#include <sys/stream.h>
#include <sys/strsun.h>

void mioc2ack(mblk_t *mp, mblk_t *dp, size_t count, int rval);
```

**Interface Level**
Solaris DDI specific (Solaris DDI).

**Parameters**
- **mp**
  
  M_IOCTL message.

- **dp**
  
  Payload to associate with M_IOACK message.

- **count**
  
  Value to set the ioc_count of the iocblk(9S) to.

- **rval**
  
  Value to set the ioc_rval of the iocblk(9S) to.

**Description**
The mioc2ack() function converts an M_IOCTL message into an M_IOACK message using the supplied arguments.

To convert the message, mioc2ack() changes the message type to M_IOACK, sets the ioc_count and ioc_rval members of the iocblk(9S) associated with mp to the passed-in values, and clears the ioc_error field. Further, it frees any message blocks chained off of mp->b_cont and resets mp->b_cont to dp. Finally, if dp is not NULL, mioc2ack() resets dp->b_wptr to be dp->b_rptr + count (that is, it sets dp to be exactly count bytes in length).

**Return Values**
None.

**Context**
This function can be called from user, kernel or interrupt context.

**See Also**
miocack(9F), miocnak(9F), iocblk(9S)

STREAMS Programming Guide
miocack(9F)

Name
miocack – Positively acknowledge an M_IOCTL message

Synopsis
#include <sys/stream.h>
#include <sys/strsun.h>

void miocack(queue_t *wq, mblk_t *mp, int count, int rval);

Interface Level
Solaris DDI specific (Solaris DDI).

Parameters
wq Write queue associated with the read queue to send the M_IOCACK on.
mp M_IOCTL message.
count Value to set the ioc_count of the iocblk(9S) to.
rval Value to set the ioc_rval of the iocblk(9S) to.

Description
The miocack() function converts an M_IOCTL message into an M_IOCACK message and sends the resulting message upstream.

To convert the message, miocack() changes the message type to M_IOCACK, sets the 'ioc_count' and 'ioc_rval' members of the iocblk(9S) associated with mp to the passed-in values, and clears the 'ioc_error' field. If the caller specifies a non-zero value for count, it is expected that the caller has already set 'mp->b_cont' field to point to a message block with a length of at least count bytes.

Callers that only need to perform the message conversion, or need to perform additional steps between the conversion and the sending of the M_IOCACK should use mioc2ack(9F).

Return Values
None.

Context
This function can be called from user, kernel or interrupt context.

Notes
Callers must not hold any locks across a miocack() that can be acquired as part of put(9E) processing.

See Also
mioc2ack(9F), put(9E), iocblk(9S)

STREAMS Programming Guide
miocnak(9F)

Name  
miocnak – Negatively acknowledge an M_IOCTL message

Synopsis  
```
#include <sys/stream.h>
#include <sys/strsun.h>
```

```
void miocnak(queue_t *wq, mblk_t *mp, int count, int error);
```

Interface Level  
Solaris DDI specific (Solaris DDI).

Parameters  
- **wq**: Write queue associated with the read queue to send the M_IOCNAK on.
- **mp**: M_IOCTL message.
- **count**: Value to set the ioc_count of the iocblk(9S) to.
- **error**: Value to set the ioc_error of the iocblk(9S) to.

Description  
The **miocnak()** function converts an M_IOCTL message into an M_IOCNAK message and sends the resulting message upstream.

To convert the message, **miocnak()** changes the message type to M_IOCNAK, sets the ioc_count and ioc_error members of the iocblk(9S) associated with mp to the passed-in values, and clears the ioc_rval field. Since payloads cannot currently be associated with M_IOCNAK messages, count must always be zero. If error is passed as zero, EINVAL is assumed.

Return Values  
None.

Context  
This function can be called from user, kernel or interrupt context.

Notes  
Callers must not hold any locks across a miocnak() that can be acquired as part of put(9E) processing.

See Also  
mioc2ack(9F), miocack(9F), put(9E), iocblk(9S)

STREAMS Programming Guide
miocpullup – Prepare the payload of an M_IOCTL message for access

**Synopsis**

```
#include <sys/stream.h>
#include <sys/strsun.h>

int miocpullup(mblk_t *mp, size_t size);
```

**Interface Level**

Solaris DDI specific (Solaris DDI).

**Parameters**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>mp</td>
<td>M_IOCTL message.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>size</td>
<td>Number of bytes to prepare.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Description**

The `miocpullup()` function prepares the payload of the specified M_IOCTL message for access by ensuring that it consists of at least `size` bytes of data.

If the M_IOCTL message is transparent, or its total payload is less than `size` bytes, an error is returned. Otherwise, the payload is concatenated as necessary to provide contiguous access to at least `size` bytes of data. As a special case, if `size` is zero, `miocpullup()` returns successfully, even if no payload exists.

**Return Values**

Zero is returned on success. Otherwise an errno value is returned indicating the problem.

**Context**

This function can be called from user, kernel or interrupt context.

**See Also**

STREAMS Programming Guide
Name  mkiocb – allocates a STREAMS ioctl block for M_IOCTL messages in the kernel.

Synopsis  #include <sys/stream.h>

mblk_t *mkiocb(uint_t command);

Interface Level  Solaris DDI specific (Solaris DDI).

Parameters  command  ioctl command for the ioc_cmd field.

Description  STREAMS modules or drivers might need to issue an ioctl to a lower module or driver. The mkiocb() function tries to allocate (using allocb(9F)) a STREAMS M_IOCTL message block (iocblk(9S)). Buffer allocation fails only when the system is out of memory. If no buffer is available, the qbufcall(9F) function can help a module recover from an allocation failure.

The mkiocb function returns a mblk_t structure which is large enough to hold any of the ioctl messages (iocblk(9S), copyreq(9S) or copyresp(9S)), and has the following special properties:

- b_wptr  Set to b_rptr + sizeof(struct iocblk).
- b_cont  Set to NULL.
- b_datap->db_type  Set to M_IOCTL.

The fields in the iocblk structure are initialized as follows:

- ioc_cmd  Set to the command value passed in.
- ioc_id  Set to a unique identifier.
- ioc_cr  Set to point to a credential structure encoding the maximum system privilege and which does not need to be freed in any fashion.
- ioc_count  Set to 0.
- ioc_rval  Set to 0.
- ioc_error  Set to 0.
- ioc_flags  Set to IOC_NATIVE to reflect that this is native to the running kernel.

Return Values  Upon success, the mkiocb() function returns a pointer to the allocated mblk_t of type M_IOCTL.

On failure, it returns a null pointer.

Context  The mkiocb() function can be called from user, interrupt, or kernel context.
**Examples**

**EXAmple 1**  M_IOCTL Allocation
The first example shows an M_IOCTL allocation with the ioctl command TEST_CMD. If the iocblk(9S) cannot be allocated, NULL is returned, indicating an allocation failure (line 5). In line 11, the putnext(9F) function is used to send the message downstream.

```c
1 test_function(queue_t *q, test_info_t *testinfo) {
2    mblk_t *mp;
3
4    if ((mp = mkiocb(TEST_CMD)) == NULL) {
5        return (0);
6    }
7
8    /* save off ioctl ID value */
9    testinfo->xx_iocid = ((struct iocblk *)mp->b_rptr)->ioc_id;
10
11   putnext(q, mp); /* send message downstream */
12   return (1);
13 }
```

**EXAmple 2**  The ioctl ID Value
During the read service routine, the ioctl ID value for M_IOCACK or M_IOCNAK should equal the ioctl that was previously sent by this module before processing.

```c
1 test_lrsrv(queue_t *q) {
2    ...
3
4    switch (DB_TYPE(mp)) {
5        case M_IOCACK:
6            ...
7        case M_IOCNAK:
8            /* Does this match the ioctl that this module sent */
9            ioc = (struct iocblk*)mp->b_rptr;
10           if (ioc->ioc_id == testinfo->xx_iocid) {
11               /* matches, so process the message */
12               ...
13               freemsg(mp);
14           }
15            break;
16        }
17    ...
18 }
```

**EXAmple 3**  An iocblk Allocation Which Fails
The next example shows an iocblk allocation which fails. Since the open routine is in user context, the caller may block using qbufcall(9F) until memory is available.
EXAMPLE 3 An iocblk Allocation Which Fails (Continued)

```c
1  test_open(queue_t *q, dev_t devp, int oflag, int sflag, cred_t *credp)
2  {
3      while ((mp = mkiocb(TEST_IOCTL)) == NULL) {
4          int id;
5
6          id = qbufcall(q, sizeof (union ioctypes), BPRI_HI,
7                          dummy_callback, 0);
8          /* Handle interrupts */
9          if (!qwait_sig(q)) {
10             qunbufcall(q, id);
11             return (EINTR);
12         }
13      }
14      putnext(q, mp);
15  }
```

See Also allocb(9F), putnext(9F), qbufcall(9F), qwait_sig(9F), copyreq(9S), copyresp(9S), iocblk(9S)

STREAMS Programming Guide

Writing Device Drivers

Warnings It is the module's responsibility to remember the ID value of the M_IOCTL that was allocated. This will ensure proper cleanup and ID matching when the M_IOCACK or M_IOCNACK is received.
# mod_install(9F)

**Name**  
mod_install, mod_remove, mod_info – add, remove or query a loadable module

**Synopsis**  
```
#include <sys/modctl.h>

int mod_install(struct modlinkage *modlinkage);
int mod_remove(struct modlinkage *modlinkage);
int mod_info(struct modlinkage *modlinkage,
              struct modinfo *modinfo);
```

**Interface Level**  
Solaris DDI specific (Solaris DDI).

**Parameters**  
- `modlinkage`  
  Pointer to the loadable module's `modlinkage` structure which describes what type(s) of module elements are included in this loadable module.

- `modinfo`  
  Pointer to the `modinfo` structure passed to `_info(9E)`.

**Description**  
`mod_install()` must be called from a module's `_init(9E)` routine.

`mod_remove()` must be called from a module's `_fini(9E)` routine.

`mod_info()` must be called from a module's `_info(9E)` routine.

When `_init(9E)` is executing, its call to `mod_install()` enables other threads to call `attach(9E)` even prior to `mod_install()` returning and `_init(9E)` completion. From a programming standpoint this means that all `_init(9E)` initialization must occur prior to `_init(9E)` calling `mod_install()`. If `mod_install()` fails (non-zero return value), any initialization must be undone.

When `_fini(9E)` is executing, another thread may call `attach(9E)` prior to `_fini(9E)` calling `mod_remove()`. If this occurs, the `mod_remove()` fails (non-zero return). From a programming standpoint, this means that `_init(9E)` initializations should only be undone after a successful return from `mod_remove()`.

**Return Values**  
- `mod_install()` and `mod_remove()` return 0 upon success and non-zero on failure.
- `mod_info()` returns a non-zero value on success and 0 upon failure.

**Examples**  
See `_init(9E)` for an example that uses these functions.

**See Also**  
_fini(9E), _info(9E), _init(9E), moddrv(9S), modlinkage(9S), modlstrmod(9S)

*Writing Device Drivers*
Name  msgdsize – return the number of bytes in a message

Synopsis  

```c
#include <sys/stream.h>

size_t msgdsize(mblk_t *mp);
```

Interface Level  Architecture independent level 1 (DDI/DKI).

Parameters  

- `mp`  Message to be evaluated.

Description  The `msgdsize()` function counts the number of bytes in a data message. Only bytes included in the data blocks of type `M_DATA` are included in the count.

Return Values  The number of data bytes in a message, expressed as an integer.

Context  The `msgdsize()` function can be called from user, interrupt, or kernel context.

Examples  See `bufcall(9F)` for an example that uses `msgdsize()`.

See Also  

`bufcall(9F)`

*Writing Device Drivers*

*STREAMS Programming Guide*
Synopsis

`#include <sys/stream.h>

mblk_t *msgpullup(mblk_t *mp, ssize_t len);`

Parameters

- `mp`: Pointer to the message whose blocks are to be concatenated.
- `len`: Number of bytes to concatenate.

Description

The `msgpullup()` function concatenates and aligns the first `len` data bytes of the message pointed to by `mp`, copying the data into a new message. Any remaining bytes in the remaining message blocks will be copied and linked onto the new message. The original message is unaltered. If `len` equals −1, all data are concatenated. If `len` bytes of the same message type cannot be found, `msgpullup()` fails and returns `NULL`.

Return Values

The `msgpullup` function returns the following values:

- **Non-null**: Successful completion. A pointer to the new message is returned.
- **NULL**: An error occurred.

Context

The `msgpullup()` function can be called from user, interrupt, or kernel context.

See Also

`srv(9E), allocb(9F), pullupmsg(9F), msgb(9S)`

*Writing Device Drivers*

*STREAMS Programming Guide*

Notes

The `msgpullup()` function is a DKI-compliant replacement for the older `pullupmsg(9F)` routine. Users are strongly encouraged to use `msgpullup()` instead of `pullupmsg(9F)`.
**Name**  
`msgsize` – Return the total number of bytes in a message

**Synopsis**  
```
#include <sys/stream.h>
#include <sys/strsun.h>
```

```
size_t msgsize(mblk_t *mp);
```

**Interface Level**  
Solaris DDI specific (Solaris DDI)

**Parameters**  
`mp`  
Message to be evaluated.

**Description**  
The `msgsize()` function counts the number of bytes in a message, regardless of the data type of the underlying data blocks.

**Return Values**  
Number of bytes in the message.

**Context**  
This function can be called from user, kernel or interrupt context.

**See Also**  
`msgdsize(9F)`

`STREAMS Programming Guide`
**Synopsis**
```
#include <sys/conf.h>
```

**Interface Level**
Solaris DDI specific (Solaris DDI).

**Description**
STREAMS drivers configures the degree of concurrency using the `cb_flag` field in the `cb_ops` structure (see `cb_ops(9S)`). The corresponding field for STREAMS modules is the `f_flag` in the `fmodsw` structure.

For the purpose of restricting and controlling the concurrency in drivers/modules, we define the concepts of *inner* and *outer perimeters*. A driver/module can be configured either to have no perimeters, to have only an inner or an outer perimeter, or to have both an inner and an outer perimeter. Each perimeter acts as a readers-writers lock, that is, there can be multiple concurrent readers or a single writer. Thus, each perimeter can be entered in two modes: shared (reader) or exclusive (writer). The mode depends on the perimeter configuration and can be different for the different STREAMS entry points (`open(9E)`, `close(9E)`, `put(9E)`, or `srv(9E)`).

The concurrency for the different entry points is (unless specified otherwise) to enter with exclusive access at the inner perimeter (if present) and shared access at the outer perimeter (if present).

The perimeter configuration consists of flags that define the presence and scope of the inner perimeter, the presence of the outer perimeter (which can only have one scope), and flags that modify the default concurrency for the different entry points.

All MT safe modules/drivers specify the `D_MP` flag.

**Inner Perimeter Flags**
The inner perimeter presence and scope are controlled by the mutually exclusive flags:

- `D_MTPERQ` The module/driver has an inner perimeter around each queue.
- `D_MTPAIR` The module/driver has an inner perimeter around each read/write pair of queues.
- `D_MTPERMOD` The module/driver has an inner perimeter that encloses all the module's/driver's queues.
- None of the above The module/driver has no inner perimeter.

**Outer Perimeter Flags**
The outer perimeter presence is configured using:

- `D_MTOUPPERIM` In addition to any inner perimeter, the module/driver has an outer perimeter that encloses all the module's/driver's queues. This can be combined with all the inner perimeter options except `D_MTPERMOD`. 
Note that acquiring exclusive access at the outer perimeter (that is, using qwriter(9F) with the PERIM_OUTER flag) can incur significant performance penalties, which grow linearly with the number of open instances of the module or driver in the system.

The default concurrency can be modified using:

D_MTPUTSHARE

This flag modifies the default behavior when put(9E) procedure are invoked so that the inner perimeter is entered shared instead of exclusively.

D_MTOEXCL

This flag modifies the default behavior when open(9E) and close(9E) procedures are invoked so the outer perimeter is entered exclusively instead of shared.

Note that drivers and modules using this flag can cause significant system performance degradation during stream open or close when many instances of the driver or module are in use simultaneously. For this reason, use of this flag is discouraged. Instead, since open(9E) and close(9E) both execute with user context, developers are encouraged to use traditional synchronization routines such as cv_wait_sig(9F) to coordinate with other open instances of the module or driver.

The module/driver can use qwait(9F) or qwait_sig() in the open(9E) and close(9E) procedures if it needs to wait “outside” the perimeters.

The module/driver can use qwriter(9F) to upgrade the access at the inner or outer perimeter from shared to exclusive.

The use and semantics of qprocson() and qprocsoff(9F) is independent of the inner and outer perimeters.

See Also

close(9E), open(9E), put(9E), srv(9E), qprocsoff(9F), qprocson(9F), qwait(9F), qwriter(9F), cb_ops(9S)

STREAMS Programming Guide

Writing Device Drivers
mutex(9F)

Name
mutex, mutex_enter, mutex_exit, mutex_init, mutex_destroy, mutex_owned, mutex_tryenter - mutual exclusion lock routines

Synopsis
#include <sys/ksynch.h>

void mutex_init(kmutex_t *mp, char *name, kmutex_type_t type, void *arg);
void mutex_destroy(kmutex_t *mp);
void mutex_enter(kmutex_t *mp);
void mutex_exit(kmutex_t *mp);
ing mutex_owned(kmutex_t *mp);
ing mutex_tryenter(kmutex_t *mp);

Interface Level
Solaris DDI specific (Solaris DDI).

Parameters

mp
Pointer to a kernel mutex lock (kmutex_t).

name
Descriptive string. This is obsolete and should be NULL. (Non-NULL strings are legal, but they are a waste of kernel memory.)

type
Type of mutex lock.

arg
Type-specific argument for initialization routine.

Description
A mutex enforces a policy of mutual exclusion. Only one thread at a time may hold a particular mutex. Threads trying to lock a held mutex will block until the mutex is unlocked.

Mutexes are strictly bracketing and may not be recursively locked, meaning that mutexes should be exited in the opposite order they were entered, and cannot be reentered before exiting.

mutex_init() initializes a mutex. It is an error to initialize a mutex more than once. The type argument should be set to MUTEX_DRIVER.

arg provides type-specific information for a given variant type of mutex. When mutex_init() is called for driver mutexes, if the mutex is used by the interrupt handler, the arg should be the interrupt priority returned from ddi_intr_getPri(9F) or ddi_intr_getSoftIntPri(9F). Note that arg should be the value of the interrupt priority cast by calling the DDI_INTR_PRI macro. If the mutex is never used inside an interrupt handler, the argument should be NULL.

mutex_enter() is used to acquire a mutex. If the mutex is already held, then the caller blocks. After returning, the calling thread is the owner of the mutex. If the mutex is already held by the calling thread, a panic ensues.
mutex(9F)

mutex_owned() should only be used in ASSERT() and may be enforced by not being defined unless the preprocessor symbol DEBUG is defined. Its return value is non-zero if the current thread (or, if that cannot be determined, at least some thread) holds the mutex pointed to by mp.

mutex_tryenter() is very similar to mutex_enter() except that it doesn’t block when the mutex is already held. mutex_tryenter() returns non-zero when it acquired the mutex and 0 when the mutex is already held.

mutex_exit() releases a mutex and will unblock another thread if any are blocked on the mutex.

mutex_destroy() releases any resources that might have been allocated by mutex_init(). mutex_destroy() must be called before freeing the memory containing the mutex, and should be called with the mutex unheld (not owned by any thread). The caller must be sure that no other thread attempts to use the mutex.

Return Values

mutex_tryenter() returns non-zero on success and zero on failure.

mutex_owned() returns non-zero if the calling thread currently holds the mutex pointed to by mp, or when that cannot be determined, if any thread holds the mutex. mutex_owned() returns zero.

Context

These functions can be called from user, kernel, or high-level interrupt context, except for mutex_init() and mutex_destroy(), which can be called from user or kernel context only.

Examples

EXAMPLE 1 Initializing a Mutex

A driver might do this to initialize a mutex that is part of its unit structure and used in its interrupt routine:

ddi_intr_get_pri(hdlp, &pri);
mutex_init(&un->un_lock, NULL, MUTEX_DRIVER, DDI_INTR_PRI(pri));
ddi_intr_add_handler(hdlp, xxintr, (caddr_t)un, NULL);

EXAMPLE 2 Calling a Routine with a Lock

A routine that expects to be called with a certain lock held might have the following ASSERT:

xxstart(struct xxunit *un)
{
    ASSERT(mutex_owned(&un->un_lock));
...

See Also

lockstat(1M), Intro(9F), condvar(9F), ddi_intr_alloc(9F), ddi_intr_add_handler(9F), ddi_intr_get_pri(9F), ddi_intr_get_softint_pri(9F), rwlock(9F), semaphore(9F)
Writing Device Drivers

Notes

Compiling with _LOCKTEST or _MPSTATS defined has no effect. To gather lock statistics, see lockstat(1M).

The address of a kmutex_t lock must be aligned on an 8-byte boundary for 64-bit kernels, or a 4-byte boundary for 32-bit kernels. Violation of this requirement will result in undefined behavior, including, but not limited to, failure of mutual exclusion or a system panic.

To write scalable, responsive drivers that do not hang, panic or deadlock the system, follow these guidelines:

Never return from a driver entry point with a mutex held.
Never hold a mutex when calling a service that may block, for example kmem_alloc(9F) with KM_SLEEP or delay(9F).
Always acquire mutexes in a consistent order. If a critical section acquires mutex A followed by B, and elsewhere in the driver mutex B is acquired before A, the driver can deadlock with one thread holding A and waiting for B and another thread holding B while waiting for A.
Always use a mutex to enforce exclusive access to data, not instruction paths.
Acquiring a lock in user context that is also acquired in interrupt context means that, as long as that lock is held, the driver instance holding the lock is subject to all the rules and limitations of interrupt context.
In most cases, a mutex can and should be acquired and released within the same function.
Liberal use of debugging aids like ASSERT(mutex_owned(&mutex)) can help find callers of a function which should be holding a mutex but are not. This means you need to test your driver compiled with DEBUG.
Do not use a mutex to set driver state. However, you should use a mutex to protect driver state data.
Use per-instance and automatic data where possible to reduce the amount of shared data.
Per-instance data can be protected by a per-instance lock to improve scalability and reduce contention with multiple hardware instances.
Avoid global data and global mutexes whenever possible.
### net_event_notify_register(9F)

**Name**
net_event_notify_register, net_event_notify_unregister – add/delete a function to be called for changes to a event

**Synopsis**
```c
#include <sys/hook.h>
#include <sys/neti.h>

int net_event_notify_register(net_handle_t family, char *event, hook_notify_fn_t *callback, void *arg);

int net_event_notify_unregister(net_handle_t family, char *event, hook_notify_fn_t *callback);

typedef int (*hook_notify_fn_t)(hook_notify_cmd_t command, void *arg, const char *name1, const char *name2, const char *name3);
```

**Interface Level**
Solaris DDI specific (Solaris DDI).

**Parameters**
- `family` value returned from a successful call to `net_protocol_lookup()`.
- `callback` function to call when a change occurs.
- `event` name of the event for which notification of change is desired.
- `arg` pointer to pass into the `callback()` function when a change occurs.

**Description**
The `net_event_notify_register()` function registers a function represented by the pointer `callback` to be called when there is a change to the event represented by `family`. The types of changes for which notifications are available for is currently limited to the addition and removal of hooks.

The `net_event_notify_unregister()` function indicates that there is no longer any desire to receive notification of changes to the event through function calls to the specified `callback`.

The name of a hook should be considered a private interface unless otherwise specified. The hook names used by IPFilter in Solaris are a public, but uncommitted, interface.

Multiple `callback` functions may be registered through this interface. The same set of parameters is passed to each `callback` function. The memory referenced through the pointers passed to the `callback` should be treated as pointing to read-only memory. Changing this data is strictly prohibited.

The function that is called when the `event` occurs must not block any other events.

The arguments passed through to the `callback` are as follows (the command is either `HN_REGISTER` or `HN_UNREGISTER`):

- `name1` is the name of the protocol.
- `name2` is the name of the event.
name3 is the name of the hook being added/removed

Return Values If these functions succeed, 0 is returned. Otherwise, the following error is returned:
EEXIST the given callback function is already registered.

Context These functions may be called from user or kernel context.

Attributes See attributes(5) for descriptions of the following attributes:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ATTRIBUTE TYPE</th>
<th>ATTRIBUTE VALUE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Availability</td>
<td>SUNWcsu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Interface Stability</td>
<td>Committed</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

See Also attributes(5), net_hook_register(9F), net_hook_unregister(9F), net_protocol_lookup(9F)
net_getifname – determine the name given to a network interface

Synopsis

```
#include <sys/neti.h>

int net_getifname(const net_data_t net, const phy_if_t ifp,
                  char *buffer, size_t buflen);
```

Interface Level
Solaris DDI specific (Solaris DDI).

Parameters
- `net`  value returned from a successful call to `net_protocol_lookup(9F)`.
- `ifp`  value returned from a successful call to `net_phylookup(9F)` or `net_phygetnext(9F)`.
- `buffer`  pointer to the buffer in which to write the interface name.
- `buflen`  size of the buffer in which to store the interface name.

Description
The `net_getifname()` function copies the name of the network interface into the buffer provided. The name will always be null-terminated. If the buffer is too small to fit both the interface name and the null-terminated name, the name in the buffer is truncated to fit. See `net_phygetnext(9F)` for an example on how to use this function.

Return Values
The `net_getifname()` function returns:
- `-1`  The network protocol does not support this function.
- `0`  Successful completion.
- `1`  Unsuccessful.

Context
The `net_getifname()` function may be called from user, kernel, or interrupt context.

Attributes
See `attributes(5)` for descriptions of the following attributes:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ATTRIBUTE TYPE</th>
<th>ATTRIBUTE VALUE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Availability</td>
<td>SUNWcsu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Interface Stability</td>
<td>Committed</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

See Also
`net_phygetnext(9F), net_phylookup(9F), net_protocol_lookup(9F)`
net_getlifaddr – determine a network address for a given interface

#include <sys/neti.h>

int net_getlifaddr(const net_data_t net, const phy_if_t ifp,
                   const net_if_t lif, int const type,
                   struct sockaddr* storage);

Solaris DDI specific (Solaris DDI).

Value returned from a successful call to net_protocol_lookup(9F).

Value returned from a successful call to net_phylookup(9F) or
net_phygetnext(9F), indicating which network interface the information
should be returned from.

Indicates the logical interface from which to fetch the address.

Indicates what type of address should be returned. See below for more
details on this field.

Pointer to an area of memory to store the address data.

The net_getlifaddr() function retrieves the address information for
each logical interface. Each call to net_getlifaddr() requires that the
caller pass a pointer to an array of address information types to
retrieve, and an accompanying pointer to an array of pointers to
struct sockaddr structures to which to copy the address information.
See net_lifgetnext(9F) for an example on how to use this function.

Each member of the address type array should be one of the values listed here.

NA_ADDRESS Return the network address associated with the logical interface (lif) that
belongs to the network interface (ifp).

NA_PEER Return the address assigned to the remote host for point to point network
interfaces for the given network/logical interface.

NA.Broadcast Return the broadcast address assigned to the given network/logical
interface for network interfaces that support broadcast packets.

NA_NETMASK Return the netmask associated with the given network/logical interface for
network interfaces that support broadcast packets.

The net_getlifaddr() function returns:

-1 The network protocol does not support this function.

0 Successful completion.

1 Unsuccessful.
The `net_getifaddr()` function may be called from user, kernel, or interrupt context.

### Attributes

See `attributes(5)` for descriptions of the following attributes:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ATTRIBUTE TYPE</th>
<th>ATTRIBUTE VALUE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Availability</td>
<td>SUNWcsu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Interface Stability</td>
<td>Committed</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### See Also

`net_lifgetnext(9F), net_phylookup(9F), net_phygetnext(9F), net_protocol_lookup(9F)`
Name  net_getmtu – determine the MTU of a given network interface

Synopsis  
```c
#include <sys/neti.h>

int net_getmtu(const net_data_t net, const phy_if_t ifp);
```

Interface Level  Solaris DDI specific (Solaris DDI).

Parameters  
- `net`  value returned from a successful call to `net_protocol_lookup(9F)`.
- `ifp`  value returned from a successful call to `net_phylookup(9F)` or `net_phy_getnext(9F)`.

Description  The `net_getmtu()` function receives information about the current MTU of a network interface. The value returned from this function call should not be cached as the MTU of a network interface is not guaranteed to be constant.

Return Values  The `net_getmtu()` function returns -1 if the network protocol does not support this feature and otherwise returns the current MTU of the network interface.

Context  The `net_getmtu()` function may be called from user, kernel, or interrupt context.

Attributes  See `attributes(5)` for descriptions of the following attributes:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Attribute Type</th>
<th>Attribute Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Availability</td>
<td>SUNWcsu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Interface Stability</td>
<td>Committed</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

See Also  `net_phy_getnext(9F), net_phylookup(9F), net_protocol_lookup(9F)`
net_getnetid(9F)

Name  net_getnetid – returns the instance identifier

Synopsis  #include <sys/neti.h>

 netid_t net_getnetid(const net_data_t net);

Interface Level  Solaris DDI specific (Solaris DDI).

Parameters  net  value returned from a successful call to net_protocol_lookup(9F).

Description  The net_getnetid() function returns the instance identifier for the protocol instance
returned via a call to net_protocol_lookup(9F).

Return Values  The net_getnetid() function returns the value of the instance identifier.

Context  The net_getnetid() function may be called from user, kernel, or interrupt context.

Attributes  See attributes(5) for descriptions of the following attributes:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ATTRIBUTE TYPE</th>
<th>ATTRIBUTE VALUE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Availability</td>
<td>SUNWcsu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Interface Stability</td>
<td>Committed</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

See Also  net_protocol_lookup(9F)
Name: net_getpmtuenabled – determine if path MTU discovery is enabled for a network protocol

Synopsis: #include <sys/neti.h>

    int net_getpmtuenabled(const net_data_t net);

Interface Level: Solaris DDI specific (Solaris DDI).

Parameters: net  value returned from a successful call to net_protocol_lookup(9F).

Description: The net_getpmtuenabled() function returns a value to indicate whether or not path MTU (PMTU) discovery is enabled for this network protocol.

Return Values: The net_getpmtuenabled() function returns:

-1 The network protocol does not support this function.
0  PATH MTU discovery is disabled.
1  PATH MTU discovery is enabled.

Context: The net_getpmtuenabled() function may be called from user, kernel, or interrupt context.

Attributes: See attributes(5) for descriptions of the following attributes:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ATTRIBUTE TYPE</th>
<th>ATTRIBUTE VALUE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Availability</td>
<td>SUNWcsu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Interface Stability</td>
<td>Committed</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

See Also: net_getmtu(9F), net_protocol_lookup(9F)
Name  net_hook_register – add a hook to be called in event processing

Synopsis  #include <sys/neti.h>

        net_hook_t net_hook_register(const net_data_t net, hook_t *hook);

Interface Level  Solaris DDI specific (Solaris DDI).

Parameters  

net  value returned from a successful call to net_protocol_register().

hook  pointer to a hook_t structure.

Description  The net_hook_register() function uses hooks that allow callbacks to be registered with events that belong to a network protocol. A successful call to net_hook_register() requires that a valid handle for a network protocol be provided (the net parameter), along with a hook description that includes a reference to an available event.

While it is possible to use the same hook_t structure with multiple calls to net_hook_register(), it is not encouraged.

The hook_t structure passed in with this function is described by hook_t(9S). The following describes how this structure is used.

h_func  Must be non-NULL and represent a function that fits the specified interface.

h_name  Gives the hook a name that represents its owner. No duplication of h_name among the hooks present for an event is allowed.

h_flags  Currently unused and must be set to 0.

h_hint, h_hintvalue  Specify a hint to net_hook_register() on how to insert this hook. If the hint cannot be specified, then an error is returned.

h_arg;  May take any value that the consumer wishes to have passed back when the hook is activated.

Return Values  If the net_hook_register() function succeeds, 0 is returned. Otherwise, one of the following errors is returned:

ENOMEM  The system cannot allocate any more memory to support registering this hook.

ENXIO  A hook cannot be found among the given family of events.

EEXIST  A hook with the given h_name already exists on that event.

ESRCH  A before or after dependency cannot be satisfied due to the hook with

EBUSY  The h_hint field specifies a hint that cannot currently be satisfied because it conflicts with another hook. An example of this might be specifying HH_FIRST or HH_LAST when another hook has already been registered with this value.
The `net_hook_register()` function may be called from user or kernel context.

**Attributes** See attributes(5) for descriptions of the following attributes:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ATTRIBUTE TYPE</th>
<th>ATTRIBUTE VALUE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Availability</td>
<td>SUNWcsu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Interface Stability</td>
<td>Committed</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**See Also** `net_hook_unregister(9F), hook_t(9S)`
net_hook_unregister(9F)

Name    net_hook_unregister – disable a hook that was called in event processing

Synopsis  #include <sys/neti.h>

    int net_hook_unregister(const net_data_t net, nethook_t hook);

Interface Level  Solaris DDI specific (Solaris DDI).

Parameters  net    value returned from a successful call to net_protocol_register().
            hook   value returned from a successful call to net_hook_register(9F).

Description  The net_hook_unregister() function disables the callback hooks that were registered with
              the net_hook_register() function.

Return Values  If the net_hook_unregister() function succeeds, 0 is returned. Otherwise, an error
                indicating the problem encountered.

Context    The net_hook_unregister() function may be called from user, kernel, or interrupt context.

Attributes  See attributes(5) for descriptions of the following attributes:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ATTRIBUTE TYPE</th>
<th>ATTRIBUTE VALUE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Availability</td>
<td>SUNWcsu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Interface Stability</td>
<td>Committed</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

See Also  net_hook_register(9F)
The `net_getnetid()` interface is designed to provide the framework for accessing functionality and data within an implementation of a network layer protocol (OSI layer 3.) A protocol may or may not provide full coverage for each of the functions that is described within this interface. Where it does not, it must return an appropriate error condition for that call. Documentation pertaining to the network protocol, as found in man page section 7pP, must list which functions provided by this interface are and are not supported.

Attributes

See attributes(5) for descriptions of the following attributes:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ATTRIBUTE TYPE</th>
<th>ATTRIBUTE VALUE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Interface Stability</td>
<td>Committed</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

See Also

attributes(5), hook_alloc(9F), hook_free(9F), hook_nic_event(9S), hook_pkt_event(9S), hook_t(9S), net_getifname(9F), net_getifaddr(9F), net_getmtu(9F), net_getnetid(9F), net_getpmtu_enabled(9F), net_hook_register(9F), net_hook_unregister(9F), net_inject(9F), net_inject_alloc(9F), net_inject_free(9F), net_inject_t(9S), net_instance_alloc(9F), net_instance_free(9F), net_instance_register(9F), net_instance_unregister(9F), net_ispartialchecksum(9F), net_isvalidchecksum(9F), net_kstat_create(9F), net_kstat_delete(9F), net_lifgetnext(9F), net_netidtozonid(9F), net_phygetnext(9F), net_phylookup(9F), net_protocol_lookup(9F), net_protocol_release(9F), net_protocol_walk(9F), net_routeto(9F), net_zoneidtonetid(9F)
Name  net_inject – determine if a network interface name exists for a network protocol

Synopsis  
```c
#include <sys/neti.h>

int net_inject(const net_data_t *net, inject_t style, 
                net_inject_t *packet);
```

Interface Level  Solaris DDI specific (Solaris DDI).

Parameters  
- `net`  value returned from a successful call to `net_protocol_lookup(9F)`.  
- `style`  method that determines how this packet is to be injected into the network or kernel.  
- `packet`  details about the packet to be injected.

Description  The `net_inject()` function provides an interface to allow delivery of network layer (layer 3) packets either into the kernel or onto the network. The method of delivery is determined by `style`.

If `NI_QUEUE_IN` is specified, the packet is scheduled for delivery up into the kernel, imitating its reception by a network interface. In this mode, `packet->ni_addr` is ignored and `packet->ni_physical` specifies the interface for which the packet is made to appear as if it arrived on.

If `NI_QUEUE_OUT` is specified, the packet is scheduled for delivery out of the kernel, as if it were being sent by a raw socket. In this mode, `packet->ni_addr` and `packet->ni_physical` are both ignored.

Neither `NI_QUEUE_IN` or `NI_QUEUE_OUT` cause the packet to be immediately processed by the kernel. Instead, the packet is added to a list and a timeout is scheduled (if there are none already pending) to deliver the packet. The call to `net_inject()` returns once the setup has been completed, and not after the packet has been processed. The packet processing is completed on a different thread and in a different context to that of the original packet. Thus, a packet queued up using `net_inject()` for either `NI_QUEUE_IN` or `NI_QUEUE_OUT` is presented to the packet event again. A packet received by a hook from `NH_PHYSICAL_IN` and then queued up with `NI_QUEUE_IN` is seen by the hook as another `NH_PHYSICAL_IN` packet. This also applies to both `NH_PHYSICAL_OUT` and `NI_QUEUE_OUT` packets.

If `NI_DIRECT_OUT` is specified, an attempt is made to send the packet out to a network interface immediately. No processing on the packet, aside from prepending any required layer 2 information, is made. In this instance, `packet->ni_addr` may be used to specify the next hop (for the purpose of link layer address resolution) and `packet->ni_physical` determines which interface the packet should be sent out.

For all three packets, `packet->ni_packet` must point to an `mblk` structure with the packet to be delivered.
See `net_inject_t(9S)` for more details on the structure `net_inject_t`.

**Return Values** The `net_inject()` function returns:
- `-1` The network protocol does not support this function.
- `0` The packet is successfully queued or sent.
- `1` The packet could not be queued up or sent out immediately.

**Context** The `net_inject()` function may be called from user, kernel, or interrupt context.

**Attributes** See `attributes(5)` for descriptions of the following attributes:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Attribute Type</th>
<th>Attribute Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Availability</td>
<td>SUNWcsu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Interface Stability</td>
<td>Committed</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**See Also** `net_protocol_lookup(9F), netinfo(9F), net_inject_t(9S)`
net_inject_alloc(9F)

Name  net_inject_alloc – allocate a net_inject_t structure

Synopsis  #include <sys/neti.h>

    net_inject_t *net_inject_alloc(const int version);

Interface Level  Solaris DDI specific (Solaris DDI).

Parameters  version  must always be the symbol NETI_VERSION.

Description  The net_inject_alloc() function allocates a net_inject_t structure, returning a pointer for the caller to use.

Return Values  Upon success, net_inject_alloc() returns a pointer to the allocated net_inject_t structure. On failure, hook_alloc() returns a NULL pointer.

Context  The net_inject_alloc() function may be called from user, kernel, or interrupt context.

Attributes  See attributes(5) for descriptions of the following attributes:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ATTRIBUTE TYPE</th>
<th>ATTRIBUTE VALUE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Availability</td>
<td>SUNWcsu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Interface Stability</td>
<td>Committed</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

See Also  net_inject_free(9F), net_inject_t(9S)
**Name**  net_inject_free – free a net_inject_t structure

**Synopsis**  
```
#include <sys/neti.h>

void net_inject_free(net_inject_t *inject);
```

**Interface Level**  Solaris DDI specific (Solaris DDI).

**Parameters**  
- `inject`  pointer returned by `net_inject_alloc(9F)`.

**Description**  
The `net_inject_free()` function frees a `net_inject_t` structure that was originally allocated by `net_inject_alloc(9F)`.

**Context**  
The `net_inject_free()` function may be called from user, kernel, or interrupt context.

**Attributes**  See `attributes(5)` for descriptions of the following attributes:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ATTRIBUTE TYPE</th>
<th>ATTRIBUTE VALUE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Availability</td>
<td>SUNWcsu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Interface Stability</td>
<td>Committed</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**See Also**  `net_inject_alloc(9F), attributes(5), net_inject_t(9S)`
Name net_instance_alloc – allocate a net_instance_t structure

Synopsis
#include <sys/neti.h>

net_instance_t *net_instance_alloc(const int version);

Interface Level Solaris DDI specific (Solaris DDI).

Parameters version must always be the symbol NETI_VERSION.

Description The net_instance_alloc() function allocates a net_instance_t structure, returning a pointer for the caller to use.

Return Values Upon success, net_instance_alloc() returns a pointer to the allocated net_instance_t structure. On failure, it returns a NULL pointer.

Context The net_instance_alloc() function may be called from user or kernel context.

Attributes See attributes(5) for descriptions of the following attributes:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ATTRIBUTE TYPE</th>
<th>ATTRIBUTE VALUE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Availability</td>
<td>SUNWcsu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Interface Stability</td>
<td>Committed</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

See Also net_instance_free(9F), attributes(5), net_inject_t(9S)
net_instance_free(9F)

Name  net_instance_free – free a net_instance_t structure

Synopsis  
```
#include <sys/neti.h>

void net_instance_free(net_instance_t *net_instance);
```

Interface Level  Solaris DDI specific (Solaris DDI).

Parameters  
- `net_instance`  pointer returned by `net_instance_alloc(9F)`.

Description  The `net_instance_free()` function frees a `net_instance_t` structure that was originally allocated by `net_instance_alloc(9F)`.

Context  The `net_instance_free()` function may be called from user, kernel, or interrupt context.

Attributes  See `attributes(5)` for descriptions of the following attributes:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ATTRIBUTE TYPE</th>
<th>ATTRIBUTE VALUE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Availability</td>
<td>SUNWcsu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Interface Stability</td>
<td>Committed</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

See Also  `net_instance_alloc(9F), attributes(5), net_instance_t(9S)`
net_instance_notify_register, net_instance_notify_unregister – add/delete a function to be called for changes to an instance

Synopsis

```c
#include <sys/hook.h>
#include <sys/neti.h>

int net_instance_notify_register(net id_t net_id, hook_notify_fn_t *callback, void *arg);

int net_instance_notify_unregister(net id_t net_id, hook_notify_fn_t *callback);

typedef int (*hook_notify_fn_t)(hook_notify_cmd_t command, void *arg, const char *name1, const char *name2, const char *name3);
```

Parameters

- `netid`: value from either `callback` registered with `net_instance_register()` or `net_zoneidtonetid()`.
- `callback`: function to call when a change occurs.
- `arg`: pointer to pass into the `callback()` function when a change occurs.

Description

The `net_instance_notify_register()` function registers a function represented by the pointer `callback` to be called when there is a new instance added or removed from the given network instance (represented by `netid`).

The `net_instance_notify_unregister()` function indicates that there is no longer any desire to receive notification of changes to the instance through function calls to the specified `callback`.

Multiple `callback` functions may be registered through this interface. The same set of parameters is passed to each `callback` function. The memory referenced through the pointers passed to the `callback` should be treated as pointing to read-only memory. Changing this data is strictly prohibited.

The function that is called must not block any other events.

The arguments passed through to the `callback` are as follows (the command is either `HN_REGISTER` or `HN_UNREGISTER`):

- `name1`: is the `netid` represented as a string.
- `name2`: is `NULL`.
- `name3`: is the name of the instance being added/removed.
Return Values  If these functions succeed, 0 is returned. Otherwise, the following error is returned:
EEXIST    the given callback function is already registered.

Context  These functions may be called from user or kernel context.

Attributes  See attributes(5) for descriptions of the following attributes:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ATTRIBUTE TYPE</th>
<th>ATTRIBUTE VALUE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Availability</td>
<td>SUNWcsu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Interface Stability</td>
<td>Committed</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

See Also attributes(5), net_instance_register(9F), net_instance_unregister(9F), net_zoneidtonetid(9F)
**net_instance_register(9F)**

**Name**
net_instance_register – register a set of instances to occur with IP instance events

**Synopsis**
```
#include <sys/neti.h>

int net_instance_register(net_instance_t *instances);
```

**Interface Level**
Solaris DDI specific (Solaris DDI).

**Parameters**
- `instances` must be a pointer returned by `net_instance_alloc(9F)`.

**Description**
The `net_instance_register()` function attempts to record the set of functions passed by instances that are to be called when an event related to IP instance maintenance occurs.

**Return Values**
- If the `net_instance_register()` function succeeds, DDI_SUCCESS is returned. Otherwise, DDI FAILURE is returned to indicate failure due to the name in the instance already being present.

**Context**
The `net_instance_register()` function may be called from user or kernel context.

**Attributes**
See attributes(5) for descriptions of the following attributes:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ATTRIBUTE TYPE</th>
<th>ATTRIBUTE VALUE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Availability</td>
<td>SUNWcsu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Interface Stability</td>
<td>Committed</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**See Also**
`net_instance_alloc(9F), net_instance_unregister(9F), attributes(5), net_instance_t(9S)`
**Name**  
`net_instance_unregister` – disable a set of instances

**Synopsis**  
```c
#include <sys/neti.h>

void net_instance_unregister(net_instance_t *instances);
```

**Interface Level**  
Solaris DDI specific (Solaris DDI).

**Parameters**  
`instances` must be a pointer returned by `net_instance_alloc(9F)`.

**Description**  
The `net_instance_unregister()` function removes the set of instances that were previously registered with the `net_instance_register()` function.

**Return Values**  
If the `net_instance_unregister()` function succeeds, 0 is returned. Otherwise, an error indicating the problem encountered.

**Context**  
The `net_instance_unregister()` function may be called from user, kernel, or interrupt context.

**Attributes**  
See `attributes(5)` for descriptions of the following attributes:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ATTRIBUTE TYPE</th>
<th>ATTRIBUTE VALUE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Availability</td>
<td>SUNWcsu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Interface Stability</td>
<td>Committed</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**See Also**  
`net_instance_alloc(9F), net_instance_register(9F), attributes(5), net_instance_t(9S)`
int net_ispartialchecksum(const net_data_t net, mblk_t *mb);
net_isvalidchecksum – verify layer 3 and layer 4 checksums

Synopsis

```c
#include <sys/neti.h>

int net_isvalidchecksum(const net_data_t net, mblk_t *mb);
```

Interface Level

Solaris DDI specific (Solaris DDI).

Parameters

- `net` value returned from a successful call to `net_protocol_lookup(9F)`.
- `mb` the `mblk` structure holding a packet that is the subject of this query.

Description

The `net_isvalidchecksum()` function verifies the layer 3 checksum (and, in some case, the layer 4 checksum) in the packet. If possible, fields that are used by hardware checksum'ing are examined rather than manually verifying that the checksums are present for packets received from a network interface.

For both IPv4 and IPv6, TCP, UDP and ICMP (including ICMPV6 for IPv6) layer 4 checksums are currently validated.

Return Values

The `net_isvalidchecksum()` function returns:

- `-1` The network protocol does not support this function.
- `0` The packet does not contain partial checksums.
- `1` The packet does contain partial checksums.

Context

The `net_isvalidchecksum()` function may be called from user, kernel, or interrupt context.

Attributes

See `attributes(5)` for descriptions of the following attributes:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ATTRIBUTE TYPE</th>
<th>ATTRIBUTE VALUE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Availability</td>
<td>SUNWcsu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Interface Stability</td>
<td>Committed</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

See Also

`net_ispartialchecksum(9F), net_protocol_lookup(9F), attributes(5)`
**Synopsis**

```c
#include <sys/types.h>
#include <sys/kstat.h>
#include <sys/neti.h>

kstat_t *net_kstat_create(netid_t netid, char *module,
   int instance, char *name, char *class, uchar_type type,
   ulong_t ndata, uchar_t ks_flag);
```

**Parameters**

- `netid` IP instance identifier.
- `module` The name of the provider’s module (such as “sd”, “esp”, ...). The “core” kernel uses the name “unix”.
- `instance` The provider’s instance number, as from `ddi_get_instance(9F)`. Modules which do not have a meaningful instance number should use 0.
- `name` A pointer to a string that uniquely identifies this structure. Only `KSTAT_STRLEN – 1` characters are significant.
- `class` The general class that this kstat belongs to. The following classes are currently in use: disk, tape, net, controller, vm, kvm, hat, streams, kstat, and misc.
- `type` The type of kstat to allocate. Valid types are:
  - `KSTAT_TYPE_NAMED` Allows more than one data record per kstat.
  - `KSTAT_TYPE_INTR` Interrupt; only one data record per kstat.
  - `KSTAT_TYPE_IO` I/O; only one data record per kstat
- `ndata` The number of type-specific data records to allocate.
- `ks_flag` A bit-field of various flags for this kstat. `ks_flag` is some combination of:
  - `KSTAT_FLAG_VIRTUAL` Tells `kstat_create()` not to allocate memory for the kstat data section; instead, the driver will set the `ks_data` field to point to the data it wishes to export. This provides a convenient way to export existing data structures.
  - `KSTAT_FLAG_WRITABLE` Makes the kstat data section writable by root.
  - `KSTAT_FLAG_PERSISTENT` Indicates that this kstat is to be persistent over time. For persistent kstats, `kstat_delete(9F)` simply marks the kstat as dormant; a subsequent

**Interface Level** Solaris DDI specific (Solaris DDI).

**Name** `net_kstat_create` – create and initialize a new kstat for a specific instance of IP
kstat_create() reactivates the kstat. This feature is provided so that statistics are not lost across driver close/open (such as raw disk I/O on a disk with no mounted partitions.) Note: Persistent kstats cannot be virtual, since ks_data points to garbage as soon as the driver goes away.

**Description**  
The net_kstat_create() function allocates and initializes a kstat(9S) structure. See kstat_create(9F) for a complete discussion of this function.

**Return Values**  
If successful, net_kstat_create() returns a pointer to the allocated kstat. NULL is returned upon failure.

**Context**  
The net_kstat_create() function may be called from user or kernel context.

**Attributes**  
See attributes(5) for descriptions of the following attributes:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ATTRIBUTE TYPE</th>
<th>ATTRIBUTE VALUE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Availability</td>
<td>SUNWcsu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Interface Stability</td>
<td>Committed</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**See Also**  
ddi_get_instance(9F), kstat_create(9F), kstat_delete(9F), net_kstat_delete(9F), hook_t(9S), kstat_named(9S)
**Name**
net_kstat_delete – remove a kstat for a specific instance of IP from the system

**Synopsis**
```c
#include <sys/types.h>
#include <sys/kstat.h>
#include <sys/neti.h>

void net_kstat_delete(netid_t netid, kstat_t *ksp);
```

**Interface Level**
Solaris DDI specific (Solaris DDI).

**Parameters**
- `netid`  IP instance identifier.
- `ksp`  Pointer to a currently installed `kstat(9S)` structure.

**Description**
The `net_kstat_delete()` function removes `ksp` from the kstat chain and frees all associated system resources. See `kstat_delete(9F)` for a complete discussion of this function.

**Return Values**
If successful, `net_kstat_delete()` returns a pointer to the allocated kstat. NULL is returned upon failure.

**Context**
The `net_kstat_delete()` function may be called from user, kernel, or interrupt context.

**Attributes**
See `attributes(5)` for descriptions of the following attributes:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ATTRIBUTE TYPE</th>
<th>ATTRIBUTE VALUE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Availability</td>
<td>SUNWcs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Interface Stability</td>
<td>Committed</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**See Also**
`kstat_create(9F), kstat_delete(9F), net_kstat_create(9F), hook_t(9S), kstat_named(9S)`
**Name**  
net_lifgetnext – search through a list of logical network interfaces

**Synopsis**  
#include <sys/neti.h>

    net_if_t net_lifgetnext(const net_data_t net, const phy_if_t ifp,  
        net_if_t lif);

**Interface Level**  
Solaris DDI specific (Solaris DDI).

**Parameters**  
net value returned from a successful call to net_protocol_lookup(9F).

ifp value returned from a successful call to net_phylookup(9F) or net_phygetnext(9F).

lif value returned from a successful call to this function.

**Description**  
The net_lifgetnext() function is used to search through all of the logical interfaces that are associated with a physical network interface. To start searching through this list, a value of 0 should be passed through as the value of lif. When 0 is returned by this function, the last of the interfaces owned by this protocol has been reached.

When called successfully, the value returned represents a logical interface that exists, at the time of the call, within the scope of the network interface and its assigned network protocol. This value is only guaranteed to be unique for a name within the scope of the network interface and its assigned protocol.

**Examples**  
net_data_t net;
    phy_if_t ifp;
    net_if_t lif;
    char buffer[32];
    net_ifaddr_t atype[1];
    struct sockaddr_in sin[1];

    net = net_protocol_lookup("inet");

    if (net != NULL) {
        atype[0] = NA_ADDRESS;
        ifp = net_phylookup(net, "hme0");
        for (lif = net_lifgetnext(net, 0); lif != 0;  
            lif = net_lifgetnext(net, lif)) {
            /* Do something with lif */
            if (net_getifaddr(net, ifp, lif, 1, atype, sin) == 0)  
                printf("hme0:%d %x0, lif,  
                        ntohl(sin[0].sin_addr.s_addr));
        }
    }

**Return Values**  
The net_lifgetnext() function returns a value of -1 if it is not supported by the network protocol and a value of 0 if an attempt to go beyond the last network interface is made. Otherwise, it returns a value representing a network interface.
The net_lifgetnext() function may be called from user, kernel, or interrupt context.

Attributes  See attributes(5) for descriptions of the following attributes:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ATTRIBUTE TYPE</th>
<th>ATTRIBUTE VALUE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Availability</td>
<td>SUNWcsu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Interface Stability</td>
<td>Committed</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

See Also  net_phygetnext(9F), net_phylookup(9F)
**Synopsis**

```
#include <sys/neti.h>

zoneid_t net_netidtozonid(const netid_t net);
```

**Interface Level**
Solaris DDI specific (Solaris DDI).

**Parameters**
- `net` valid `netid_t` structure that refers to an existing IP instance.

**Description**
The `net_netidtozonid()` function maps the given `netid_t` (used to represent an instance of IP) into the matching `zoneid_t` structure that is associated with it.

**Return Values**
The `net_netidtozonid()` function returns -1 if no mapping took place. Otherwise, it returns the `zoneid_t` structure currently associated with a `netid_t` structure. For shared stack zones, the `zoneid_t` structure for the global zone is returned.

**Context**
The `net_netidtozonid()` function may be called from user, kernel, or interrupt context.

**Attributes**
See [attributes(5)] for descriptions of the following attributes:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ATTRIBUTE TYPE</th>
<th>ATTRIBUTE VALUE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Availability</td>
<td>SUNWcs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Interface Stability</td>
<td>Committed</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**See Also**
`net_zoneidtonetid(9F), attributes(5)`
Name  net_phygetnext – search through the current list of network interfaces

Synopsis  
```c
#include <sys/neti.h>

phy_if_t net_phygetnext(const net_data_t net, const phy_if_t ifp);
```

Interface Level  Solaris DDI specific (Solaris DDI).

Parameters  
- `net`  value returned from a successful call to `net_protocol_lookup(9F)`.
- `ifp`  value returned from a successful call to this function or `net_phylookup(9F)`.

Description  The `net_phygetnext()` function searches through all of the network interfaces that a network protocol "owns". To start searching through all of the interfaces owned by a protocol, a value of 0 should be passed through as the value of `ifp`. When 0 is returned by this function, the last of the interfaces owned by this protocol has been reached.

When called successfully, the value returned represents a network interface that exists, at the time of the call, within the scope of the network interface. This value is only guaranteed to be unique for a name within the scope of the network protocol.

Examples  
```c
net_data_t net;
phy_if_t ifp;
char buffer[32];

net = net_protocol_lookup("inet");

if (net != NULL) {
    for (ifp = net_phygetnext(net, 0); ifp != 0;
        ifp = net_phygetnext(net, ifp)) {
        /* Do something with ifp */
        if (net_getifname(net, ifp, buffer,
                         sizeof(buffer) >= 0)
            printf("Interface %s\0, buffer);
    }
}
```

Return Values  The `net_phygetnext()` function returns -1 if it is not supported by the network protocol or 0 if an attempt to go beyond the last network interface is made. Otherwise, it returns a value representing a network interface.

Context  The `net_phygetnext()` function may be called from user, kernel, or interrupt context.

Attributes  See `attributes(5)` for descriptions of the following attributes:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ATTRIBUTE TYPE</th>
<th>ATTRIBUTE VALUE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Availability</td>
<td>SUNWcsu</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
net_phygetnext(9F)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ATTRIBUTE TYPE</th>
<th>ATTRIBUTE VALUE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Interface Stability</td>
<td>Committed</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

See Also  net_phylookup(9F), net_protocol_lookup(9F), attributes(5)
net_phylookup – determine if a network interface name exists for a network protocol

Synopsis

```c
#include <sys/neti.h>

phy_if_t net_phylookup(const net_data_t net, const char *name);
```

Interface Level
Solaris DDI specific (Solaris DDI).

Parameters
- `net` value returned from a successful call to `net_protocol_lookup(9F)`.
- `name` name of the network interface to find.

Description
The `net_phylookup()` function attempts to resolve the interface name passed in with the network protocol.

When called successfully, the value returned represents a network interface that exists, at the time of the call, within the scope of the network interface. This value is only guaranteed to be unique for a name within the scope of the network protocol.

Return Values
The `net_phylookup()` function returns -1 if it is not supported by the network protocol, and 0 if the named network interface does not exist (or is otherwise unknown). Otherwise, it returns a value greater than 0 representing a network interface that currently exists within the scope of this network protocol.

Context
The `net_phylookup()` function may be called from user, kernel, or interrupt context.

Attributes
See `attributes(5)` for descriptions of the following attributes:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ATTRIBUTE TYPE</th>
<th>ATTRIBUTE VALUE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Availability</td>
<td>SUNWcsu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Interface Stability</td>
<td>Committed</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

See Also `net_getifname(9F), net_phygetnext(9F), net_protocol_lookup(9F), attributes(5)`
**Name**  
net_protocol_lookup – locate an implementation of a network layer protocol

**Synopsis**  
```
#include <sys/neti.h>

net_data_t net_protocol_lookup(netid_t id, const char *protocol);
```

**Interface Level**  
Solaris DDI specific (Solaris DDI).

**Parameters**  
- `id`  
  network instance identifier.
- `family`  
  name of the network protocol to find.

**Description**  
The `net_protocol_lookup()` function attempts to locate a data structure that defines what capabilities it is exporting through this interface. The value returned by this call is guaranteed to be valid until it is passed into a call to `net_protocol_release(9F)`, after which it should no longer be treated as valid.

The protocol must be a registered name of a network protocol that has been registered. The symbols `NHF_INET` and `NHF_INET6` should be passed to `net_protocol_lookup()` as the protocol name to gain access to either IPv4 or IPv6 respectively.

**Return Values**  
The `net_protocol_lookup()` function returns `NULL` if it does not find any knowledge about the network protocol referenced. Otherwise, it returns a value that can be used with other calls in this framework.

**Context**  
The `net_protocol_lookup()` function may be called from user, kernel, or interrupt context.

**Attributes**  
See `attributes(5)` for descriptions of the following attributes:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ATTRIBUTE TYPE</th>
<th>ATTRIBUTE VALUE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Availability</td>
<td>SUNWcsu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Interface Stability</td>
<td>Committed</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**See Also**  
`net_protocol_release(9F), attributes(5)`
net_protocol_notify_register(9F)

Name  net_protocol_notify_register, net_instance_protocol_unregister – add/delete a function to be called for changes to a protocol

Synopsis  #include <sys/hook.h>
          #include <sys/neti.h>

          int net_protocol_notify_register(net_handle_t family,
               hook_notify_fn_t *callback, void *arg);

          int net_protocol_notify_unregister(net_handle_t family,
               hook_notify_fn_t *callback);

          typedef int (*hook_notify_fn_t)(hook_notify_cmd_t command,
               void *arg, const char *name1, const char *name2, const char *name3);

Interface Level  Solaris DDI specific (Solaris DDI).

Parameters

- family  value returned from net_protocol_lookup().
- callback  function to call when a change occurs.
- arg  pointer to pass into the callback() function when a change occurs.

Description  The net_protocol_notify_register() function registers a function represented by the pointer callback to be called when there is a change to the protocol represented by family. The types of changes for which notifications are available for is currently limited to the addition and removal of protocols.

The net_protocol_notify_unregister() function removes the function specified by the pointer callback from the list of functions to call. This call may fail if the specified function cannot be found.

Multiple callback functions may be registered through this interface. The same set of parameters is passed to each callback function. The memory referenced through the pointers passed to the callback should be treated as pointing to read-only memory. Changing this data is strictly prohibited.

The function that is called must not block any other protocols.

The arguments passed through to the callback are as follows (the command is either HN_REGISTER or HN_UNREGISTER):

- name1  is the name of the protocol
- name2  is NULL.
- name3  is the name of the protocol being added/removed
Return Values If these functions succeed, 0 is returned. Otherwise, the following error is returned:

EEXIST the given callback function is already registered.

Context These functions may be called from user or kernel context.

Attributes See attributes(5) for descriptions of the following attributes:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ATTRIBUTE TYPE</th>
<th>ATTRIBUTE VALUE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Availability</td>
<td>SUNWcsu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Interface Stability</td>
<td>Committed</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

See Also attributes(5), net_protocol_lookup(9F)
net_protocol_release(9F)

Name: net_protocol_release – indicate that a reference to a network protocol is no longer required

Synopsis:

```
#include <sys/neti.h>

int net_protocol_release(net_data_t *net);
```

Interface Level: Solaris DDI specific (Solaris DDI).

Parameters:
- `net`: value returned from a successful call to `net_protocol_lookup(9F)`.

Description:
The `net_protocol_release()` function indicates to the network information framework that the caller is no longer interested in any knowledge about the network protocol to which the parameter being passed through applies.

Return Values:
The `net_protocol_release()` function returns:

- `-1`: The value passed in is unknown to this framework.
- `0`: Successful completion.
- `1`: Unsuccessful because this function has been called too many times.

Context:
The `net_protocol_release()` function may be called from user, kernel, or interrupt context.

Attributes:
See `attributes(5)` for descriptions of the following attributes:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ATTRIBUTE TYPE</th>
<th>ATTRIBUTE VALUE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Availability</td>
<td>SUNWcsu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Interface Stability</td>
<td>Committed</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

See Also:
- `net_protocol_lookup(9F)`, `net_protocol_walk(9F)`, `attributes(5)`
**Name**

net_protocol_walk – step through the list of registered network protocols

**Synopsis**

```c
#include <sys/neti.h>

net_data_t *net_protocol_walk(net_data_t net);
```

**Interface Level**

Solaris DDI specific (Solaris DDI).

**Parameters**

- `net` value returned from a successful call to `net_protocol_lookup(9F)`.

**Description**

The `net_protocol_walk()` function walks through all of the network protocols that have been registered with this interface. The initial call to `net_protocol_walk()` should be made by passing in NULL as the value for `net`. When this function returns NULL, the end of the list has been reached.

A caller of `net_protocol_walk()` is required to walk through the entire list of network protocols, until NULL is returned or, when finished with using the value returned, pass it into a call to `net_protocol_release(9F)`.

**Return Values**

The `net_protocol_walk()` function returns NULL when the end of the list is returned. Otherwise, it returns a non-NULL value as a token for being passed into other function calls within this interface.

**Context**

The `net_protocol_walk()` function may be called from user, kernel, or interrupt context.

**Attributes**

See attributes(5) for descriptions of the following attributes:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ATTRIBUTE TYPE</th>
<th>ATTRIBUTE VALUE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Availability</td>
<td>SUNWcsu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Interface Stability</td>
<td>Committed</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**See Also**

`net_protocol_lookup(9F), net_protocol_release(9F), attributes(5)`
net_routeto -- indicate which network interface packets are sent

Synopsis

#include <sys/neti.h>

phy_if_t net_routeto(const net_data_t *net, struct sockaddr *address,
                      struct sockaddr *nexthop);

Interface Level

Solaris DDI specific (Solaris DDI).

Parameters

net  value returned from a successful call to net_protocol_lookup(9F).
address network address to find a path out of the machine for.
nexthop pointer to the sockaddr structure in which to store the address of the next hop. If
this information is not required, the value NULL may be passed instead.

Description

The net_routeto() function indicates which network interface packets destined for a
particular address would be sent out of, according to the systems network routing tables. If
next is supplied as a non-NULL pointer, the IP address of the nexthop router to be used is
returned in it.

Return Values

The net_routeto() function returns:

-1 The network protocol does not support this function.
0 This function cannot find a route for the address given.
>0 Indicates which network interface can be used to reach the given address.

Context

The net_routeto() function may be called from user, kernel, or interrupt context.

Attributes

See attributes(5) for descriptions of the following attributes:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ATTRIBUTE TYPE</th>
<th>ATTRIBUTE VALUE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Availability</td>
<td>SUNWcsu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Interface Stability</td>
<td>Committed</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

See Also

net_phygetnext(9F), net_phylookup(9F), net_protocol_lookup(9F), attributes(5)
net_zoneidtonetid(9F)

Name
net_zoneidtonetid – map a zoneid_t structure identifier to a netid_t structure

Synopsis
#include <sys/neti.h>

netid_t net_zoneidtonetid(const zoneid_t zone);

Interface Level
Solaris DDI specific (Solaris DDI).

Parameters
zone valid zoneid_t structure that refers to a running zone.

Description
The net_zoneidtonetid() function maps the given zoneid_t structure (used to represent a
zone that is currently running) into a netid_t structure that is associated with the IP instance
supporting network functions for that zone.

Return Values
The net_zoneidtonetid() function returns -1 if no mapping took place. Otherwise, it
returns the netid_t structure currently used by the zoneid_t structure. For zones that are
using a shared IP instance, the netid_t structure for the instance owned by the global zone is
returned.

Context
The net_zoneidtonetid() function may be called from user, kernel, or interrupt context.

Attributes
See attributes(5) for descriptions of the following attributes:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ATTRIBUTE TYPE</th>
<th>ATTRIBUTE VALUE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Availability</td>
<td>SUNWcsu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Interface Stability</td>
<td>Committed</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

See Also
net_netidtozonid(9F), attributes(5)
### nochpoll(9F)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>nochpoll – error return function for non-pollable devices</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| Synopsis      | `#include <sys/ddi.h>`  
                | `#include <sys/sunddi.h>` |

```c
int nochpoll(dev_t dev, short events, int anyyet, short *reventsp, struct pollhead **pollhdrp);
```

**Interface Level**  
Solaris DDI specific (Solaris DDI).

**Parameters**
- `dev`: Device number.
- `events`: Event flags.
- `anyyet`: Check current events only.
- `reventsp`: Event flag pointer.
- `pollhdrp`: Poll head pointer.

**Description**
The `nochpoll()` function is a routine that simply returns the value `ENXIO`. It is intended to be used in the `cb_ops(9S)` structure of a device driver for devices that do not support the `poll(2)` system call.

**Return Values**
The `nochpoll()` function returns `ENXIO`.

**Context**
The `nochpoll()` function can be called from user, interrupt, or kernel context.

**See Also**
- `poll(2)`, `chpoll(9E)`, `cb_ops(9S)`

*Writing Device Drivers*
nodev(9F)

Name  nodev – error return function

Synopsis  
```
#include <sys/conf.h>
#include <sys/ddi.h>
```

```c
int nodev();
```

Interface Level  Architecture independent level 1 (DDI/DKI).

Description  nodev() returns ENXIO. It is intended to be used in the `cb_ops(9S)` data structure of a device driver for device entry points which are not supported by the driver. That is, it is an error to attempt to call such an entry point.

Return Values  nodev() returns ENXIO.

Context  nodev() can be only called from user context.

See Also  `nulldev(9F), cb_ops(9S)`

Writing Device Drivers
**Name**
noenable – prevent a queue from being scheduled

**Synopsis**
```c
#include <sys/stream.h>
#include <sys/ddi.h>

void noenable(queue_t *q);
```

**Interface Level**
Architecture independent level 1 (DDI/DKI).

**Parameters**
- `q` Pointer to the queue.

**Description**
The `noenable()` function prevents the `q` from being scheduled for service by `insq(9F)`, `putq(9F)` or `putbq(9F)` when enqueuing an ordinary priority message. The queue can be re-enabled with the `enableok(9F)` function.

**Context**
The `noenable()` function can be called from user, interrupt, or kernel context.

**See Also**
- `enableok(9F)`, `insq(9F)`, `putbq(9F)`, `putq(9F)`, `qenable(9F)`

*Writing Device Drivers*

*STREAMS Programming Guide*
Name nulldev – zero return function

Synopsis 
```c
#include <sys/conf.h>
#include <sys/ddi.h>

int nulldev();
```

Interface Level Architecture independent level 1 (DDI/DKI).

Description `nulldev()` returns 0. It is intended to be used in the `cb_ops(9S)` data structure of a device driver for device entry points that do nothing.

Return Values `nulldev()` returns a 0.

Context `nulldev()` can be called from any context.

See Also `nodev(9F), cb_ops(9S)`

*Writing Device Drivers*
**Name**

nvlist_add_boolean, nvlist_add_boolean_value, nvlist_add_byte, nvlist_add_int8,
nvlist_add_uint8, nvlist_add_int16, nvlist_add_uint16, nvlist_add_int32, nvlist_add_uint32,
nvlist_add_int64, nvlist_add_uint64, nvlist_add_string, nvlist_add_nvlist, nvlist_add_nvpair,
nvlist_add_boolean_array, nvlist_add_int8_array, nvlist_add_uint8_array,
nvlist_add_int16_array, nvlist_add_uint16_array, nvlist_add_int32_array, nvlist_add_uint32_array,
nvlist_add_int64_array, nvlist_add_uint64_array, nvlist_add_string_array, nvlist_t–value

**Synopsis**

#include <sys/nvpair.h>

```c
int nvlist_add_boolean(nvlist_t *nvl, const char *name);
int nvlist_add_boolean_value(nvlist_t *nvl, const char *name, boolean_t val);
int nvlist_add_byte(nvlist_t *nvl, const char *name, uchar_t val);
int nvlist_add_int8(nvlist_t *nvl, const char *name, int8_t val);
int nvlist_add_uint8(nvlist_t *nvl, const char *name, uint8_t val);
int nvlist_add_int16(nvlist_t *nvl, const char *name, int16_t val);
int nvlist_add_uint16(nvlist_t *nvl, const char *name, uint16_t val);
int nvlist_add_int32(nvlist_t *nvl, const char *name, int32_t val);
int nvlist_add_uint32(nvlist_t *nvl, const char *name, uint32_t val);
int nvlist_add_int64(nvlist_t *nvl, const char *name, int64_t val);
int nvlist_add_uint64(nvlist_t *nvl, const char *name, uint64_t val);
int nvlist_add_string(nvlist_t *nvl, const char *name, char *val);
int nvlist_add_nvlist(nvlist_t *nvl, const char *name, nvlist_t *val);
int nvlist_add_nvpair(nvlist_t *nvl, nvpair_t *nvp);
int nvlist_add_boolean_array(nvlist_t *nvl, const char *name, boolean_t *val,
                                  uint_t nelem);
int nvlist_add_byte_array(nvlist_t *nvl, const char *name, uchar_t *val,
                                  uint_t nelem);
int nvlist_add_int8_array(nvlist_t *nvl, const char *name, int8_t *val,
                                  uint_t nelem);
int nvlist_add_uint8_array(nvlist_t *nvl, const char *name, uint8_t *val,uint_t nelem);
int nvlist_add_int16_array(nvlist_t *nvl, const char *name, int16_t *val,
                                  uint_t nelem);
int nvlist_add_uint16_array(nvlist_t *nvl, const char *name, uint16_t *val,
                                  uint_t nelem);
```
int nvlist_add_int32_array(nvlist_t *nvl, const char *name, int32_t *val, uint_t nelem);
int nvlist_add_uint32_array(nvlist_t *nvl, const char *name, uint32_t *val, uint_t nelem);
int nvlist_add_int64_array(nvlist_t *nvl, const char *name, int64_t *val, uint_t nelem);
int nvlist_add_uint64_array(nvlist_t *nvl, const char *name, uint64_t *val, uint_t nelem);
int nvlist_add_string_array(nvlist_t *nvl, const char *name, const *char *val, uint_t nelem);
int nvlist_add_nvlist_array(nvlist_t *nvl, const char *name, nvlist_t **val, uint_t nelem);

The nvlist_t to be processed.

The nvpair_t (name-value pair) to be processed.

Name of the name-value pair (nvpair).

Number of elements in value (that is, array size).

Value or starting address of the array value.

These functions add a new name-value pair to an nvlist_t. The memory allocation policy follows that specified in nvlist_alloc(), nvlist_unpack(), or nvlist_dup(). See nvlist_alloc(9F). The uniqueness of nvpair name and data types follows the nvflag argument specified in nvlist_alloc().

If NV_UNIQUE_NAME was specified for nvflag, existing nvpairs with matching names are removed before the new nvpair is added.

If NV_UNIQUE_NAME_TYPE was specified for nvflag, existing nvpairs with matching names and data types are removed before the new nvpair is added.

If neither was specified for nvflag, the new nvpair is unconditionally added at the end of the list. The library preserves the order of the name-value pairs across packing, unpacking, and duplication.

Multiple threads can simultaneously read the same nvlist_t, but only one thread may actively change a given nvlist_t at a time. The caller is responsible for the synchronization.

The nvlist_add_boolean() function is deprecated and the nvlist_add_boolean_value() function is used instead.
Return Values

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Code</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td>success</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EINVAL</td>
<td>invalid argument</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENOMEM</td>
<td>insufficient memory</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Context

These functions can be called from interrupt context only if (1) the default allocator is used and the KM_NOSLEEP flag is set, or (2) the specified allocator did not sleep for free memory (for example, if it uses a pre-allocated buffer for memory allocations).

See `nvlist_alloc(9F)` for a description of pluggable allocators and KM_NOSLEEP. These functions can be called from user or kernel context in all cases.
Name  nvlist_alloc, nvlist_free, nvlist_size, nvlist_pack, nvlist_unpack, nvlist_dup, nv_alloc_init,
nv_alloc_fini, nvlist_xalloc, nvlist_xpack, nvlist_xunpack, nvlist_xdup, nvlist_merge –
Manage a name-value pair list

Synopsis  #include <sys/nvpair.h>

List Manipulation:

int nvlist_alloc(nvlist_t **nvlp, uint_t nvflag,
                 int kmflag);
int nvlist_xalloc(nvlist_t **nvlp, uint_t nvflag, nv_alloc_t *nva);
void nvlist_free(nvlist_t *nvl);
int nvlist_size(nvlist_t *nvl, size_t *size, int encoding);
int nvlist_pack(nvlist_t *nvl, char **bufp, size_t *buflen, int encoding,
                int flag);
int nvlist_xpack(nvlist_t *nvl, char **bufp, size_t *buflen, int encoding,
                 nv_alloc_t *nva);
int nvlist_unpack(char *buf, size_t buflen, nvlist_t **nvlp, int flag);
int nvlist_xunpack(char *buf, size_t buflen, nvlist_t **nvlp, int flag);
int nvlist_dup(nvlist_t *nvl, nvlist_t **nvlp, int flag);
int nvlist_xdup(nvlist_t *nvl, nvlist_t **nvlp, nv_alloc_t *nva);
int nvlist_merge(nvlist_t *dst, nvlist_t *nvl, int flag);

Pluggable Allocator Configuration:

nv_alloc_t *nvlist_lookup_nv_alloc(nvlist_t *);
int nv_alloc_init(nv_alloc_t *nva, const nv_alloc_ops_t *nvo/* args */ ...);
void nv_alloc_reset(nv_alloc_t *nva);
void nv_alloc_fini(nv_alloc_t *nva);

Pluggable Allocation Initialization with Fixed Allocator:

int nv_alloc_init(nv_alloc_t *nva,
                  nv_fixed_ops, void *bufptr, size_t sz);

Interface Level  Solaris DDI specific (Solaris DDI)
Parameters  
nvlp  Address of a pointer to list of name-value pairs (nvlist_t).

nvflag  Specify bit fields defining nvlist_t properties:

NV_UNIQUE_NAME  npair names are unique.
NV_UNIQUE_NAME_TYPE Name-data type combination is unique
kmflag Kernel memory allocation policy, either KM_SLEEP or KM_NOSLEEP.
nvl nvlist_t to be processed.
dst Destination nvlist_t.
size Pointer to buffer to contain the encoded size.
bufp Address of buffer to pack nvlist into. Must be 8-byte aligned. If NULL, library will allocate memory.
buf Buffer containing packed nvlist_t.
buflen Size of buffer bufp or buf points to.
encoding Encoding method for packing.
nvo Pluggable allocator operations pointer (nv_alloc_ops_t).
nva Points to a nv_alloc_t structure to be used for the specified nvlist_t.

Description List Manipulation:
The nvlist_alloc() function allocates a new name-value pair list and updates nvlp to point to the handle. The argument nvflag specifies nvlist_t properties to remain persistent across packing, unpacking, and duplication.

If NV_UNIQUE_NAME is specified for nvflag, existing nvpairs with matching names are removed before the new nvpair is added. If NV_UNIQUE_NAME_TYPE is specified for nvflag, existing nvpairs with matching names and data types are removed before the new nvpair is added. See nvlist_add_byte(9F) for more details.

The nvlist_xalloc() function differs from nvlist_alloc() in that nvlist_xalloc() can use a different allocator, as described in the Pluggable Allocators section.

The nvlist_free() function frees a name-value pair list.

The nvlist_size() function returns the minimum size of a contiguous buffer large enough to pack nvl. The encoding parameter specifies the method of encoding when packing nvl. Supported encoding methods are:

- NV_ENCODE_NATIVE Straight bcopy() as described in bcopy(9F).
- NV_ENCODE_XDR Use XDR encoding, suitable for sending to another host.

The nvlist_pack() function packs nvl into contiguous memory starting at *bufp. The encoding parameter specifies the method of encoding (see above).

- If *bufp is not NULL, *bufp is expected to be a caller-allocated buffer of size *buflen. The kmflag argument is ignored.
If `bufp` is NULL, the library allocates memory and updates `bufp` to point to the memory and updates `buflen` to contain the size of the allocated memory. The value of `kmflag` indicates the memory allocation policy.

The `nvlist_xpack()` function differs from `nvlist_pack()` in that `nvlist_xpack()` can use a different allocator.

The `nvlist_unpack()` function takes a buffer with a packed `nvlist_t` and unpacks it into a searchable `nvlist_t`. The library allocates memory for `nvlist_t`. The caller is responsible for freeing the memory by calling `nvlist_free()`.

The `nvlist_xunpack()` function differs from `nvlist_unpack()` in that `nvlist_xunpack()` can use a different allocator.

The `nvlist_dup()` function makes a copy of `nvl` and updates `nvlp` to point to the copy.

The `nvlist_xdup()` function differs from `nvlist_dup()` in that `nvlist_xdup()` can use a different allocator.

The `nvlist_merge()` function adds copies of all name-value pairs from `nvlist_t nvl` to `nvlist_t dst`. Name-value pairs in `dst` are replaced with name-value pairs from `nvl` which have identical names (if `dst` has the type `NV_UNIQUE_NAME`), or identical names and types (if `dst` has the type `NV_UNIQUE_NAME_TYPE`).

The `nvlist_lookup_nv_alloc()` function retrieves the pointer to the allocator used when manipulating a name-value pair list.

**Using Pluggable Allocators:**

The `nv_alloc_init()`, `nv_alloc_reset()` and `nv_alloc_fini()` functions provide an interface that specifies the allocator to be used when manipulating a name-value pair list.

The `nv_alloc_init()` determines allocator properties and puts them into the `nva` argument. You need to specify the `nv_arg` argument, the `nvo` argument and an optional variable argument list. The optional arguments are passed to the (`nv_ao_init()`) function.

The `nva` argument must be passed to `nvlist_xalloc()`, `nvlist_xpack()`, `nvlist_xunpack()` and `nvlist_xdup()`.

The `nv_alloc_reset()` function resets the allocator properties to the data specified by `nv_alloc_init()`. When no (`nv_ao_reset()`) function is specified, `nv_alloc_reset()` is without effect.

The `nv_alloc_fini()` destroys the allocator properties determined by `nv_alloc_init()`. When a (`nv_ao_fini()`) routine is specified, it is called from `nv_alloc_fini()`.
The disposition of the allocated objects and the memory used to store them is left to the allocator implementation.

The 'nv_alloc_sleep' and 'nv_alloc_nosleep' nv_alloc_t pointers may be used with nvlist_xalloc to mimic the behavior of nvlist_alloc with KM_SLEEP and KM_NOSLEEP, respectively.

- nv_alloc_nosleep
- nv_alloc_sleep

The nvpair framework provides a fixed-buffer allocator, accessible via nv_fixed_ops.

- nv_fixed_ops

Given a buffer size and address, the fixed-buffer allocator allows for the creation of nvlists in contexts where malloc or kmem_alloc services may not be available. The fixed-buffer allocator is designed primarily to support the creation of nvlists.

Memory freed using nvlist_free(), pair-removal, or similar routines is not reclaimed.

When used to initialize the fixed-buffer allocator, nv_alloc_init should be called as follows:

```c
int nv_alloc_init(nv_alloc_t *nva, const nv_alloc_ops_t *nvo, 
                  void *bufptr, size_t sz);
```

When invoked on a fixed-buffer, the nv_alloc_reset() function resets the fixed buffer and prepares it for re-use. The framework consumer is responsible for freeing the buffer passed to nv_alloc_init().

Any producer of name-value pairs may possibly specify his own allocator routines. You must provide the following pluggable allocator operations in the allocator implementation.

```c
int (*nv_ao_init)(nv_alloc_t *nva, va_list nv_valist);
void (*nv_ao_fini)(nv_alloc_t *nva);
void (*nv_ao_alloc)(nv_alloc_t *nva, size_t sz);
void (*nv_ao_reset)(nv_alloc_t *nva);
void (*nv_ao_free)(nv_alloc_t *nva, void *buf, size_t sz);
```

The *nva argument of the allocator implementation is always the first argument.

The optional (*nv_ao_init()) function is responsible for filling the data specified by nv_alloc_init() into the nva_arg() argument. The (*nv_ao_init()) function is called only when nv_alloc_init() is executed.

The optional (*nv_ao_fini()) function is responsible for the cleanup of the allocator implementation. It is called by nv_alloc_fini().

The required (*nv_ao_alloc()) function is used in the nvpair allocation framework for memory allocation. The sz argument specifies the size of the requested buffer.
The optional (*nv_aq_reset()) function is responsible for resetting the nva_arg argument to the data specified by nv_alloc_init().

The required (*nv_aq_free()) function is used in the nvpair allocator framework for memory deallocation. The argument buf is a pointer to a block previously allocated by (*nv_aq_alloc()) function. The size argument sz must exactly match the original allocation.

The disposition of the allocated objects and the memory used to store them is left to the allocator implementation.

**Return Values**

For nvlist_alloc(), nvlist_dup(), nvlist_xalloc(), and nvlist_xdup():

- 0    success
- EINVAL invalid argument
- ENOMEM insufficient memory

For nvlist_pack(), nvlist_unpack(), nvlist_xpack(), and nvlist_xunpack():

- 0    success
- EINVAL invalid argument
- ENOMEM insufficient memory
- EFAULT encode/decode error
- ENOTSUP encode/decode method not supported

For nvlist_size():

- 0    success
- EINVAL invalid argument

For nvlist_lookup_nv_alloc():

pointer to the allocator

**Usage**

The fixed-buffer allocator is very simple allocator. It uses a pre-allocated buffer for memory allocations and it can be used in interrupt context. You are responsible for allocation and de-allocation for the pre-allocated buffer.

**Examples**

```c
/*
 * using the fixed-buffer allocator.
 */
#include <sys/nvpair.h>

/* initialize the nvpair allocator framework */
static nv_alloc_t *
init(char *buf, size_t size)
```
{  
    nv_alloc_t *nvap;

    if ((nvap = kmem_alloc(sizeof(nv_alloc_t), KM_SLEEP)) == NULL)  
        return (NULL);

    if (nv_alloc_init(nvap, nv_fixed_ops, buf, size) == 0)  
        return (nvap);

    return (NULL);
}

static void  
fini(nv_alloc_t *nvap)  
{  
    nv_alloc_fini(nvap);
    kmem_free(nvap, sizeof(nv_alloc_t));
}

static int  
interrupt_context(nv_alloc_t *nva)  
{  
    nvlist_t *nvl;
    int error;

    if ((error = nvlist_xalloc(&nvl, NV_UNIQUE_NAME, nva)) != 0)  
        return (-1);

    if ((error = nvlist_add_int32(nvl, "name", 1234)) == 0)  
        error = send_nvl(nvl);

    nvlist_free(nvl);
    return (error);
}

Context  The nvlist_alloc(), nvlist_pack(), nvlist_unpack(), and nvlist_dup() functions can  
be called from interrupt context only if the KM_NOSLEEP flag is set. They can be called from user  
context with any valid flag.  

The nvlist_xalloc(), nvlist_xpack(), nvlist_xunpack(), and nvlist_xdup() functions  
can be called from interrupt context only if (1) the default allocator is used and the  
KM_NOSLEEP flag is set or (2) the specified allocator did not sleep for free memory (for example,  
it uses a pre-allocated buffer for memory allocations).  

These functions can be called from user or kernel context with any valid flag.
Name    nvlist_lookup_boolean, nvlist_lookup_boolean_value, nvlist_lookup_byte,
         nvlist_lookup_int8, nvlist_lookup_int16, nvlist_lookup_int32, nvlist_lookup_int64,
         nvlist_lookup_uint8, nvlist_lookup_uint16, nvlist_lookup_uint32, nvlist_lookup_uint64,
         nvlist_lookup_string, nvlist_lookup_nvlist, nvlist_lookup_boolean_array,
         nvlist_lookup_byte_array, nvlist_lookup_int8_array, nvlist_lookup_int16_array,
         nvlist_lookup_int32_array, nvlist_lookup_int64_array, nvlist_lookup_uint8_array,
         nvlist_lookup_uint16_array, nvlist_lookup_uint32_array, nvlist_lookup_uint64_array,
         nvlist_lookup_string_array, nvlist_lookup_nvlist_array, nvlist_lookup_pairs – match name
         and type indicated by the interface name and retrieve data value

Synopsis    #include <sys/nvpair.h>

    int nvlist_lookup_boolean(nvlist_t *nvl, const char *name);
    int nvlist_lookup_boolean_value(nvlist_t *nvl, const char *name,
                       boolean_t *val);
    int nvlist_lookup_byte(nvlist_t *nvl, const char *name,
                      uchar_t *val);
    int nvlist_lookup_int8(nvlist_t *nvl, const char *name,
                    int8_t *val);
    int nvlist_lookup_uint8(nvlist_t *nvl, const char *name,
                   uint8_t *val);
    int nvlist_lookup_int16(nvlist_t *nvl, const char *name,
                    int16_t *val);
    int nvlist_lookup_uint16(nvlist_t *nvl, const char *name,
                   uint16_t *val);
    int nvlist_lookup_int32(nvlist_t *nvl, const char *name,
                    int32_t *val);
    int nvlist_lookup_uint32(nvlist_t *nvl, const char *name,
                   uint32_t *val);
    int nvlist_lookup_int64(nvlist_t *nvl, const char *name,
                    int64_t *val);
    int nvlist_lookup_uint64(nvlist_t *nvl, const char *name,
                   uint64_t *val);
    int nvlist_lookup_string(nvlist_t *nvl, const char *name,
                     char **val);
    int nvlist_lookup_nvlist(nvlist_t *nvl, const char *name,
                  nvlist_t **val);
    int nvlist_lookup_boolean_array(nvlist_t *nvl, const char *name,
                      boolean_t **val,
                      uint_t *nelem);
```
int nvlist_lookup_byte_array(nvlist_t *nvl, const char *name,
   uchar_t **val,
   uint_t *nelem);

int nvlist_lookup_int8_array(nvlist_t *nvl, const char *name,
   int8_t **val, uint_t *nelem);

int nvlist_lookup_uint8_array(nvlist_t *nvl, const char *name,
   uint8_t **val, uint_t *nelem);

int nvlist_lookup_int16_array(nvlist_t *nvl, const char *name,
   int16_t **val, uint_t *nelem);

int nvlist_lookup_uint16_array(nvlist_t *nvl, const char *name,
   uint16_t **val, uint_t *nelem);

int nvlist_lookup_int32_array(nvlist_t *nvl, const char *name,
   int32_t **val, uint_t *nelem);

int nvlist_lookup_uint32_array(nvlist_t *nvl, const char *name,
   uint32_t **val, uint_t *nelem);

int nvlist_lookup_int64_array(nvlist_t *nvl, const char *name,
   int64_t **val, uint_t *nelem);

int nvlist_lookup_uint64_array(nvlist_t *nvl, const char *name,
   uint64_t **val, uint_t *nelem);

int nvlist_lookup_string_array(nvlist_t *nvl, const char *name,
   char ***val,
   uint_t *nelem);

int nvlist_lookup_nvlist_array(nvlist_t *nvl, const char *name,
   nvlist_t ***val,
   uint_t *nelem);

int nvlist_lookup_pairs(nvlist_t *nvl, int flag ...);
```

**Interface Level**  
Solaris DDI specific (Solaris DDI)

**Parameters**

- **nvl**  
The list of name-value pairs (nvlist_t) to be processed.
- **name**  
The name of the name-value pair (nvpair) to search.
- **nelem**  
The address to store the number of elements in value.
- **val**  
The address to store the value or starting address of the array value.
flag Specify bit fields defining lookup behavior:
NV_FLAG_NOENTOK The retrieval function will not fail if no matching
name-value pair is found.

Description These functions find the nvpair that matches the name and type as indicated by the interface
name. If one is found, nelem and val are modified to contain the number of elements in value
and the starting address of data, respectively.

These interfaces work for nvlist_t allocated with NV_UNIQUE_NAME or NV_UNIQUE_NAME_TYPE
specified in nvlist_alloc(). See nvlist_alloc(9F). If this is not the case, the interface will
return ENOTSUP because the list potentially contains multiple nvpairs with the same name and
type.

Multiple threads can simultaneously read the same nvlist_t but only one thread should
actively change a given nvlist_t at a time. The caller is responsible for the synchronization.

All memory required for storing the array elements, including string values, are managed by
the library. References to such data remain valid until nvlist_free() is called on nvl.

The nvlist_lookup_pairs() function retrieves a set of nvpairs. The arguments are a
null-terminated list of pairs (data type DATA_TYPE_BOOLEAN), triples (non-array data types) or
quads (array data types). As shown below, the interpretation of the arguments depends on the
value of type. See nvpair_type(9F).

name Name of the name-value pair to search.
type Data type.
val Address to store the starting address of the value. When using data type
DATA_TYPE_BOOLEAN, the val argument is ignored.
nelem Address to store the number of elements in value. Non-array data types have only
one argument and nelem is ignored.

The argument order is name, type, [val], [nelem].

When using NV_FLAG_NOENTOK and no matching name-value pair is found, the memory
pointed to by val and nelem is not touched.

These functions return 0 on success and an error value on failure.

Errors These functions fail under the following conditions.
0 Success
EINVAL Invalid argument
ENOENT No matching name-value pair found
ENOTSUP  Encode/decode method not supported

Context  These functions can be called from user, interrupt, or kernel context.

Attributes  See attributes(5) for descriptions of the following attributes:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ATTRIBUTE TYPE</th>
<th>ATTRIBUTE VALUE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Interface Stability</td>
<td>Evolving</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

See Also  nvlist_alloc(9F), nvpair_type(9F)

Writing Device Drivers

STREAMS Programming Guide
**Name**  
nvlist_next_nvpair, nvpair_name, nvpair_type – return data regarding name-value pairs

**Synopsis**  
#include <sys/nvpair.h>

    nvpair_t *nvlist_next_nvpair(nvlist_t *nvl, nvpair_t *nvpair);
    char *nvpair_name(nvpair_t *nvpair);
    data_type_t nvpair_type(nvpair_t *nvpair);

**Interface Level**  
Solaris DDI specific (Solaris DDI)

**Parameters**  
nvl The list of name-value pairs (nvlist_t) to be processed.

    nvpair Handle to a name-value pair.

**Description**  
The nvlist_next_nvpair() function returns a handle to the next name-value pair (nvpair) in the list following nvpair. If nvpair is NULL, the first pair is returned. If nvpair is the last pair in the nvlist_t, NULL is returned.

The nvpair_name() function returns a string containing the name of nvpair.

The nvpair_type() function retrieves the value of the nvpair in the form of enumerated type data_type_t. This is used to determine the appropriate nvpair_*() function to call for retrieving the value.

**Return Values**  
For nvpair_name(): a string containing the name.

For nvpair_type(): an enumerated data type data_type_t. Possible values for data_type_t are:

    DATA_TYPE_BOOLEAN
    DATA_TYPE_BOOLEAN_VALUE
    DATA_TYPE_BYTE
    DATA_TYPE_INT8
    DATA_TYPE_UINT8
    DATA_TYPE_INT16
    DATA_TYPE_UINT16
    DATA_TYPE_INT32
    DATA_TYPE_UINT32
    DATA_TYPE_INT64
    DATA_TYPE_UINT64
    DATA_TYPE_STRING
    DATA_TYPE_NVLIST
    DATA_TYPE_BOOLEAN_ARRAY
    DATA_TYPE_BYTE_ARRAY
    DATA_TYPE_INT8_ARRAY
    DATA_TYPE_UINT8_ARRAY
    DATA_TYPE_INT16_ARRAY
    DATA_TYPE_UINT16_ARRAY

---

Kernel Functions for Drivers 719
After nvpair is removed from or replaced in an nvlist, it cannot be manipulated. This includes \texttt{nvlist\_next\_nvpair()}, \texttt{nvpair\_name()} and \texttt{nvpair\_type()}. Replacement can happen during pair addition on nvlists created with NV\_UNIQUE\_NAME\_TYPE and NV\_UNIQUE\_NAME. See \texttt{nvlist\_alloc(9F)} for more details.

**Context**  These functions can be called from user, interrupt, or kernel context.
Name \nvlist\_remove, \nvlist\_remove\_all – remove name-value pairs

Synopsis

```c
#include <sys/nvpair.h>

int nvlist_remove(nvlist_t *nvl, const char *name, data_type_t type);
int nvlist_remove_all(nvlist_t *nvl, const char *name);
```

Interface Level

Solaris DDI specific (Solaris DDI)

Parameters

- **nvl**
  The list of name-value pairs (nvlist_t) to be processed.
- **name**
  Name of the name-value pair (nvpair) to be removed.
- **type**
  Data type of the nvpair to be removed.

Description

The \nvlist\_remove() function removes the first occurrence of \nvpair that matches the name and the type.

The \nvlist\_remove\_all() function removes all occurrences of \nvpair that match the name, regardless of type.

Multiple threads can simultaneously read the same nvlist_t but only one thread may actively change a given nvlist_t at a time. The caller is responsible for the synchronization.

Return Values

These functions return 0 on success and an error value on failure.

Context

The \nvlist\_remove() and \nvlist\_remove\_all() functions can be called from user, interrupt, or kernel context.

Errors

- **EINVAL**
  There is an invalid argument.
- **ENOENT**
  No name-value pairs were found to match the criteria specified by name and type.
**Name**

nvpair_value_byte, nvpair_value_nvlist, nvpair_value_int8, nvpair_value_int16,
nvpair_value_int32, nvpair_value_int64, nvpair_value_uint8, nvpair_value_uint16,
nvpair_value_uint32, nvpair_value_uint64, nvpair_value_string,
nvpair_value_boolean_array, nvpair_value_byte_array, nvpair_value_nvlist_array,
nvpair_value_int8_array, nvpair_value_int16_array, nvpair_value_int32_array,
nvpair_value_int64_array, nvpair_value_uint8_array, nvpair_value_uint16_array,
nvpair_value_uint32_array, nvpair_value_uint64_array, nvpair_value_string_array –
retrieve value from a name-value pair

**Synopsis**

```c
#include <sys/nvpair.h>

int nvpair_value_boolean_value(nvpair_t *nvpair, boolean_t *val);
int nvpair_value_byte(nvpair_t *nvpair, uchar_t *val);
int nvpair_value_int8(nvpair_t *nvpair, int8_t *val);
int nvpair_value_uint8(nvpair_t *nvpair, uint8_t *val);
int nvpair_value_int16(nvpair_t *nvpair, int16_t *val);
int nvpair_value_uint16(nvpair_t *nvpair, uint16_t *val);
int nvpair_value_int32(nvpair_t *nvpair, int32_t *val);
int nvpair_value_uint32(nvpair_t *nvpair, uint32_t *val);
int nvpair_value_int64(nvpair_t *nvpair, int64_t *val);
int nvpair_value_uint64(nvpair_t *nvpair, uint64_t *val);
int nvpair_value_string(nvpair_t *nvpair, char **val);
int nvpair_value_nvlist(nvpair_t *nvpair, nvlist_t **val);
int nvpair_value_boolean_array(nvpair_t *nvpair, boolean_t **val,
                               uint_t *nelem);
int nvpair_value_byte_array(nvpair_t *nvpair, uchar_t **val,
                            uint_t *nelem);
int nvpair_value_int8_array(nvpair_t *nvpair, int8_t **val,
                           uint_t *nelem);
int nvpair_value_uint8_array(nvpair_t *nvpair, uint8_t **val,
                           uint_t *nelem);
int nvpair_value_int16_array(nvpair_t *nvpair, int16_t **val,
                            uint_t *nelem);
int nvpair_value_uint16_array(nvpair_t *nvpair, uint16_t **val,
                            uint_t *nelem);
int nvpair_value_int32_array(nvpair_t *nvpair, int32_t **val,
                            uint_t *nelem);
```
int nvpair_value_uint32_array(nvpair_t *nvpair, uint32_t **val, uint_t *nelem);
int nvpair_value_int64_array(nvpair_t *nvpair, int64_t **val, uint_t *nelem);
int nvpair_value_uint64_array(nvpair_t *nvpair, uint64_t **val, uint_t *nelem);
int nvpair_value_string_array(nvpair_t *nvpair, char ***val, uint_t *nelem);
int nvpair_value_nvlist_array(nvpair_t *nvpair, nvlist_t ***val, uint_t *nelem);

**Interface Level**  
Solaris DDI specific (Solaris DDI)

**Parameters**
- *nvpair*: Name-value pair (nvpair) to be processed.
- *nelem*: Address to store the number of elements in value.
- *val*: Address to store the value or starting address of array value.

**Description**
These functions retrieve the value of *nvpair*. The data type of *nvpair* must match the function name for the call to be successful.

There is no *nvpair_value_boolean()*; the existence of the name implies the value is true.

For array data types, including string, the memory containing the data is managed by the library and references to the value remains valid until *nvlist_free()* is called on the *nvlist_t* from which *nvpair* is obtained. See *nvlist_free(9F)*

The value of an *nvpair* may not be retrieved after the *nvpair* having been removed from or replaced in an *nvlist*. Replacement can happen during pair addition on *nvlists* created with NV_UNIQUE_NAME_TYPE and NV_UNIQUE_NAME. See *nvlist_alloc(9F)* for more details.

**Return Values**
- 0: Success
- EINVAL: Either one of the arguments is NULL or type of *nvpair* does not match the interface name.

**Context**
These functions can be called from user, interrupt, or kernel context.
OTHERQ(9F)

Name
OTHERQ, otherq – get pointer to queue’s partner queue

Synopsis
#include <sys/stream.h>
#include <sys/ddi.h>

queue_t *OTHERQ(queue_t *q);

Interface Level
Architecture independent level 1 (DDI/DKI).

Parameters
q Pointer to the queue.

Description
The OTHERQ() function returns a pointer to the other of the two queue structures that make up a STREAMS module or driver. If q points to the read queue the write queue will be returned, and vice versa.

Return Values
The OTHERQ() function returns a pointer to a queue’s partner.

Context
The OTHERQ() function can be called from user, interrupt, or kernel context.

Examples
EXAMPLE 1 Setting Queues
This routine sets the minimum packet size, the maximum packet size, the high water mark, and the low water mark for the read and write queues of a given module or driver. It is passed either one of the queues. This could be used if a module or driver wished to update its queue parameters dynamically.

1 void
2 set_q_params(q, min, max, hi, lo)
3 queue_t *q;
4 short min;
5 short max;
6 ushort_t hi;
7 ushort_t lo;
8 {
9     q->q_minpsz = min;
10     q->q_maxpsz = max;
11     q->q_hiwat = hi;
12     q->q_lowat = lo;
13     OTHERQ(q)->q_minpsz = min;
14     OTHERQ(q)->q_maxpsz = max;
15     OTHERQ(q)->q_hiwat = hi;
16     OTHERQ(q)->q_lowat = lo;
17 }

See Also
Writing Device Drivers
STREAMS Programming Guide
The functions described here are obsolete. For the `outb()`, `outw()`, and `outl()` functions use, respectively, `ddi_put8(9F)`, `ddi_put8(9F)`, and `ddi_put8(9F)` instead. For `repoutsb()`, `repoutsw()`, and `repoutsd()`, use, respectively, `ddi_rep_put8(9F)`, `ddi_rep_put8(9F)`, and `ddi_rep_put8(9F)` instead.

### Parameters
- **port**: A valid I/O port address.
- **value**: The data to be written to the I/O port.
- **addr**: The address of a buffer from which the values will be fetched.
- **count**: The number of values to be written to the I/O port.

### Description
These routines write data of various sizes to the I/O port with the address specified by `port`.

The `outb()`, `outw()`, and `outl()` functions write 8 bits, 16 bits, and 32 bits of data respectively, writing the data specified by `value`.

The `repoutsb()`, `repoutsw()`, and `repoutsd()` functions write multiple 8-bit, 16-bit, and 32-bit values, respectively. `count` specifies the number of values to be written. `addr` is a pointer to a buffer from which the output values are fetched.

### Context
These functions may be called from user, interrupt, or kernel context.

### Attributes
See `attributes(5)` for descriptions of the following attributes:
### outb(9F)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ATTRIBUTE TYPE</th>
<th>ATTRIBUTE VALUE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Architecture</td>
<td>x86</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stability Level</td>
<td>Obsolete</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**See Also**

*isa(4)*, *attributes(5)*, *ddi_put8(9F)*, *ddi_put8(9F)*, *ddi_put8(9F)*, *ddi_rep_put8(9F)*, *ddi_rep_put8(9F)*, *ddi_rep_put8(9F)*, *inb(9F)*

*Writing Device Drivers*
pci_config_get8, pci_config_get16, pci_config_get32, pci_config_get64, pci_config_put8, pci_config_put16, pci_config_put32, pci_config_put64, pci_config_getb, pci_config_getl, pci_config_getll, pci_config_getw, pci_config_putb, pci_config_putl, pci_config_putll, pci_config_putw – read or write single datum of various sizes to the PCI Local Bus Configuration space

```
#include <sys/ddi.h>
#include <sys/sunddi.h>

uint8_t pci_config_get8(ddi_acc_handle_t handle, off_t offset);
uint16_t pci_config_get16(ddi_acc_handle_t handle, off_t offset);
uint32_t pci_config_get32(ddi_acc_handle_t handle, off_t offset);
uint64_t pci_config_get64(ddi_acc_handle_t handle, off_t offset);
void pci_config_put8(ddi_acc_handle_t handle, off_t offset, uint8_t value);
void pci_config_put16(ddi_acc_handle_t handle, off_t offset, uint16_t value);
void pci_config_put32(ddi_acc_handle_t handle, off_t offset, uint32_t value);
void pci_config_put64(ddi_acc_handle_t handle, off_t offset, uint64_t value);
```

**Interface Level**
Solaris DDI specific (Solaris DDI).

**Parameters**
- **handle**
  The data access handle returned from `pci_config_setup(9F)`.
- **offset**
  Byte offset from the beginning of the PCI Configuration space.
- **value**
  Output data.

**Description**
These routines read or write a single datum of various sizes from or to the PCI Local Bus Configuration space. The `pci_config_get8()`, `pci_config_get16()`, `pci_config_get32()`, and `pci_config_get64()` functions read 8 bits, 16 bits, 32 bits, and 64 bits of data, respectively. The `pci_config_put8()`, `pci_config_put16()`, `pci_config_put32()`, and `pci_config_put64()` functions write 8 bits, 16 bits, 32 bits, and 64 bits of data, respectively. The `offset` argument must be a multiple of the datum size.

Since the PCI Local Bus Configuration space is represented in little endian data format, these functions translate the data from or to native host format to or from little endian format.

`pci_config_setup(9F)` must be called before invoking these functions.

**Return Values**
`pci_config_get8()`, `pci_config_get16()`, `pci_config_get32()`, and `pci_config_get64()` return the value read from the PCI Local Bus Configuration space.
These routines can be called from user, kernel, or interrupt context.

Attributes  See attributes(5) for descriptions of the following attributes:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ATTRIBUTE TYPE</th>
<th>ATTRIBUTE VALUE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Architecture</td>
<td>PCI Local Bus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

See Also  attributes(5), pci_config_setup(9F), pci_config_teardown(9F)

Notes  These functions are specific to PCI bus device drivers. For drivers using these functions, a single source to support devices with multiple bus versions may not be easy to maintain.

The functions described in this manual page previously used symbolic names which specified their data access size; the function names have been changed so they now specify a fixed-width data size. See the following table for the new name equivalents:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Previous Name</th>
<th>New Name</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>pci_config_getb</td>
<td>pci_config_get8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pci_config_getw</td>
<td>pci_config_get16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pci_config_getl</td>
<td>pci_config_get32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pci_config_getll</td>
<td>pci_config_get64</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pci_config_putb</td>
<td>pci_config_put8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pci_config_putw</td>
<td>pci_config_put16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pci_config_putl</td>
<td>pci_config_put32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pci_config_putll</td>
<td>pci_config_put64</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Name  pci_config_setup, pci_config_teardown – setup or tear down the resources for enabling accesses to the PCI Local Bus Configuration space

Synopsis  #include <sys/ddi.h>
          #include <sys/sunddi.h>

          int pci_config_setup(dev_info_t *dip, ddi_acc_handle_t *handle);
          void pci_config_teardown(ddi_acc_handle_t *handle);

Interface Level  Solaris DDI specific (Solaris DDI).

Parameters  dip          Pointer to the device’s dev_info structure.
             handle       Pointer to a data access handle.

Description  pci_config_setup() sets up the necessary resources for enabling subsequent data accesses to the PCI Local Bus Configuration space. pci_config_teardown() reclaims and removes those resources represented by the data access handle returned from pci_config_setup().

Return Values  pci_config_setup() returns:
               DDI_SUCCESS    Successfully setup the resources.
               DDI_FAILURE    Unable to allocate resources for setup.

Context  pci_config_setup() must be called from user or kernel context. pci_config_teardown() can be called from any context.

Notes  These functions are specific to PCI bus device drivers. For drivers using these functions, a single source to support devices with multiple bus versions may not be easy to maintain.

Attributes  See attributes(5) for descriptions of the following attributes:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ATTRIBUTE TYPE</th>
<th>ATTRIBUTE VALUE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Architecture</td>
<td>PCI Local Bus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

See Also  attributes(5)

IEEE 1275 PCI Bus Binding
**Name**
pci_ereport_setup, pci_ereport_teardown, pci_ereport_post – post error reports for the generic PCI errors logged in the PCI Configuration Status register.

**Synopsis**
#include <sys/sunddi.h>

void pci_ereport_setup(dev_info_t *dip, int);
void pci_ereport_teardown(dev_info_t *dip);
void pci_ereport_post(dev_info_t *dip, ddi_fm_error_t *dep,
    uin16_t *status);

**Interface Level**
Solaris DDI specific (Solaris DDI)

**Parameters**
dip Pointer to the dev_info structure of the devices

dep Pointer to DDI error status

status Pointer to status bit storage location

**Description**
The pci_ereport_setup() function initializes support for error report generation and sets up the resources for subsequent access to PCI, PCI/X or PCI Express Configuration space. The caller must have established a fault management capability level of at least DDI_FM_EREPORT_CAPABLE with a previous call to ddi_fm_init() for dip.

The pci_ereport_teardown() function releases any resources allocated and set up by pci_ereport_setup() and associated with dip.

The pci_ereport_post() function is called to scan for and post any PCI, PCI/X or PCI Express Bus errors. On a PCI bus, for example, the errors detected include:

- Detected Parity Error
- Master Data Parity Error
- Target Abort
- Master Abort
- System Error
- Discard Timeout

The pci_ereport_post() function must be called only from a driver’s error handler callback function. See ddi_fm_handler_register(9F). The error_status argument to the error handler callback function should be passed through as the dep argument to pci_ereport_post() as it may contain bus specific information that might be useful for handling any errors that are discovered.

The fme_flag in the error_status argument to the error handler callback function will contain one of the following:

DDI_FM_ERR_UNEXPECTED() Any errors discovered are unexpected.
DDI_FM_ERR_EXPECTED() Errors discovered were the result of a DDI_ACC_CAUTIOUS operation.

DDI_FM_ERR_POKE() Errors discovered are the result of a ddi_poke(9F) operation.

DDI_FM_ERR_PEEK() Errors discovered are the result of a ddi_peek(9F) operation.

Error report events are generated automatically if fme_flag is set to DDI_FM_ERR_UNEXPECTED and the corresponding error bits are set in the various PCI, PCI/X or PCI Express Bus error registers of the device associated with dip. The generated error report events are posted to the Solaris Fault Manager, fmd(1M), for diagnosis.

If the status argument is non-null, pci_ereport_post() saves the contents of the PCI Configuration Status Register to *status. If it is not possible to read the PCI Configuration Status Register, -1 is returned in *status instead.

On return from the call to pci_ereport_post(), the ddi_fm_error_t structure pointed at by dep will have been updated, and the fme_status field contains one of the following values:

DDI_FM_OK No errors were detected which might affect this device instance.

DDI_FM_FATAL An error which is considered fatal to the operational state of the system was detected.

DDI_FM_NONFATAL An error which is not considered fatal to the operational state of the system was detected. The fme_acc_handle or fme_dma_handle fields in the returned ddi_fm_error_t structure will typically reference a handle that belongs to the device instance that has been affected.

DDI_FM_UNKNOWN An error was detected, but the call was unable to determine the impact of the error on the operational state of the system. This is treated the same way as DDI_FM_FATAL unless some other device is able to evaluate the fault to be DDI_FM_NONFATAL.

Context The pci_ereport_setup() and pci_ereport_teardown() functions must be called from user or kernel context.

The pci_ereport_post() function can be called in any context.

Examples int xxx_fmcap = DDI_FM_EREPORT_CAPABLE | DDI_FM_ERRCB_CAPABLE;

xxx_attach(dev_info_t *dip, ddi_attach_cmd_t cmd) {
    ddi_fm_init(dip, &xxx_fmcap, &xxx_ibc);
    if (xxx_fmcap & DDI_FM_ERRCB_CAPABLE)
        ddi_fm_handler_register(dip, xxx_err_cb);
    if (xxx_fmcap & DDI_FM_EREPORT_CAPABLE)
        pci_ereport_setup(dip);
```c
xxx_err_cb(dev_info_t *dip, ddi_fm_error_t *errp) {
    uint16_t status;
    pci_ereport_post(dip, errp, &status);
    return (errp->fme_status);
}

xxx_detach(dev_info_t *dip, ddi_attach_cmd_t cmd) {
    if (xxx_fmcap & DDI_FM_EREPORT_CAPABLE)
        pci_ereport_teardown(dip);
    if (xxx_fmcap & DDI_FM_ERRCB_CAPABLE)
        ddi_fm_handler_unregister(dip);
    ddi_fm_fini(dip);
}
```

**Attributes**  
See attributes(5) for descriptions of the following attributes:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Attribute Type</th>
<th>Attribute Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Interface Stability</td>
<td>Committed</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**See Also**  
fmd(1M), attributes(5), ddi_fm_handler_register(9F), ddi_fm_init(9F), ddi.peek(9F), ddi_poke(9F), ddi_fm_error(9S)
pci_report_pmcap(9F)

Name  pci_report_pmcap – Report Power Management capability of a PCI device

Synopsis  #include <sys/ddi.h>
          #include <sys/sunddi.h>

          int pci_report_pmcap(dev_info_t *dip, int cap, void *arg);

Interface Level  Solaris DDI specific (Solaris DDI)

Parameters  dip  Pointer to the device's dev_info structure
            cap  Power management capability
            arg  Argument for the capability

Description  Some PCI devices provide power management capabilities in addition to those provided by the PCI Power Management Specification. The pci_report_pmcap(9F) function reports those Power Management capabilities of the PCI device to the framework. Framework supports dynamic changing of the capability by allowing pci_report_pmcap(9F) to be called multiple times. Following are the supported capabilities as indicated by the cap:

PCI_PM_IDLESPEED — The PCI_PM_IDLESPEED value indicates the lowest PCI clock speed that a device can tolerate when idle, and is applicable only to 33 MHz PCI bus. arg represents the lowest possible idle speed in KHz (1 KHz is 1000 Hz). The integer value representing the speed should be cast to (void *) before passing as arg to pci_report_pmcap(9F).

The special values of arg are:

PCI_PM_IDLESPEED_ANY   The device can tolerate any idle clock speed.
PCI_PM_IDLESPEED_NONE  The device cannot tolerate slowing down of PCI clock even when idle.

If the driver doesn’t make this call, PCI_PM_IDLESPEED_NONE is assumed. In this case, one offending device can keep the entire bus from being power managed.

Return Values  The pci_report_pmcap(9F) function returns:

DDI_SUCCESS   Successful reporting of the capability
DDI_FAILURE    Failure to report capability because of invalid argument(s)

Context  The pci_report_pmcap(9F) function can be called from user, kernel and interrupt context.

Examples  1. A device driver knows that the device it controls works with any clock between DC and 33 MHz as specified in Section 4.2.3.1: Clock Specification of the PCI Bus Specification Revision 2.1. The device driver makes the following call from its attach(9E):
if (pci_report_pmcap(dip, PCI_PM_IDLESPEED, PCI_PM_IDLESPEED_ANY) != DDI_SUCCESS)
    cmn_err(CE_WARN, "%s%d: pci_report_pmcap failed\n", ddi_driver_name(dip), ddi_get_instance(dip));

2. A device driver controls a 10/100 Mb Ethernet device which runs the device state machine on the chip from the PCI clock. For the device state machine to receive packets at 100 Mb, the PCI clock cannot drop below 4 MHz. The driver makes the following call whenever it negotiates a 100 Mb Ethernet connection:

    if (pci_report_pmcap(dip, PCI_PM_IDLESPEED, (void *)4000) != DDI_SUCCESS)
        cmn_err(CE_WARN, "%s%d: pci_report_pmcap failed\n", ddi_driver_name(dip), ddi_get_instance(dip));

Attributes
See attributes(5) for descriptions of the following attributes:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ATTRIBUTE TYPE</th>
<th>ATTRIBUTE VALUE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Interface Stability</td>
<td>Evolving</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

See Also
Writing Device Drivers

PCI Bus Power Management Interface Specification Version 1.1

PCI Bus Specification Revision 2.1
Name  pci_save_config_regs, pci_restore_config_regs – save and restore the PCI configuration registers

Synopsis  #include <sys/ddi.h>
#include <sys/sunddi.h>

```c
int pci_save_config_regs(dev_info_t *dip);
int pci_restore_config_regs(dev_info_t *dip);
```

Interface Level  Solaris DDI-specific (Solaris DDI).

Arguments  dip  Pointer to the device's dev_info structure.

Description  pci_save_config_regs() saves the current configuration registers on persistent system memory. pci_restore_config_regs() restores configuration registers previously saved by pci_save_config_regs().

pci_save_config_regs() should be called by the driver's power() entry point before powering a device off (to PCI state D3). Likewise, pci_restore_config_regs() should be called after powering a device on (from PCI state D3), but before accessing the device. See power(9E).

Return Values  pci_save_config_regs() and pci_restore_config_regs() return:

- DDI_SUCCESS  Operation completed successfully.
- DDI_FAILURE  Operation failed to complete successfully.

Context  Both these functions can be called from user or kernel context.

Examples  EXAMPLE1  Invoking the save and restore functions

```c
static int
xx_power(dev_info_t *dip, int component, int level) {
    struct xx *xx;
    int rval = DDI_SUCCESS;

    xx = ddi_get_soft_state(xx_softstate, ddi_get_instance(dip));
    if (xx == NULL) {
        return (DDI_FAILURE);
    }

    mutex_enter(&xx->x_mutex);

    switch (level) {
    case PM_LEVEL_D0:
        XX_POWER_ON(xx);
        break;

    case PM_LEVEL_D3:
        XX_POWER_OFF(xx);
        break;
    }

    return rval;
}
```

Kernel Functions for Drivers  735
EXAMPLE 1  Invoking the save and restore functions  (Continued)

    if (pci_restore_config_regs(dip) == DDI_FAILURE) {
        /*
         * appropriate error path handling here
         */
        ...  
        rval = DDI_FAILURE;
    }
    break;

    case PM_LEVEL_D3:
        if (pci_save_config_regs(dip) == DDI_FAILURE) {
            /*
             * appropriate error path handling here
             */
            ...  
            rval = DDI_FAILURE;
        }  
        else {
            XX_POWER_OFF(xx);  
        }
        break;

    default:
        rval = DDI_FAILURE;
        break;
    }

    mutex_exit(&xx->x_mutex);
    return (rval);

Attributes  See attributes(5) for descriptions of the following attributes:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ATTRIBUTE TYPE</th>
<th>ATTRIBUTE VALUE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Interface Stability</td>
<td>Evolving</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

See Also  attributes(5), power(9E)

Writing Device Drivers

PCI Bus Power Management Interface Specification Version 1.1

PCI Bus Specification Revision 2.1
Name: physio, minphys – perform physical I/O

Synopsis
```
#include <sys/types.h>
#include <sys/buf.h>
#include <sys/uio.h>

int physio(int(*strat)(struct buf*), struct buf* bp, dev_t dev, 
           int rw, void (*mincnt)(struct buf*), struct uio *uio);

void minphys(struct buf* bp);
```

Description

Solaris DDI specific (Solaris DDI).

Parameters

- **physio()**
  - *strat* Pointer to device strategy routine.
  - *bp* Pointer to a buf(9S) structure describing the transfer. If *bp* is set to NULL then physio() allocates one which is automatically released upon completion.
  - *dev* The device number.
  - *rw* Read/write flag. This is either B_READ when reading from the device, or B_WRITE when writing to the device.
  - *mincnt* Routine which bounds the maximum transfer unit size.
  - *uiio* Pointer to the uio structure which describes the user I/O request.

- **minphys()**
  - *bp* Pointer to a buf structure.

Prior to the start of the transfer physio() verifies the requested operation is valid by checking the protection of the address space specified in the uio structure. It then locks the pages involved in the I/O transfer so they can not be paged out. The device strategy routine, *strat(), is then called one or more times to perform the physical I/O operations. physio() uses biowait(9F) to block until *strat() has completed each transfer. Upon completion, or detection of an error, physio() unlocks the pages and returns the error status.

physio() uses mincnt() to bound the maximum transfer unit size to the system, or device, maximum length. minphys() is the system mincnt() routine for use with physio() operations. Drivers which do not provide their own local mincnt() routines should call physio() with minphys().

minphys() limits the value of *bp->b_bcount to a sensible default for the capabilities of the system. Drivers that provide their own mincnt() routine should also call minphys() to make sure they do not exceed the system limit.
Return Values  physio() returns:

0      Upon success.
non-zero Upon failure.

Context  physio() can be called from user context only.

See Also  strategy(9E), biodone(9F), biowait(9F), buf(9S), uio(9S)

Writing Device Drivers

Warnings  Since physio() calls biowait() to block until each buf transfer is complete, it is the drivers responsibility to call biodone(9F) when the transfer is complete, or physio() will block forever.
pm_busy_component(9F)

**Name**
`pm_busy_component`, `pm_idle_component` – control device component availability for Power Management

**Synopsis**
```c
#include <sys/ddi.h>
#include <sys/sunddi.h>

int pm_busy_component(dev_info_t *dip, int component);
int pm_idle_component(dev_info_t *dip, int component);
```

**Interface Level**
Solaris DDI specific (Solaris DDI)

**Parameters**
- `dip` (typedef `dev_info`) Pointer to the device's `dev_info` structure.
- `component` The number of the component to be power-managed.

**Description**
The `pm_busy_component()` function sets `component` of `dip` to be busy. Calls to `pm_busy_component()` are stacked, requiring a corresponding number of calls to `pm_idle_component()` to make the component idle again. When a device is busy it will not be power-managed by the system.

The `pm_idle_component()` function marks `component` idle, recording the time that `component` went idle. This function must be called once for each call to `pm_busy_component()`. A component which is idle is available to be power-managed by the system. The `pm_idle_component()` function has no effect if the component is already idle, except to update the system's notion of when the device went idle.

If these functions are called as a result of entry into the driver's `attach(9E)`, `detach(9E)` or `power(9E)` entry point, these functions must be called from the same thread which entered `attach(9E)`, `detach(9E)` or `power(9E)`.

**Return Values**
The `pm_busy_component()` and `pm_idle_component()` functions return:
- `DDI_SUCCESS` Successfully set the indicated component busy or idle.
- `DDI_FAILURE` Invalid component number `component` or the device has no components.

**Context**
These functions can be called from user or kernel context. These functions may also be called from interrupt context, providing they are not the first Power Management function called by the driver.

**Attributes**
See `attributes(5)` for descriptions of the following attributes:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ATTRIBUTE TYPE</th>
<th>ATTRIBUTE VALUE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Interface stability</td>
<td>Evolving</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
See Also  power.conf(4), pm(7D), attach(9E), detach(9E), power(9E), pm_raise_power(9F), pm(9P), pm-components(9P)

Writing Device Drivers
pm_power_has_changed(9F)

Name  pm_power_has_changed – Notify Power Management framework of autonomous power level change

Synopsis  

```c
#include <sys/ddi.h>
#include <sys/sunddi.h>

int pm_power_has_changed(dev_info_t *dip, int component, int level);
```

Interface Level  Solaris DDI specific (Solaris DDI)

Parameters  

- `dip`  Pointer to the device dev_info structure
- `component`  Number of the component that has changed power level
- `level`  Power level to which the indicated component has changed

Description  The `pm_power_has_changed(9)` function notifies the Power Management framework that the power level of component of `dip` has changed to `level`.

Normally power level changes are initiated by the Power Management framework due to device idleness, or through a request to the framework from the driver via `pm_raise_power(9F)` or `pm_lower_power(9F)`, but some devices may change power levels on their own. For the framework to track the power level of the device under these circumstances, the framework must be notified of autonomous power level changes by a call to `pm_power_has_changed()`. Because of the asynchronous nature of these events, the Power Management framework might have called `power(9E)` between the device’s autonomous power level change and the driver calling `pm_power_has_changed()`, or the framework may be in the process of changing the power level when `pm_power_has_changed()` is called. To handle these situations correctly, the driver should verify that the device is indeed at the level or set the device to the level if it doesn’t support inquiring of power levels, before calling `pm_power_has_changed()`. In addition, the driver should prevent a `power(9E)` entry point from running in parallel with `pm_power_has_changed()`.

Note – If this function is called as a result of entry into the driver’s `attach(9E)`, `detach(9E)` or `power(9E)` entry point, this function must be called from the same thread which entered `attach(9E)`, `detach(9E)` or `power(9E)`.

Return Values  The `pm_power_has_changed()` function returns:

- `DDI_SUCCESS`  The power level of component was successfully updated to `level`.
- `DDI_FAILURE`  Invalid component `component` or power level `level`.

Context  This function can be called from user or kernel context. This function can also be called from interrupt context, providing that it is not the first Power Management function called by the driver.
Examples A hypothetical driver might include this code to handle `pm_power_has_changed(9)`:

```c
static int
xxusb_intr(struct buf *bp)
{
    ...

    /*
     * At this point the device has informed us that it has
     * changed power level on its own. Inform this to framework.
     * We need to take care of the case when framework has
     * already called power() entry point and changed power level
     * before we were able to inform framework of this change.
     * Handle this by comparing the informed power level with
     * the actual power level and only doing the call if they
     * are same. In addition, make sure that power() doesn’t get
     * run in parallel with this code by holding the mutex.
     */
    ASSERT(mutex_owned(&xsp->lock));
    if (level_informed == *(xsp->level_reg_addr)) {
        if (pm_power_has_changed(xsp->dip, XXUSB_COMPONENT,
            level_informed) != DDI_SUCCESS) {
            mutex_exit( &xsp->lock);
            return(DDI_INTR_UNCLAIMED);
        }
    }
    ...
}

xxdisk_power(dev_info *dip, int comp, int level)
{
    mutex_enter( xsp->lock);
    ...
    ...
}
```

Attributes See `attributes(5)` for a description of the following attributes:
pm_power_has_changed(9F)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ATTRIBUTE TYPE</th>
<th>ATTRIBUTE VALUE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Stability level</td>
<td>Evolving</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

See Also: power.conf(4), pm(7D), attach(9E), detach(9E), power(9E), pm_busy_component(9F), pm_idle_component(9F), pm_raise_power(9F), pm_lower_power(9F), pm(9P), pm-components(9P)

Writing Device Drivers
pm_raise_power(9F)

Name pm_raise_power, pm_lower_power – Raise or lower power of components

Synopsis
#include <sys/ddi.h>
#include <sys/sunddi.h>

int pm_raise_power(dev_info_t *dip, int component, int level);
int pm_lower_power(dev_info_t *dip, int component, int level);

Interface Level Solaris DDI specific (Solaris DDI)

Parameters

pm_raise_power
dip Pointer to the device's dev_info structure
component The number of the component for which a power level change is desired
level The power level to which the indicated component will be raised

pm_lower_power
dip Pointer to the device's dev_info structure
component The number of the component for which a power level change is desired
level The power level to which the indicated component will be lowered

Description The pm_raise_power(9F) function requests the Power Management framework to raise the power level of component of dip to at least level.

The state of the device should be examined before each physical access. The pm_raise_power(9F) function should be called to set a component to the required power level if the operation to be performed requires the component to be at a power level higher than its current power level.

When pm_raise_power(9F) returns with success, the component is guaranteed to be at least at the requested power level. All devices that depend on this will be at their full power level. Since the actual device power level may be higher than requested by the driver, the driver should not make any assumption about the absolute power level on successful return from pm_raise_power(9F).

The pm_raise_power(9F) function may cause re-entry of the driver power(9E) to raise the power level. Deadlock may result if the driver locks are held across the call to pm_raise_power(9F).

The pm_lower_power(9F) function requests the Power Management framework to lower the power level of component of dip to at most level.

Normally, transitions to lower power levels are initiated by the Power Management framework based on component idleness. However, when detaching, the driver should also initiate reduced power levels by setting the power level of all device components to their
lowest levels. The \texttt{pm\_lower\_power(9F)} function is intended for this use only, and will return \texttt{DDI\_FAILURE} if the driver is not detaching at the time of the call.

If automatic Power Management is disabled (see \texttt{dtpower(1M)} and \texttt{power\_conf(4)}), \texttt{pm\_lower\_power(9F)} returns \texttt{DDI\_SUCCESS} without changing the power level of the component. Otherwise, when \texttt{pm\_lower\_power(9F)} returns with success, the \textit{component} is guaranteed to be at most at the requested power level. Since the actual device power level may be lower than requested by the driver, the driver should not make any assumption about the absolute power level on successful return from \texttt{pm\_lower\_power(9F)}.

The \texttt{pm\_lower\_power(9F)} may cause re-entry of the driver \texttt{power(9E)} to lower the power level. Deadlock may result if the driver locks are held across the call to \texttt{pm\_raise\_power(9F)}.

\textbf{Note} – If these functions are called as a result of entry into the driver’s \texttt{attach(9E)}, \texttt{detach(9E)} or \texttt{power(9E)} entry point, these functions must be called from the same thread which entered \texttt{attach(9E)}, \texttt{detach(9E)} or \texttt{power(9E)}.

\textbf{Return Values} The \texttt{pm\_raise\_power(9F)} function returns:

- \texttt{DDI\_SUCCESS} \textit{Component} is now at the requested power level or higher.
- \texttt{DDI\_FAILURE} \textit{Component} or level is out of range, or the framework was unable to raise the power level of the component to the requested level.

The \texttt{pm\_lower\_power(9F)} function returns:

- \texttt{DDI\_SUCCESS} \textit{Component} is now at the requested power level or lower, or automatic Power Management is disabled.
- \texttt{DDI\_FAILURE} \textit{Component} or level is out of range, or the framework was unable to lower the power level of the component to the requested level, or the device is not detaching.

\textbf{Examples} A hypothetical disk driver might include this code to handle \texttt{pm\_raise\_power(9F)}:

\begin{verbatim}
static int
xxdisk_strategy(struct buf *bp)
{
...

    /*
     * At this point we have determined that we need to raise the
     * power level of the device. Since we have to drop the
     * mutex, we need to take care of case where framework is
     * lowering power at the same time we are raising power.
     * We resolve this by marking the device busy and failing
     * lower power in power() entry point when device is busy.
     */
\end{verbatim}
pm_raise_power(9F)

ASSERT(mutex_owned(xsp->lock));
if (xsp->pm_busycnt < 1) {
    /*
     * Component is not already marked busy
     */
    if (pm_busy_component(xsp->dip,
                          XXDISK_COMPONENT) != DDI_SUCCESS) {
        bioerror(bp,EIO);
        biodone(bp);
        return (0);
    }
    xsp->pm_busycnt++;
}
mutex_exit(xsp->lock);
if (pm_raise_power(xsp->dip,
                   XXDISK_COMPONENT, XXPOWER_SPUN_UP) != DDI_SUCCESS) {
    bioerror(bp,EIO);
    biodone(bp);
    return (0);
}
mutex_enter(xsp->lock);

xxdisk_power(dev_info *dip, int comp, int level)
{
    ...
    /*
    * We fail the power() entry point if the device is busy and
    * request is to lower the power level.
    */
    ASSERT(mutex_owned( xsp->lock));
    if (xsp->pm_busycnt >= 1) {
        if (level < xsp->cur_level) {
            mutex_exit( xsp->lock);
            return (DDI_FAILURE);
        }
    }
Context These functions can be called from user or kernel context.

Attributes See attributes(5) for a description of the following attribute:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ATTRIBUTE TYPE</th>
<th>ATTRIBUTE VALUE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Interface stability</td>
<td>Evolving</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

See Also power.conf(4), pm(7D), attach(9E), detach(9E), power(9E), pm_busy_component(9F), pm_idle_component(9F), pm(9P), pm-components(9P)

Writing Device Drivers
pm_trans_check(9F)

Name  pm_trans_check – Device power cycle advisory check

Synopsis  #include <sys/sunddi.h>

int pm_trans_check(struct pm_trans_data *datap, time_t *intervalp);

Interface Level  Solaris DDI specific (Solaris DDI)

Parameters  

- **datap**: Pointer to a pm_trans_data structure
- **intervalp**: Pointer to time difference when next power cycle will be advised

Description  The pm_trans_check(9F) function checks if a power-cycle is currently advised based on data in the pm_trans_data structure. This function is provided to prevent damage to devices from excess power cycles; drivers for devices that are sensitive to the number of power cycles should call pm_trans_check(9F) from their power(9E) function before powering-off a device. If pm_trans_check(9F) indicates that the device should not be power cycled, the driver should not attempt to power cycle the device and should fail the call to power(9E) entry point.

If pm_trans_check(9F) returns that it is not advised to power cycle the device, it attempts to calculate when the next power cycle is advised, based on the supplied parameters. In such case, **intervalp** returns the time difference (in seconds) from the current time to when the next power cycle is advised. If the time for the next power cycle cannot be determined, **intervalp** indicates 0.

To avoid excessive calls to the power(9E) entry point during a period when power cycling is not advised, the driver should mark the corresponding device component busy for the **intervalp** time period (if interval is not 0). Conveniently, the driver can utilize the fact that calls to pm_busy_component(9F) are stacked. If power cycling is not advised, the driver can call pm_busy_component(9F) and issue a timeout(9F) for the **intervalp** time. The timeout() handler can issue the corresponding pm_idle_component(9F) call.

When the format field of pm_trans_data is set to DC_SCSI_FORMAT, the caller must provide valid data in svc_date[], lifemax, and ncycles. Currently, flag must be set to 0.

```c
struct pm_scsi_cycles {
    int lifemax; /* lifetime max power cycles */
    int ncycles; /* number of cycles so far */
    char svc_date[DC_SCSI_MFR_LEN]; /* service date YYYYWW */
    int flag; /* reserved for future */
};

struct pm_trans_data {
    int format; /* data format */
    union {
        struct pm_scsi_cycles scsi_cycles;
    } un;
};
```
Return Values

1  Power cycle is advised
0  Power cycle is not advised
-1  Error due to invalid argument.

Attributes

See attributes(5) for descriptions of the following attributes:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ATTRIBUTE TYPE</th>
<th>ATTRIBUTE VALUE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Interface Stability</td>
<td>Evolving</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

See Also

power.conf(4), attributes(5), power(9E)

Writing Device Drivers

Using Power Management
pollwakeup(9F)

Name  pollwakeup – inform a process that an event has occurred

Synopsis  #include <sys/poll.h>

    void pollwakeup(struct pollhead *php, short event);

Interface Level  Architecture independent level 1 (DDI/DKI).

Parameters  php  Pointer to a pollhead structure.

    event  Event to notify the process about.

Description  The pollwakeup() function wakes a process waiting on the occurrence of an event. It should be called from a driver for each occurrence of an event. The pollhead structure will usually be associated with the driver’s private data structure associated with the particular minor device where the event has occurred. See chpoll(9E) and poll(2) for more detail.

Context  The pollwakeup() function can be called from user, interrupt, or kernel context.

See Also  poll(2), chpoll(9E)

    Writing Device Drivers

Notes  Driver defined locks should not be held across calls to this function.
priv_getbyname – map a privilege name to a number

#include <sys/cred.h>

int priv_getbyname(const char *priv, int flags);

Solaris DDI specific (Solaris DDI).

Parameters

- **priv** name of the privilege
- **flags** flags, must be zero or PRIV_ALLOC

Description

The `priv_getbyname()` function maps a privilege name to a privilege number for use with the `priv_*()` kernel interfaces.

If PRIV_ALLOC is passed as a flag parameter, an attempt is made to allocate a privilege if it is not yet defined. The newly allocated privilege number is returned.

Privilege names can be specified with an optional `priv` prefix, which is stripped.

Privilege names are case insensitive but allocated privileges preserve case.

Allocated privileges can be at most `{PRIVNAME_MAX}` characters long and can contain only alphanumeric characters and the underscore character.

Return Values

This function returns the privilege number, which is greater than or equal to 0, if it succeeds. It returns a negative error number if an error occurs.

Errors

- **EINVAL** This might be caused by any of the following
  - The `flags` parameter is invalid.
  - The specified privilege does not exist.
  - The `priv` parameter contains invalid characters.
- **ENOMEM** There is no room to allocate another privilege.
- **ENAMETOOLONG** An attempt was made to allocate a privilege that was longer than `{PRIVNAME_MAX}` characters.

Context

This functions can be called from user and kernel contexts.

Attributes

See `attributes(5)` for a description of the following attributes:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ATTRIBUTE TYPE</th>
<th>ATTRIBUTE VALUE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Architecture</td>
<td>All</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Interface Stability</td>
<td>Evolving</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
prv_getbyname(9F)

See Also  attributes(5), privileges(5)

Writing Device Drivers
**Name**  
priv_policy, priv_policy_only, priv_policy_choice – check, report, and audit privileges

**Synopsis**  
#include <sys/cred.h>

```c
int priv_policy(const cred_t *cr, int priv, int err, const char *msg);
int priv_policy_only(const cred_t *cr, int priv);
int priv_policy_choice(const cred_t *cr, int priv);
```

**Interface Level**  
Solaris DDI specific (Solaris DDI).

**Parameters**
- `cr`  
The credential to be checked.
- `priv`  
The integer value of the privilege to test.
- `err`  
The error code to return.
- `msg`  
String that is added to the privilege debugging message if one is generated. NULL if no additional information is needed. Because the function name is included in the output, NULL is usually the best value to pass as a parameter.

**Description**  
These functions aid in privilege checking and privilege debugging.

The `priv_policy()`, `priv_policy_only()`, and `priv_policy_choice()` functions all check whether `priv` is asserted in the effective set of the credential. The special value PRIV_ALL tests for all privileges.

The `priv_policy()` function updates the ASU accounting flag and records the privilege used on success in the audit trail if the required privilege was not a basic privilege.

The `priv_policy_only()` function checks whether a privilege is asserted and has no side effects.

The `priv_policy_choice()` function behaves like `priv_policy_only()` but records the successfully used non-basic privileges in the audit trail.

**Return Values**  
On success, `priv_policy()` return 0. On failure it returns its parameter `err`.

On success, `priv_policy_choice()` and `priv_policy_only()` return 1, on failure both return 0.

**Errors**
- **EINVAL**  
  This might be caused by any of the following:
  - The `flags` parameter is invalid.
  - The specified privilege does not exist.
  - The `priv` parameter contains invalid characters.

- **ENOMEM**  
  There is no room to allocate another privilege.
ENAMETOOLONG  An attempt was made to allocate a privilege that was longer than (PRIVNAME_MAX) characters.

Context  This function can be called from user, interrupt, or kernel context.

Attributes  See attributes(5) for a description of the following attributes:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ATTRIBUTE TYPE</th>
<th>ATTRIBUTE VALUE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Interface Stability</td>
<td>Evolving</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

See Also  acct(3HEAD), attributes(5), privileges(5)

Writing Device Drivers
**Name**
proc_signal, proc_ref, proc_unref – send a signal to a process

**Synopsis**
```
#include <sys/ddi.h>
#include <sys/sunddi.h>
#include <sys/signal.h>

void *proc_ref(void);
void proc_unref(void *pref);
int proc_signal(void *pref, int sig);
```

**Interface Level**
Solaris DDI specific (Solaris DDI).

**Parameters**
- **pref** A handle for the process to be signalled.
- **sig** Signal number to be sent to the process.

**Description**
This set of routines allows a driver to send a signal to a process. The routine `proc_ref()` is used to retrieve an unambiguous reference to the process for signalling purposes. The return value can be used as a unique handle on the process, even if the process dies. Because system resources are committed to a process reference, `proc_unref()` should be used to remove it as soon as it is no longer needed. `proc_signal()` is used to send signal `sig` to the referenced process. The following set of signals may be sent to a process from a driver:
- **SIGHUP** The device has been disconnected.
- **SIGINT** The interrupt character has been received.
- **SIGQUIT** The quit character has been received.
- **SIGPOLL** A pollable event has occurred.
- **SIGKILL** Kill the process (cannot be caught or ignored).
- **SIGWINCH** Window size change.
- **SIGURG** Urgent data are available.

See `signal.h(3HEAD)` for more details on the meaning of these signals.

If the process has exited at the time the signal was sent, `proc_signal()` returns an error code; the caller should remove the reference on the process by calling `proc_unref()`.

The driver writer must ensure that for each call made to `proc_ref()`, there is exactly one corresponding call to `proc_unref()`.

**Return Values**
The `proc_ref()` returns the following:
- **pref** An opaque handle used to refer to the current process.
The proc_signal() returns the following:

0       The process existed before the signal was sent.
-1      The process no longer exists; no signal was sent.

**Context**  The proc_unref() and proc_signal() functions can be called from user, interrupt, or kernel context. The proc_ref() function should be called only from user context.

**See Also**  signal.h(3HEAD), putnextctl1(9F)

*Writing Device Drivers*
ptob – convert size in pages to size in bytes

Synopsis

```
#include <sys/ddi.h>

unsigned long ptob(unsigned long numpages);
```

Interface Level

Architecture independent level 1 (DDI/DKI).

Parameters

`numpages` Size in number of pages to convert to size in bytes.

Description

This function returns the number of bytes that are contained in the specified number of pages. For example, if the page size is 2048, then `ptob(2)` returns 4096. `ptob(0)` returns 0.

Return Values

The return value is always the number of bytes in the specified number of pages. There are no invalid input values, and no checking will be performed for overflow in the case of a page count whose corresponding byte count cannot be represented by an `unsigned long`. Rather, the higher order bits will be ignored.

Context

The `ptob()` function can be called from user, interrupt, or kernel context.

See Also

`btop(9F), btopr(9F), ddi_ptob(9F)`

*Writing Device Drivers*
pullupmsg - concatenate bytes in a message

**Synopsis**  
#include <sys/stream.h>

```c
int pullupmsg(mblk_t *mp, ssize_t len);
```

**Interface Level**  
Architecture independent level 1 (DDI/DKI).

**Parameters**  
- `mp`  
  Pointer to the message whose blocks are to be concatenated. `mblk_t` is an instance of the `msgb(9S)` structure.

- `len`  
  Number of bytes to concatenate.

**Description**  
The `pullupmsg()` function tries to combine multiple data blocks into a single block. `pullupmsg()` concatenates and aligns the first `len` data bytes of the message pointed to by `mp`. If `len` equals -1, all data are concatenated. If `len` bytes of the same message type cannot be found, `pullupmsg()` fails and returns 0.

**Return Values**  
On success, 1 is returned; on failure, 0 is returned.

**Context**  
The `pullupmsg()` function can be called from user, interrupt, or kernel context.

**Examples**  
**EXAMPLE 1 Using `pullupmsg()`**

This is a driver write `srv(9E)` (service) routine for a device that does not support scatter/gather DMA. For all M_DATA messages, the data will be transferred to the device with DMA. First, try to pull up the message into one message block with the `pullupmsg()` function (line 12). If successful, the transfer can be accomplished in one DMA job. Otherwise, it must be done one message block at a time (lines 19–22). After the data has been transferred to the device, free the message and continue processing messages on the queue.

```c
1  xxxwsrv(q)
2   queue_t *q;
3 {
4    mblk_t *mp;
5    mblk_t *tmp;
6    caddr_t dma_addr;
7    ssize_t dma_len;
8    while ((mp = getq(q)) != NULL) {
9       switch (mp->b_datap->db_type) {
10          case M_DATA:
11             if (pullupmsg(mp, -1)) {
12                dma_addr = vtop(mp->b_rptr);
13                dma_len = mp->b_wptr - mp->b_rptr;
14                xxx_do_dma(dma_addr, dma_len);
15           }
16        }
17    }
18 }
```

---

Name  pullupmsg – concatenate bytes in a message
Synopsis  #include <sys/stream.h>

Interface Level  Architecture independent level 1 (DDI/DKI).
Parameters  
- `mp`  
  Pointer to the message whose blocks are to be concatenated. `mblk_t` is an instance of the `msgb(9S)` structure.

- `len`  
  Number of bytes to concatenate.

Description  
The `pullupmsg()` function tries to combine multiple data blocks into a single block. `pullupmsg()` concatenates and aligns the first `len` data bytes of the message pointed to by `mp`. If `len` equals -1, all data are concatenated. If `len` bytes of the same message type cannot be found, `pullupmsg()` fails and returns 0.

Return Values  
On success, 1 is returned; on failure, 0 is returned.

Context  
The `pullupmsg()` function can be called from user, interrupt, or kernel context.

Examples  
**EXAMPLE 1 Using `pullupmsg()`**

This is a driver write `srv(9E)` (service) routine for a device that does not support scatter/gather DMA. For all M_DATA messages, the data will be transferred to the device with DMA. First, try to pull up the message into one message block with the `pullupmsg()` function (line 12). If successful, the transfer can be accomplished in one DMA job. Otherwise, it must be done one message block at a time (lines 19–22). After the data has been transferred to the device, free the message and continue processing messages on the queue.

```c
1  xxxwsrv(q)
2   queue_t *q;
3 {
4    mblk_t *mp;
5    mblk_t *tmp;
6    caddr_t dma_addr;
7    ssize_t dma_len;
8    while ((mp = getq(q)) != NULL) {
9       switch (mp->b_datap->db_type) {
10          case M_DATA:
11             if (pullupmsg(mp, -1)) {
12                dma_addr = vtop(mp->b_rptr);
13                dma_len = mp->b_wptr - mp->b_rptr;
14                xxx_do_dma(dma_addr, dma_len);
15           }
16        }
17    }
18 }
```
EXAMPLE 1 Using pullupmsg() (Continued)

16 freemsg(mp);
17 break;
18 }
19 for (tmp = mp; tmp; tmp = tmp->b_cont) {
20 dma_addr = vtop(tmp->b_rptr);
21 dma_len = tmp->b_wptr - tmp->b_rptr;
22 xxx_do_dma(dma_addr, dma_len);
23 }
24 freemsg(mp);
25 break;
26 ... 
27 } 
28 }

See Also srv(9E), allocb(9F), msgpullup(9F), msgb(9S)

Writing Device Drivers

STREAMS Programming Guide

Notes The pullupmsg() function is not included in the DKI and will be removed from the system in a future release. Device driver writers are strongly encouraged to use msgpullup(9F) instead of pullupmsg().
**Name**
put – call a STREAMS put procedure

**Synopsis**
#include <sys/stream.h>
#include <sys/ddi.h>

```c
void put(queue_t *q, mblk_t *mp);
```

**Interface Level**
Architecture independent level 1 (DDI/DKI).

**Parameters**
- `q` Pointer to a STREAMS queue.
- `mp` Pointer to message block being passed into queue.

**Description**
`put()` calls the put procedure (put(9E) entry point) for the STREAMS queue specified by `q`, passing it the message block referred to by `mp`. It is typically used by a driver or module to call its own put procedure.

`put()` can be called from a STREAMS module or driver put or service routine, or from an associated interrupt handler, timeout, bufcall, or esballoccall-back. In the latter cases, the calling code must guarantee the validity of the `q` argument.

Since `put()` may cause re-entry of the module (as it is intended to do), mutexes or other locks should not be held across calls to it, due to the risk of single-party deadlock (put(9E), putnext(9F), putctl(9F), qreply(9F)). This function is provided as a DDI/DKI conforming replacement for a direct call to a put procedure.

**See Also**
put(9E), freezestr(9F), putctl(9F), putctl1(9F), putnext(9F), putnextctl(9F), putnextctl1(9F), aprocscon(9F), qreply(9F)

Writing Device Drivers

STREAMS Programming Guide

**Notes**
The caller cannot have the stream frozen when calling this function. See freezestr(9F).

DDI/DKI conforming modules and drivers are no longer permitted to call put procedures directly, but must call through the appropriate STREAMS utility function, for example, put(9E), putnext(9F), putctl(9F), and qreply(9F). This function is provided as a DDI/DKI conforming replacement for a direct call to a put procedure.

The `put()` and `putnext()` functions should be called only after `qprocson()` is finished.
**Name**
putbq – place a message at the head of a queue

**Synopsis**
#include <sys/stream.h>

```c
int putbq(queue_t *q, mblk_t *bp);
```

**Interface Level**
Architecture independent level 1 (DDI/DKI).

**Parameters**
- `q`  
  Pointer to the queue.
- `bp`  
  Pointer to the message block.

**Description**
The `putbq()` function places a message at the beginning of the appropriate section of the message queue. There are always sections for high priority and ordinary messages. If other priority bands are used, each will have its own section of the queue, in priority band order, after high priority messages and before ordinary messages. `putbq()` can be used for ordinary, priority band, and high priority messages. However, unless precautions are taken, using `putbq()` with a high priority message is likely to lead to an infinite loop of putting the message back on the queue, being rescheduled, pulling it off, and putting it back on.

This function is usually called when `bcanput(9F)` or `canput(9F)` determines that the message cannot be passed on to the next stream component. The flow control parameters are updated to reflect the change in the queue's status. If `QNOENB` is not set, the service routine is enabled.

**Return Values**
The `putbq()` function returns 1 upon success and 0 upon failure.

**Note** – Upon failure, the caller should call `freemsg(9F)` to free the pointer to the message block.

**Context**
The `putbq()` function can be called from user, interrupt, or kernel context.

**Examples**
See the `bufcall(9F)` function page for an example of `putbq()`.

**See Also**
`bcanput(9F), bufcall(9F), canput(9F), getq(9F), putq(9F)`

*Writing Device Drivers*

*STREAMS Programming Guide*
putctl1(9F)

Name  putctl1 – send a control message with a one-byte parameter to a queue

Synopsis  #include <sys/stream.h>

    int putctl1(queue_t *q, int type, int p);

Interface Level  Architecture independent level 1 (DDI/DKI).

Parameters

    q  Queue to which the message is to be sent.
    type  Type of message.
    p  One-byte parameter.

Description  The putctl1() function, like putctl(9F), tests the type argument to make sure a data type has not been specified, and attempts to allocate a message block. The p parameter can be used, for example, to specify how long the delay will be when an M_DELAY message is being sent. putctl1() fails if type is M_DATA, M_PROTO, or M_PCPROTO, or if a message block cannot be allocated. If successful, putctl1() calls the put(9E) routine of the queue pointed to by q with the newly allocated and initialized message.

Return Values  On success, 1 is returned. 0 is returned if type is a data type, or if a message block cannot be allocated.

Context  The putctl1() function can be called from user, interrupt, or kernel context.

Examples  See the putctl(9F) function page for an example of putctl1().

See Also  put(9E), allocb(9F), datamsq(9F), putctl(9F), putnextctl1(9F)

Writing Device Drivers

STREAMS Programming Guide
Name  putctl – send a control message to a queue

Synopsis  #include <sys/stream.h>

int putctl(queue_t *q, int type);

Interface Level  Architecture independent level 1 (DDI/DKI).

Parameters  q  Queue to which the message is to be sent.

 type  Message type (must be control, not data type).

Description  The putctl() function tests the type argument to make sure a data type has not been specified, and then attempts to allocate a message block. putctl() fails if type is M_DATA, M_PROTO, or M_PCPROTO, or if a message block cannot be allocated. If successful, putctl() calls the put(9E) routine of the queue pointed to by q with the newly allocated and initialized messages.

Return Values  On success, 1 is returned. If type is a data type, or if a message block cannot be allocated, 0 is returned.

Context  The putctl() function can be called from user, interrupt, or kernel context.

Examples  EXAMPLE 1 Using putctl()

The send_ctl() routine is used to pass control messages downstream. M_BREAK messages are handled with putctl() (line 11). putctl1(9F) (line 16) is used for M_DELAY messages, so that parm can be used to specify the length of the delay. In either case, if a message block cannot be allocated a variable recording the number of allocation failures is incremented (lines 12, 17). If an invalid message type is detected, cmn_err(9F) panics the system (line 21).

```c
1  void
2  send_ctl(wrq, type, parm)
3  queue_t *wrq;
4  uchar_t type;
5  uchar_t parm;
6  {
7      extern int num_alloc_fail;
8  
9      switch (type) {
10         case M_BREAK:
11             if (!putctl(wrq->q_next, M_BREAK))
12                 num_alloc_fail++;
13             break;
14         
15         case M_DELAY:
16             if (!putctl1(wrq->q_next, M_DELAY, parm))
17                 num_alloc_fail++;
```
EXAMPLE 1 Using putctl() (Continued)

18     break;
19
20     default:
21         cmn_err(CE_PANIC, "send_ctl: bad message type passed");
22     break;
23 }
24 }

See Also put(9E), cmn_err(9F), datamsg(9F), putctl1(9F), putnextctl(9F)

Writing Device Drivers

STREAMS Programming Guide
**Name**
putnext – send a message to the next queue

**Synopsis**
```
#include <sys/stream.h>
#include <sys/ddi.h>

void putnext(queue_t *q, mblk_t *mp);
```

**Interface Level**
Architecture independent level 1 (DDI/DKI).

**Parameters**
- `q` Pointer to the queue from which the message `mp` will be sent.
- `mp` Message to be passed.

**Description**
The `putnext()` function is used to pass a message to the `put(9E)` routine of the next queue in the stream.

**Return Values**
None.

**Context**
The `putnext()` function can be called from user, interrupt, or kernel context.

**Examples**
See `allocb(9F)` for an example of using `putnext()`.

**See Also**
`put(9E), allocb(9F), put(9F), qprocson(9F)`

*Writing Device Drivers*

*STREAMS Programming Guide*

**Notes**
The `put()` and `putnext()` functions should be called only after `qprocson()` is finished.
Name  putnextctl1 – send a control message with a one-byte parameter to a queue

Synopsis  #include <sys/stream.h>

int putnextctl1(queue_t *q, int type, int p);

Interface Level  Architecture independent level 1 (DDI/DKI).

Parameters  

q  Queue to which the message is to be sent.

type  Type of message.

p  One-byte parameter.

Description  The putnextctl1() function, like putctl1(9F), tests the type argument to make sure a data type has not been specified, and attempts to allocate a message block. The p parameter can be used, for example, to specify how long the delay will be when an M_DELAY message is being sent. putnextctl1() fails if type is M_DATA, M_PROTO, or M_PCPROTO, or if a message block cannot be allocated. If successful, putnextctl1() calls the put(9E) routine of the queue pointed to by q with the newly allocated and initialized message.

A call to putnextctl1(q,type, p) is an atomic equivalent of putctl1(q->q_next, type, p).

The STREAMS framework provides whatever mutual exclusion is necessary to insure that dereferencing q through its q_next field and then invoking putctl1(9F) proceeds without interference from other threads.

The putnextctl1() function should always be used in preference to putctl1(9F)

Return Values  On success, 1 is returned. 0 is returned if type is a data type, or if a message block cannot be allocated.

Context  The putnextctl1() function can be called from user, interrupt, or kernel context.

Examples  See the putnextctl(9F) function page for an example of putnextctl1().

See Also  put(9E), allocb(9F), datamsg(9F), putctl1(9F), putnextctl(9F)

Writing Device Drivers

STREAMS Programming Guide
putnextctl–send a control message to a queue

#include <sys/stream.h>

int putnextctl(queue_t *q, int type);

Interface Level  Architecture independent level 1 (DDI/DKI).

Parameters  
  
  q  Queue to which the message is to be sent.
  
  type Message type (must be control, not data type).

Description  The putnextctl() function tests the type argument to make sure a data type has not been specified, and then attempts to allocate a message block. putnextctl() fails if type is M_DATA, M_PROTO, or M_PCPROTO, or if a message block cannot be allocated. If successful, putnextctl() calls the put(9E) routine of the queue pointed to by q with the newly allocated and initialized messages.

A call to putnextctl(q,type) is an atomic equivalent of putctl(q->q_next,type). The STREAMS framework provides whatever mutual exclusion is necessary to insure that dereferencing q through its q_next field and then invoking putctl(9F) proceeds without interference from other threads.

The putnextctl() function should always be used in preference to putctl(9F)

Return Values  On success, 1 is returned. If type is a data type, or if a message block cannot be allocated, 0 is returned.

Context  The putnextctl() function can be user, interrupt, or kernel context.

Examples  The send_ctl routine is used to pass control messages downstream. M_BREAK messages are handled with putnextctl() (line 8). putnextctl1(9F) (line 13) is used for M_DELAY messages, so that parm can be used to specify the length of the delay. In either case, if a message block cannot be allocated a variable recording the number of allocation failures is incremented (lines 9, 14). If an invalid message type is detected, cmn_err(9F) panics the system (line 18).

```c
void
send_ctl(queue_t *wrq, uchar_t type, uchar_t parm)
{
extern int num_alloc_fail;

switch (type) {
  case M_BREAK:
    if (!putnextctl(wrq, M_BREAK))
      num_alloc_fail++;
    break;
```
case M_DELAY:
    if (!putnextctl1(wrq, M_DELAY, parm))
        num_alloc_fail++;
    break;

default:
    cmn_err(CE_PANIC, "send_ctl: bad message type passed");
    break;

See Also put(9E), cmn_err(9F), datamsg(9F), putctl(9F), putnextctl1(9F)

Writing Device Drivers

STREAMS Programming Guide
putq – put a message on a queue

Synopsis
#include <sys/stream.h>

int putq(queue_t *q, mblk_t *bp);

Interface Level
Architecture independent level 1 (DDI/DKI).

Parameters
q Pointer to the queue to which the message is to be added.
bp Message to be put on the queue.

Description
The putq() function is used to put messages on a driver's queue after the module's put routine has finished processing the message. The message is placed after any other messages of the same priority, and flow control parameters are updated. If QNOENB is not set, the service routine is enabled. If no other processing is done, putq() can be used as the module's put routine.

Return Values
The putq() function returns 1 on success and 0 on failure.

Note – Upon failure, the caller should call freemsg(9F) to free the pointer to the message block.

Context
The putq() function can be called from user, interrupt, or kernel context.

Examples
See the datamsg(9F) function page for an example of putq().

See Also
datamsg(9F), putbq(9F), qenable(9F), rmvq(9F)

Writing Device Drivers
STREAMS Programming Guide
**Synopsis**

```c
#include <sys/types.h>
#include <sys/stream.h>
#include <sys/stropts.h>
#include <sys/ddi.h>
#include <sys/sunddi.h>

int qassociate(queue_t *q, int instance)
```

**Parameters**

- `queue_t *q` Pointer to a `queue(9S)` structure. Either the read or write queue can be used.
- `int instance` Driver instance number or -1.

**Description**

The `qassociate()` function associates the specified STREAMS queue with the specified instance of the bottom driver in the queue. Upon successful return, the stream is associated with the instance with any prior association dissolved.

A DLPI style-2 driver calls `qassociate()` while processing the `DL_ATTACH_REQ` message. The driver is also expected to call this interface while performing stream associations through other means, such as `ndd(1M)` ioctl commands.

If `instance` is -1, the stream is left unassociated with any hardware instance.

If the interface returns failure, the stream is not associated with the specified instance. Any prior association is left untouched.

The interface typically fails because of failure to locate and attach the device instance. The interface never fails if the specified instance is -1.

**Context**

`qassociate()` can be called from the stream's `put(9E)` entry point.

**Return Values**

- 0 Success.
- -1 Failure.

**Examples**

A Style-2 network driver's `DL_ATTACH_REQ` code would specify:

```c
if (qassociate(q, instance) != 0)  
    goto fail;
```

The association prevents Dynamic Reconfiguration (DR) from detaching the instance.

A Style-2 network driver's `DL_DETACH` code would specify:
(void) qassociate(q, -1);

This dissolves the queue's association with any device instance.

A Style-2 network driver's open(9E) code must call:
qassociate(q, -1);

This informs the framework that this driver has been modified to be DDI-compliant.

See Also  dlpi(7P), open(9E), put(9E), ddi_no_info(9F), queue(9S)
### Name
qbufcall – call a function when a buffer becomes available

### Synopsis
```
#include <sys/stream.h>
#include <sys/ddi.h>

bufcall_id_t qbufcall(queue_t *q, size_t size, uint_t pri,
                      void (*func)(void *arg), void *arg);
```

### Interface Level
Solaris DDI specific (Solaris DDI).

### Parameters
- **q**: Pointer to STREAMS queue structure.
- **size**: Number of bytes required for the buffer.
- **pri**: Priority of the `allocb(9F)` allocation request (not used).
- **func**: Function or driver routine to be called when a buffer becomes available.
- **arg**: Argument to the function to be called when a buffer becomes available.

### Description
The `qbufcall()` function serves as a `qtimeout(9F)` call of indeterminate length. When a buffer allocation request fails, `qbufcall()` can be used to schedule the routine `func` to be called with the argument `arg` when a buffer becomes available. `func` may call `allocb()` or it may do something else.

The `qbufcall()` function is tailored to be used with the enhanced STREAMS framework interface, which is based on the concept of perimeters. (See `mt-streams(9F)`.) `qbufcall()` schedules the specified function to execute after entering the perimeters associated with the queue passed in as the first parameter to `qbufcall()`. All outstanding timeouts and bufcalls must be cancelled (using, respectively, `quntimeout(9F)` and `qunbufcall(9F)`) before a driver close routine can block and before the close routine calls `qprocsoff(9F)`.

`qprocsoff(9F)` must be called before calling either `qbufcall()` or `qtimeout(9F)`.

### Return Values
If successful, the `qbufcall()` function returns a `qbufcall` ID that can be used in a call to `qunbufcall(9F)` to cancel the request. If the `qbufcall()` scheduling fails, `func` is never called and 0 is returned.

### Context
The `qbufcall()` function can be called from user, interrupt, or kernel context.

### See Also
`allocb(9F), mt-streams(9F), qprocsoff(9F), qtimeout(9F), qunbufcall(9F), quntimeout(9F)`

*Writing Device Drivers*

*STREAMS Programming Guide*
**Warnings**  Even when `func` is called by `qbufcall()`, `allocb(9F)` can fail if another module or driver had allocated the memory before `func` was able to call `allocb(9F)`.
qenable(9F)

**Name**
qenable – enable a queue

**Synopsis**
#include <sys/stream.h>
#include <sys/ddi.h>

void qenable(queue_t *q);

**Interface Level**
Architecture independent level 1 (DDI/DKI).

**Parameters**
q Pointer to the queue to be enabled.

**Description**
The qenable() function adds the queue pointed to by q to the list of queues whose service routines are ready to be called by the STREAMS scheduler.

**Context**
The qenable() function can be called from user, interrupt, or kernel context.

**Examples**
See the dupb(9F) function page for an example of the qenable().

**See Also**
dupb(9F)

*Writing Device Drivers*

*STREAMS Programming Guide*
**Name**
qprocson, qprocsoff – enable, disable put and service routines

**Synopsis**
```
#include <sys/stream.h>
#include <sys/ddi.h>

void qprocson(queue_t *q);
void qprocsoff(queue_t *q);
```

**Interface Level**
Architecture independent level 1 (DDI/DKI).

**Parameters**
q Pointer to the RD side of a STREAMS queue pair.

**Description**
The qprocson() enables the put and service routines of the driver or module whose read queue is pointed to by q. Threads cannot enter the module instance through the put and service routines while they are disabled.

The qprocson() function must be called by the open routine of a driver or module before returning, and after any initialization necessary for the proper functioning of the put and service routines.

The qprocson() function must be called before calling put(9F), putnext(9F), qbufcall(9F), qtimeout(9F), qwait(9F), or qwait_sig(9F).

The qprocsoff() function must be called by the close routine of a driver or module before returning, and before deallocating any resources necessary for the proper functioning of the put and service routines. It also removes the queue's service routines from the service queue, and blocks until any pending service processing completes.

The module or driver instance is guaranteed to be single-threaded before qprocson() is called and after qprocsoff() is called, except for threads executing asynchronous events such as interrupt handlers and callbacks, which must be handled separately.

**Context**
These routines can be called from user, interrupt, or kernel context.

**See Also**
close(9E), open(9E), put(9E), srv(9E), put(9F), putnext(9F), qbufcall(9F), qtimeout(9F), qwait(9F), qwait_sig(9F)

*Writing Device Drivers*

*STREAMS Programming Guide*

**Notes**
The caller may not have the STREAM frozen during either of these calls.
Name  qreply – send a message on a stream in the reverse direction

Synopsis  #include <sys/stream.h>

    void qreply(queue_t *q, mblk_t *mp);

Interface Level  Architecture independent level 1 (DDI/DKI).

Parameters  

- q  Pointer to the queue.
- mp  Pointer to the message to be sent in the opposite direction.

Description  The qreply() function sends messages in the reverse direction of normal flow. That is, qreply(q, mp) is equivalent to putnext(OTHERQ(q), mp).

Context  The qreply() function can be called from user, interrupt, or kernel context.

Examples  

**EXAMPLE 1**  Canonical Flushing Code for STREAMS Drivers.

This example depicts the canonical flushing code for STREAMS drivers. Assume that the driver has service procedures so that there may be messages on its queues. See srv(9E). Its write-side put procedure handles M_FLUSH messages by first checking the FLUSHW bit in the first byte of the message, then the write queue is flushed (line 8) and the FLUSHW bit is turned off (line 9). See put(9E). If the FLUSHR bit is on, then the read queue is flushed (line 12) and the message is sent back up the read side of the stream with the qreply() function (line 13). If the FLUSHR bit is off, then the message is freed (line 15). See the example for flushq(9F) for the canonical flushing code for modules.

```c
1  xxxwput(q, mp)
2  queue_t *q;
3  mblk_t *mp;
4  {
5      switch(mp->b_datap->db_type) {
6          case M_FLUSH:
7              if (*mp->b_rptr & FLUSHW) {
8                  flushq(q, FLUSHALL);
9                  *mp->b_rptr &= ~FLUSHW;
10              }
11              if (*mp->b_rptr & FLUSHR) {
12                  flushq(RD(q), FLUSHALL);
13                  qreply(q, mp);
14              } else {
15                  freemsg(mp);
16              }
17         break;
18      }
```
EXAMPLE 1  Canonical Flushing Code for STREAMS Drivers.  

(Continued)

19  }

See Also  put(9E), srv(9E), flushq(9F), OTHERQ(9F), putnext(9F)

Writing Device Drivers

STREAMS Programming Guide
qsize – find the number of messages on a queue

Synopsis
#include <sys/stream.h>

int qsize(queue_t *q);

Interface Level
Architecture independent level 1 (DDI/DKI).

Parameters
q Queue to be evaluated.

Description
The qsize() function evaluates the queue q and returns the number of messages it contains.

Return Values
If there are no message on the queue, qsize() returns 0. Otherwise, it returns the integer representing the number of messages on the queue.

Context
The qsize() function can be called from user, interrupt, or kernel context.

See Also
Writing Device Drivers
STREAMS Programming Guide
qtimeout – execute a function after a specified length of time

#include <sys/stream.h>
#include <sys/ddi.h>

timeout_id_t qtimeout(queue_t *q, void (*func)(void *), void *arg, clock_t ticks);

Solaris DDI specific (Solaris DDI).

Parameters

q Pointer to STREAMS queue structure.
func Kernel function to invoke when the time increment expires.
arg Argument to the function.
ticks Number of clock ticks to wait before the function is called. Use \texttt{drv\_usectohz(9F)} to convert microseconds to clock ticks.

Description

The \texttt{qtimeout(\ldots)} function schedules the specified function \textit{func} to be called after a specified time interval. \textit{func} is called with \textit{arg} as a parameter. Control is immediately returned to the caller. This is useful when an event is known to occur within a specific time frame, or when you want to wait for I/O processes when an interrupt is not available or might cause problems. The exact time interval over which the timeout takes effect cannot be guaranteed, but the value given is a close approximation.

The \texttt{qtimeout(\ldots)} function is tailored to be used with the enhanced STREAMS framework interface which is based on the concept of perimeters. (See \texttt{mt\_streams(9F).}) \texttt{qtimeout(\ldots)} schedules the specified function to execute after entering the perimeters associated with the queue passed in as the first parameter to \texttt{qtimeout(\ldots)}. All outstanding timeouts and bufcalls must be cancelled (using, respectively, \texttt{quntimeout(9F)} and \texttt{qunbufcall(9F)}) before a driver close routine can block and before the close routine calls \texttt{qprocsoff(9F)}.

The \texttt{qprocsoff(9F)} function must be called before calling \texttt{qtimeout(\ldots)}.

Return Values

The \texttt{qtimeout(\ldots)} function returns an opaque non-zero timeout identifier that can be passed to \texttt{quntimeout(9F)} to cancel the request. Note: No value is returned from the called function.

Context

The \texttt{qtimeout(\ldots)} function can be called from user, interrupt, or kernel context.

See Also

\texttt{drv\_usectohz(9F)}, \texttt{mt\_streams(9F)}, \texttt{qbufcall(9F)}, \texttt{qprocsoff(9F)}, \texttt{qunbufcall(9F)}, \texttt{quntimeout(9F)}

\textit{Writing Device Drivers}

\textit{STREAMS Programming Guide}
# Name
qunbufcall – cancel a pending qbufcall request

## Synopsis
#include <sys/stream.h>
#include <sys/ddi.h>

void qunbufcall(queue_t *q, bufcall_id_t id);

## Interface Level
Solaris DDI specific (Solaris DDI).

## Parameters
- **q**: Pointer to STREAMS queue_t structure.
- **id**: Identifier returned from qbufcall(9F).

## Description
The qunbufcall() function cancels a pending qbufcall() request. The argument *id* is a non-zero identifier of the request to be cancelled. *id* is returned from the qbufcall() function used to issue the cancel request.

The qunbufcall() function is tailored to be used with the enhanced STREAMS framework interface which is based on the concept of perimeters. (See mt-streams(9F).) qunbufcall() returns when the bufcall has been cancelled or finished executing. The bufcall will be cancelled even if it is blocked at the perimeters associated with the queue. All outstanding timeouts and bufcalls must be cancelled before a driver close routine can block and before the close routine calls qprocsoff(9F).

## Context
The qunbufcall() function can be called from user, interrupt, or kernel context.

## See Also
- mt-streams(9F), qbufcall(9F), qtimeout(9F), quntimeout(9F)
- Writing Device Drivers
- STREAMS Programming Guide
### quntimeout(9F)

#### Name
quntimeout – cancel previous qtimeout function call

#### Synopsis
```
#include <sys/stream.h>
#include <sys/ddi.h>

clock_t quntimeout(queue_t *q, timeout_id_t id);
```

#### Interface Level
Solaris DDI specific (Solaris DDI).

#### Parameters
- **q**  
  Pointer to a STREAMS queue structure.
- **id**  
  Opaque timeout ID a previous qtimeout(9F) call.

#### Description
The quntimeout() function cancels a pending qtimeout(9F) request. The quntimeout() function is tailored to be used with the enhanced STREAMS framework interface, which is based on the concept of perimeters. (See mt-streams(9F).) quntimeout() returns when the timeout has been cancelled or finished executing. The timeout will be cancelled even if it is blocked at the perimeters associated with the queue. quntimeout() should be executed for all outstanding timeouts before a driver or module close returns. All outstanding timeouts and qbufcall() calls must be cancelled before a driver close routine can block and before the close routine calls qprocsoff(9F).

#### Return Values
The quntimeout() function returns -1 if the id is not found. Otherwise, quntimeout() returns a 0 or positive value.

#### Context
The quntimeout() function can be called from user, interrupt, or kernel context.

#### See Also
- mt-streams(9F), qbufcall(9F), qtimeout(9F), qunbufcall(9F)
- Writing Device Drivers
- STREAMS Programming Guide
### Name
qwait, qwait_sig – STREAMS wait routines

### Synopsis
```
#include <sys/stream.h>
#include <sys/ddi.h>

void qwait(queue_t *q);
int qwait_sig(queue_t *q);
```

### Interface Level
Solaris DDI specific (Solaris DDI).

### Parameters
- **qp**  
  Pointer to the queue that is being opened or closed.

### Description
qwait() and qwait_sig() are used to wait for a message to arrive to the put(9E) or srv(9E) procedures. qwait() and qwait_sig() can also be used to wait for qbufcall(9F) or qtimeout(9F) callback procedures to execute. These routines can be used in the open(9E) and close(9E) procedures in a STREAMS driver or module.

**Note** – The thread that calls close() does not necessarily have the ability to receive signals, particularly when called by exit(2). In this case, qwait Sig() behaves exactly as qwait(). Driver writers may use ddi_can_receive_sig(9F) to determine when this is the case, and, if so, arrange some means to avoid blocking indefinitely (for example, by using qtimeout(9F)).

qwait() and qwait_sig() atomically exit the inner and outer perimeters associated with the queue, and wait for a thread to leave the module’s put(9E), srv(9E), or qbufcall(9F)/qtimeout(9F) callback procedures. Upon return they re-enter the inner and outer perimeters.

This can be viewed as there being an implicit wakeup when a thread leaves a put(9E) or srv(9E) procedure or after a qtimeout(9F) or qbufcall(9F) callback procedure has been run in the same perimeter.

qprocson(9F) must be called before calling qwait() or qwait_sig().

qwait() is not interrupted by a signal, whereas qwait_sig() is interrupted by a signal. qwait_sig() normally returns non-zero, and returns zero when the waiting was interrupted by a signal.

qwait() and qwaitSig() are similar to cv_wait() and cv_waitSig() except that the mutex is replaced by the inner and outer perimeters and the signalling is implicit when a thread leaves the inner perimeter. See condvar(9F).

### Return Values
- **0**  
  For qwait_sig(), indicates that the condition was not necessarily signaled, and the function returned because a signal was pending.

### Context
These functions can only be called from an open(9E) or close(9E) routine.
**Examples**

**EXAMPLE 1 Using qwait()**

The open routine sends down a T_INFO_REQ message and waits for the T_INFO_ACK. The arrival of the T_INFO_ACK is recorded by resetting a flag in the unit structure (WAIT_INFO_ACK). The example assumes that the module is D_MTQPAIR or D_MTPERM00.

```c
xxopen(qp, ..., )
    queue_t *qp;
{
    struct xxdata *xx;
    /* Allocate xxdata structure */
    aprocson(qp);
    /* Format T_INFO_ACK in mp */
    putnext(qp, mp);
    xx->xx_flags |= WAIT_INFO_ACK;
    while (xx->xx_flags & WAIT_INFO_ACK)
        qwait(qp);
    return (0);
}

xxrput(qp, mp)
    queue_t *qp;
    mblk_t *mp;
{
    struct xxdata *xx = (struct xxdata *)q->q_ptr;
    ...
    case T_INFO_ACK:
        if (xx->xx_flags & WAIT_INFO_ACK) {
            /* Record information from info ack */
            xx->xx_flags &= ~WAIT_INFO_ACK;
            freemsg(mp);
            return;
        }
    }
    ...
}
```

**See Also**

close(9E), open(9E), put(9E), srv(9E), condvar(9F), ddi_can_receive_sig(9F), mt-streams(9F), qbufcall(9F), aprocson(9F), qtimeout(9F)

STREAMS Programming Guide

Writing Device Drivers
qwriter – asynchronous STREAMS perimeter upgrade

```
#include <sys/stream.h>
#include <sys/ddi.h>

void qwriter(queue_t *qp, mblk_t *mp, void (*func)(), int perimeter);
```

Solaris DDI specific (Solaris DDI).

- **qp**: Pointer to the queue.
- **mp**: Pointer to a message that will be passed in to the callback function.
- **func**: A function that will be called when exclusive (writer) access has been acquired at the specified perimeter.
- **perimeter**: Either PERIM_INNER or PERIM_OUTER.

qwriter() is used to upgrade the access at either the inner or the outer perimeter from shared to exclusive and call the specified callback function when the upgrade has succeeded. See mt-streams(9F). The callback function is called as:

```
(*func)(queue_t *qp, mblk_t *mp);
```

qwriter() will acquire exclusive access immediately if possible, in which case the specified callback function will be executed before qwriter() returns. If this is not possible, qwriter() will defer the upgrade until later and return before the callback function has been executed. Modules should not assume that the callback function has been executed when qwriter() returns. One way to avoid dependencies on the execution of the callback function is to immediately return after calling qwriter() and let the callback function finish the processing of the message.

When qwriter() defers calling the callback function, the STREAMS framework will prevent other messages from entering the inner perimeter associated with the queue until the upgrade has completed and the callback function has finished executing.

qwriter() can only be called from an put(9E) or srv(9E) routine, or from a qwriter(), qtimeout(9F), or qbufcall(9F) callback function.

See Also

put(9E), srv(9E), mt-streams(9F), qbufcall(9F), qtimeout(9F)

STREAMS Programming Guide

Writing Device Drivers
**RD(9F)**

Name RD, rd – get pointer to the read queue

Synopsis `#include <sys/stream.h>`
`#include <sys/ddi.h>`

```c
queue_t *RD(queue_t *q);
```

Interface Level Architecture independent level 1 (DDI/DKI).

Parameters `q` Pointer to the write queue whose read queue is to be returned.

Description The RD() function accepts a write queue pointer as an argument and returns a pointer to the read queue of the same module.

CAUTION: Make sure the argument to this function is a pointer to a write queue. RD() will not check for queue type, and a system panic could result if it is not the right type.

Return Values The pointer to the read queue.

Context The RD() function can be called from user, interrupt, or kernel context.

Examples EXAMPLE 1 Function page reference

See the `qreply(9F)` function page for an example of RD().

See Also `qreply(9F), WR(9F)`

*Writing Device Drivers*

*STREAMS Programming Guide*
### Name
rmalloc – allocate space from a resource map

### Synopsis
```
#include <sys/map.h>
#include <sys/ddi.h>

unsigned long rmalloc(struct map *, size_t size);
```

### Interface Level
Architecture independent level 1 (DDI/DKI).

### Parameters
- **mp** Resource map from where the resource is drawn.
- **size** Number of units of the resource.

### Description
The `rmalloc()` function is used by a driver to allocate space from a previously defined and initialized resource map. The map itself is allocated by calling the function `rmallocmap(9F)`. `rmalloc()` is one of five functions used for resource map management. The other functions include:

- `rmalloc_wait(9F)` Allocate space from a resource map, wait if necessary.
- `rmfree(9F)` Return previously allocated space to a map.
- `rmallocmap(9F)` Allocate a resource map and initialize it.
- `rmfreemap(9F)` Deallocate a resource map.

The `rmalloc()` function allocates space from a resource map in terms of arbitrary units. The system maintains the resource map by size and index, computed in units appropriate for the resource. For example, units may be byte addresses, pages of memory, or blocks. The normal return value is an `unsigned long` set to the value of the index where sufficient free space in the resource was found.

### Return Values
Under normal conditions, `rmalloc()` returns the base index of the allocated space. Otherwise, `rmalloc()` returns a 0 if all resource map entries are already allocated.

### Context
The `rmalloc()` function can be called from user, interrupt, or kernel context.

### Examples
**EXAMPLE 1** Illustrating the principles of map management

The following example is a simple memory map, but it illustrates the principles of map management. A driver allocates and initializes the map by calling both the `rmallocmap(9F)` and `rmfree(9F)` functions. `rmallocmap(9F)` is called to establish the number of slots or entries in the map, and `rmfree(9F)` to initialize the resource area the map is to manage. The following example is a fragment from a hypothetical `start` routine and illustrates the following procedures:

- Panics the system if the required amount of memory can not be allocated (lines 11–15).
EXEMPLARY 1 Illustrating the principles of map management (Continued)

- Uses `rmallocmap(9F)` to configure the total number of entries in the map, and `rmfree(9F)` to initialize the total resource area.

```c
#define XX_MAPSIZE 12
#define XX_BUFSIZE 2560
static struct map *xx_mp; /* Private buffer space map */
...
xxstart( )
    /*
     * Allocate private buffer. If insufficient memory,
     * display message and halt system.
     */
    {
     register caddr_t bp;
     ...
     if ((bp = kmem_alloc(XX_BUFSIZE, KM_NOSLEEP) == 0) {
         cmn_err(CE_PANIC, "xxstart: kmem_alloc failed before %d buffer allocation", XX_BUFSIZE);
     }
     /*
     * Initialize the resource map with number of slots in map.
     */
     xx_mp = rmallocmap(XX_MAPSIZE);
     /*
     * Initialize space management map with total buffer area it is to manage.
     */
     rmfree(xx_mp, XX_BUFSIZE, bp);
     ..
```

EXEMPLARY 2 Allocating buffers

The `rmalloc()` function is then used by the driver's read or write routine to allocate buffers for specific data transfers. The `uiomove(9F)` function is used to move the data between user space and local driver memory. The device then moves data between itself and local driver memory through DMA.

The next example illustrates the following procedures:

- The size of the I/O request is calculated and stored in the `size` variable (line 10).
EXAMPLE 2 Allocating Buffers (Continued)

- Buffers are allocated through the rmalloc() function using the size value (line 15). If the allocation fails the system will panic.
- The uiomove(9F) function is used to move data to the allocated buffer (line 23).
- If the address passed to uiomove(9F) is invalid, rmfree(9F) is called to release the previously allocated buffer, and an EFAULT error is returned.

```c
#define XX_BUFSIZE 2560
#define XX_MAXSIZE (XX_BUFSIZE / 4)
static struct map *xx_mp; /* Private buffer space map */
...
xread(dev_t dev, uio_t *uiop, cred_t *credp)
{
  register caddr_t addr;
  register int size;
  size = min(COUNT, XX_MAXSIZE); /* Break large I/O request */
  /* into small ones */
  /* Get buffer. */
  if ((addr = (caddr_t)rmalloc(xx_mp, size)) == 0)
    cmn_err(CE_PANIC, "read: rmalloc failed allocation of size %d", size);
  /* Move data to buffer. If invalid address is found, */
  /* return buffer to map and return error code. */
  if (uiomove(addr, size, UIO_READ, uiop) == -1) {
    rmfree(xx_mp, size, addr);
    return(EFAULT);
  }
}
```

See Also kmem_alloc(9F), rmalloc_wait(9F), rmallocmap(9F), rmfree(9F), rmfreemap(9F), uiomove(9F)

Writing Device Drivers
rmallocmap, rmallocmap_wait, rmfreemap – allocate and free resource maps

**Synopsis**
#include <sys/ddi.h>
#include <sys/sunddi.h>

struct map *rmallocmap(size_t mapsize);
struct map *rmallocmap_wait(size_t mapsize);
void rmfreemap(struct map *mp);

**Interface Level**
Architecture independent level 1 (DDI/ DKI).

**Parameters**
- **mapsize**  
  Number of entries for the map.
- **mp**  
  A pointer to the map structure to be deallocated.

**Description**
rmallocmap() dynamically allocates a resource map structure. The argument mapsize defines the total number of entries in the map. In particular, it is the total number of allocations that can be outstanding at any one time.

rmallocmap() initializes the map but does not associate it with the actual resource. In order to associate the map with the actual resource, a call to rmfree(9F) is used to make the entirety of the actual resource available for allocation, starting from the first index into the resource. Typically, the call to rmallocmap() is followed by a call to rmfree(9F), passing the address of the map returned from rmallocmap(), the total size of the resource, and the first index into the actual resource.

The resource map allocated by rmallocmap() can be used to describe an arbitrary resource in whatever allocation units are appropriate, such as blocks, pages, or data structures. This resource can then be managed by the system by subsequent calls to rmalloc(9F), rmalloc_wait(9F), and rmfree(9F).

rmallocmap_wait() is similar to rmallocmap(), with the exception that it will wait for space to become available if necessary.

rmfreemap() deallocates a resource map structure previously allocated by rmallocmap() or rmallocmap_wait(). The argument mp is a pointer to the map structure to be deallocated.

**Return Values**
Upon successful completion, rmallocmap() and rmallocmap_wait() return a pointer to the newly allocated map structure. Upon failure, rmallocmap() returns a NULL pointer.

**Context**
rmallocmap() and rmfreemap() can be called from user, kernel, or interrupt context.

rmallocmap_wait() can only be called from user or kernel context.
See Also  `rmalloc(9F), rmalloc_wait(9F), rfree(9F)`

*Writing Device Drivers*
Name  rmalloc_wait – allocate space from a resource map, wait if necessary

Synopsis  #include <sys/map.h>
          #include <sys/ddi.h>

          unsigned long rmalloc_wait(struct map *mp, size_t size);

Interface Level  Architecture independent level 1 (DDI/DKI).

Parameters  mp  Pointer to the resource map from which space is to be allocated.
             size  Number of units of space to allocate.

Description  The rmalloc_wait() function requests an allocation of space from a resource map.
              rmalloc_wait() is similar to the rmalloc(9F) function with the exception that it will wait for
              space to become available if necessary.

Return Values  The rmalloc_wait() function returns the base of the allocated space.

Context  This function can be called from user, interrupt, or kernel context. However, in most cases
          rmalloc_wait() should not be called from interrupt context.

See Also  rmalloc(9F), rmallocmap(9F), rmfree(9F), rmfreemap(9F)

           Writing Device Drivers
rmfree(9F)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>rmfree – free space back into a resource map</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Synopsis</td>
<td><code>#include &lt;sys/map.h&gt;</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><code>#include &lt;sys/ddi.h&gt;</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><code>void rmfree(struct map *mp, size_t size, ulong_t index);</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Interface Level</td>
<td>Architecture independent level 1 (DDI/DKI).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Parameters</td>
<td><code>mp</code> Pointer to the map structure.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><code>size</code> Number of units being freed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><code>index</code> Index of the first unit of the allocated resource.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Description</td>
<td>The <code>rmfree()</code> function releases space back into a resource map. It is the opposite of <code>rmalloc(9F)</code>, which allocates space that is controlled by a resource map structure.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>When releasing resources using <code>rmfree()</code> the size and index passed to <code>rmfree()</code> must exactly match the size and index values passed to and returned from a previous call to <code>rmalloc()</code>. Resources cannot be returned piecemeal.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Drivers may define resource maps for resource allocation, in terms of arbitrary units, using the <code>rmallocmap(9F)</code> function. The system maintains the resource map structure by size and index, computed in units appropriate for the resource. For example, units may be byte addresses, pages of memory, or blocks. <code>rmfree()</code> frees up unallocated space for re-use.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>The <code>rmfree()</code> function can also be used to initialize a resource map, in which case the size and index should cover the entire resource area.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Context</td>
<td>The <code>rmfree()</code> function can be called from user, interrupt, or kernel context.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>See Also</td>
<td><code>rmalloc(9F), rmalloc_wait(9F), rmallocmap(9F), rmfreemap(9F)</code></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Writing Device Drivers
Synopsis  
#include <sys/stream.h>

mblk_t *rmvb(mblk_t *mp, mblk_t *bp);

Interface Level  
Architecture independent level 1 (DDI/DKI).

Parameters
- mp: Message from which a block is to be removed. mblk_t is an instance of the msgb(9S) structure.
- bp: Message block to be removed.

Description
The rmvb() function removes a message block (bp) from a message (mp), and returns a pointer to the altered message. The message block is not freed, merely removed from the message. It is the module or driver's responsibility to free the message block.

Return Values
If successful, a pointer to the message (minus the removed block) is returned. The pointer is NULL if bp was the only block of the message before rmvb() was called. If the designated message block (bp) does not exist, -1 is returned.

Context
The rmvb() function can be called from user, interrupt, or kernel context.

Examples
This routine removes all zero-length M_DATA message blocks from the given message. For each message block in the message, save the next message block (line 10). If the current message block is of type M_DATA and has no data in its buffer (line 11), then remove it from the message (line 12) and free it (line 13). In either case, continue with the next message block in the message (line 16).

```
  void
  xxclean(mp)
  
  mblk_t *mp;
  {
    mblk_t *tmp;
    mblk_t *nmp;

    tmp = mp;
    while (tmp) {
      nmp = tmp->b_cont;
      if ((tmp->b_datap->db_type == M_DATA) &&
          (tmp->b_rptr == tmp->b_wptr)) {
        (void) rmvb(mp, tmp);
        freeb(tmp);
      }
      tmp = nmp;
    }
  }
```
See Also  freeb(9F), msgb(9S)

Writing Device Drivers

STREAMS Programming Guide
Name    rmvq – remove a message from a queue

Synopsis    #include <sys/stream.h>

void rmvq(queue_t *q, mblk_t *mp);

Interface Level    Architecture independent level 1 (DDI/DKI).

Parameters

<p>| | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>q</td>
<td>Queue containing the message to be removed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mp</td>
<td>Message to remove.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Description    The rmvq() function removes a message from a queue. A message can be removed from anywhere on a queue. To prevent modules and drivers from having to deal with the internals of message linkage on a queue, either rmvq() or getq(9F) should be used to remove a message from a queue.

Context    The rmvq() function can be called from user, interrupt, or kernel context.

Examples    This code fragment illustrates how one may flush one type of message from a queue. In this case, only M_PROTO T_DATA_IND messages are flushed. For each message on the queue, if it is an M_PROTO message (line 8) of type T_DATA_IND (line 10), save a pointer to the next message (line 11), remove the T_DATA_IND message (line 12) and free it (line 13). Continue with the next message in the list (line 19).

```c
1 mblk_t *mp, *nmp;
2 queue_t *q;
3 union T_primitives *tp;
4
5 /* Insert code here to protect queue and message block */
6 mp = q->q_first;
7 while (mp) {
8     if (mp->b_datap->db_type == M_PROTO) {
9         tp = (union T_primitives *)mp->b_rptr;
10        if (tp->type == T_DATA_IND) {
11            nmp = mp->b_next;
12            rmvq(q, mp);
13            freemsg(mp);
14            mp = nmp;
15        } else {
16            mp = mp->b_next;
17        }
18    } else {
19        mp = mp->b_next;
20    }
21 } /* End of region that must be protected */
```
When using `rmvq()`, you must ensure that the queue and the message block is not modified by another thread at the same time. You can achieve this either by using STREAMS functions or by implementing your own locking.

### See Also
- `freemsg(9F)`, `getq(9F)`, `insq(9F)`

*Writing Device Drivers*

*STREAMS Programming Guide*

### Warnings
Make sure that the message `mp` is linked onto `q` to avoid a possible system panic.
rwlock(9F)

Name  rwlock, rw_init, rw_destroy, rw_enter, rw_exit, rw_tryenter, rw_downgrade, rw_tryupgrade, rw_read_locked – readers/writer lock functions

Synopsis  #include <sys/ksynch.h>

void rw_init(krwlock_t *rwlp, char *name, krw_type_t type, void *arg);
void rw_destroy(krwlock_t *rwlp);
void rw_enter(krwlock_t *rwlp, krw_t enter_type);
void rw_exit(krwlock_t *rwlp);
int rw_tryenter(krwlock_t *rwlp, krw_t enter_type);
void rw_downgrade(krwlock_t *rwlp);
int rw_tryupgrade(krwlock_t *rwlp);
int rw_read_locked(krwlock_t *rwlp);

Interface Level  Solaris DDI specific (Solaris DDI).

Parameters  rwlp  Pointer to a krwlock_t readers/writer lock.

name  Descriptive string. This is obsolete and should be NULL. (Non-null strings are legal, but they’re a waste of kernel memory.)

type  Type of readers/writer lock.

arg  Type-specific argument for initialization function.

enter_type  One of the values RW_READER or RW_WRITER, indicating whether the lock is to be acquired non-exclusively (RW_READER) or exclusively (RW_WRITER).

Description  A multiple-readers, single-writer lock is represented by the krwlock_t data type. This type of lock will allow many threads to have simultaneous read-only access to an object. Only one thread may have write access at any one time. An object which is searched more frequently than it is changed is a good candidate for a readers/writer lock.

Readers/writer locks are slightly more expensive than mutex locks, and the advantage of multiple read access may not occur if the lock will only be held for a short time.

The rw_init() function initializes a readers/writer lock. It is an error to initialize a lock more than once. The type argument should be set to RW_DRIVER. If the lock is used by the interrupt handler, the type-specific argument, arg, should be the interrupt priority returned from ddi_intr_get_pri(9F) or ddi_intr_get_softint_pri(9F). Note that arg should be the value of the interrupt priority cast by calling the DDI_INTR_PRI macro. If the lock is not used by any interrupt handler, the argument should be NULL.
The `rw_destroy()` function releases any resources that might have been allocated by `rw_init()`. It should be called before freeing the memory containing the lock. The lock must not be held by any thread when it is destroyed.

The `rw_enter()` function acquires the lock, and blocks if necessary. If `enter_type` is `RW_READER`, the caller blocks if there is a writer or a thread attempting to enter for writing. If `enter_type` is `RW_WRITER`, the caller blocks if any thread holds the lock.

NOTE: It is a programming error for any thread to acquire an rwlock it already holds, even as a reader. Doing so can deadlock the system: if thread R acquires the lock as a reader, then thread W tries to acquire the lock as a writer, W will set write-wanted and block. When R tries to get its second read hold on the lock, it will honor the write-wanted bit and block waiting for W; but W cannot run until R drops the lock. Thus threads R and W deadlock.

The `rw_exit()` function releases the lock and may wake up one or more threads waiting on the lock.

The `rw_tryenter()` function attempts to enter the lock, like `rw_enter()`, but never blocks. It returns a non-zero value if the lock was successfully entered, and zero otherwise.

A thread which holds the lock exclusively (entered with `RW_WRITER`), may call `rw_downgrade()` to convert to holding the lock non-exclusively (as if entered with `RW_READER`). One or more waiting readers may be unblocked.

The `rw_tryupgrade()` function can be called by a thread which holds the lock for reading to attempt to convert to holding it for writing. This upgrade can only succeed if no other thread is holding the lock and no other thread is blocked waiting to acquire the lock for writing.

The `rw_read_locked()` function returns non-zero if the calling thread holds the lock for read, and zero if the caller holds the lock for write. The caller must hold the lock. The system may panic if `rw_read_locked()` is called for a lock that isn't held by the caller.

### Return Values

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Value</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td><code>rw_tryenter()</code> could not obtain the lock without blocking.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td><code>rw_tryupgrade()</code> was unable to perform the upgrade because of other threads holding or waiting to hold the lock.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td><code>rw_read_locked()</code> returns 0 if the lock is held by the caller for write.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>non-zero</td>
<td>from <code>rw_read_locked()</code> if the lock is held by the caller for read.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>non-zero</td>
<td>successful return from <code>rw_tryenter()</code> or <code>rw_tryupgrade()</code>.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Context

These functions can be called from user, interrupt, or kernel context, except for `rw_init()` and `rw_destroy()`, which can be called from user context only.

### See Also

`condvar(9F), ddi_intr_alloc(9F), ddi_intr_add_handler(9F), ddi_intr_get_pri(9F), ddi_intr_get_softint_pri(9F), mutex(9F), semaphore(9F)`
Writing Device Drivers

Notes  Compiling with _LOCKTEST or _MPSTATS defined no longer has any effect. To gather lock statistics, see lockstat(1M).
### Name
SAMESTR, samestr – test if next queue is in the same stream

### Synopsis
```
#include <sys/stream.h>

int SAMESTR(queue_t *q);
```

### Interface Level
Architecture independent level 1 (DDI/DKI).

### Parameters
- `q` Pointer to the queue.

### Description
The `SAMESTR()` function is used to see if the next queue in a stream (if it exists) is the same type as the current queue (that is, both are read queues or both are write queues). This function accounts for the twisted queue connections that occur in a STREAMS pipe and should be used in preference to direct examination of the `q_next` field of `queue(9S)` to see if the stream continues beyond `q`.

### Return Values
The `SAMESTR()` function returns 1 if the next queue is the same type as the current queue. It returns 0 if the next queue does not exist or if it is not the same type.

### Context
The `SAMESTR()` function can be called from user, interrupt, context.

### See Also
- `OTHERQ(9F)`
  - *Writing Device Drivers*
  - *STREAMS Programming Guide*
**Name**  
scsi_abort – abort a SCSI command

**Synopsis**  
#include <sys/scsi/scsi.h>  

`intscsi_abort(struct scsi_address *ap, struct scsi_pkt *pkt);`

**Interface Level**  
Solaris DDI specific (Solaris DDI).

**Parameters**  
ap Pointer to a scsi_address structure.
 pkt Pointer to a scsi_pkt(9S) structure.

**Description**  
The `scsi_abort()` function terminates a command that has been transported to the host adapter driver. A NULL `pkt` causes all outstanding packets to be aborted. On a successful abort, the `pkt_reason` is set to CMD_ABORTED and `pkt_statistics` is OR'ed with STAT_ABORTED.

**Return Values**  
The `scsi_abort()` function returns:

1 on success.
0 on failure.

**Context**  
The `scsi_abort()` function can be called from user, interrupt, or kernel context.

**Examples**  
**EXAMPLE 1**  
Terminating a command.

```c
if (scsi_abort(&devp->sd_address, pkt) == 0) {
    (void) scsi_reset(&devp->sd_address, RESET_ALL);
}
```

**See Also**  
tran_abort(9E), scsi_reset(9F), scsi_pkt(9S)

*Writing Device Drivers*
**Name**  
`scsi_alloc_consistent_buf` – allocate an I/O buffer for SCSI DMA

**Synopsis**  
```c
#include <sys/scsi/scsi.h>

struct buf *scsi_alloc_consistent_buf(struct scsi_address *ap,
    struct buf *bp, size_t datalen, uint_t bflags,
    int (*callback)(caddr_t, caddr_t arg);
```

**Interface Level**  
Solaris DDI specific (Solaris DDI).

**Parameters**
- `ap`  
  Pointer to the `scsi_address(9S)` structure.
- `bp`  
  Pointer to the `buf(9S)` structure.
- `datalen`  
  Number of bytes for the data buffer.
- `bflags`  
  Flags setting for the allocated buffer header. This should either be `B_READ` or `B_WRITE`.
- `callback`  
  A pointer to a callback function, `NULL_FUNC` or `SLEEP_FUNC`.
- `arg`  
  The callback function argument.

**Description**  
The `scsi_alloc_consistent_buf()` function returns allocates a buffer header and the associated data buffer for direct memory access (DMA) transfer. This buffer is allocated from the iobp space, which is considered consistent memory. For more details, see `ddi_dma_mem_alloc(9F)` and `ddi_dma_sync(9F)`.

For buffers allocated via `scsi_alloc_consistent_buf()`, and marked with the `PKT_CONSISTENT` flag via `scsi_init_pkt(9F)`, the HBA driver must ensure that the data transfer for the command is correctly synchronized before the target driver's command completion callback is performed.

If `bp` is NULL, a new buffer header will be allocated using `getrbuf(9F)`. In addition, if `datalen` is non-zero, a new buffer will be allocated using `ddi_dma_mem_alloc(9F)`.

`callback` indicates what the allocator routines should do when direct memory access (DMA) resources are not available; the valid values are:

- `NULL_FUNC`  
  Do not wait for resources. Return a NULL pointer.
- `SLEEP_FUNC`  
  Wait indefinitely for resources.

Other Values  
`callback` points to a function that is called when resources may become available. `callback` must return either 0 (indicating that it attempted to allocate resources but failed to do so), in which case it is put back on a list to be called again later, or 1 indicating either success in allocating resources or indicating that it no longer cares for a retry. The last argument `arg` is
supplied to the `callback` function when it is invoked.

**Return Values**  The `scsi_alloc_consistent_buf()` function returns a pointer to a `buf(9S)` structure on success. It returns NULL if resources are not available even if `waitfunc` was not `SLEEP_FUNC`.

**Context**  If `callback` is `SLEEP_FUNC`, then this routine may be called only from user-level code. Otherwise, it may be called from user, interrupt, or kernel context. The `callback` function may not block or call routines that block.

**Examples**

**EXAMPLE 1**  Allocate a request sense packet with consistent DMA resources attached.

```c
bp = scsi_alloc_consistent_buf(&devp->sd_address, NULL,
   SENSE_LENGTH, B_READ, SLEEP_FUNC, NULL);
rqpkt = scsi_init_pkt(&devp->sd_address,
   NULL, bp, CDB_GROUP0, 1, 0,
   PKT_CONSISTENT, SLEEP_FUNC, NULL);
```

**EXAMPLE 2**  Allocate an inquiry packet with consistent DMA resources attached.

```c
bp = scsi_alloc_consistent_buf(&devp->sd_address, NULL,
   SUN_INQSIZE, B_READ, camwait, NULL);
if (bp) {
   pkt = scsi_init_pkt(&devp->sd_address, NULL, bp,
      CDB_GROUP0, 1, PP_LEN, PKT_CONSISTENT,
      camwait, NULL);
}
```

**See Also**  `ddi_dma_mem_alloc(9F), ddi_dma_sync(9F), getrbuf(9F), scsi_destroy_pkt(9F),
scsi_init_pkt(9F), scsi_free_consistent_buf(9F), buf(9S), scsi_address(9S)`

*Writing Device Drivers*
**Synopsis**

```
#include <sys/scsi/scsi.h>

char *scsi_cname(uchar_t cmd, char **cmdvec);
char *scsi_dname(int dtype);
char *scsi_mname(uchar_t msg);
char *scsi_rname(uchar_t reason);
char *scsi_sname(uchar_t sense_key);
```

**Interface Level**

Solaris DDI specific (Solaris DDI).

**Parameters**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>cmd</code></td>
<td>A SCSI command value.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>cmdvec</code></td>
<td>Pointer to an array of command strings.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>dtype</code></td>
<td>Device type.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>msg</code></td>
<td>A message value.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>reason</code></td>
<td>A packet reason value.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>sense_key</code></td>
<td>A SCSI sense key value.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Description**

The `scsi_cname()` function decodes SCSI commands. `cmdvec` is a pointer to an array of strings. The first byte of the string is the command value, and the remainder is the name of the command.

The `scsi_dname()` function decodes the peripheral device type (for example, direct access or sequential access) in the inquiry data.

The `scsi_mname()` function decodes SCSI messages.

The `scsi_rname()` function decodes packet completion reasons.

The `scsi_sname()` function decodes SCSI sense keys.

**Return Values**

These functions return a pointer to a string. If an argument is invalid, they return a string to that effect.

**Context**

These functions can be called from user, interrupt, or kernel context.

**Examples**

**Example 1**

Decoding SCSI tape commands.

The `scsi_cname()` function decodes SCSI tape commands as follows:
EXAMPLE 1  Decoding SCSI tape commands.  (Continued)

static char *st_cmds[] = {
  "000test unit ready",
  "001rewind",
  "003request sense",
  "010read",
  "012write",
  "020write file mark",
  "021space",
  "022inquiry",
  "025mode select",
  "031erase tape",
  "032mode sense",
  "033load tape",
  NULL
};

..  
  cmn_err(CE_CONT, "st: cmd=%s", scsi_cname(cmd, st_cmds));

See Also  Writing Device Drivers
Name  scsi_destroy_pkt – free an allocated SCSI packet and its DMA resource
Synopsis  #include <sys/scsi/scsi.h>

void scsi_destroy_pkt(struct scsi_pkt *pktp);

Interface Level  Solaris DDI specific (Solaris DDI).
Parameters  pktp  Pointer to a scsi_pkt(9S) structure.
Description  The scsi_destroy_pkt() function releases all necessary resources, typically at the end of an I/O transfer. The data is synchronized to memory, then the DMA resources are deallocated and pktp is freed.
Context  The scsi_destroy_pkt() function may be called from user, interrupt, or kernel context.
Examples  EXAMPLE 1  Releasing resources
    scsi_destroy_pkt(un->un_rqs);
See Also  tran_destroy_pkt(9E), scsi_init_pkt(9F), scsi_pkt(9S)

Writing Device Drivers
scsi_dmaget, scsi_dmafree – SCSI dma utility routines

Synopsis  
```
#include <sys/scsi/scsi.h>

struct scsi_pkt *scsi_dmaget(struct scsi_pkt *pkt,
opaque_t dmatoken, int(*callback)(void));

void scsi_dmafree(struct scsi_pkt *pkt);
```

Interface Level  
These interfaces are obsolete. Use `scsi_init_pkt(9F)` instead of `scsi_dmaget()`. Use `scsi_destroy_pkt(9F)` instead of `scsi_dmafree()`.

Parameters  
- `pkt`  
  A pointer to a `scsi_pkt(9S)` structure.
- `dmatoken`  
  Pointer to an implementation dependent object.
- `callback`  
  Pointer to a callback function, or `NULL_FUNC` or `SLEEP_FUNC`.

Description  
The `scsi_dmaget()` function allocates DMA resources for an already allocated SCSI packet. `pkt` is a pointer to the previously allocated SCSI packet (see `scsi_pktalloc(9F)`).

The `dmatoken` parameter is a pointer to an implementation dependent object which defines the length, direction, and address of the data transfer associated with this SCSI packet (command). The `dmatoken` must be a pointer to a `buf(9S)` structure. If `dmatoken` is `NULL`, no resources are allocated.

The `callback` parameter indicates what `scsi_dmaget()` should do when resources are not available:
- `NULL_FUNC`  
  Do not wait for resources. Return a `NULL` pointer.
- `SLEEP_FUNC`  
  Wait indefinitely for resources.

Other Values  
`callback` points to a function which is called when resources may have become available. `callback` must return either `0` (indicating that it attempted to allocate resources but failed to do so again), in which case it is put back on a list to be called again later, or `1` indicating either success in allocating resources or indicating that it no longer cares for a retry.

The `scsi_dmafree()` function frees the DMA resources associated with the SCSI packet. The packet itself remains allocated.

Return Values  
The `scsi_dmaget()` function returns a pointer to a `scsi_pkt` on success. It returns `NULL` if resources are not available.

Context  
If `callback` is `SLEEP_FUNC`, then this routine may only be called from user or kernel context. Otherwise, it may be called from user, kernel, or interrupt context. The `callback` function may not block or call routines that block.
The `scsi_dmafree()` function can be called from user, interrupt, or kernel context.

**Attributes**

See attributes(5) for a description of the following attributes:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ATTRIBUTE TYPE</th>
<th>ATTRIBUTE VALUE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Stability Level</td>
<td>Obsolete</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**See Also**

attributes(5), `scsi_pktalloc(9F)`, `scsi_pktfree(9F)`, `scsi_resalloc(9F)`,

`scsi_resfree(9F)`, `buf(9S)`, `scsi_pkt(9S)`

**Notes**

The `scsi_dmaget()` and `scsi_dmafree()` functions are obsolete and will be discontinued in a future release. These functions have been replaced by, respectively, `scsi_init_pkt(9F)` and `scsi_destroy_pkt(9F)`.
Name  scsi_errmsg – display a SCSI request sense message

Synopsis  

```c
#include <sys/scsi/scsi.h>

void scsi_errmsg(struct scsi_device *devp, struct scsi_pkt *pktp,
    char *drv_name, int severity, daddr_t blkno, daddr_t err_blkno,
    struct scsi_key_strings *cmdlist, struct scsi_extended_sense *sensep);
```

Interface Level  Solaris DDI specific (Solaris DDI).

Parameters  

- `devp`  Pointer to the `scsi_device(9S)` structure.
- `pktp`  Pointer to a `scsi_pkt(9S)` structure.
- `drv_name`  String used by `scsi_log(9F)`.
- `severity`  Error severity level, maps to severity strings below.
- `blkno`  Requested block number.
- `err_blkno`  Error block number.
- `cmdlist`  An array of SCSI command description strings.
- `sensep`  A pointer to a `scsi_extended_sense(9S)` structure.

Description  

The `scsi_errmsg()` function interprets the request sense information in the `sensep` pointer and generates a standard message that is displayed using `scsi_log(9F)`. The first line of the message is always a CE_WARN, with the continuation lines being CE_CONT. `sensep` may be NULL, in which case no sense key or vendor information is displayed.

The driver should make the determination as to when to call this function based on the severity of the failure and the severity level that the driver wants to report.

The `scsi_device(9S)` structure denoted by `devp` supplies the identification of the device that requested the display. `severity` selects which string is used in the “Error Level:” reporting, according to the following table:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Severity Value</th>
<th>String</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>SCSI_ERR_ALL</td>
<td>All</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SCSI_ERR_UNKNOWN</td>
<td>Unknown</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SCSI_ERR_INFO</td>
<td>Informational</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SCSI_ERR_RECOVERED</td>
<td>Recovered</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SCSI_ERR_RETRYABLE</td>
<td>Retryable</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SCSI_ERR_FATAL</td>
<td>Fatal</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
blkno is the block number of the original request that generated the error. err_blkno is the block number where the error occurred. cmdlist is a mapping table for translating the SCSI command code in pkt to the actual command string.

The cmdlist is described in the structure below:

```c
struct scsi_key_strings {
    int key;
    char *message;
};
```

For a basic SCSI disk, the following list is appropriate:

```c
static struct scsi_key_strings scsi_cmds[] = {
    0x00, "test unit ready",
    0x01, "rezero/rewind",
    0x03, "request sense",
    0x04, "format",
    0x07, "reassign",
    0x08, "read",
    0x0a, "write",
    0x0b, "seek",
    0x12, "inquiry",
    0x15, "mode select",
    0x16, "reserve",
    0x17, "release",
    0x18, "copy",
    0x1a, "mode sense",
    0x1b, "start/stop",
    0x1e, "door lock",
    0x28, "read(10)",
    0x2a, "write(10)",
    0x2f, "verify",
    0x37, "read defect data",
    0x3b, "write buffer",
    -1, NULL
};
```

**Context** The scsi_errmsg() function may be called from user, interrupt, or kernel context.

**Examples**

**EXAMPLE 1** Generating error information.

This entry:

```c
scsi_errmsg(devp, pkt, "sd", SCSI_ERR_INFO, bp->b_blkno,
            err_blkno, sd_cmds, rqsense);
```

Generates:

```
WARNING: /sbus@1,f8000000/esp@0,800000/sd@1,0 (sd1):
Error for Command: read Error Level: Informational
```
EXAMPLE 1  Generating error information.  (Continued)

Requested Block: 23936 Error Block: 23936
Vendor: QUANTUM Serial Number: 123456
Sense Key: Unit Attention
ASC: 0x29 (reset), ASCQ: 0x0, FRU: 0x0

See Also  cmn_err(9F), scsi_log(9F), scsi_device(9S), scsi_extended_sense(9S), scsi_pkt(9S)

Writing Device Drivers
Name  scsi_ext_sense_fields, scsi_sense_info_uint64, scsi_sense_cmdspecific_uint64 – retrieve fields from SCSI sense data

Synopsis  #include <sys/scsi/scsi.h>

void scsi_ext_sense_fields(uint8_t *sense_buffer, int *sense_buf_len, uint8_t **information, uint8_t **cmd_spec_info, uint8_t **fru_code, uint8_t **sk_specific, uint8_t **stream_flags);

boolean_t scsi_sense_info_uint64(uint8_t *sense_buffer, int sense_buf_len, uint64_t *information);

boolean_t scsi_sense_cmdspecific_uint64(uint8_t *sense_buffer, int sense_buf_len, uint64_t *cmd_spec_info);

Interface Level  Solaris DDI specific (Solaris DDI).

Parameters  

- **sense_buffer**  Pointer to a buffer containing SCSI sense data. The sense data is expected in wire format starting at the response code. It can be in either a fixed or descriptor format.

- **information**  For scsi_ext_sense_fields(), this is a call-by-reference pointer to uint8_t. A pointer to the INFORMATION field in the sense data may be returned in this parameter.

  The scsi_sense_info_uint64() function requires a pointer to uint64_t. The data in the information field is returned as a 64 bit integer. If the sense data information field is 32 bits, fixed format, the most significant 32-bits are 0.

- **cmd_spec_info**  For scsi_ext_sense_fields(), this is a call-by-reference pointer to uint8_t. A pointer to the COMMAND_SPECIFIC INFORMATION field in the sense data can be returned in this parameter.

  The scsi_sense_cmdspecific_uint64() function requires a pointer to uint64_t. The data in the command specific information field is returned as a 64 bit integer. If the sense data command specific information field is 32 bits, fixed format, the most significant 32-bits are 0.

- **fru_code**  Call-by-reference pointer to uint8_t. A pointer to the FIELD REPLACEABLE UNIT CODE field in the sense data can be returned in this parameter.

- **sk_specific**  Call-by-reference pointer to uint8_t. A pointer to the SENSE KEY SPECIFIC field in the sense data can be returned in this parameter.

- **stream_flags**  Call-by-reference pointer to uint8_t. A pointer to the byte containing the ILI, EOM, and FILEMARK flags can be returned in this parameter.
The `scsi_ext_sense_fields()` function can be used to retrieve any of the extended sense data fields from a sense data buffer, regardless of whether the sense data is in fixed format or in descriptor format.

The `information`, `cmd_spec_info`, `fru_code`, `sk_specific`, and `stream_specific` parameters are all call-by-reference output parameters. Each parameter corresponds to one or more of the extended sense data fields. Any of these parameters can be passed as `NULL` if the caller is not interested in the associated data.

If the requested data is present and valid for each output parameter, the pointer passed in is set to point to the relevant location in the sense buffer. If the data is not present or invalid, the pointer is set to `NULL`. For example, a caller that requests a pointer to the information field would get `NULL` when an information descriptor is not present for descriptor format sense data or when the valid bit is not set for fixed format sense data.

The information and command specific information fields can be 4 bytes or 8 bytes in length, depending on whether the sense data is in fixed or descriptor format respectively. Drivers can use `scsi_validate_sense(9F)` to determine the sense data format and, by extension, the length of the information and command specific information fields.

A driver can determine whether integer data is included in the information or command specific information fields based on the `asc` and `ascq` sense keys, such as the LBA of a failed disk request. The `scsi_sense_info_uint64()` function retrieves the contents of the information field as a 64 bit integer and the `scsi_sense_cmdspecific_uint64()` retrieves the command specific information field as a 64 bit integer.

Drivers should use `scsi_validate_sense(9F)` to ensure that the sense buffer contains valid sense data.

Return Values

The `scsi_sense_info_uint64()` function returns `TRUE` if the information field is present and valid. Otherwise it returns `FALSE`.

The `scsi_sense_cmdspecific_uint64()` function returns `TRUE` if the command specific information field is present and valid. Otherwise it returns `FALSE`.

Context

The `scsi_ext_sense_fields()`, `scsi_sense_info_uint64()` and `scsi_sense_cmdspecific_uint64()` functions can be called from user or interrupt context.

See Also

`scsi_find_sense_descr(9F)`, `scsi_sense_asc(9F)`, `scsi_sense_ascq(9F)`, `scsi_sense_key(9F)`, `scsi_validate_sense(9F)`
Name  scsi_find_sense_descr – find descriptor in SCSI sense data

Synopsis  

```c
#include <sys/scsi/scsi.h>

uint8_t *scsi_find_sense_descr(uint8_t *sense_buffer, int sense_buf_len,
                               int req_descr_type);
```

Interface Level  Solaris DDI specific (Solaris DDI).

Parameters  

- `sense_buffer`  Pointer to a buffer containing SCSI descriptor sense data. The data is expected in wire format starting at the response code.
- `sense_buf_len`  Integer that contains the length of sense buffer in bytes.
- `req_descr_type`  Integer that contains the descriptor type value for the desired sense descriptor.

Description  

The `scsi_find_sense_descr()` function is used to obtain a pointer to a specific descriptor type, specified by `req_descr_type`, within a descriptor sense buffer. Before returning the pointer, `scsi_find_sense_descr()` verifies that the entire descriptor is present based on the length provided in `sense_buf_len`.

Any value for `req_descr_type` can be requested. The following descriptor types are already defined:

```c
#define DESCRIPTOR_INFORMATION 0x00
#define DESCRIPTOR_COMMAND_SPECIFIC 0x01
#define DESCRIPTOR_SENSE_KEY_SPECIFIC 0x02
#define DESCRIPTOR_FRU 0x03
#define DESCRIPTOR_STREAM_COMMANDS 0x04
#define DESCRIPTOR_BLOCK_COMMANDS 0x05
#define DESCRIPTOR_OSD_OID 0x06
#define DESCRIPTOR_OSD_RESP_INTEGRITY 0x07
#define DESCRIPTOR_OSD_ATTR_ID 0x08
```

Drivers should use `scsi_validate_sense(9F)` to ensure that the sense buffer contains valid descriptor sense data.

Return Values  

The `scsi_find_sense_descr()` function returns a pointer to a sense descriptor of the requested type if a descriptor of that type exists. If no such descriptor exists, `scsi_find_sense_descr()` returns NULL.

Context  

The `scsi_find_sense_descr()` function can be called from user or interrupt context.

See Also  

- `scsi_ext_sense_fields(9F), scsi_sense_asc(9F), scsi_sense_ascq(9F),
  scsi_sense_cmdspecific_uint64(9F), scsi_sense_info_uint64(9F),
  scsi_sense_key(9F), scsi_validate_sense(9F)`
Name  scsi_free_consistent_buf – free a previously allocated SCSI DMA I/O buffer

Synopsis  #include <sys/scsi/scsi.h>

void scsi_free_consistent_buf(struct buf *bp);

Interface Level  Solaris DDI specific (Solaris DDI).

Parameters  
bp  Pointer to the buf(9S) structure.

Description  The scsi_free_consistent_buf() function frees a buffer header and consistent data buffer that was previously allocated using scsi_alloc_consistent_buf(9F).

Context  The scsi_free_consistent_buf() function can be called from user, interrupt, or kernel context.

See Also  freerbuf(9F), scsi_alloc_consistent_buf(9F), buf(9S)

Writing Device Drivers

Warning  The scsi_free_consistent_buf() function will call freerbuf(9F) to free the buf(9S) that was allocated before or during the call to scsi_alloc_consistent_buf(9F).

If consistent memory is bound to a scsi_pkt(9S), the pkt should be destroyed before freeing the consistent memory.
Name  scsi_get_device_type_scsi_options – look up per-device-type scsi-options property

Synopsis  

```c
#include <sys/scsi/scsi.h>

int scsi_get_device_type_scsi_options(dev_info_t *dip, struct scsi_device *devp,
 int default_scsi_options);
```

Interface Level  Solaris DDI specific (Solaris DDI).

Parameters  

dip  Pointer to the device info node for this HBA driver.

devp  Pointer to a `scsi_device(9S)` structure of the target.

default_scsi_options  Value returned if no match is found.

Description  The `scsi_get_device_type_scsi_options()` function looks up the property `device-type-scsi-options-list`, which can be specified in the HBA’s `driver.conf(4)` file. This property allows specification of `scsi-options` on a per-device-type basis.

The formal syntax is:

```
device-type-scsi-options-list = <duplet> [, <duplet> *];
```

where:

```
<duplet> := <vid+pid>, <scsi-options-property-name>
```

and:

```
<scsi-options-property-name> = <value>;
```

The string `<vid+pid>` is returned by the device on a SCSI inquiry command. This string can contain any character in the range 0x20-0x7e. Characters such as double quote (") or single quote ('), which are not permitted in property value strings, are represented by their octal equivalent (for example, \042 and \047). Trailing spaces can be truncated.

For example:

```c
device-type-scsi-options-list=
  "SEAGATE ST32550W", "seagate-options",
  "EXABYTE EXB-2501", "exabyte-options",
  "IBM OEM DFHSS45", "ibm-options";

seagate-options = 0x78;
exabyte-options = 0x58;
ibm-options = 0x378;
```
The `scsi_get_device_type_scsi_options()` function searches the list of duplets for a matching INQUIRY string. If a match is found, `scsi_get_device_type_scsi_options()` returns the corresponding value.

**Return Values**  `scsi_get_device_type_scsi_options()` returns the `scsi-options` value found, or if no match is found the `default_scsi_options` value passed in.

**Context**  This function can be called from kernel or interrupt context.

**See Also**  *Writing Device Drivers*
Name  
scsi_hba_attach_setup, scsi_hba_attach, scsi_hba_detach – SCSI HBA attach and detach routines

Synopsis  
#include <sys/scsi/scsi.h>

int scsi_hba_attach_setup(dev_info_t *dip, ddi_dma_attr_t *hba_dma_attr, 
  scsi_hba_tran_t *hba_tran, int hba_flags);
int scsi_hba_attach(dev_info_t *dip, ddi_dma_lim_t *hba_lim, scsi_hba_tran_t *hba_tran, 
  int hba_flags, void *hba_options);
int scsi_hba_detach(dev_info_t *dip);

Interface Level  
Solaris architecture specific (Solaris DDI).

Parameters  
dip  
A pointer to the dev_info_t structure, referring to the instance of the HBA device.

hba_lim  
A pointer to a ddi_dma_lim(9S) structure.

hba_tran  
A pointer to a scsi_hba_tran(9S) structure.

hba_flags  
Flag modifiers. The only defined flag value is SCSI_HBA_TRAN_CLONE.

hba_options  
Optional features provided by the HBA driver for future extensions; must be NULL.

hba_dma_attr  
A pointer to a ddi_dma_attr(9S) structure.

Description  
scsi_hba_attach_setup() is the recommended interface over scsi_hba_attach().

For scsi_hba_attach_setup() and scsi_hba_attach():

scsi_hba_attach() registers the DMA limits hba_lim and the transport vectors hba_tran of each instance of the HBA device defined by dip. scsi_hba_attach_setup() registers the DMA attributes hba_dma_attr and the transport vectors hba_tran of each instance of the HBA device defined by dip. The HBA driver can pass different DMA limits or DMA attributes, and transport vectors for each instance of the device, as necessary, to support any constraints imposed by the HBA itself.

scsi_hba_attach() and scsi_hba_attach_setup() use the dev_bus_ops field in the dev_ops(9S) structure. The HBA driver should initialize this field to NULL before calling scsi_hba_attach() or scsi_hba_attach_setup().

If SCSI_HBA_TRAN_CLONE is requested in hba_flags, the hba_tran structure will be cloned once for each target attached to the HBA. The cloning of the structure will occur before the tran_tgt_init(9E) entry point is called to initialize a target. At all subsequent HBA entry points, including tran_tgt_init(9E), the scsi_hba_tran_t structure passed as an argument

818 man pages section 9: DDI and DKI Kernel Functions • Last Revised 13 Nov 2002
or found in a scsi_address structure will be the 'cloned' scsi_hba_tran_t structure, thus allowing the HBA to use the tran_tgt_private field in the scsi_hba_tran_t structure to point to per-target data. The HBA must take care to free only the same scsi_hba_tran_t structure it allocated when detaching; all 'cloned' scsi_hba_tran_t structures allocated by the system will be freed by the system.

scsi_hba_attach() and scsi_hba_attach_setup() attach a number of integer-valued properties to dip, unless properties of the same name are already attached to the node. An HBA driver should retrieve these configuration parameters via ddi_prop_get_int(9F), and respect any settings for features provided the HBA.

scsi-options
 Optional SCSI configuration bits

SCSI_OPTIONS_DR
 If not set, the HBA should not grant Disconnect privileges to target devices.

SCSI_OPTIONS_LINK
 If not set, the HBA should not enable Linked Commands.

SCSI_OPTIONS_TAG
 If not set, the HBA should not operate in Command Tagged Queueing mode.

SCSI_OPTIONS_PARITY
 If not set, the HBA should not operate in parity mode.

SCSI_OPTIONS_QAS
 If not set, the HBA should not make use of the Quick Arbitration Select feature. Consult your Sun hardware documentation to determine whether your machine supports QAS.

SCSI_OPTIONS_FAST
 If not set, the HBA should not operate the bus in FAST SCSI mode.

SCSI_OPTIONS_FAST20
 If not set, the HBA should not operate the bus in FAST20 SCSI mode.

SCSI_OPTIONS_FAST40
 If not set, the HBA should not operate the bus in FAST40 SCSI mode.

SCSI_OPTIONS_FAST80
 If not set, the HBA should not operate the bus in FAST80 SCSI mode.

SCSI_OPTIONS_FAST160
 If not set, the HBA should not operate the bus in FAST160 SCSI mode.

SCSI_OPTIONS_FAST320
 If not set, the HBA should not operate the bus in FAST320 SCSI mode.

SCSI_OPTIONS_WIDE
 If not set, the HBA should not operate the bus in WIDE SCSI mode.
**SCSI_OPTIONS_SYNC**

If not set, the HBA should not operate the bus in synchronous transfer mode.

**scsi-reset-delay**

SCSI bus or device reset recovery time, in milliseconds.

**scsi-selection-timeout**

Default SCSI selection phase timeout value, in milliseconds. Please refer to individual HBA man pages for any HBA-specific information.

For **scsi_hba_detach()**:

**scsi_hba_detach()** removes the reference to the DMA limits or attributes structure and the transport vector for the given instance of an HBA driver.

**Return Values**

**scsi_hba_attach()**, **scsi_hba_attach_setup()**, and **scsi_hbaDetach()** return **DDI_SUCCESS** if the function call succeeds, and return **DDI_FAILURE** on failure.

**Context**

**scsi_hba_attach()** and **scsi_hba_attach_setup()** should be called from **attach(9E)**.

**scsi_hba_detach()** should be called from **detach(9E)**.

**See Also**

**attach(9E)**, **detach(9E)**, **tran_tgt_init(9E)**, **ddi_prop_get_int(9F)**, **ddi_dma_attr(9S)**, **ddi_dma_lim(9S)**, **dev_ops(9S)**, **scsi_address(9S)**, **scsi_hba_tran(9S)**

**Writing Device Drivers**

**Notes**

It is the HBA driver's responsibility to ensure that no more transport requests will be taken on behalf of any SCSI target device driver after **scsi_hba_detach()** is called.

The **scsi_hba_attach()** function is obsolete and will be discontinued in a future release. This function is replaced by **scsi_hba_attach_setup()**.
**Name**  
scsi_hba_init, scsi_hba_fini – SCSI Host Bus Adapter system initialization and completion routines

**Synopsis**  
#include <sys/scsi/scsi.h>

```c
int scsi_hba_init(struct modlinkage *modlp);
void scsi_hba_fini(struct modlinkage *modlp);
```

**Interface Level**  
Solaris architecture specific (Solaris DDI).

**Parameters**  
`modlp` Pointer to the Host Bus Adapters module linkage structure.

**Description**  
**scsi_hba_init()**  
scsi_hba_init() is the system-provided initialization routine for SCSI HBA drivers. The scsi_hba_init() function registers the HBA in the system and allows the driver to accept configuration requests on behalf of SCSI target drivers. The scsi_hba_init() routine must be called in the HBA’s _init(9E) routine before mod_install(9F) is called. If mod_install(9F) fails, the HBA’s _init(9E) should call scsi_hba_fini() before returning failure.

**scsi_hba_fini()**  
scsi_hba_fini() is the system provided completion routine for SCSI HBA drivers. scsi_hba_fini() removes all of the system references for the HBA that were created in scsi_hba_init(). The scsi_hba_fini() routine should be called in the HBA’s _fini(9E) routine if mod_remove(9F) is successful.

**Return Values**  
scsi_hba_init() returns 0 if successful, and a non-zero value otherwise. If scsi_hba_init() fails, the HBA’s _init() entry point should return the value returned by scsi_hba_init().

**Context**  
scsi_hba_init() and scsi_hba_fini() should be called from _init(9E) or _fini(9E), respectively.

**See Also**  
_fini(9E), _init(9E), mod_install(9F), mod_remove(9F), scsi_pktalloc(9F), scsi_pktfree(9F), scsi_hba_tran(9S)

*Writing Device Drivers*

**Notes**  
The HBA is responsible for ensuring that no DDI request routines are called on behalf of its SCSI target drivers once scsi_hba_fini() is called.
**Name**
scsi_hba_lookup_capstr – return index matching capability string

**Synopsis**
```
#include <sys/scsi/scsi.h>

int scsi_hba_lookup_capstr(char *capstr);
```

**Interface Level**
Solaris architecture specific (Solaris DDI).

**Parameters**
capstr  Pointer to a string

**Description**
The `scsi_hba_lookup_capstr()` function attempts to match `capstr` against a known set of capability strings. If found, the defined index for the matched capability is returned.

The following indices are defined for the capability strings listed below.

- `SCSI_CAP_DMA_MAX`: “dma-max” or “dma_max”
- `SCSI_CAP_MSG_OUT`: “msg-out” or “msg_out”
- `SCSI_CAP_DISCONNECT`: “disconnect”
- `SCSI_CAP_SYNCHRONOUS`: “synchronous”
- `SCSI_CAP_WIDE_XFER`: “wide-xfer” or “wide_xfer”
- `SCSI_CAP_PARITY`: “parity”
- `SCSI_CAP_INITIATOR_ID`: “initiator-id”
- `SCSI_CAP_UNTAGGED_QING`: “untagged-qing”
- `SCSI_CAP_TAGGED_QING`: “tagged-qing”
- `SCSI_CAP_ARQ`: “auto-rqsense”
- `SCSI_CAP_LINKED_CMDS`: “linked-cmds”
- `SCSI_CAP_SECTOR_SIZE`: “sector-size”
- `SCSI_CAP_TOTAL_SECTORS`: “total-sectors”
- `SCSI_CAP_GEOMETRY`: “geometry”
- `SCSI_CAP_RESET_NOTIFICATION`: “reset-notification”
- `SCSI_CAP_QFULL_RETRIES`: “qfull-retries”
- `SCSI_CAP_QFULL_RETRY_INTERVAL`: “qfull-retry-interval”
- `SCSI_CAP_LUN_RESET`: “lun-reset”
- `SCSI_CAP_CDB_LEN`: “max-cdb-length”
- `SCSI_CAP_TRAN_LAYER_RETRIES`: “tran-layer-retries”
The `scsi_hba_lookup_capstr()` function returns a non-negative index value that corresponds to the capability string. If the string does not match a known capability, −1 is returned.

**Context**
The `scsi_hba_lookup_capstr()` function can be called from user, interrupt, or kernel context.

**Attributes**
See `attributes(5)` for descriptions of the following attributes:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ATTRIBUTE TYPE</th>
<th>ATTRIBUTE VALUE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Interface Stability</td>
<td>Committed</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**See Also**
`tran_getcap(9E), tran_setcap(9E), scsi_ifgetcap(9F), scsi_ifsetcap(9F), scsi_reset_notify(9F)`

Writing Device Drivers
#include <sys/scsi/scsi.h>

struct scsi_pkt *scsi_hba_pkt_alloc(dev_info_t *dip, struct scsi_address *ap, int cmdlen, int statuslen, int tgtlen, int hbalen, int (*callback, caddr_t arg, caddr_t arg);

void scsi_hba_pkt_free(struct scsi_address *ap, struct scsi_pkt *pkt);

Solaris architecture specific (Solaris DDI).

**Parameters**

- **dip**
  Pointer to a dev_info_t structure, defining the HBA driver instance.

- **ap**
  Pointer to a scsi_address(9S) structure, defining the target instance.

- **cmdlen**
  Length in bytes to be allocated for the SCSI command descriptor block (CDB).

- **statuslen**
  Length in bytes to be allocated for the SCSI status completion block (SCB).

- **tgtlen**
  Length in bytes to be allocated for a private data area for the target driver’s exclusive use.

- **hbalen**
  Length in bytes to be allocated for a private data area for the HBA driver’s exclusive use.

- **callback**
  Indicates what scsi_hba_pkt_alloc() should do when resources are not available:

  - **NULL_FUNC**
    Do not wait for resources. Return a NULL pointer.

  - **SLEEP_FUNC**
    Wait indefinitely for resources.

- **arg**
  Must be NULL.

- **pkt**
  A pointer to a scsi_pkt(9S) structure.

**Description**

For scsi_hba_pkt_alloc():

The scsi_hba_pkt_alloc() function allocates space for a scsi_pkt structure. HBA drivers must use this interface when allocating a scsi_pkt from their tran_init_pkt(9E) entry point.

If callback is NULL_FUNC, scsi_hba_pkt_alloc() may not sleep when allocating resources, and callers should be prepared to deal with allocation failures.

The scsi_hba_pkt_alloc() function copies the scsi_address(9S) structure pointed to by ap to the pkt_address field in the scsi_pkt(9S).
The `scsi_hba_pkt_alloc()` function also allocates memory for these `scsi_pkt(9S)` data areas, and sets these fields to point to the allocated memory:

- `pkt_ha_private`  HBA private data area.
- `pkt_private`  Target driver private data area.
- `pkt_scbp`  SCSI status completion block.
- `pkt_cdbp`  SCSI command descriptor block.

For `scsi_hba_pkt_free()`:

The `scsi_hba_pkt_free()` function frees the space allocated for the `scsi_pkt(9S)` structure.

**Return Values**  The `scsi_hba_pkt_alloc()` function returns a pointer to the `scsi_pkt` structure, or NULL if no space is available.

**Context**  The `scsi_hba_pkt_alloc()` function can be called from user, interrupt, or kernel context. Drivers must not allow `scsi_hba_pkt_alloc()` to sleep if called from an interrupt routine.

The `scsi_hba_pkt_free()` function can be called from user, interrupt, or kernel context.

**See Also**  `tran_init_pkt(9E), scsi_address(9S), scsi_pkt(9S)`

*Writing Device Drivers*
# Name
scsi_hba_pkt_comp – scsi_pkt completion routine

## Synopsis

```c
#include <sys/scsi/scsi.h>

void scsi_hba_pkt_comp(struct scsi_pkt *pkt);
```

## Parameters

- `pkt` Pointer to a `scsi_pkt(9S)` structure.

## Interface Level

Solaris DDI specific (Solaris DDI).

## Description

After filling in `scsi_pkt(9S)` fields with packet completion information, an HBA driver should call the `scsi_hba_pkt_comp()` function. This function is the recommended way for an HBA driver to signal completion of a `scsi_pkt` structure.

Calling the `scsi_hba_pkt_comp()` function allows SCSA to observe, and possibly react to, the completion of a `scsi_pkt` request.

A call to the `scsi_hba_pkt_comp()` function will always result in a call to the `pkt_comp()` callback function defined in `scsi_pkt(9S)`. This `pkt_comp()` callback may, however, occur after return from `scsi_hba_pkt_comp()`, and may occur from a different thread executing on a different CPU.

## Context

The `scsi_hba_pkt_comp()` function can be called from user, interrupt, or kernel context.

## Attributes

See `attributes(5)` for descriptions of the following attributes:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ATTRIBUTE TYPE</th>
<th>ATTRIBUTE VALUE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Interface Stability</td>
<td>Committed</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## See Also

`attributes(5), scsi_pkt(9S)`

## Notes

HBA driver calls `scsi_hba_pkt_comp()` instead of calling `scsi_pkt(9S) pkt_comp` directly.
Name  
scsi_hba_probe – default SCSI HBA probe function

Synopsis  
#include <sys/scsi/scsi.h>

    int scsi_hba_probe(struct scsi_device *sd, int(*waitfunc)(void));

Interface Level  
Solaris architecture specific (Solaris DDI).

Parameters  
    sd  
        Pointer to a scsi_device(9S) structure describing the target.

    waitfunc  
        NULL_FUNC or SLEEP_FUNC.

Description  
scsi_hba_probe() is a function providing the semantics of scsi_probe(9F). An HBA driver
may call scsi_hba_probe() from its tran_tgt_probe(9E) entry point, to probe for the
existence of a target on the SCSI bus, or the HBA may set tran_tgt_probe(9E) to point to
scsi_hba_probe directly.

Return Values  
See scsi_probe(9F) for the return values from scsi_hba_probe().

Context  
scsi_hba_probe() should only be called from the HBA's tran_tgt_probe(9E) entry point.

See Also  
tran_tgt_probe(9E), scsi_probe(9F), scsi_device(9S)

Writing Device Drivers
Name  scsi_hba_tran_alloc, scsi_hba_tran_free – allocate and free transport structures

Synopsis  #include <sys/scsi/scsi.h>

scsi_hba_tran_t *scsi_hba_tran_alloc(dev_info_t *dip, int flags);
void scsi_hba_tran_free(scsi_hba_tran_t *hba_tran);

Interface Level  Solaris architecture specific (Solaris DDI).

Parameters  
- dip  Pointer to a dev_info structure, defining the HBA driver instance.
- flag  Flag modifiers. The only possible flag value is SCSI_HBA_CANSLEEP (memory allocation may sleep).
- hba_tran  Pointer to a scsi_hba_tran(9S) structure.

Description  For scsi_hba_tran_alloc():

The scsi_hba_tran_alloc() function allocates a scsi_hba_tran(9S) structure for a HBA driver. The HBA must use this structure to register its transport vectors with the system by using scsi_hba_attach_setup(9F).

If the flag SCSI_HBA_CANSLEEP is set in flags, scsi_hba_tran_alloc() may sleep when allocating resources; otherwise it may not sleep, and callers should be prepared to deal with allocation failures.

For scsi_hba_tran_free():

The scsi_hba_tran_free() function is used to free the scsi_hba_tran(9S) structure allocated by scsi_hba_tran_alloc().

Return Values  The scsi_hba_tran_alloc() function returns a pointer to the allocated transport structure, or NULL if no space is available.

Context  The scsi_hba_tran_alloc() function can be called from user, interrupt, or kernel context. Drivers must not allow scsi_hba_tran_alloc() to sleep if called from an interrupt routine.

The scsi_hba_tran_free() function can be called from user, interrupt, or kernel context context.

See Also  scsi_hba_attach_setup(9F), scsi_hba_tran(9S)

Writing Device Drivers
**Name**  
scsi_ifgetcap, scsi_ifsetcap – get/set SCSI transport capability

**Synopsis**  
#include <sys/scsi/scsi.h>

```c
int scsi_ifgetcap(struct scsi_address *ap, char *cap, int whom);
int scsi_ifsetcap(struct scsi_address *ap, char *cap, int value, 
                  int whom);
```

**Interface Level**  
Solaris DDI specific (Solaris DDI).

**Parameters**

- `ap`  
  Pointer to the `scsi_address` structure.
- `cap`  
  Pointer to the string capability identifier.
- `value`  
  Defines the new state of the capability.
- `whom`  
  Determines if all targets or only the specified target is affected.

**Description**  
The `scsi_ifsetcap()` function is used by target drivers to set the capabilities of the host adapter driver. The `cap` pointer is a name-value pair identified by a null-terminated character string and the integer value of the `cap`. The current value of the capability can be retrieved with the `scsi_ifgetcap()` function. If the `whom` value is 0, all target drivers are affected. Otherwise, the `scsi_address` structure pointed to by `ap` is the only target that is affected.

The driver should confirm that `scsi_ifsetcap()` and `scsi_ifsetcap()` functions are called with a `cap` that points to a capability which is supported by the device.

The following capabilities have been defined:

- `dma-max`  
  Maximum dma transfer size that is supported by the host adapter.

- `dma-max-arch`  
  Maximum dma transfer size that is supported by system. Takes the host adapter and system architecture into account. This is useful for target drivers which do not support partial DMAs on systems which do not have an IOMMU. In this case, the DMA can also be limited by the host adapters "scatter/gather" list constraints.

  The "dma-max-arch" capability can not be set. It is implemented with this command and does not rely on a `tran_getcap(9E)` response from the HBA.

- `msg-out`  
  Message out capability that is supported by the host adapter: 0 disables, 1 enables.

- `disconnect`  
  Disconnect capability that is supported by the host adapter: 0 disables, 1 enables.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Capability</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>synchronous</strong></td>
<td>Synchronous data transfer capability that is supported by the host adapter.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>0: disables, 1: enables.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>wide-xfer</strong></td>
<td>Wide transfer capability that is supported by the host adapter.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>0: disables, 1: enables.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>parity</strong></td>
<td>Parity checking capability that is supported by host adapter.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>0: disables, 1: enables.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>initiator-id</strong></td>
<td>Host bus address that is returned.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>untagged-qing</strong></td>
<td>Host adapter capability that supports internal queueing of commands.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>0: disables, 1: enables.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>tagged-qing</strong></td>
<td>Host adapter capability that supports queueing.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>0: disables, 1: enables.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>auto-rqsense</strong></td>
<td>Host adapter capability that supports auto request sense on check conditions.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>0: disables, 1: enables.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>sector-size</strong></td>
<td>Capability that is set by the target driver to inform the HBA of the</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>granularity, in bytes, of the DMA breakup.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>The HBA DMA limit structure is set to reflect the byte total of this setting.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>See <code>ddi_dma_lim_sparc(9S)</code> or <code>ddi_dma_lim_x86(9S)</code>. The</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>sector-size</strong> should be set to the size of the physical disk sector.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>The capability defaults to 512 bytes.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>total-sectors</strong></td>
<td>Capability that is set by the target driver to inform the HBA of the</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>total number of sectors on the device returned by the SCSI get capacity</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>command. This capability must be set before the target driver “gets” the</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>geometry capability.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>geometry</strong></td>
<td>Capability that returns the HBA geometry of a target disk. The target driver</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>sets the <strong>total-sectors</strong> capability before “getting” the geometry</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>capability. The geometry is returned as a 32-bit value. The upper 16 bits</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>represent the number of heads per cylinder. The lower 16 bits represent the</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>number of sectors per track. The geometry capability cannot be “set”.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>If geometry is not relevant or appropriate for the target disk,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><code>scsi_ifgetcap()</code> can return -1 to indicate that the geometry is</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>not defined. For example, if the HBA BIOS supports Logical Block Addressing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>for the target disk, <code>scsi_ifgetcap()</code> returns -1. Attempts to retrieve the</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>“virtual geometry” from the target driver, such as the DKIOC VIRTGEOM ioctl,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>will fail. See <code>dkio(7I)</code> for more information about DKIOC VIRTGEOM.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>reset-notification</strong></td>
<td>Host adapter capability that supports bus reset notification:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>0: disables, 1: enables.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>See <code>scsi_reset_notify(9F)</code> .</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

If geometry is not relevant or appropriate for the target disk, `scsi_ifgetcap()` can return -1 to indicate that the geometry is not defined. For example, if the HBA BIOS supports Logical Block Addressing for the target disk, `scsi_ifgetcap()` returns -1. Attempts to retrieve the “virtual geometry” from the target driver, such as the DKIOC VIRTGEOM ioctl, will fail. See `dkio(7I)` for more information about DKIOC VIRTGEOM.
linked-cmds  Host adapter capability that supports linked commands: 0 disables, 1 enables.

qfull-retries  Capability that enables or disables QUEUE FULL handling. If 0, the HBA will not retry a command when a QUEUE FULL status is returned. If the value is greater than 0, the HBA driver retries the command a specified number of times at an interval determined by the qfull-retry-interval. The range for qfull-retries is 0-255.

qfull-retry-interval  Capability that sets the retry interval in milliseconds (ms) for commands completed with a QUEUE FULL status. The range for qfull-retry-intervals is 0-1000 ms.

lun-reset  Capability that is created with a value of zero by HBA drivers that support the RESET_LUN flag in the tran_reset(9E) function. If it exists, the lun-reset value can be set to 1 by target drivers to allow the use of LOGICAL UNIT RESET on a specific target instance. If lun-reset does not exist or has a value of zero, scsi_reset(9F) is prevented from passing the RESET_LUN flag to tran_reset() function of the HBA driver. If lun-reset exists and has a value of 1, the tran_reset() function of the HBA driver can be called with the RESET_LUN flag.

interconnect-type  Capability held in the tran_interconnect_type element of struct scsi_hba_tran that indicates the HBA transport interconnect type. The integer value of the interconnect type of the transport is defined in the services.h header file.

max-cdb-length  Host adapter capability of the maximum supported CDB (Command Descriptor Block) length. The target driver asks for the capability at attach time. If the HBA driver supports the capability, the maximum length of the CDB is returned in bytes. The target driver can then use that value to determine which CDB is used for the HBA.

If the HBA driver does not support the max-cdb-length capability, the default value of the target driver is used for the CDB determination.

Return Values  The scsi_ifsetcap() function returns:

1  If the capability was successfully set to the new value.
0  If the capability is not variable.
-1  If the capability was not defined, or setting the capability to a new value failed.
The `scsi_ifgetcap()` function returns the current value of a capability, or:

-1  If the capability was not defined.

**Examples**

**EXAMPLE 1** Using `scsi_ifgetcap()`

```c
if (scsi_ifgetcap(&sd->sd_address, "auto-rqsense", 1) == 1) {
    un->un_arq_enabled = 1;
} else {
    un->un_arq_enabled =
        ((scsi_ifsetcap(&sd->sd_address, "auto-rqsense", 1, 1) == 1) ?
            1 : 0);
}

if (scsi_ifsetcap(&devp->sd_address, "tagged-qing", 1, 1) == 1) {
    un->un_dp->options |= SD_QUEUEING;
    un->un_throttle = MAX_THROTTLE;
} else if (scsi_ifgetcap(&devp->sd_address, "untagged-qing", 0) == 1) {
    un->un_dp->options |= SD_QUEUEING;
    un->un_throttle = 3;
} else {
    un->un_dp->options &= ~SD_QUEUEING;
    un->un_throttle = 1;
}
```

**Context** These functions can be called from user, interrupt, or kernel context.

**Attributes** See attributes(5) for descriptions of the following attributes:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Attribute Type</th>
<th>Attribute Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Interface Stability</td>
<td>Committed</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**See Also** `tran_reset(9E), scsi_hba_lookup_capstr(9F), scsi_reset(9F), scsi_reset_notify(9F), ddi_dma_lim_sparc(9S), ddi_dma_lim_x86(9S), scsi_address(9S), scsi_arq_status(9S)`

*Writing Device Drivers*
**Name**  
scsi_init_pkt – prepare a complete SCSI packet

**Synopsis**  
#include <sys/scsi/scsi.h>

struct scsi_pkt *scsi_init_pkt(struct scsi_address *ap,  
struct scsi_pkt *pkt, struct buf *bp, int cmdlen, int statuslen,  
int privatelen, int flags, int (*callback)(caddr_t), caddr_t arg);

**Interface Level**  
Solaris DDI specific (Solaris DDI).

**Parameters**

- `ap`  
  Pointer to a `scsi_address(9S)` structure.

- `pkt`  
  A pointer to a `scsi_pkt(9S)` structure.

- `bp`  
  Pointer to a `buf(9S)` structure.

- `cmdlen`  
  The required length for the SCSI command descriptor block (CDB) in bytes.

- `statuslen`  
  The required length for the SCSI status completion block (SCB) in bytes. Valid values are:
  
  - 0  
    No status back.
  
  - 1  
    Return SCSI status byte.

- `sizeof(scsi_arq_status)`  
  Return status information in a `scsi_arq_status` structure. This will include up to 20 bytes of sense data. Please refer to `scsi_arq_status(9S)` for more information.

  For extra sense packets (PKT_XARQ flag asserted), set `statuslen` to be a greater number like, \((N + \text{sizeof(struct scsi_arq_status)})\) where \(N\) is the number of extra bytes beyond the default 20. For example, \(N=1\) requests 21 bytes of sense, \(N=235\) asks for 255 bytes.

- `privatelen`  
  The required length for the `pkt_private` area.

- `flags`  
  Flags modifier.

- `callback`  
  A pointer to a callback function, `NULL_FUNC`, or `SLEEP_FUNC`.

- `arg`  
  The `callback` function argument.
Target drivers use `scsi_init_pkt()` to request the transport layer to allocate and initialize a packet for a SCSI command which possibly includes a data transfer. If `pktp` is `NULL`, a new `scsi_pkt(9S)` is allocated using the HBA driver’s packet allocator. The `bp` is a pointer to a `buf(9S)` structure. If `bp` is non-NULL and contains a valid byte count, the `buf(9S)` structure is also set up for DMA transfer using the HBA driver DMA resources allocator. When `bp` is allocated by `scsi_alloc_consistent_buf(9F)`, the `PKT_CONSISTENT` bit must be set in the `flags` argument to ensure proper operation. If `privatelen` is non-zero then additional space is allocated for the `pkt_private` area of the `scsi_pkt(9S)`. On return `pkt_private` points to this additional space. Otherwise `pkt_private` is a pointer that is typically used to store the `bp` during execution of the command. In this case `pkt_private` is `NULL` on return.

The `flags` argument is a set of bit flags. Possible bits include:

**PKT_CONSISTENT**
- This must be set if the DMA buffer was allocated using `scsi_alloc_consistent_buf(9F)`. In this case, the HBA driver will guarantee that the data transfer is properly synchronized before performing the target driver’s command completion callback.

**PKT_DMA_PARTIAL**
- This may be set if the driver can accept a partial DMA mapping. If set, `scsi_init_pkt()` will allocate DMA resources with the `DDI_DMA_PARTIAL` bit set in the `dmar_flag` element of the `ddi_dma_req(9S)` structure. The `pkt_resid` field of the `scsi_pkt(9S)` structure may be returned with a non-zero value, which indicates the number of bytes for which `scsi_init_pkt()` was unable to allocate DMA resources. In this case, a subsequent call to `scsi_init_pkt()` may be made for the same `pktp` and `bp` to adjust the DMA resources to the next portion of the transfer. This sequence should be repeated until the `pkt_resid` field is returned with a zero value, which indicates that with transport of this final portion the entire original request will have been satisfied.

**PKT_XARQ**
- Setting this flag requests that the HBA return extra sense data for this `scsi_pkt(9S)`. The default auto request sense mechanism returns up to 20 bytes. More than 20 bytes of sense data can be requested by setting this flag and setting the `statuslen` correctly. Set the `statuslen` to be the `sizeof(struct scsi_arq_status)` plus the number of sense bytes needed beyond 20. For example, set `statuslen` to be `(sizeof(struct scsi_arq_status) + 5)` for 25 bytes of sense.

When calling `scsi_init_pkt()` to move already-allocated DMA resources, the `cmdlen`, `statuslen`, and `privatelen` fields are ignored.

The last argument `arg` is supplied to the `callback` function when it is invoked.

- `NULL_FUNC` — Do not wait for resources. Return a `NULL` pointer.
- `SLEEP_FUNC` — Wait indefinitely for resources.
Other Values  

`callback` points to a function which is called when resources may have become available. `callback` must return either 0 (indicating that it attempted to allocate resources but again failed to do so), in which case it is put back on a list to be called again later, or 1 indicating either success in allocating resources or indicating that it no longer cares for a retry.

When allocating DMA resources, `scsi_init_pkt()` returns the `scsi_pkt` field `pkt_resid` as the number of residual bytes for which the system was unable to allocate DMA resources. A `pkt_resid` of 0 means that all necessary DMA resources were allocated.

**Return Values**  
The `scsi_init_pkt()` function returns NULL if the packet or DMA resources could not be allocated. Otherwise, it returns a pointer to an initialized `scsi_pkt`. If `pktp` was not NULL the return value will be `pktp` on successful initialization of the packet.

**Context**  
If `callback` is SLEEP_FUNC, then this routine can be called only from user or kernel context. Otherwise, it can be called from user, interrupt, or kernel context. The `callback` function may not block or call routines that block.

**Examples**

**EXAMPLE 1  Allocating a Packet Without DMA Resources Attached**
To allocate a packet without DMA resources attached, use:

```c
pkt = scsi_init_pkt(&devp->sd_address, NULL, NULL, CDB_GROUP1,
  1, sizeof (struct my_pkt_private *), 0,
  sd_runout, sd_unit);
```

**EXAMPLE 2  Allocating a Packet With DMA Resources Attached**
To allocate a packet with DMA resources attached use:

```c
pkt = scsi_init_pkt(&devp->sd_address, NULL, bp, CDB_GROUP1,
  sizeof(struct scsi_arq_status), 0, 0, NULL_FUNC, NULL);
```

**EXAMPLE 3  Attaching DMA Resources to a Preallocated Packet**
To attach DMA resources to a preallocated packet, use:

```c
pkt = scsi_init_pkt(&devp->sd_address, old_pkt, bp, 0,
  0, 0, 0, sd_runout, (caddr_t) sd_unit);
```

**EXAMPLE 4  Allocating a Packet with Consistent DMA Resources Attached**
Since the packet is already allocated, the `cmdlen`, `statuslen` and `privatelen` are 0. To allocate a packet with consistent DMA resources attached, use:

```c
bp = scsi_alloc_consistent_buf(&devp->sd_address, NULL,
  SENSE_LENGTH, B_READ, SLEEP_FUNC, NULL);
pkt = scsi_init_pkt(&devp->sd_address, NULL, bp, CDB_GROUP0,
  sizeof(struct scsi_arq_status), sizeof (struct my_pkt_private *),
  PKT_CONSISTENT, SLEEP_FUNC, NULL);
```
EXAMPLE 5  Allocating a Packet with Partial DMA Resources Attached
To allocate a packet with partial DMA resources attached, use:

```c
my_pkt = scsi_init_pkt(&devp->sd_address, NULL, bp, CDB_GROUP0,
    1, sizeof (struct buf *), PKT_DMA_PARTIAL,
    SLEEP_FUNC, NULL);
```

### See Also
- `scsi_alloc_consistent_buf(9F)`, `scsi_destroy_pkt(9F)`, `scsi_dmaget(9F)`, `scsi_pktalloc(9F)`, `buf(9S)`, `ddi_dma_req(9S)`, `scsi_address(9S)`, `scsi_pkt(9S)`

### Notes

If a DMA allocation request fails with `DDI_DMA_NOMAPPING`, the `B_ERROR` flag will be set in `bp`, and the `b_error` field will be set to `EFAULT`.

If a DMA allocation request fails with `DDI_DMA_TOOBIG`, the `B_ERROR` flag will be set in `bp`, and the `b_error` field will be set to `EINVAL`.

*Writing Device Drivers*
Name: scsi_log – display a SCSI-device-related message

Synopsis: #include <sys/scsi/scsi.h>
#include <sys/cmn_err.h>

void scsi_log(dev_info_t *dip, char *drv_name, uint_t level, const char *fmt, ...);

Interface Level: Solaris DDI specific (Solaris DDI).

Parameters:
- dip: Pointer to the dev_info structure.
- drv_name: String naming the device.
- level: Error level.
- fmt: Display format.

Description:
The scsi_log() function is a utility function that displays a message via the cmn_err(9F)
routine. The error levels that can be passed into this function are CE_PANIC, CE_WARN,
CE_NOTE, CE_CONT, and SCSI_DEBUG. The last level is used to assist in displaying debug
messages to the console only. drv_name is the short name by which this device is known;
example disk driver names are sd and cmdk. If the dev_info_t pointer is NULL, then the
drv_name will be used with no unit or long name.

If the first character in format is:
- An exclamation mark (!), the message goes only to the system buffer.
- A caret (^), the message goes only to the console.
- A question mark (?) and level is CE_CONT, the message is always sent to the system buffer,
  but is written to the console only when the system has been booted in verbose mode. See
  kernel(1M). If neither condition is met, the ? character has no effect and is simply ignored.

All formatting conversions in use by cmn_err() also work with scsi_log().

Context: The scsi_log() function may be called from user, interrupt, or kernel context.

See Also: kernel(1M), sd(7D), cmn_err(9F), scsi_errmsg(9F)

Writing Device Drivers
**Name**
scsi_pktalloc, scsi_resalloc, scsi_pktfree, scsi_resfree – SCSI packet utility routines

**Synopsis**

```
#include <sys/scsi/scsi.h>

struct scsi_pkt *scsi_pktalloc (struct scsi_address *ap, int cmdlen,
    int statuslen, int (*callback)(void));

struct scsi_pkt *scsi_resalloc (struct scsi_address *ap, int cmdlen,
    int statuslen, opaque_t dmatoken, int (*callback)(void));

void scsi_pktfree (struct scsi_pkt* pkt);

void scsi_resfree (struct scsi_pkt* pkt);
```

**Interface Level**
The `scsi_pktalloc()`, `scsi_pktfree()`, `scsi_resalloc()`, and `scsi_resfree()` functions are obsolete. The `scsi_pktalloc()` and `scsi_resalloc()` functions have been replaced by `scsi_init_pkt(9F)`. The `scsi_pktfree()` and `scsi_resfree()` functions have been replaced by `scsi_destroy_pkt(9F)`.

**Parameters**

- **ap** Pointer to a `scsi_address` structure.
- **cmdlen** The required length for the SCSI command descriptor block (CDB) in bytes.
- **statuslen** The required length for the SCSI status completion block (SCB) in bytes.
- **dmatoken** Pointer to an implementation-dependent object.
- **callback** A pointer to a callback function, or NULL_FUNC or SLEEP_FUNC.
- **pkt** Pointer to a `scsi_pkt(9S)` structure.

**Description**
The `scsi_pktalloc()` function requests the host adapter driver to allocate a command packet. For commands that have a data transfer associated with them, `scsi_resalloc()` should be used.

`ap` is a pointer to a `scsi_address` structure. Allocator routines use it to determine the associated host adapter.

The `cmdlen` parameter is the required length for the SCSI command descriptor block. This block is allocated such that a kernel virtual address is established in the `pkt_cdbp` field of the allocated `scsi_pkt` structure.

`statuslen` is the required length for the SCSI status completion block. The address of the allocated block is placed into the `pkt_scbp` field of the `scsi_pkt` structure.

The `dmatoken` parameter is a pointer to an implementation dependent object which defines the length, direction, and address of the data transfer associated with this SCSI packet (command). The `dmatoken` must be a pointer to a `buf(9S)` structure. If `dmatoken` is NULL, no DMA resources are required by this SCSI command, so none are allocated. Only one transfer direction is allowed per command. If there is an unexpected data transfer phase (either no data...
transfer phase expected, or the wrong direction encountered), the command is terminated with the pkt_reason set to CMD_DMA_DERR. dmatoken provides the information to determine if the transfer count is correct.

callback indicates what the allocator routines should do when resources are not available:

NULL_FUNC Do not wait for resources. Return a NULL pointer.

SLEEP_FUNC Wait indefinitely for resources.

Other Values callback points to a function which is called when resources may have become available. callback must return either 0 (indicating that it attempted to allocate resources but again failed to do so), in which case it is put back on a list to be called again later, or 1 indicating either success in allocating resources or indicating that it no longer cares for a retry.

The scsi_pktfree() function frees the packet.

The scsi_resfree() function free all resources held by the packet and the packet itself.

Return Values Both allocation routines return a pointer to a scsi_pkt structure on success, or NULL on failure.

Context If callback is SLEEP_FUNC, then this routine can be called only from user or kernel context. Otherwise, it can be called from user, kernel, or interrupt context. The callback function may not block or call routines that block. Both deallocation routines can be called from user, kernel, or interrupt context.

Attributes See attributes(5) for a description of the following attributes:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ATTRIBUTE TYPE</th>
<th>ATTRIBUTE VALUE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Stability Level</td>
<td>Obsolete</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

See Also attributes(5), scsi_dmafree(9F), scsi_dmaget(9F), buf(9S), scsi_pkt(9S)

Writing Device Drivers

Notes The scsi_pktalloc(), scsi_pktfree(), scsi_resalloc(), and scsi_resfree() functions are obsolete and will be discontinued in a future release. The scsi_pktalloc() and scsi_resalloc() functions have been replaced by scsi_init_pkt(9F). The scsi_pktfree() and scsi_resfree() functions have been replaced by scsi_destroy_pkt(9F).
Name  

scsi_poll – run a polled SCSI command on behalf of a target driver

Synopsis

```
#include <sys/scsi/scsi.h>

int scsi_poll(struct scsi_pkt *pkt);
```

Interface Level

Solaris DDI specific (Solaris DDI).

Parameters

- `pkt` Pointer to the `scsi_pkt(9S)` structure.

Description

The `scsi_poll()` function requests the host adapter driver to run a polled command. Unlike `scsi_transport(9F)` which runs commands asynchronously, `scsi_poll()` runs commands to completion before returning. If the `pkt_time` member of `pkt` is 0, the value of `pkt_time` is defaulted to `SCSI_POLL_TIMEOUT` to prevent an indefinite hang of the system.

Return Values

The `scsi_poll()` function returns:

- 0 command completed successfully.
- -1 command failed.

Context

The `scsi_poll()` function can be called from user, interrupt, or kernel context. This function should not be called when the caller is executing `timeout(9F)` in the context of a thread.

See Also

`makecom(9F), scsi_transport(9F), scsi_pkt(9S)`

Writing Device Drivers

Warnings

Since `scsi_poll()` runs commands to completion before returning, it may require more time than is desirable when called from interrupt context. Therefore, calling `scsi_poll` from interrupt context is not recommended.
**Name**  
scsi_probe – utility for probing a scsi device

**Synopsis**  
#include <sys/scsi/scsi.h>

```c
int scsi_probe(struct scsi_device *devp, int (*waitfunc);
```

**Interface Level**  
Solaris DDI specific (Solaris DDI).

**Parameters**  
- `devp`  
  Pointer to a scsi_device(9S) structure

  - `waitfunc`  
  NULL_FUNC or SLEEP_FUNC

**Description**  
scsi_probe() determines whether a target/lun is present and sets up the scsi_device structure with inquiry data.

scsi_probe() uses the SCSI Inquiry command to test if the device exists. It can retry the Inquiry command as appropriate. If scsi_probe() is successful, it will allocate space for the scsi_inquiry structure and assign the address to the sd_inq member of the scsi_device(9S) structure. scsi_probe() will then fill in this scsi_inquiry(9S) structure and return SCSIPROBE_EXISTS. If scsi_probe() is unsuccessful, it returns SCSIPROBE_NOMEM in spite of callback set to SLEEP_FUNC.

scsi_unprobe(9F) is used to undo the effect of scsi_probe().

If the target is a non-CCS device, SCSIPROBE_NONCCS will be returned.

`waitfunc` indicates what the allocator routines should do when resources are not available; the valid values are:

- NULL_FUNC  
  Do not wait for resources. Return SCSIPROBE_NOMEM or SCSIPROBE_FAILURE

- SLEEP_FUNC  
  Wait indefinitely for resources.

**Return Values**  
scsi_probe() returns:

- SCSIPROBE_BUSY  
  Device exists but is currently busy.

- SCSIPROBE_EXISTS  
  Device exists and inquiry data is valid.

- SCSIPROBE_FAILURE  
  Polled command failure.

- SCSIPROBE_NOMEM  
  No space available for structures.

- SCSIPROBE_NOMEM_CB  
  No space available for structures but callback request has been queued.

- SCSIPROBE_NONCCS  
  Device exists but inquiry data is not valid.

- SCSIPROBE_NORESP  
  Device does not respond to an INQUIRY.
Context  `scsi_probe()` is normally called from the target driver's `probe(9E)` or `attach(9E)` routine. In any case, this routine should not be called from interrupt context, because it can sleep waiting for memory to be allocated.

Examples  **EXAMPLE1  Using `scsi_probe()`**

```c
switch (scsi_probe(devp, NULL_FUNC)) {
    default:
        case SCSIPROBE_NORESP:
        case SCSIPROBE_NONCCS:
        case SCSIPROBE_NOMEM:
        case SCSIPROBE_FAILURE:
        case SCSIPROBE_BUSY:
            break;
        case SCSIPROBE_EXISTS:
            switch (devp->sd_inq->inq_dtype) {
                case DTYPE_DIRECT:
                    rval = DDI_PROBE_SUCCESS;
                    break;
                case DTYPE_RODIRECT:
                    rval = DDI_PROBE_SUCCESS;
                    break;
                case DTYPE_NOTPRESENT:
                    default:
                        break;
            }
    }
scsi_unprobe(devp);
```

See Also  `attach(9E), probe(9E), scsi_slave(9F), scsi_unprobe(9F), scsi_unslave(9F), scsi_device(9S), scsi_inquiry(9S)`

**ANSI Small Computer System Interface-2 (SCSI-2)**

**Writing Device Drivers**

Notes  A `waitfunc` function other than `NULL_FUNC` or `SLEEP_FUNC` is not supported and may have unexpected results.
int scsi_reset(struct scsi_address *ap, int level);

**Interface Level**
Solaris DDI specific (Solaris DDI).

**Parameters**
ap Pointer to the scsi_address structure.
level The level of reset required.

**Description**
The `scsi_reset()` function asks the host adapter driver to reset the SCSI bus or a SCSI target as specified by level. If level equals \texttt{RESET\_ALL}, the SCSI bus is reset. If it equals \texttt{RESET\_TARGET}, \texttt{ap} is used to determine the target to be reset. If it equals \texttt{RESET\_LUN}, \texttt{ap} is used to determine the logical unit to be reset.

When given the \texttt{RESET\_LUN} level, `scsi_reset()` can return failure if the \texttt{LOGICAL UNIT RESET} message is not supported by the target device, or if the underlying HBA driver does not implement the ability to issue a \texttt{LOGICAL UNIT RESET} message.

Note that, at the point when `scsi_reset()` resets the logical unit (case \texttt{RESET\_LUN}), or the target (case \texttt{RESET\_TARGET}), or the bus (case \texttt{RESET\_ALL}), there might be one or more command packets outstanding. That is, packets have been passed to `scsi_transport()`, and queued or possibly transported, but the commands have not been completed and the target completion routine has not been called for those packets.

The successful call to `scsi_reset()` has the side effect that any such commands currently outstanding are aborted, at which point the packets are marked with \texttt{pkt\_reason} set to \texttt{CMD\_RESET}, and the appropriate bit -- either \texttt{STAT\_BUS\_RESET} or \texttt{STAT\_DEV\_RESET} -- is set in \texttt{pkt\_statistics}. Once thus appropriately marked, the aborted command packets are passed to the target driver command completion routine.

Also note that, at the moment that a thread executing `scsi_reset()` actually resets the target or the bus, it is possible that a second thread may have already called `scsi_transport()`, but not yet queued or transported its command. In this case the HBA will not yet have received the second thread’s packet and this packet will not be aborted.

**Return Values**
The `scsi_reset()` function returns:
1 Upon success.
0 Upon failure.

**Context**
The `scsi_reset()` function can be called from user, interrupt, or kernel context.
scsi_reset(9F)

See Also  tran_reset(9E), tran_reset_notify(9E), scsi_abort(9F)

Writing Device Drivers
**Synopsis**
#include <sys/scsi/scsi.h>

void scsi_reset_notify(struct scsi_address *ap, int flag, 
  void (*callback)(caddr_t, caddr_t arg);  

**Parameters**
- **ap**  Pointer to the scsi_address structure.
- **flag** A flag indicating registration or cancellation of the notification request.
- **callback** A pointer to the target driver’s reset notification function.
- **arg** The callback function argument.

**Description**
The scsi_reset_notify() function is used by a target driver when it needs to be notified of a bus reset. The bus reset could be issued by the transport layer (e.g. the host bus adapter (HBA) driver or controller) or by another initiator.

The argument **flag** is used to register or cancel the notification. The supported values for **flag** are as follows:

- **SCSI_RESET_NOTIFY** Register **callback** as the reset notification function for the target driver.
- **SCSI_RESET_CANCEL** Cancel the reset notification request.

Target drivers can find out whether the HBA driver and controller support reset notification by checking the reset-notification capability using the scsi_ifgetcap(9F) function.

**Return Values**
If **flag** is **SCSI_RESET_NOTIFY**, scsi_reset_notify() returns:
- **DDI_SUCCESS** The notification request has been accepted.
- **DDI_FAILURE** The transport layer does not support reset notification or could not accept this request.

If **flag** is **SCSI_RESET_CANCEL**, scsi_reset_notify() returns:
- **DDI_SUCCESS** The notification request has been canceled.
- **DDI_FAILURE** No notification request was registered.

**Context**
The scsi_reset_notify() function can be called from user, interrupt, or kernel context.

**See Also**
- scsi_address(9S), scsi_ifgetcap(9F)

*Writing Device Drivers*
Name  scsi_sense_key, scsi_sense_asc, scsi_sense_ascq – retrieve fields from SCSI sense data

Synopsis  #include <sys/scsi/scsi.h>

```c
uint8_t scsi_sense_key(uint8_t *sense_buffer);
uint8_t scsi_sense_asc(uint8_t *sense_buffer);
uint8_t scsi_sense_ascq(uint8_t *sense_buffer);
```

Interface Level  Solaris DDI specific (Solaris DDI).

Parameters  
- `sense_buffer`  Pointer to a buffer containing SCSI sense data. The sense data is expected in wire format starting at the response code. It can be in either fixed or descriptor format.

Description  
The `scsi_sense_key()` function returns the sense key value from the sense data contained in the `sense_buffer`.

The `scsi_sense_asc()` function returns the additional sense code (ASC) value from the sense data contained in the `sense_buffer`.

The `scsi_sense_ascq()` function returns the additional sense code qualifier (ASCQ) value from the sense data contained in the `sense_buffer`.

The `scsi_sense_key()`, `scsi_sense_asc()`, and `scsi_sense_ascq()` functions are used to retrieve values from SCSI sense data, regardless of whether the sense data is in fixed format or descriptor format.

Drivers should use `scsi_validate_sense(9F)` to ensure that valid sense key, asc, and ascq values are present in the sense data.

Return Values  
The `scsi_sense_key()` function returns the sense key value from the sense buffer. The `scsi_sense_asc()` function returns the additional sense code (ASC) from the sense buffer and the `scsi_sense_ascq()` function returns the additional sense code qualifier (ASCQ) from the sense buffer.

Context  
The `scsi_sense_key()`, `scsi_sense_asc()`, and `scsi_sense_ascq()` functions can be called from user or interrupt context.

See Also  
- `scsi_ext_sense_fields(9F)`, `scsi_find_sense_descr(9F)`,
- `scsi_sense_cmdspecific_uint64(9F)`, `scsi_sense_info_uint64(9F)`,
- `scsi_validate_sense(9F)`
Name  scsi_setup_cdb – setup SCSI command descriptor block (CDB)

Synopsis  int scsi_setup_cdb(union scsi_cdb *cdbp, uchar_t cmd, uint_t addr, uint_t cnt, 
                 uint_t othr_cdb_data);

Interface Level  Solaris DDI specific (Solaris DDI).

Parameters  

   cdbp  Pointer to command descriptor block.

   cmd  The first byte of the SCSI group 0, 1, 2, 4, or 5 CDB.

   addr  Pointer to the location of the data.

   cnt  Data transfer length in units defined by the SCSI device type. For 
        sequential devices cnt is the number of bytes. For block devices, cnt is the 
        number of blocks.

   othr_cdb_data  Additional CDB data.

Description  The scsi_setup_cdb() function initializes a group 0, 1, 2, 4, or 5 type of command descriptor 
             block pointed to by cdbp using cmd, addr, cnt, othr_cdb_data.

             addr should be set to 0 for commands having no addressing information (for example, group 
             0 READ command for sequential access devices). othr_cdb_data should be additional CDB 
             data for Group 4 commands; otherwise, it should be set to 0.

             The scsi_setup_cdb() function does not set the LUN bits in CDB[1] as the makecom(9F) 
             functions do. Also, the fixed bit for sequential access device commands is not set.

Return Values  The scsi_setup_cdb() function returns:

   1  Upon success.

   0  Upon failure.

Context  These functions can be called from a user, interrupt, or kernel context.

See Also  makecom(9F), scsi_pkt(9S)

Writing Device Drivers

American National Standard Small Computer System Interface-2 (SCSI-2)

American National Standard SCSI-3 Primary Commands (SPC)
Name  scsi_slave – utility for SCSI target drivers to establish the presence of a target

Synopsis  #include <sys/scsi/scsi.h>

int scsi_slave(struct scsi_device *devp, int (*callback)(void));

Interface Level  The scsi_slave() function is obsolete. This function has been replaced by scsi_probe(9F).

Parameters  devp  Pointer to a scsi_device(9S) structure.

            callback  Pointer to a callback function, NULL_FUNC or SLEEP_FUNC.

Description  scsi_slave() checks for the presence of a SCSI device. Target drivers may use this function in their probe(9E) routines. scsi_slave() determines if the device is present by using a Test Unit Ready command followed by an Inquiry command. If scsi_slave() is successful, it will fill in the scsi_inquiry structure, which is the sd_inq member of the scsi_device(9S) structure, and return SCSI_PROBE_EXISTS. This information can be used to determine if the target driver has probed the correct SCSI device type. callback indicates what the allocator routines should do when DMA resources are not available:

            NULL_FUNC  Do not wait for resources. Return a NULL pointer.
            SLEEP_FUNC  Wait indefinitely for resources.

Other Values  callback points to a function which is called when resources may have become available. callback must return either 0 (indicating that it attempted to allocate resources but again failed to do so), in which case it is put back on a list to be called again later, or 1 indicating either success in allocating resources or indicating that it no longer cares for a retry.

Return Values  scsi_slave() returns:
            SCSIProbe_NOMEM  No space available for structures.
            SCSIProbe_EXISTS  Device exists and inquiry data is valid.
            SCSIProbe_NONCCS  Device exists but inquiry data is not valid.
            SCSIProbe_FAILURE  Polled command failure.
            SCSIProbe_NORESP  No response to TEST UNIT READY.

Context  scsi_slave() is normally called from the target driver’s probe(9E) or attach(9E) routine. In any case, this routine should not be called from interrupt context, because it can sleep waiting for memory to be allocated.

Attributes  See attributes(5) for a description of the following attributes:
**See Also** attributes(5), attach(9E), probe(9E), ddi_iopb_alloc(9F), makecom(9F),
scsi_dmaget(9F), scsi_ifgetcap(9F), scsi_pktalloc(9F), scsi_poll(9F),
scsi_probe(9F), scsi_device(9S)

*ANSI Small Computer System Interface-2 (SCSI-2)*

*Writing Device Drivers*

**Notes** The `scsi_slave()` function is obsolete and will be discontinued in a future release. This function has been replaced by `scsi_probe(9F)`.
**scsi_sync_pkt(9F)**

**Name**  
scsi_sync_pkt – synchronize CPU and I/O views of memory

**Synopsis**  
#include <sys/scsi/scsi.h>

void scsi_sync_pkt(struct scsi_pkt *pktp);

**Interface Level**  
Solaris DDI specific (Solaris DDI).

**Parameters**  
*pktp*  
Pointer to a scsi_pkt(9S) structure.

**Description**  
The scsi_sync_pkt() function is used to selectively synchronize a CPU’s or device’s view of
the data associated with the SCSI packet that has been mapped for I/O. This may involve
operations such as flushes of CPU or I/O caches, as well as other more complex operations
such as stalling until hardware write buffers have drained.

This function need only be called under certain circumstances. When a SCSI packet is mapped
for I/O using scsi_init_pkt(9F) and destroyed using scsi_destroy_pkt(9F), then an
implicit scsi_sync_pkt() will be performed. However, if the memory object has been
modified by either the device or a CPU after the mapping by scsi_init_pkt(9F), then a call to
scsi_sync_pkt() is required.

If the same scsi_pkt is reused for a data transfer from memory to a device, then
scsi_sync_pkt() must be called before calling scsi_transport(9F). If the same packet is
reused for a data transfer from a device to memory scsi_sync_pkt() must be called after the
completion of the packet but before accessing the data in memory.

**Context**  
The scsi_sync_pkt() function may be called from user, interrupt, or kernel context.

**See Also**  
tran_sync_pkt(9E), ddi_dma_sync(9F), scsi_destroy_pkt(9F), scsi_init_pkt(9F),
scsi_transport(9F), scsi_pkt(9S)

Writing Device Drivers
### Name
scsi_transport – request by a SCSI target driver to start a command

### Synopsis
```
#include <sys/scsi/scsi.h>

int scsi_transport(struct scsi_pkt *pkt);
```

### Interface Level
Solaris DDI specific (Solaris DDI).

### Parameters
- `pkt`  
  Pointer to a scsi_pkt(9S) structure.

### Description
Target drivers use `scsi_transport()` to request the host adapter driver to transport a command to the SCSI target device specified by `pkt`. The target driver must obtain resources for the packet using `scsi_init_pkt(9F)` prior to calling this function. The packet may be initialized using one of the `makecom(9F)` functions. `scsi_transport()` does not wait for the SCSI command to complete. See `scsi_poll(9F)` for a description of polled SCSI commands. Upon completion of the SCSI command the host adapter calls the completion routine provided by the target driver in the `pkt_comp` member of the `scsi_pkt` pointed to by `pkt`.

### Return Values
The `scsi_transport()` function returns:
- **TRAN_ACCEPT**
  The packet was accepted by the transport layer.
- **TRAN_BUSY**
  The packet could not be accepted because there was already a packet in progress for this target/lun, the host adapter queue was full, or the target device queue was full.
- **TRAN_BADPKT**
  The DMA count in the packet exceeded the DMA engine's maximum DMA size.
- **TRAN_FATAL_ERROR**
  A fatal error has occurred in the transport layer.

### Context
The `scsi_transport()` function can be called from user, interrupt, or kernel context.

### Examples
```
EXAMPLE1 Using scsi_transport()

if ((status = scsi_transport(rqpkt)) != TRAN_ACCEPT) {
    scsi_log(devp, sd_label, CE_WARN,
    "transport of request sense pkt fails (0x%lx)\n", status);
}
```

### See Also
- `tran_start(9E)`, `makecom(9F)`, `scsi_init_pkt(9F)`, `scsi_pktalloc(9F)`, `scsi_poll(9F)`, `scsi_pkt(9S)`

*Writing Device Drivers*
Name  scsi_unprobe, scsi_unslave – free resources allocated during initial probing

Synopsis  #include <sys/scsi/scsi.h>

    void scsi_unslave(struct scsi_device *devp);
    void scsi_unprobe(struct scsi_device *devp);

Interface Level  Solaris DDI specific (Solaris DDI). The scsi_unslave() interface is obsolete. Use
    scsi_unprobe() instead.

Parameters  devp  Pointer to a scsi_device(9S) structure.

Description  scsi_unprobe() and scsi_unslave() are used to free any resources that were allocated on
    the driver's behalf during scsi_slave(9F) and scsi_probe(9F) activity.

Context  scsi_unprobe() and scsi_unslave() must not be called from an interrupt context.

See Also  scsi_probe(9F), scsi_slave(9F), scsi_device(9S)

    Writing Device Drivers

Notes  The scsi_unslave() function is obsolete and will be discontinued in a future release. This
    function has been replaced by scsi_unprobe().
Name  scsi_validate_sense – find descriptor in SCSI sense data

Synopsis  #include <sys/scsi/scsi.h>

    int scsi_validate_sense(uint8_t *sense_buffer, int sense_buf_len,
    int *flags);

Interface Level  Solaris DDI specific (Solaris DDI).

Parameters  

sense_buffer  Pointer to a buffer containing SCSI sense data. The sense data is expected in wire format starting at the response code.

sense_buf_len  Length of sense buffer in bytes.

flags  Returns additional properties of the sense data.

Description  The scsi_validate_sense() function returns the format of the sense data contained in the provided sense buffer. If the response code field in the sense data is not recognized or if there is not enough sense data to include sense key, asc, and ascq then scsi_validate_sense() returns SENSE_UNUSABLE. If the buffer contains usable sense data in fixed format, the function returns SENSE_FIXED_FORMAT. If the buffer contains usable sense data in descriptor format, the function returns SENSE_DESCR_FORMAT.

The following flags may be set as appropriate depending on the sense data:

SNS_BUF_OVERFLOW  The sense data buffer provided for the request is too small to hold all the sense data.

SNS_BUF_DEFERRED  The sense data contained in the buffer relates to an error that has occurred during the processing of a successfully completed command, such as a cached write that could not be committed to the media.

Return Values  

SENSE_UNUSABLE  The response code from the sense data is unrecognized or not enough sense data present to provide the sense key, asc, and ascq.

SENSE_FIXED_FORMAT  The sense data in the buffer is in “fixed format”.

SENSE_DESCR_FORMAT  The sense data in the buffer is in “descriptor format”.

Context  The scsi_validate_sense() function can be called from user or interrupt context.

See Also  scsi_ext_sense_fields(9F), scsi_find_sense_descr(9F), scsi_sense_asc(9F), scsi_sense_ascq(9F), scsi_sense_ascq(9F), scsi_sense_cmdspecific_uint64(9F), scsi_sense_info_uint64(9F), scsi_sense_key(9F)
**Name**
scsi_vu_errmsg – display a SCSI request sense message

**Synopsis**
#include <sys/scsi/scsi.h>

void scsi_vu_errmsg(struct scsi_pkt *pktp, char *drv_name, int severity,
                   int err_blkno, struct scsi_key_strings *cmdlist, struct scsi_extended_sense *sensep,
                   struct scsi_asq_key_strings *asc_list, char **decode_fru struct scsi_device*, char *, int, char);

**Interface Level**
Solaris DDI specific (Solaris DDI).

**Parameters**
The following parameters are supported:

- **devp**
  Pointer to the scsi_device(9S) structure.

- **pktp**
  Pointer to a scsi_pkt(9S) structure.

- **drv_name**
  String used by scsi_log(9F).

- **severity**
  Error severity level, maps to severity strings below.

- **blkno**
  Requested block number.

- **err_blkno**
  Error block number.

- **cmdlist**
  An array of SCSI command description strings.

- **sensep**
  A pointer to a scsi_extended_sense(9S) structure.

- **asc_list**
  A pointer to a array of asc and ascq message list. The list must be terminated with -1 asc value.

- **decode_fru**
  This is a function pointer that will be called after the entire sense information has been decoded. The parameters will be the scsi_device structure to identify the device. Second argument will be a pointer to a buffer of length specified by third argument. The fourth argument will be the FRU byte. decode_fru might be NULL if no special decoding is required. decode_fru is expected to return pointer to a char string if decoding possible and NULL if no decoding is possible.

**Description**
This function is very similar to scsi_errmsg(9F) but allows decoding of vendor-unique ASC/ASCQ and FRU information.

The scsi_vu_errmsg() function interprets the request sense information in the sensep pointer and generates a standard message that is displayed using scsi_log(9F). It first searches the list array for a matching vendor unique code if supplied. If it does not find one in the list then the standard list is searched. The first line of the message is always a CE_WARN, with the continuation lines being CE_CONT. sensep may be NULL, in which case no sense key or vendor information is displayed.
The driver should make the determination as to when to call this function based on the severity of the failure and the severity level that the driver wants to report.

The `scsi_device(9S)` structure denoted by `devp` supplies the identification of the device that requested the display. `severity` selects which string is used in the Error Level: reporting, according to the table below:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Severity Value</th>
<th>String</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>SCSI_ERR_ALL</td>
<td>All</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SCSI_ERR_UNKNOWN</td>
<td>Unknown</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SCSI_ERR_INFO</td>
<td>Information</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SCSI_ERR_RECOVERED</td>
<td>Recovered</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SCSI_ERR_RETRYABLE</td>
<td>Retryable</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SCSI_ERR_FATAL</td>
<td>Fatal</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

`blkno` is the block number of the original request that generated the error. `err_blkno` is the block number where the error occurred. `cmdlist` is a mapping table for translating the SCSI command code in `pktpto` to the actual command string.

The `cmdlist` is described in the structure below:

```c
struct scsi_key_strings {
    int key;
    char *message;
};
```

For a basic SCSI disk, the following list is appropriate:

```c
static struct scsi_key_strings scsi_cmds[] = {
    0x00, "test unit ready",
    0x01, "rezero/rewind",
    0x03, "request sense",
    0x04, "format",
    0x07, "reassign",
    0x08, "read",
    0x0a, "write",
    0x0b, "seek",
    0x12, "inquiry",
    0x15, "mode select",
    0x16, "reserve",
    0x17, "release",
    0x18, "copy",
    0x1a, "mode sense",
    0x1b, "start/stop",
    0x1e, "door lock",
    0x28, "read(10)",
    0x2a, "write(10)",
    0x2f, "verify",
    0x37, "read defect data",
};
```
The `scsi_vu_errmsg()` function may be called from user, interrupt, or kernel context.

**EXAMPLE 1** Using `scsi_vu_errmsg()`

```c
struct scsi_asq_key_strings cd_slist[] = {
    0x81, 0, "Logical Unit is inaccessible",
    -1, 0, NULL,
};

scsi_vu_errmsg(devp, pkt, "sd",
    SCSI_ERR_INFO, bp->b_blkno, err_blkno,
    sd_cmds, rqsense, cd_list,
    my_decode_fru);
```

This generates the following console warning:

```
WARNING: /sbus@1,f8000000/esp@0,800000/sd@1,0 (sd1):
    Error for Command: read       Error Level: Informational
    Requested Block: 23936        Error Block: 23936
    Vendor: XYZ                   Serial Number: 123456
    Sense Key: Unit Attention
    ASC: 0x81 (Logical Unit is inaccessible), ASCQ: 0x0
    FRU: 0x11 (replace LUN 1, located in slot 1)
```

**See Also** `cmn_err(9F), scsi_errmsg(9F), scsi_log(9F), scsi_errmsg(9F)`

`scsi_asc_key_strings(9S), scsi_device(9S), scsi_extended_sense(9S), scsi_pkt(9S)`

**Writing Device Drivers**

**STREAMS Programming Guide**
Name  semaphore, sema_init, sema_destroy, sema_p, sema_p_sig, sema_v, sema_tryp – semaphore functions

Synopsis  #include <sys/ksynch.h>

    void sema_init(ksema_t *sp, uint_t val, char *name, ksema_type_t type, void *arg);
    void sema_destroy(ksema_t *sp);
    void sema_p(ksema_t *sp);
    void sema_v(ksema_t *sp);
    int sema_p_sig(ksema_t *sp);
    int sema_tryp(ksema_t *sp);

Interface Level  Solaris DDI specific (Solaris DDI).

Parameters  

    sp  A pointer to a semaphore, type ksema_t.
    val  Initial value for semaphore.
    name  Descriptive string. This is obsolete and should be NULL. (Non-NULL strings are legal, but they are a waste of kernel memory.)
    type  Variant type of the semaphore. Currently, only SEMA_DRIVER is supported.
    arg  Type-specific argument; should be NULL.

Description  These functions implement counting semaphores as described by Dijkstra. A semaphore has a value which is atomically decremented by sema_p() and atomically incremented by sema_v(). The value must always be greater than or equal to zero. If sema_p() is called and the value is zero, the calling thread is blocked until another thread performs a sema_v() operation on the semaphore.

    Semaphores are initialized by calling sema_init(). The argument, val, gives the initial value for the semaphore. The semaphore storage is provided by the caller but more may be dynamically allocated, if necessary, by sema_init(). For this reason, sema_destroy() should be called before deallocating the storage containing the semaphore.

    The sema_p_sig() function decrements the semaphore, as does sema_p(). However, if the semaphore value is zero, sema_p_sig() will return without decrementing the value if a signal (that is, from kill(2)) is pending for the thread.

    The sema_tryp() function will decrement the semaphore value only if it is greater than zero, and will not block.
Return Values

0  sema_tryp() could not decrement the semaphore value because it was zero.
1  sema_p_sig() was not able to decrement the semaphore value and detected a pending signal.

Context

These functions can be called from user, interrupt, or kernel context, except for sema_init() and sema_destroy(), which can be called from user or kernel context only. None of these functions can be called from a high-level interrupt context. In most cases, sema_v() and sema_p() should not be called from any interrupt context.

If sema_p() is used from interrupt context, lower-priority interrupts will not be serviced during the wait. This means that if the thread that will eventually perform the sema_v() becomes blocked on anything that requires the lower-priority interrupt, the system will hang.

For example, the thread that will perform the sema_v() may need to first allocate memory. This memory allocation may require waiting for paging I/O to complete, which may require a lower-priority disk or network interrupt to be serviced. In general, situations like this are hard to predict, so it is advisable to avoid waiting on semaphores or condition variables in an interrupt context.

See Also  kill(2), condvar(9F), mutex(9F)

Writing Device Drivers
sprintf, snprintf – format characters in memory

**Synopsis**
```
#include <sys/ddi.h>

char *sprintf(char *buf, const char *fmt...);
sizet snprintf(char *buf, size_t n, const char *fmt...);
```

**Interface Level**
Solaris DDI specific (Solaris DDI).

**Parameters**
- `buf`  Pointer to a character string.
- `fmt`  Pointer to a character string.

**Description**
The `sprintf()` function builds a string in `buf` under the control of the format `fmt`. The format is a character string with either plain characters, which are simply copied into `buf`, or conversion specifications, each of which converts zero or more arguments, again copied into `buf`. The results are unpredictable if there are insufficient arguments for the format; excess arguments are simply ignored. It is the user’s responsibility to ensure that enough storage is available for `buf`.

The `snprintf()` function is identical to `sprintf()` with the addition of the argument `n`, which specifies the size of the buffer referred to by `buf`. The buffer is always terminated with the null byte.

**Conversion Specifications**
Each conversion specification is introduced by the % character, after which the following appear in sequence:

An optional value specifying a minimum field width for numeric conversion. The converted value will be right-justified and, if it has fewer characters than the minimum, is padded with leading spaces unless the field width is an octal value, then it is padded with leading zeroes.

An optional l (ll) specifying that a following d, D, o, O, x, or u conversion character applies to a long (long long) integer argument. An l (ll) before any other conversion character is ignored.

A character indicating the type of conversion to be applied:

- **d, D, o, O, x, X, u**  The integer argument is converted to signed decimal (d, D), unsigned octal (o, O), unsigned hexadecimal (x, X) or unsigned decimal (u), respectively, and copied. The letters abcdef are used for x conversion. The letters ABCDEF are used for X conversion.

- **c**  The character value of argument is copied.

- **b**  This conversion uses two additional arguments. The first is an integer, and is converted according to the base specified in the second argument. The second
argument is a character string in the form \texttt{<base>[<arg> ... ]}. The base supplies the conversion base for the first argument as a binary value; \texttt{\10} gives octal, \texttt{\12} gives hexadecimal. Each subsequent \texttt{<arg>} is a sequence of characters, the first of which is the bit number to be tested, and subsequent characters, up to the next bit number or terminating null, supply the name of the bit.

A bit number is a binary-valued character in the range 1-32. For each bit set in the first argument, and named in the second argument, the bit names are copied, separated by commas, and bracketed by \texttt{<} and \texttt{>} . Thus, the following function call would generate \texttt{reg=3<BitTwo,BitOne>\n in buf}.

\begin{verbatim}
sprintf(buf, "reg=%b\n", 3, "\10\2BitTwo\1BitOne")
\end{verbatim}

\texttt{p} The argument is taken to be a pointer; the value of the pointer is displayed in unsigned hexadecimal. The display format is equivalent to \texttt{%lx}. To avoid lint warnings, cast pointers to type \texttt{void *} when using the \texttt{%p} format specifier.

\texttt{s} The argument is taken to be a string (character pointer), and characters from the string are copied until a null character is encountered. If the character pointer is \texttt{NULL}, the string \texttt{<null string>} is used in its place.

\texttt{%} Copy a \%; no argument is converted.

**Return Values** The \texttt{sprintf()} function returns its first argument, \texttt{buf}.

The \texttt{snprintf()} function returns the number of characters formatted, that is, the number of characters that would have been written to the buffer if it were large enough. If the value of \texttt{n} is less than or equal to 0 on a call to \texttt{snprintf()}, the function simply returns the number of characters formatted.

**Context** The \texttt{sprintf()} and \texttt{snprintf()} functions and can be called from user, interrupt, or kernel context.

**See Also** \textit{Writing Device Drivers}
**Name**  stoi, numtos – convert between an integer and a decimal string

**Synopsis**  
```c
#include <sys/ddi.h>

int stoi(char **str);

void numtos(unsigned long num, char *s);
```

**Interface Level**  
Solaris DDI specific (Solaris DDI).

**Parameters**  
- `str`  
  Pointer to a character string to be converted.
- `num`  
  Decimal number to be converted to a character string.
- `s`  
  Character buffer to hold converted decimal number.

**Description**

**stoi()**  
The `stoi()` function returns the integer value of a string of decimal numeric characters beginning at `**str`. No overflow checking is done. `*str` is updated to point at the last character examined.

**numtos()**  
The `numtos()` function converts a `long` into a null-terminated character string. No bounds checking is done. The caller must ensure there is enough space to hold the result.

**Return Values**  
The `stoi()` function returns the integer value of the string `str`.

**Context**  
The `stoi()` function can be called from user, interrupt, or kernel context.

**See Also**  
*Writing Device Drivers*

**Notes**  
The `stoi()` function handles only positive integers; it does not handle leading minus signs.
strchr(9F)

Name  strchr, strrchr – find a character in a string

Synopsis  #include <sys/ddi.h>
          #include <sys/sunddi.h>

          char *strchr(const char *str, int chr);
          char *strrchr(const char *str, int chr);

Interface Level  Solaris DDI specific (Solaris DDI).

Parameters  str  Pointer to a string to be searched.
             chr  The character to search for.

Description  strchr()  The strchr() function returns a pointer to the first occurrence of chr in the
                string pointed to by str.

             strrchr()  The strrchr() function returns a pointer to the last occurrence of chr in the
                string pointed to by str.

Return Values  The strchr() and strrchr() functions return a pointer to a character, or NULL, if the search
                fails.

Context  These functions can be called from user, interrupt, or kernel context.

See Also  strcmp(9F)

            Writing Device Drivers
**Name**  
strcmp, strcasecmp, strncasecmp, strncmp – compare two null-terminated strings.

**Synopsis**  
#include <sys/ddi.h>

```c
int strcmp(const char *s1, const char *s2);
int strcasecmp(const char *s1, const char *s2);
int strncasecmp(const char *s1, const char *s2, size_t n);
int strncmp(const char *s1, const char *s2, size_t n);
```

**Interface Level**  
Solaris DDI specific (Solaris DDI).

**Parameters**  
s1, s2  
Pointers to character strings.

n  
Count of characters to be compared.

**Description**

**strcmp()**  
The `strcmp()` function returns 0 if the strings are the same, or the integer value of the expression (`s1 - s2`) for the last characters compared if they differ.

**strcasecmp(), strncasecmp()**  
The `strcasecmp()` and `strncasecmp()` functions are case-insensitive versions of `strcmp()` and `strncmp()`, respectively, described in this section. They assume the ASCII character set and ignore differences in case when comparing lowercase and uppercase characters.

**strncmp()**  
The `strncmp()` function returns 0 if the first `n` characters of `s1` and `s2` are the same, or (`s1 - s2`) for the last characters compared if they differ.

**Return Values**  
The `strcmp()` function returns 0 if the strings are the same, or (`s1 - s2`) for the last characters compared if they differ.

The `strcasecmp()` and `strncasecmp()` functions return values in the same fashion as `strcmp()` and `strncmp()`, respectively.

The `strncmp()` function returns 0 if the first `n` characters of strings are the same, or (`s1 - s2`) for the last characters compared if they differ.

**Context**  
These functions can be called from user, interrupt, or kernel context.

**See Also**  
Writing Device Drivers
Name: `strcpy`, `strlcat`, `strlcpy`, `strncat`, `strncpy`, `strspn` – String operations.

Synopsis: #include `<sys/ddi.h>`

```c
char *strcpy(char *dst, const char *src);
size_t strlcat(char *dst, const char *src, size_t dstsize);
size_t strlcpy(char *dst, const char *src, size_t dstsize);
char *strncat(char *restrict s1, const char *restrict s2, size_t n);
char *strncpy(char *dst, const char *src, size_t n);
size_t strspn(const char *s1, const char *s2);
```

Interface Level: Solaris DDI specific (Solaris DDI).

Parameters:
- `dst`, `src` Pointers to character strings.
- `s1`, `s2` Pointers to character strings.
- `n` Count of characters to be copied.

Description: The arguments `dst`, `src`, `s1` and `s2` point to strings. The `strcpy()`, `strlcpy()`, `strncpy()`, `strlcat()` and `strncat()` functions all alter their first argument. These functions do not check for overflow of the array pointed to by the first argument.

`strcpy()` The `strcpy()` function copies characters in the string `src` to `dst`, terminating at the first null character in `src`, and returns `dst` to the caller. No bounds checking is done.

`strncpy()` The `strncpy()` function copies `src` to `dst`, null-padding or truncating at `n` bytes, and returns `dst`. No bounds checking is done.

`strlcpy()` The `strlcpy()` function copies a maximum of `dstsize-1` characters (where `dstsize` represents the size of the string buffer `dst`) from `src` to `dst`, truncating `src` if necessary. The result is always null-terminated. The function returns `strlen(src)`. Buffer overflow can be checked as follows:

```c
if (strlcpy(dst, src, dstsize) >= dstsize)
    return (1);
```

`strncat()` The `strncat()` function appends a maximum of `n` characters. The initial character of `s2` overrides the null character at the end of `s1`.

`strlcat()` The `strlcat()` function appends a maximum of `(dstsize - strlen(dst) - 1)` characters of `src` to `dst` (where `dstsize` represents the size of the string buffer `dst`). If the string pointed to by `dst` contains a null-terminated string that fits into `dstsize` bytes when `strlcat()` is called, the string pointed to by `dst` is a null-terminated string that fits in `dstsize` bytes (including the terminating null character) when it completes, and the initial character of `src` overrides the
null character at the end of $dst$. If the string pointed to by $dst$ is longer than dstsize bytes when strlcat() is called, the string pointed to by $dst$ is not changed. The function returns min{$dstsize, strlen($dst)$}+strlen($src$). Buffer overflow can be checked as follows:

```c
if (strlcat($dst$, $src$, $dstsize$) >= $dstsize$)
    return -1;
```

**strspn()** The strspn() function returns the length of the initial segment of string $s1$ that consists entirely of characters from string $s2$.

**Return Values** The strcpy(), strncat() and strncpy() functions return $dst$.

For strlcat(), strlcpy() and strspn() functions, see the Description section.

**Context** These functions can be called from user, interrupt, or kernel context.

**See Also** strlen(9F), strcmp(9F), bcopy(9F), ddi_copyin(9F)

*Writing Device Drivers*

**Notes** If copying takes place between objects that overlap, the behavior of strcpy(), strlcat(), strlcpy(), strncat(), strncpy(), strspn() is undefined.
**strlen – determine the number of non-null bytes in a string**

**Synopsis**

```c
#include <sys/ddi.h>

size_t strlen(const char *s);
```

**Interface Level**

Solaris DDI specific (Solaris DDI).

**Parameters**

- `s` Pointer to a character string.

**Description**

The `strlen()` function returns the number of non-null bytes in the string argument `s`.

**Return Values**

The `strlen()` function returns the number of non-null bytes in `s`.

**Context**

The `strlen()` function can be called from user, interrupt, or kernel context.

**See Also**

*Writing Device Drivers*
**Name**  
strlog – submit messages to the log driver

**Synopsis**  

```c
#include <sys/stream.h>
#include <sys/strlog.h>
#include <sys/log.h>

int strlog(short mid, short sid, char level,
            unsigned short flags, char *fmt, ...);
```

**Interface Level**  
Architecture independent level 1 (DDI/DKI).

**Parameters**  

- **mid**  
  Identification number of the module or driver submitting the message (in the case of a module, its mi_idnum value from module_info(9S)).

- **sid**  
  Identification number for a particular minor device.

- **level**  
  Tracing level for selective screening of low priority messages. Larger values imply less important information.

- **flags**  
  Valid flag values are:
  - SL_ERROR  
    Message is for error logger.
  - SL_TRACE  
    Message is for trace.
  - SL_NOTIFY  
    Mail copy of message to system administrator.
  - SL_CONSOLE  
    Log message to console.
  - SL_FATAL  
    Error is fatal.
  - SL_WARN  
    Error is a warning.
  - SL_NOTE  
    Error is a notice.

- **fmt**  
  printf(3C) style format string. %e, %g, and %G formats are not allowed but %s is supported.

**Description**  
The strlog() function expands the printf(3C) style format string passed to it, that is, the conversion specifiers are replaced by the actual argument values in the format string. The 32-bit representations of the arguments (up to NLORGARGS) follow the string starting at the next 32-bit boundary following the string. Note that the 64-bit argument will be truncated to 32-bits here but will be fully represented in the string.

The messages can be retrieved with the `getmsg(2)` system call. The flags argument specifies the type of the message and where it is to be sent. strace(1M) receives messages from the log driver and sends them to the standard output. strerr(1M) receives error messages from the log driver and appends them to a file called `var/adm/streams/error.mm-dd`, where `mm-dd` identifies the date of the error message.
The `strlog()` function returns 0 if it fails to submit the message to the `log(7D)` driver and 1 otherwise.

The `strlog()` function can be called from user, interrupt, or kernel context.

Error messages dated `mm-dd` appended by `strerr(1M)` from the `log` driver.

Files

/var/adm/streams/error.mm-dd

See Also

`strace(1M), strerr(1M), getmsg(2), log(7D), module_info(9S)`

*Writing Device Drivers*

*STREAMS Programming Guide*
strqget – get information about a queue or band of the queue

Synopsis
#include <sys/stream.h>

int strqget(queue_t *q, qfields_t what, unsigned char pri, void *valp);

Interface Level
Architecture independent level 1 (DDI/DKI).

Parameters
q  Pointer to the queue.
what  Field of the queue structure for (or the specified priority band) to return information about. Valid values are one of:
QHIWAT  High water mark.
QLOWAT  Low water mark.
QMAXPSZ  Largest packet accepted.
QMINPSZ  Smallest packet accepted.
QCOUNT  Approximate size (in bytes) of data.
QFIRST  First message.
QLAST  Last message.
QFLAG  Status.
pri  Priority band of interest.
valp  The address of where to store the value of the requested field.

Description
The strqget() function gives drivers and modules a way to get information about a queue or a particular band of a queue without directly accessing STREAMS data structures, thus insulating them from changes in the implementation of these data structures from release to release.

Return Values
On success, 0 is returned and the value of the requested field is stored in the location pointed to by valp. An error number is returned on failure.

Context
The strqget() function can be called from user, interrupt, or kernel context.

See Also
strqset(9F), queue(9S)

Writing Device Drivers
STREAMS Programming Guide
Name  strqset – change information about a queue or band of the queue

Synopsis  #include <sys/stream.h>


int strqset(queue_t *q, qfields_t what, unsigned char pri, intptr_t val);

Interface Level  Architecture independent level 1 (DDI/DKI).

Parameters  

- **q**  Pointer to the queue.
- **what**  Field of the queue structure (or the specified priority band) to return information about. Valid values are one of:
  - QHIWAT  High water mark.
  - QLOWAT  Low water mark.
  - QMAXPSZ  Largest packet accepted.
  - QMINPSZ  Smallest packet accepted.
- **pri**  Priority band of interest.
- **val**  The value for the field to be changed.

Description  The strqset() function gives drivers and modules a way to change information about a queue or a particular band of a queue without directly accessing STREAMS data structures.

Return Values  On success, 0 is returned. EINVAL is returned if an undefined attribute is specified.

Context  The strqset() function can be called from user, interrupt, or kernel context.

See Also  strqget(9F), queue(9S)

Writing Device Drivers

STREAMS Programming Guide

Notes  When lowering existing values, set QMINPSZ before setting QMAXPSZ; when raising existing values, set QMAXPSZ before setting QMINPSZ.
Name STRUCT_DECL, SIZEOF_PTR, SIZEOF_STRUCT, STRUCT_BUF, STRUCT_FADDR, STRUCT_FGET, STRUCT_FGETP, STRUCT_FSET, STRUCT_FSETP, STRUCT_HANDLE, STRUCT_INIT, STRUCT_SIZE, STRUCT_SET_HANDLE – 32-bit application data access macros

Synopsis #include <sys/ddi.h>
#include <sys/sunddi.h>

STRUCT_DECL(structname, handle);
STRUCT_HANDLE(structname, handle);
void STRUCT_INIT(handle, model_t umodel);
void STRUCT_SET_HANDLE(handle, model_t umodel, void *addr);
STRUCT_FGET(handle, field);
STRUCT_FGETP(handle, field);
STRUCT_FSET(handle, field, val);
STRUCT_FSETP(handle, field, val);
<typeof field> *STRUCT_FADDR(handle, field);
struct structname *STRUCT_BUF(handle);
size_t SIZEOF_STRUCT(structname, umodel);
size_t SIZEOF_PTR(umodel);
size_t STRUCT_SIZE(handle);

Interface Level Solaris DDI specific (Solaris DDI).

Parameters The macros take the following parameters:

structname The structure name that appears after the C keyword struct of the native form.

umodel A bit field that contains either the ILP32 model bit (DATAMODEL_ILP32), or the LP64 model bit (DATAMODEL_LP64). In an ioctl(9E), these bits are present in the flag parameter. In a devmap(9E), the bits are present in the model parameter mmap(9E). The ddi_mmap_get_model(9F) can be called to get the data model of the current thread.

handle The variable name used to refer to a particular instance of a structure which is handled by these macros.

field The field name within the structure that can contain substructures. If the structures contain substructures, unions, or arrays, the field can be whatever complex expression would naturally follow the first . or ->.
The above macros allow a device driver to access data consumed from a 32-bit application regardless whether the driver was compiled to the ILP32 or LP64 data model. These macros effectively hide the difference between the data model of the user application and the driver.

The macros can be broken up into two main categories described in the following sections.

**Declaration and Initialization Macros**

The macros `STRUCT_DECL()` and `STRUCT_HANDLE()` declare structure handles on the stack, whereas the macros `STRUCT_INIT()` and `STRUCT_SET_HANDLE()` initialize the structure handles to point to an instance of the native form structure.

The macros `STRUCT_HANDLE()` and `STRUCT_SET_HANDLE()` are used to declare and initialize a structure handle to an existing data structure, for example, ioctl()s within a STREAMS module.

The macros `STRUCT_DECL()` and `STRUCT_INIT()`, on the other hand, are used in modules which declare and initialize a structure handle to a data structure allocated by `STRUCT_DECL()`, that is, any standard character or block device driver ioctl() routine that needs to copy in data from a user-mode program.

**STRUCT_DECL(structname, handle)**

Declares a structure handle for a struct and allocates an instance of its native form on the stack. It is assumed that the native form is larger than or equal to the ILP32 form. `handle` is a variable name and is declared as a variable by this macro.

```c
void STRUCT_INIT(handle, model_t umodel)
```

Initializes `handle` to point to the instance allocated by `STRUCT_DECL()`. It also sets data model for `handle` to `umodel` and it must be called before any access is made through the macros that operate on these structures. When used in an ioctl() routine, `umodel` is the flag parameter. In a devmap() routine, `umodel` is the model parameter. In a mmap() routine, `umodel` is the return value of ddi_mmap_get_model(). This macro is intended only for handles created with `STRUCT_DECL()`.

**STRUCT_HANDLE(structname, handle)**

Declares a structure handle `handle` but, unlike `STRUCT_DECL()`, it does not allocate an instance of “struct”.

```c
void STRUCT_SET_HANDLE(handle, model_t umodel, void *addr)
```

Initializes handle to point to the native form instance at `addr`. It also sets the data model for `handle` to `umodel`. This is intended for handles created with `STRUCT_HANDLE()`. Fields cannot be referenced via the `handle` until this macro has been invoked. Typically, `addr` is the address of the native form structure containing the user-mode programs data. When used in an ioctl(), `umodel` is the flag parameter. In a devmap() routine, `umodel` is the model parameter. In an mmap() routine, `umodel` is the return value of ddi_mmap_get_model().

**Operation Macros**

```c
size_t STRUCT_SIZE(handle)
```

Returns size of the structure referred to by `handle`, depending on the data model associated with `handle`. If the data model stored by `STRUCT_INIT()` or
STRUCT_SET_HANDLE() is DATAMODEL_ILP32, the size of the ILP32 form is returned. Otherwise, the size of the native form is returned.

STRUCT_FGET(handle, field) Returns the contents of field in the structure described by handle according to the data model associated with handle.

STRUCT_FGETP(handle, field) This is the same as STRUCT_FGET() except that the field in question is a pointer of some kind. This macro casts caddr32_t to a (void *) when it is accessed. Failure to use this macro for a pointer leads to compiler warnings or failures.

STRUCT_FSET(handle, field, val) Assigns val to the (non-pointer) in the structure described by handle. It should not be used within another expression, but only as a statement.

STRUCT_FSETP(handle, field, val) This is the equivalent of STRUCT_FGETP() for STRUCT_FGET(), with the same exceptions. Like STRUCT_FSET, STRUCT_FSETP should not be used within another expression, but only as a statement.

struct structname *STRUCT_BUF(handle) Returns a pointer to the native mode instance of the structure described by handle.

size_t SIZEOF_STRUCT(structname, umodel) Returns size of structname based on umodel.

size_t SIZEOF_PTR(umodel) Returns the size of a pointer based on umodel.

**Examples**

**EXAMPLE 1** Copying a Structure

The following example uses an ioctl(9E) on a regular character device that copies a data structure that looks like this into the kernel:

```c
struct opdata {
    size_t size;
    uint_t flag;
};
```

**EXAMPLE 2** Defining a Structure

This data structure definition describes what the ioctl(9E) would look like in a 32-bit application using fixed width types.
EXAMPLE 2  Defining a Structure  (Continued)

#if defined(_MULTI_DATAMODEL)
struct opdata32 {
    size32_t size;
    uint32_t flag;
};
#endif

EXAMPLE 3  Using STRUCT_DECL() and STRUCT_INIT()
Note: This example uses the STRUCT_DECL() and STRUCT_INIT() macros to declare and initialize the structure handle.

int xxioctl(dev_t dev, int cmd, intptr_t arg, int mode,
            cred_t *cr, int *rval_p);
{
    STRUCT_DECL(opdata, op);

    if (cmd != OPONE)
        return (ENOTTY);

    STRUCT_INIT(op, mode);

    if (copyin((void *)data,
                STRUCT_BUF(op), STRUCT_SIZE(op)))
        return (EFAULT);

    if (STRUCT_FGET(op, flag) != FACTIVE ||
        STRUCT_FGET(op, size) > sizeof (device_state))
        return (EINVAL);

    xxdowork(device_state, STRUCT_FGET(op, size));
    return (0);
}

This piece of code is an excerpt from a STREAMS module that handles ioctl(9E) data (M_IOCTLDATA) messages and uses the data structure defined above. This code has been written to run in the ILP32 environment only.

EXAMPLE 4  Using STRUCT_HANDLE() and STRUCT_SET_HANDLE()
The next example illustrates the use of the STRUCT_HANDLE() and STRUCT_SET_HANDLE() macros which declare and initialize the structure handle to point to an already existing instance of the structure.

The above code example can be converted to run in the LP64 environment using the STRUCT_HANDLE() and STRUCT_SET_HANDLE() as follows:

```c
STRUCT_DECL(9F)
```
EXAMPLE 4 Using STRUCT_HANDLE() and STRUCT_SET_HANDLE()  (Continued)

```c
struct strbuf {
    int maxlen; /* no. of bytes in buffer */
    int len; /* no. of bytes returned */
    caddr_t buf; /* pointer to data */
};

static void wput_iocdata(queue_t *q, mblk_t *msgp)
{
    struct copyresp *cp = (struct copyresp *)msgp->b_rptr;
    STRUCT_HANDLE(strbuf, sb);
    
    if (msgp->b_cont->b_cont != NULL) {
        msgp->b_cont = msgpullup(msgp->b_cont, -1);
        if (msgp->b_cont == NULL) {
            miocnak(q, msgp, 0, ENOSR);
            return;
        }
        
        STRUCT_SET_HANDLE(sb, cp->cp_flag, (void *)msgp->b_cont->b_rptr);
        if (STRUCT_FGET(sb, maxlen) < (int)sizeof (ipa_t)) {
            miocnak(q, msgp, 0, ENOSR);
            return;
        }
    }
    
    miocack(q, msgp, 0, 0);
}
```

**Attributes**  See attributes(5) for descriptions of the following attributes:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ATTRIBUTE TYPE</th>
<th>ATTRIBUTE VALUE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Interface Stability</td>
<td>Evolving</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**See Also**  devmap(9E), ioctl(9E), mmap(9E), ddi_mmap_get_model(9F)

*Writing Device Drivers*

*STREAMS Programming Guide*
### Name
swab – swap bytes in 16-bit halfwords

### Synopsis
```c
#include <sys/sunddi.h>

void swab(void *src, void *dst, size_t nbytes);
```

### Interface Level
Architecture independent level 1 (DDI/DKI).

### Parameters
- **src**: A pointer to the buffer containing the bytes to be swapped.
- **dst**: A pointer to the destination buffer where the swapped bytes will be written. If `dst` is the same as `src` the buffer will be swapped in place.
- **nbytes**: Number of bytes to be swapped, rounded down to the nearest half-word.

### Description
The `swab()` function copies the bytes in the buffer pointed to by `src` to the buffer pointed to by `dst`, swapping the order of adjacent bytes in half-word pairs as the copy proceeds. A total of `nbytes` bytes are copied, rounded down to the nearest half-word.

### Context
The `swab()` function can be called from user, interrupt, or kernel context.

### See Also
- **Writing Device Drivers**

### Notes
Since `swab()` operates byte-by-byte, it can be used on non-aligned buffers.
taskq(9F)

### Name

Task queue operations:
- `taskq`
- `ddi_taskq_create`
- `ddi_taskq_destroy`
- `ddi_taskq_dispatch`
- `ddi_taskq_wait`
- `ddi_taskq_suspend`
- `taskq_suspended`
- `ddi_taskq_resume`

### Synopsis

```c
#include <sys/sunddi.h>

ddi_taskq_t *ddi_taskq_create(dev_info_t *dip, const char *name, int nthreads, pri_t pri, uint_t cflags);
void ddi_taskq_destroy(ddi_taskq_t *tq);
int ddi_taskq_dispatch(ddi_taskq_t *tq, void (*func)(void *), void *arg, uint_t dflags);
void ddi_taskq_wait(ddi_taskq_t *tq);
void ddi_taskq_suspend(ddi_taskq_t *tq);
boolean_t ddi_taskq_suspended(ddi_taskq_t *tq);
void ddi_taskq_resume(ddi_taskq_t *tq);
```

### Interface Level

Solaris DDI specific (Solaris DDI)

### Parameters

- **dip**
  - Pointer to the device’s `dev_info` structure. May be NULL for kernel modules that do not have an associated `dev_info` structure.

- **name**
  - Descriptive string. Only alphanumeric characters can be used in name and spaces are not allowed. The name should be unique.

- **nthreads**
  - Number of threads servicing the task queue. Note that the request ordering is guaranteed (tasks are processed in the order scheduled) if the `taskq` is created with a single servicing thread.

- **pri**
  - Priority of threads servicing the task queue. Drivers and modules should specify TASKQ_DEFAULTPRI.

- **cflags**
  - Should pass 0 as flags.

- **func**
  - Callback function to call.

- **arg**
  - Argument to the callback function.

- **dflags**
  - Possible `dflags` are:
    - **DDI_SLEEP**
      - Allow sleeping (blocking) until memory is available.
    - **DDI_NOSLEEP**
      - Return DDI_FAILURE immediately if memory is not available.

- **tq**
  - Pointer to a task queue (`ddi_taskq_t *`).

- **tp**
  - Pointer to a thread structure.
A kernel task queue is a mechanism for general-purpose asynchronous task scheduling that enables tasks to be performed at a later time by another thread. There are several reasons why you may utilize asynchronous task scheduling:

1. You have a task that isn't time-critical, but a current code path that is.
2. You have a task that may require grabbing locks that a thread already holds.
3. You have a task that needs to block (for example, to wait for memory), but a have a thread that cannot block in its current context.
4. You have a code path that can't complete because of a specific condition, but also can't sleep or fail. In this case, the task is immediately queued and then is executed after the condition disappears.
5. A task queue is just a simple way to launch multiple tasks in parallel.

A task queue consists of a list of tasks, together with one or more threads to service the list. If a task queue has a single service thread, all tasks are guaranteed to execute in the order they were dispatched. Otherwise they can be executed in any order. Note that since tasks are placed on a list, execution of one task and should not depend on the execution of another task or a deadlock may occur. A taskq created with a single servicing thread guarantees that all the tasks are serviced in the order in which they are scheduled.

The `ddi_taskq_create()` function creates a task queue instance.

The `ddi_taskq_dispatch()` function places taskq on the list for later execution. The `dflag` argument specifies whether it is allowed sleep waiting for memory. DDI_SLEEP dispatches can sleep and are guaranteed to succeed. DDI_NOSLEEP dispatches are guaranteed not to sleep but may fail (return DDI_FAILURE) if resources are not available.

The `ddi_taskq_destroy()` function waits for any scheduled tasks to complete, then destroys the taskq. The caller should guarantee that no new tasks are scheduled for the closing taskq.

The `ddi_taskq_wait()` function waits for all previously scheduled tasks to complete. Note that this function does not stop any new task dispatches.

The `ddi_taskq_suspend()` function suspends all task execution until `ddi_taskq_resume()` is called. Although `ddi_taskq_suspend()` attempts to suspend pending tasks, there are no guarantees that they will be suspended. The only guarantee is that all tasks dispatched after `ddi_taskq_suspend()` will not be executed. Because it will trigger a deadlock, the `ddi_taskq_suspend()` function should never be called by a task executing on a taskq.

The `ddi_taskq_suspended()` function returns B_TRUE if taskq is suspended, and B_FALSE otherwise. It is intended to ASSERT that the task queue is suspended.

The `ddi_taskq_resume()` function resumes task queue execution.
The `ddi_taskq_create()` function creates an opaque handle that is used for all other taskq operations. It returns a taskq pointer on success and NULL on failure.

The `ddi_taskq_dispatch()` function returns DDI_FAILURE if it can’t dispatch a task and returns DDI_SUCCESS if dispatch succeeded.

The `ddi_taskq_suspended()` function returns B_TRUE if taskq is suspended. Otherwise B_FALSE is returned.

**Context**  All functions may be called from the user or kernel contexts.

Additionally, the `ddi_taskq_dispatch` function may be called from the interrupt context only if the DDI_NOSLEEP flag is set.
Name  testb – check for an available buffer

Synopsis  #include <sys/stream.h>

int testb(size_t size, uint_t pri);

Interface Level  Architecture independent level 1 (DDI/DKI).

Parameters  size  Size of the requested buffer.

pri  Priority of the allocb request.

Description  The testb() function checks to see if an allocb(9F) call is likely to succeed if a buffer of size bytes at priority pri is requested. Even if testb() returns successfully, the call to allocb(9F) can fail. The pri argument is no longer used, but is retained for compatibility.

Return Values  Returns 1 if a buffer of the requested size is available, and 0 if one is not.

Context  The testb() function can be called user, interrupt, or kernel context.

Examples  EXAMPLE 1  testb() example

In a service routine, if copymsg(9F) fails (line 6), the message is put back on the queue (line 7) and a routine, tryagain, is scheduled to be run in one tenth of a second. Then the service routine returns.

When the timeout(9F) function runs, if there is no message on the front of the queue, it just returns. Otherwise, for each message block in the first message, check to see if an allocation would succeed. If the number of message blocks equals the number we can allocate, then enable the service procedure. Otherwise, reschedule tryagain to run again in another tenth of a second. Note that tryagain is merely an approximation. Its accounting may be faulty. Consider the case of a message comprised of two 1024-byte message blocks. If there is only one free 1024-byte message block and no free 2048-byte message blocks, then testb() will still succeed twice. If no message blocks are freed of these sizes before the service procedure runs again, then the copymsg(9F) will still fail. The reason testb() is used here is because it is significantly faster than calling copymsg. We must minimize the amount of time spent in a timeout() routine.

1  longsrv(q)
2  queue_t *q;
3  {
4    mblk_t *mp;
5    mblk_t *nmp;
6    if ((nmp = copymsg(mp)) == NULL) {
7      putbq(q, mp);
8      timeout(tryagain, (intptr_t)q, drv_usectohz(100000));
}
EXAMPLE 1  testb() example  (Continued)

    9    return;
   10  }
    ... 
   11  }
   12
   13 tryagain(q)
   14    queue_t *q;
   15  {
   16     register int can_alloc = 0;
   17     register int num_blks = 0;
   18     register mblk_t *mp;
   19
   20    if (!q->q_first)
   21       return;
   22    for (mp = q->q_first; mp; mp = mp->b_cont) {
   23       num_blks++;
   24       can_alloc += testb((mp->b_datap->db_lim -
   25                 mp->b_datap->db_base), BPRI_MED);
   26    }
   27    if (num_blks == can_alloc)
   28       qenable(q);
   29    else
   30       timeout(tryagain, (intptr_t)q, drv_usec_tohz(100000));
   31  }

See Also  allocb(9F), bufcall(9F), copymsg(9F), timeout(9F)

Writing Device Drivers

STREAMS Programming Guide

Notes  The pri argument is provided for compatibility only. Its value is ignored.
timeout(9F)

Name  timeout – execute a function after a specified length of time

Synopsis  

```c
#include <sys/types.h>
#include <sys/conf.h>

timeout_id_t timeout(void (*func)(void *), void *arg,
                     clock_t ticks);
```

Interface Level  Architecture independent level 1 (DDI/DKI).

Parameters  

- `func`: Kernel function to invoke when the time increment expires.
- `arg`: Argument to the function.
- `ticks`: Number of clock ticks to wait before the function is called. Use `drv_usertoHz(9F)` to convert microseconds to clock ticks.

Description  The `timeout()` function schedules the specified function to be called after a specified time interval. The exact time interval over which the timeout takes effect cannot be guaranteed, but the value given is a close approximation.

The function called by `timeout()` must adhere to the same restrictions as a driver soft interrupt handler.

The `delay(9F)` function calls `timeout()`. Because `timeout()` is subject to priority inversion, drivers waiting on behalf of processes with real-time constraints should use `cv_timedwait(9F)` rather than `delay()`.

Return Values  The `timeout()` function returns an opaque non-zero `timeout` identifier that can be passed to `untimeout(9F)` to cancel the request.

Context  The `timeout()` function can be called from user, interrupt, or kernel context.

Examples  

**EXAMPLE 1**  Using `timeout()`

In the following example, the device driver has issued an IO request and is waiting for the device to respond. If the device does not respond within 5 seconds, the device driver will print out an error message to the console.

```c
static void
xxtimeout_handler(void *arg)
{
    struct xxstate *xsp = (struct xxstate *)arg;
    mutex_enter(&xsp->lock);
    cv_signal(&xsp->cv);
    xsp->flags |= TIMED_OUT;
    mutex_exit(&xsp->lock);
}
```
EXAMPLE 1 Using timeout()  (Continued)

    xsp->timeout_id = 0;
}
static uint_t
xxintr(caddr_t arg)
{
    struct xxstate *xsp = (struct xxstate *)arg;
    .
    .
    mutex_enter(&xsp->lock);
    /* Service interrupt */
    cv_signal(&xsp->cv);
    mutex_exit(&xsp->lock);
    if (xsp->timeout_id != 0) {
        (void) untimeout(xsp->timeout_id);
        xsp->timeout_id = 0;
    }
    return(DDI_INTR_CLAIMED);
}
static void
xxcheckcond(struct xxstate *xsp)
{
    .
    .
    .
    xsp->timeout_id = timeout(xxtimeout_handler, xsp, (5 * drv_usectohz(1000000)));
    mutex_enter(&xsp->lock);
    while (/* Waiting for interrupt or timeout*/)
        cv_wait(&xsp->cv, &xsp->lock);
    if (xsp->flags & TIMED_OUT)
        cmn_err(CE_WARN, "Device not responding");
    .
    .
    .
    mutex_exit(&xsp->lock);
    .
    .
    .
}

See Also  bufcall(9F), cv_timedwait(9F), ddi_in_panic(9F), delay(9F), drv_usectohz(9F), untimeout(9F)

Writing Device Drivers
Name  u8_strcmp – UTF-8 string comparison function

Synopsis  #include <sys/sunddi.h>

    int u8_strcmp(const char *s1, const char *s2, size_t n,
                  int flag, size_t unicode_version, int *errno);

Interface Level  Solaris DDI specific (Solaris DDI)

Parameters  

    s1, s2  Pointers to null-terminated UTF-8 strings

    n  The maximum number of bytes to be compared. If 0, the comparison is performed until either or both of the strings are examined to the string terminating null byte.

    flag  The possible comparison options constructed by a bit-wise-inclusive-OR of the following values:

          U8_STRCMP_CS  Perform case-sensitive string comparison. This is the default.

          U8_STRCMP_CI_UPPER  Perform case-insensitive string comparison based on Unicode upper case converted results of s1 and s2.

          U8_STRCMP_CI_LOWER  Perform case-insensitive string comparison based on Unicode lower case converted results of s1 and s2.

          U8_STRCMP_NFD  Perform string comparison after s1 and s2 have been normalized by using Unicode Normalization Form D.

          U8_STRCMP_NFC  Perform string comparison after s1 and s2 have been normalized by using Unicode Normalization Form C.

          U8_STRCMP_NFKD  Perform string comparison after s1 and s2 have been normalized by using Unicode Normalization Form KD.

          U8_STRCMP_NFKC  Perform string comparison after s1 and s2 have been normalized by using Unicode Normalization Form KC.

    unicode_version  The version of Unicode data that should be used during comparison. The following values are supported:

    ...
U8_UNICODE_320
Use Unicode 3.2.0 data during comparison.

U8_UNICODE_500
Use Unicode 5.0.0 data during comparison.

U8_UNICODE_LATEST
Use the latest Unicode version data available, which is Unicode 5.0.0.

errno
A non-zero value indicates that an error has occurred during comparison. The following values are supported:

EBADF The specified option values are conflicting and cannot be supported.
EILSEQ There was an illegal character at s1, s2, or both.
EINVAL There was an incomplete character at s1, s2, or both.
ERANGE The specified Unicode version value is not supported.

Description
After proper pre-processing, the u8_strcmp() function compares two UTF-8 strings byte-by-byte, according to the machine ordering defined by the corresponding version of the Unicode Standard.

When multiple comparison options are specified, Unicode Normalization is performed after case-sensitive or case-insensitive processing is performed.

Return Values
The u8_strcmp() function returns an integer greater than, equal to, or less than 0 if the string pointed to by s1 is greater than, equal to, or less than the string pointed to by s2, respectively.

When u8_strcmp() detects an illegal or incomplete character, such character causes the function to set errno to indicate the error. Afterward, the comparison is still performed on the resultant strings and a value based on byte-by-byte comparison is always returned.

Context
The u8_strcmp() function can be called from user or interrupt context.

Examples
EXAMPLE 1 Perform simple default string comparison.

```c
#include <sys/sunddi.h>

int
docmp_default(const char *u1, const char *u2) {
    int result;
    int ;

    result = u8_strcmp(u1, u2, 0, 0, U8_UNICODE_LATEST, &errno);
    if (errno == EILSEQ)
        return (-1);
    if (errno == EINVAL)
```
EXAMPLE 1  Perform simple default string comparison.  (Continued)

        return (-2);
        if (errno == EBADF)
            return (-3);
        if (errno == ERANGE)
            return (-4);

EXAMPLE 2  Perform uppercase based case-insensitive comparison with Unicode 3.2.0 date.

#include <sys/sunddi.h>

int
docmp_caseinsensitive_u320(const char *u1, const char *u2) {
    int result;
    int errno;

    result = u8_strcmp(u1, u2, 0, U8_STRCMP_CI_UPPER,
                        U8_UNICODE_320, &errno);
    if (errno == EILSEQ)
        return (-1);
    if (errno == EINVAL)
        return (-2);
    if (errno == EBADF)
        return (-3);
    if (errno == ERANGE)
        return (-4);

    return (result);
}

EXAMPLE 3  Perform Unicode Normalization Form D.
Perform Unicode Normalization Form D and uppercase-based case-insensitive comparison
with Unicode 3.2.0 date.

#include <sys/sunddi.h>

int
docmp_nfd_caseinsensitive_u320(const char *u1, const char *u2) {
    int result;
    int errno;

    result = u8_strcmp(u1, u2, 0,
                        (U8_STRCMP_NFD|U8_STRCMP_CI_UPPER), U8_UNICODE_320,
                        &errno);
    if (errno == EILSEQ)
        return (-1);
EXAMPLE 3  Perform Unicode Normalization Form D.  (Continued)

    if (errno == EINVAL)  
        return (-2);  
    if (errno == EBADF)  
        return (-3);  
    if (errno == ERANGE)  
        return (-4);  

    return (result);
}

Attributes  See attributes(5) for descriptions of the following attributes:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ATTRIBUTE TYPE</th>
<th>ATTRIBUTE VALUE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Interface Stability</td>
<td>Committed</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

See Also  u8_validate(3C), u8_textprep_str(3C), u8_validate(3C), attributes(5),  
u8_textprep_str(9F), u8_validate(9F), uconv_u16tou32(9F)

The Unicode Standard (http://www.unicode.org)
Name  u8_textprep_str – string-based UTF-8 text preparation function

Synopsis  #include <sys/types.h>
#include <sys/errno.h>
#include <sys/sunddi.h>

size_t u8_textprep_str(char *inarray, size_t *inlen,
     char *outarray, size_t *outlen, int flag,
     size_t unicode_version, int *errno);

Interface Level  Solaris DDI specific (Solaris DDI)

Parameters  
inarray  A pointer to a byte array containing a sequence of UTF-8 character bytes to be prepared.

inlen  As input argument, the number of bytes to be prepared in inarray. As output argument, the number of bytes in inarray still not consumed.

outarray  A pointer to a byte array where prepared UTF-8 character bytes can be saved.

outlen  As input argument, the number of available bytes at outarray where prepared character bytes can be saved. As output argument, after the conversion, the number of bytes still available at outarray.

flag  The possible preparation options constructed by a bitwise-inclusive-OR of the following values:

U8_TEXTPREP_IGNORE_NULL
  Normally u8_textprep_str() stops the preparation if it encounters null byte even if the current inlen is pointing to a value bigger than zero.

    With this option, null byte does not stop the preparation and the preparation continues until inlen specified amount of inarray bytes are all consumed for preparation or an error happened.

U8_TEXTPREP_IGNORE_INVALID
  Normally u8_textprep_str() stops the preparation if it encounters illegal or incomplete characters with corresponding errno values.

    When this option is set, u8_textprep_str() does not stop the preparation and instead treats such characters as no need to do any preparation.

U8_TEXTPREP_TOUNPER
  Map lowercase characters to uppercase characters if applicable.

U8_TEXTPREP_TOCLOWER
  Map uppercase characters to lowercase characters if applicable.
Apply Unicode Normalization Form D.

Apply Unicode Normalization Form C.

Apply Unicode Normalization Form KD.

Apply Unicode Normalization Form KC.

Only one case folding option is allowed. Only one Unicode Normalization option is allowed.

When a case folding option and a Unicode Normalization option are specified together, UTF-8 text preparation is done by doing case folding first and then Unicode Normalization.

If no option is specified, no processing occurs except the simple copying of bytes from input to output.

`unicode_version` The version of Unicode data that should be used during UTF-8 text preparation. The following values are supported:

- `U8_UNICODE_320` Use Unicode 3.2.0 data during comparison.
- `U8_UNICODE_500` Use Unicode 5.0.0 data during comparison.
- `U8_UNICODE_LATEST` Use the latest Unicode version data available which is Unicode 5.0.0 currently.

`errno` The error value when preparation is not completed or fails. The following values are supported:

- `E2BIG` Text preparation stopped due to lack of space in the output array.
- `EBAADF` Specified option values are conflicting and cannot be supported.
- `EILSEQ` Text preparation stopped due to an input byte that does not belong to UTF-8.
- `EINVAL` Text preparation stopped due to an incomplete UTF-8 character at the end of the input array.
- `ERANGE` The specified Unicode version value is not a supported version.
The u8_textprep_str() function prepares the sequence of UTF-8 characters in the array specified by inarray into a sequence of corresponding UTF-8 characters prepared in the array specified by outarray. The inarray argument points to a character byte array to the first character in the input array and inlen indicates the number of bytes to the end of the array to be converted. The outarray argument points to a character byte array to the first available byte in the output array and outlen indicates the number of the available bytes to the end of the array. Unless flag is U8_TEXTPREP_IGNORE_NULL, u8_textprep_str() normally stops when it encounters a null byte from the input array regardless of the current inlen value.

If flag is U8_TEXTPREP_IGNORE_INVALID and a sequence of input bytes does not form a valid UTF-8 character, preparation stops after the previous successfully prepared character. If flag is U8_TEXTPREP_IGNORE_INVALID and the input array ends with an incomplete UTF-8 character, preparation stops after the previous successfully prepared bytes. If the output array is not large enough to hold the entire prepared text, preparation stops just prior to the input bytes that would cause the output array to overflow. The value pointed to by inlen is decremented to reflect the number of bytes still not prepared in the input array. The value pointed to by outlen is decremented to reflect the number of bytes still available in the output array.

The u8_textprep_str() function updates the values pointed to by inlen and outlen arguments to reflect the extent of the preparation. When U8_TEXTPREP_IGNORE_INVALID is specified, u8_textprep_str() returns the number of illegal or incomplete characters found during the text preparation. When U8_TEXTPREP_IGNORE_INVALID is not specified and the text preparation is successful, the function returns 0. If the entire string in the input array is prepared, the value pointed to by inlen will be 0. If the text preparation is stopped due to any conditions mentioned above, the value pointed to by inlen will be non-zero and errno is set to indicate the error. If such and any other error occurs, u8_textprep_str() returns (size_t)-1 and sets errno to indicate the error.

The u8_textprep_str() function can be called from user or interrupt context.

**Examples**

**EXAMPLE 1** Simple UTF-8 text preparation

```c
#include <sys/types.h>
#include <sys/errno.h>
#include <sys/sunddi.h>

size_t ret;
char *ib[MAXPATHLEN];
char *ob[MAXPATHLEN];
size_t il, ol;
int err, ol;
```

**Return Values**

**Context**
EXAMPLE 1  Simple UTF-8 text preparation  (Continued)

/*
 * We got a UTF-8 pathname from somewhere.
 * Calculate the length of input string including the terminating
 * NULL byte and prepare other arguments.
 */
(void) strncpy(ib, pathname, MAXPATHLEN);
il = strlen(ib) + 1;
ol = MAXPATHLEN;

/*
 * Do toupper case folding, apply Unicode Normalization Form D,
 * ignore NULL byte, and ignore any illegal/incomplete characters.
 */
ret = u8_textprep_str(ib, &il, ob, &ol,
    (U8_TEXTPREP_IGNORE_NULL|U8_TEXTPREP_IGNORE_INVALID|
     U8_TEXTPREP_TOUPPER|U8_TEXTPREP_NFD), U8_UNICODE_LATEST, &err);
if (ret == (size_t)-1) {
    if (err == E2BIG)
        return (-1);
    if (err == EBADF)
        return (-2);
    if (err == ERANGE)
        return (-3);
    return (-4);
}

Attributes  See attributes(5) for descriptions of the following attributes:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ATTRIBUTE TYPE</th>
<th>ATTRIBUTE VALUE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Interface Stability</td>
<td>Committed</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

See Also  u8_strcmp(3C), u8_textprep_str(3C), u8_validate(3C), attributes(5), u8_strcmp(9F),
          u8_validate(9F), uconv_u16tou32(9F)

The Unicode Standard (http://www.unicode.org)
Name  u8_validate – validate UTF-8 characters and calculate the byte length

Synopsis  #include <sys/types.h>
#include <sys/errno.h>
#include <sys/sunddi.h>

int u8_validate(char *u8str, size_t n, char **list, int flag, 
    int *errno);

Interface Level  Solaris DDI specific (Solaris DDI)

Parameters  

u8str  The UTF-8 string to be validated.

n  The maximum number of bytes in u8str that can be examined and validated.

list  A list of null-terminated character strings in UTF-8 that must be additionally 
      checked against as invalid characters. The last string in list must be null to indicate 
      there is no further string.

flag  Possible validation options constructed by a bitwise-inclusive-OR of the following 
      values:

U8_VALIDATE_ENTIRE  
      By default, u8_validate() looks at the first character or up to n bytes, whichever 
      is smaller in terms of the number of bytes to be consumed, and returns with the 
      result.

      When this option is used, u8_validate() will check up to n bytes from u8str and 
      possibly more than a character before returning the result.

U8_VALIDATE_CHECK_ADDITIONAL  
      By default, u8_validate() does not use list supplied.

      When this option is supplied with a list of character strings, u8_validate() 
      additionally validates u8str against the character strings supplied with list and 
      returns EBADF in errno if u8str has any one of the character strings in list.

U8_VALIDATE_UCS2_RANGE  
      By default, u8_validate() uses the entire Unicode coding space of U+0000 to 
      U+10FFFF.

      When this option is specified, the valid Unicode coding space is smaller to 
      U+0000 to U+FFFF.

errno  An error occurred during validation. The following values are supported:

EBADF  Validation failed because list-specified characters were found in the 
       string pointed to by u8str.

EILSEQ  Validation failed because an illegal byte was found in the string pointed 
       to by u8str.
Validation failed because an incomplete byte was found in the string pointed to by \texttt{u8str}.

Validation failed because character bytes were encountered that are outside the range of the Unicode coding space.

**Description**

The \texttt{u8_validate()} function validates \texttt{u8str} in UTF-8 and determines the number of bytes constituting the character(s) pointed to by \texttt{u8str}.

**Return Values**

If \texttt{u8str} is a null pointer, \texttt{u8_validate()} returns 0. Otherwise, \texttt{u8_validate()} returns either the number of bytes that constitute the characters if the next \textit{n} or fewer bytes form valid characters, or -1 if there is an validation failure, in which case it may set \texttt{errno} to indicate the error.

**Examples**

**EXAMPLE 1**  Determine the length of the first UTF-8 character.

```c
#include <sys/types.h>
#include <sys/errno.h>
#include <sys/sunddi.h>

char u8[MAXPATHLEN];
int errno;
.
.
len = u8_validate(u8, 4, (char **)NULL, 0, &errno);
if (len == -1) {
    switch (errno) {
    case EILSEQ:
    case EINVAL:
        return (MYFS4_ERR_INVAL);
    case EBADF:
        return (MYFS4_ERR_BADNAME);
    case ERANGE:
        return (MYFS4_ERR_BADCHAR);
    default:
        return (-10);
    }

    len = u8_validate(u8, 4, (char **)NULL, 0, &errno);
if (len == -1) {
    switch (errno) {
    case EILSEQ:
    case EINVAL:
        return (MYFS4_ERR_INVAL);
    case EBADF:
        return (MYFS4_ERR_BADNAME);
    case ERANGE:
        return (MYFS4_ERR_BADCHAR);
    default:
        return (-10);
    }
}
```

**EXAMPLE 2**  Check if there are any invalid characters in the entire string.

```c
#include <sys/types.h>
#include <sys/errno.h>
#include <sys/sunddi.h>

char u8[MAXPATHLEN];
int n;
```
EXAMPLE 2  Check if there are any invalid characters in the entire string.  

```c
int errno;
.
.n = strlen(u8);
len = u8_validate(u8, n, (char **)NULL, U8_VALIDATE_ENTIRE, &errno);
if (len == -1) {
    switch (errno) {
        case EILSEQ:
        case EINVAL:
            return (MYFS4_ERR_INVAL);
        case EBADF:
            return (MYFS4_ERR_BADNAME);
        case ERANGE:
            return (MYFS4_ERR_BADCHAR);
        default:
            return (-10);
    }
}
```

EXAMPLE 3  Check if there is any invalid character, including prohibited characters, in the entire string.

```c
#include <sys/types.h>
#include <sys/errno.h>
#include <sys/sunddi.h>

char u8[MAXPATHLEN];
int n;
int errno;
char *prohibited[4] = {
    ".", ".", "/", NULL
};
.
.n = strlen(u8);
len = u8_validate(u8, n, prohibited,
    (U8_VALIDATE_ENTIRE|U8_VALIDATE_CHECK_ADDITIONAL), &errno);
if (len == -1) {
    switch (errno) {
        case EILSEQ:
        case EINVAL:
            return (MYFS4_ERR_INVAL);
        case EBADF:
            return (MYFS4_ERR_BADNAME);
        case ERANGE:
            return (MYFS4_ERR_BADCHAR);
        default:
            return (-10);
    }
}
Example 3  Check if there is any invalid character, including prohibited characters, in the entire string.  

(Continued)  

```c
return (MYFS4_ERR_BADCHAR);
default:
    return (-10);
}
```

**Attributes**  See attributes(5) for descriptions of the following attributes:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ATTRIBUTE TYPE</th>
<th>ATTRIBUTE VALUE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Interface Stability</td>
<td>Committed</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**See Also**  u8_strcmp(3C), u8_textprep_str(3C), u8_validate(3C), attributes(5), u8_strcmp(9F), u8_textprep_str(9F), uconv_u16tou32(9F)

The Unicode Standard (http://www.unicode.org)
The possible conversion options that are constructed by a bitwise-inclusive-OR of the following values:
The input parameter is in big endian byte ordering.

The output parameter should be in big endian byte ordering.

The input parameter is in the default byte ordering of the current system.

The output parameter should be in the default byte ordering of the current system.

The input parameter is in little endian byte ordering.

The output parameter should be in little endian byte ordering.

The null or U+0000 character should not stop the conversion.

If the Byte Order Mark (BOM, U+FEFF) character exists as the first character of the input parameter, interpret it as the BOM character.

Start the output parameter with Byte Order Mark (BOM, U+FEFF) character to indicate the byte ordering if the output parameter is in UTF-16 or UTF-32.

The uconv_u16tou32() function reads the given utf16str in UTF-16 until U+0000 (zero) in utf16str is encountered as a character or until the number of 16-bit unsigned integers specified in utf16len is read. The UTF-16 characters that are read are converted into UTF-32 and the result is saved at utf32str. After the successful conversion, utf32len contains the number of 32-bit unsigned integers saved at utf32str as UTF-32 characters.

The uconv_u16tou8() function reads the given utf16str in UTF-16 until U+0000 (zero) in utf16str is encountered as a character or until the number of 16-bit unsigned integers specified in utf16len is read. The UTF-16 characters that are read are converted into UTF-8 and the result is saved at utf8str. After the successful conversion, utf8len contains the number of bytes saved at utf8str as UTF-8 characters.

The uconv_u32tou16() function reads the given utf32str in UTF-32 until U+0000 (zero) in utf32str is encountered as a character or until the number of 32-bit unsigned integers specified in utf32len is read. The UTF-32 characters that are read are converted into UTF-16 and the result is saved at utf16str. After the successful conversion, utf16len contains the number of 16-bit unsigned integers saved at utf16str as UTF-16 characters.

The uconv_u32tou8() function reads the given utf32str in UTF-32 until U+0000 (zero) in utf32str is encountered as a character or until the number of 32-bit unsigned integers specified in utf32len is read. The UTF-32 characters that are read are converted into UTF-8 and the result is saved at utf8str. After the successful conversion, utf8len contains the number of bytes saved at utf8str as UTF-8 characters.
in utf32len is read. The UTF-32 characters that are read are converted into UTF-8 and the result is saved at utf8str. After the successful conversion, utf8len contains the number of bytes saved at utf8str as UTF-8 characters.

The uconv_u8tou16() function reads the given utf8str in UTF-8 until the null (\0) byte in utf8str is encountered or until the number of bytes specified in utf8len is read. The UTF-8 characters that are read are converted into UTF-16 and the result is saved at utf16str. After the successful conversion, utf16len contains the number of 16-bit unsigned integers saved at utf16str as UTF-16 characters.

The uconv_u8tou32() function reads the given utf8str in UTF-8 until the null (\0) byte in utf8str is encountered or until the number of bytes specified in utf8len is read. The UTF-8 characters that are read are converted into UTF-32 and the result is saved at utf32str. After the successful conversion, utf32len contains the number of 32-bit unsigned integers saved at utf32str as UTF-32 characters.

During the conversion, the input and the output parameters are treated with byte orderings specified in the flag parameter. When not specified, the default byte ordering of the system is used. The byte ordering flag value that is specified for UTF-8 is ignored.

When UCONV_IN_ACCEPT_BOM is specified as the flag and the first character of the string pointed to by the input parameter is the BOM character, the value of the BOM character dictates the byte ordering of the subsequent characters in the string pointed to by the input parameter, regardless of the supplied input parameter byte ordering option flag values. If the UCONV_IN_ACCEPT_BOM is not specified, the BOM as the first character is treated as a regular Unicode character: Zero Width No Break Space (ZWNBSP) character.

When UCONV_IGNORE_NULL is specified, regardless of whether the input parameter contains U+0000 or null byte, the conversion continues until the specified number of input parameter elements at utf16len, utf32len, or utf8len are entirely consumed during the conversion.

As output parameters, utf16len, utf32len, and utf8len are not changed if conversion fails for any reason.

**Context**
The uconv_u16tou32(), uconv_u16tou8(), uconv_u32tou16(), uconv_u32tou8(), uconv_u8tou16(), and uconv_u8tou32() functions can be called from user or interrupt context.

**Return Values**
Upon successful conversion, the functions return 0. Upon failure, the functions return one of the following errno values:

- **EILSEQ** The conversion detected an illegal or out of bound character value in the input parameter.
- **E2BIG** The conversion cannot finish because the size specified in the output parameter is too small.
- **EINVAL** The conversion stops due to an incomplete character at the end of the input string.
Conflicting byte-ordering option flag values are detected.

**Examples**

**EXAMPLE 1** Convert a UTF-16 string in little-endian byte ordering into UTF-8 string.

```c
#include <sys/types.h>
#include <sys/errno.h>
#include <sys/sunddi.h>

#include <sys/types.h>
#include <sys/errno.h>
#include <sys/sunddi.h>

uint16_t u16s[MAXNAMELEN + 1];
uchar_t u8s[MAXNAMELEN + 1];
size_t u16len, u8len;
int ret;

u16len = u8len = MAXNAMELEN;
ret = uconv_u16tou8(u16s, &u16len, u8s, &u8len,
    UCONV_IN_LITTLE_ENDIAN);
if (ret != 0) {
    /* Conversion error occurred. */
    return (ret);
}
```

**EXAMPLE 2** Convert a UTF-32 string in big-endian byte ordering into little endian UTF-16.

```c
#include <sys/types.h>
#include <sys/errno.h>
#include <sys/sunddi.h>

uint32_t u32s[101];
uint16_t u16s[101];
int ret;
size_t u32len, u16len;

u32len = u16len = 100;
```

* An UTF-32 character can be mapped to an UTF-16 character with two 16-bit integer entities as a "surrogate pair."
EXAMPLE 2 Convert a UTF-32 string in big endian byte ordering into little endian UTF-16.
(Continued)

```
ret = uconv_u32tou16(u32s, &u32len, u16s, &u16len,
    UCONV_IN_BIG_ENDIAN | UCONV_OUT_LITTLE_ENDIAN);
if (ret == 0) {
    return (0);
} else if (ret == E2BIG) {
    /* Use bigger output parameter and try just one more time. */
    uint16_t u16s2[201];
    u16len = 200;
    ret = uconv_u32tou16(u32s, &u32len, u16s2, &u16len,
        UCONV_IN_BIG_ENDIAN | UCONV_OUT_LITTLE_ENDIAN);
    if (ret == 0)
        return (0);
}
/* Otherwise, return -1 to indicate an error condition. */
return (-1);
```

EXAMPLE 3 Convert a UTF-8 string into UTF-16 in little-endian byte ordering.
Convert a UTF-8 string into UTF-16 in little-endian byte ordering with a Byte Order Mark (BOM) character at the beginning of the output parameter.

```
#include <sys/types.h>
#include <sys/errno.h>
#include <sys/sunddi.h>

uchar_t u8s[MAXNAMELEN + 1];
uint16_t u16s[MAXNAMELEN + 1];
size_t u8len, u16len;
int ret;

u8len = u16len = MAXNAMELEN;
ret = uconv_u8tou16(u8s, &u8len, u16s, &u16len,
    UCONV_IN_LITTLE_ENDIAN | UCONV_EMIT_BOM);
if (ret != 0) {
    /* Conversion error occurred. */
    return (ret);
}
```
EXAMPLE 3 Convert a UTF-8 string into UTF-16 in little-endian byte ordering. (Continued)

Attributes
See attributes(5) for descriptions of the following attributes:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ATTRIBUTE TYPE</th>
<th>ATTRIBUTE VALUE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Interface Stability</td>
<td>Committed</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

See Also uconv_u16tou32(3C), attributes(5)

The Unicode Standard (http://www.unicode.org)

Notes
Each UTF-16 or UTF-32 character maps to an UTF-8 character that might need one to maximum of four bytes.

One UTF-32 or UTF-8 character can yield two 16-bit unsigned integers as a UTF-16 character, which is a surrogate pair if the Unicode scalar value is bigger than U+FFFF.

Ill-formed UTF-16 surrogate pairs are seen as illegal characters during the conversion.
uiomove(9F)

Name  uiomove – copy kernel data using uio structure

Synopsis  #include <sys/types.h>
           #include <sys/uio.h>

           int uiomove(caddr_t address, size_t nbytes, enum uio_rw rwflag,  
                       uio_t *uio_p);

Interface Level  Architecture independent level 1 (DDI/DKI).

Parameters  

   address  Source/destination kernel address of the copy.

   nbytes  Number of bytes to copy.

   rwflag  Flag indicating read or write operation. Possible values are UIO_READ and UIO_WRITE.

   uio_p  Pointer to the uio structure for the copy.

Description  The uiomove() function copies nbytes of data to or from the space defined by the uio structure (described in uio(9S)) and the driver.

   The uio_segflg member of the uio(9S) structure determines the type of space to or from which the transfer is being made. If it is set to UIO_SYSSPACE, the data transfer is between addresses in the kernel. If it is set to UIO_USERSPACE, the transfer is between a user program and kernel space.

   rwflag indicates the direction of the transfer. If UIO_READ is set, the data will be transferred from address to the buffer(s) described by uio_p. If UIO_WRITE is set, the data will be transferred from the buffer(s) described by uio_p to address.

   In addition to moving the data, uiomove() adds the number of bytes moved to the iov_base member of the iovec(9S) structure, decreases the iov_len member, increases the uio_offset member of the uio(9S) structure, and decreases the uio_resid member.

   This function automatically handles page faults. nbytes does not have to be word-aligned.

Return Values  The uiomove() function returns 0 upon success or EFAULT on failure.

Context  User context only, if uio_segflg is set to UIO_USERSPACE. User, interrupt, or kernel context, if uio_segflg is set to UIO_SYSSPACE.

See Also  ureadc(9F), uwritec(9F), iovec(9S), uio(9S)

Writing Device Drivers
Warnings  If uio_segflg is set to UIO_SYSSPACE and address is selected from user space, the system may panic.
## unbufcall(9F)

### Name
unbufcall – cancel a pending bufcall request

### Synopsis
```c
#include <sys/stream.h>

void unbufcall(bufcall_id_t id);
```

### Interface Level
Architecture independent level 1 (DDI/DKI).

### Parameters
- **id**: Identifier returned from `bufcall(9F)` or `esbbcall(9F)`.

### Description
The `unbufcall` function cancels a pending `bufcall()` or `esbbcall()` request. The argument `id` is a non-zero identifier for the request to be cancelled. `id` is returned from the `bufcall()` or `esbbcall()` function used to issue the request. `unbufcall()` will not return until the pending callback is cancelled or has run. Because of this, locks acquired by the callback routine should not be held across the call to `unbufcall()` or deadlock may result.

### Return Values
None.

### Context
The `unbufcall` function can be called from user, interrupt, or kernel context.

### See Also
- `bufcall(9F)`, `esbbcall(9F)`
  - *Writing Device Drivers*
  - *STREAMS Programming Guide*
**Name**  unlinkb – remove a message block from the head of a message

**Synopsis**  
```c
#include <sys/stream.h>
mblk_t *unlinkb(mblk_t *mp);
```

**Interface Level**  Architecture independent level 1 (DDI/DKI).

**Parameters**  
- `mp`  Pointer to the message.

**Description**  The `unlinkb()` function removes the first message block from the message pointed to by `mp`. A new message, minus the removed message block, is returned.

**Return Values**  
- If successful, the `unlinkb()` function returns a pointer to the message with the first message block removed. If there is only one message block in the message, `NULL` is returned.

**Context**  The `unlinkb()` function can be called from user, interrupt, or kernel context.

**Examples**  
**EXAMPLE 1  unlinkb() example**

The routine expects to get passed an `M_PROTO T_DATA_IND` message. It will remove and free the `M_PROTO` header and return the remaining `M_DATA` portion of the message.

```c
1 mblk_t *
2 makedata(mp)
3    mblk_t *mp;
4 {
5    mblk_t *nmp;
6    nmp = unlinkb(mp);
7    freeb(mp);
8    return(nmp);
9 }
```

**See Also**  
- `linkb(9F)`

*Writing Device Drivers*

*STREAMS Programming Guide*
untimeout(9F)

Name
untimeout – cancel previous timeout function call

Synopsis
#include <sys/types.h>
#include <sys/conf.h>

clock_t untimeout(timeout_id_t id);

Interface Level
Architecture independent level 1 (DDI/DKI).

Parameters
id Opaque timeout ID from a previous timeout(9F) call.

Description
The untimeout() function cancels a pending timeout(9F) request. untimeout() will
not return until the pending callback is cancelled or has run. Because of this, locks acquired by the
callback routine should not be held across the call to untimeout() or a deadlock may result.

Since no mutex should be held across the call to untimeout(), there is a race condition
between the occurrence of an expected event and the execution of the timeout handler. In
particular, it should be noted that no problems will result from calling untimeout() for a
timeout which is either running on another CPU, or has already completed. Drivers should be
structured with the understanding that the arrival of both an interrupt and a timeout for that
interrupt can occasionally occur, in either order.

Return Values
The untimeout() function returns -1 if the id is not found. Otherwise, it returns an integer
value greater than or equal to 0.

Context
The untimeout() function can be called from user, interrupt, or kernel context.

Examples
In the following example, the device driver has issued an IO request and is waiting for the
device to respond. If the device does not respond within 5 seconds, the device driver will print
out an error message to the console.

static void
xxtimeout_handler(void *arg)
{
    struct xxstate *xsp = (struct xxstate *)arg;
    mutex_enter(&xsp->lock);
    cv_signal(&xsp->cv);
    xsp->flags |= TIMED_OUT;
    mutex_exit(&xsp->lock);
    xsp->timeout_id = 0;
}
static uint_t
xxintr(caddr_t arg)
{
    struct xxstate *xsp = (struct xxstate *)arg;

mutex_enter(&xsp->lock);
/* Service interrupt */
cv_signal(&xsp->cv);
mutex_exit(&xsp->lock);
if (xsp->timeout_id != 0) {
    (void) untimeout(xsp->timeout_id);
    xsp->timeout_id = 0;
}
return(DDI_INTRCLAIMED);
}
static void
xxcheckcond(struct xxstate *xsp)
{
	xsp->timeout_id = timeout(xxtimeout_handler, xsp, (5 * drv_uscetohz(1000000)));
mutex_enter(&xsp->lock);
while (/* Waiting for interrupt or timeout */) cv_wait(&xsp->cv, &xsp->lock);
if (xsp->flags & TIMED_OUT) cmn_err(CE_WARN, "Device not responding");
mutex_exit(&xsp->lock);

See Also  open(9E), cv_signal(9F), cv_wait_sig(9F), delay(9F), timeout(9F)

Writing Device Drivers

Kernel Functions for Drivers 907
## Name
ureadc – add character to a uio structure

## Synopsis
```
#include <sys/uio.h>
#include <sys/types.h>

int ureadc(int c, uio_t *uio_p);
```

## Interface Level
Architecture independent level 1 (DDI/DKI).

## Parameters
- **c** The character added to the uio(9S) structure.
- **uio_p** Pointer to the uio(9S) structure.

## Description
The ureadc() function transfers the character `c` into the address space of the uio(9S) structure pointed to by `uio_p`, and updates the uio structure as for uiomove(9F).

## Return Values
0 is returned on success andEFAULT on failure.

## Context
The ureadc() function can be called from user, interrupt, or kernel context.

## See Also
uiomove(9F), uwritec(9F), iovec(9S), uio(9S)

*Writing Device Drivers*
Name  usb_alloc_request, usb_alloc_ctrl_req, usb_free_ctrl_req, usb_alloc_bulk_req, usb_free_bulk_req, usb_alloc_intr_req, usb_free_intr_req, usb_alloc_isoc_req, usb_free_isoc_req – Allocate and free USB transfer requests

Synopsis  #include <sys/usb/usba.h>

    usb_ctrl_req_t *usb_alloc_ctrl_req(dev_info_t *dip, size_t len, usb_flags_t flags);
    void usb_free_ctrl_req(usb_ctrl_req_t *request);
    usb_bulk_req_t *usb_alloc_bulk_req(dev_info_t dip, size_t len, usb_flags_t flags);
    void usb_free_bulk_req(usb_bulk_req_t *request);
    usb_intr_req_t *usb_alloc_intr_req(dev_info_t *dip, size_t len, usb_flags_t flags);
    void usb_free_intr_req(usb_intr_req_t *request);
    usb_isoc_req_t *usb_alloc_isoc_req(dev_info_t *dip, uint_t isoc_pkts_count, size_t len, usb_flags_t flags);
    void usb_free_isoc_req(usb_isoc_req_t *request);

Interface Level  Solaris DDI specific (Solaris DDI)

Parameters  For usb_alloc_ctrl_req(), usb_alloc_bulk_req() and usb_alloc_intr_req():
    dip     Pointer to the device’s dev_info structure.
    len     Length of data for this request.
    flags   Only USB_FLAGS_SLEEP is recognized. Wait for resources if not immediately 
            available.

For usb_alloc_isoc_req():
    dip     Pointer to the device’s dev_info structure.
    isoc_pkts_count  Number of isochronous packet descriptors to associate with this request. 
                     Must be greater than zero.
    len     Length of data for this isochronous request.
    flags   Only USB_FLAGS_SLEEP is recognized. Wait for resources if not 
            immediately available.

For usb_free_ctrl_req(), usb_free_bulk_req(), usb_free_intr_req() and usb_free_isoc_req():
    request  Pointer to the request structure to be freed. Can be NULL.
The `usb_alloc_ctrl_req()`, `usb_alloc_bulk_req()`, `usb_alloc_intr_req()`, and `usb_alloc_isoc_req()` functions allocate control, bulk, interrupt, or isochronous requests. Optionally, these functions can also allocate an mblk of the specified length to pass data associated with the request. (For guidelines on mblk data allocation, see the manpage for the relevant transfer function).

The `usb_alloc_isoc_req()` function also allocates a number of isochronous packet descriptors (`usb_isoc_pkt_descr_t`) specified by isoc_pkts_count to the end of the request proper (`usb_isoc_req_t`). See `usb_isoc_request(9S)` for more information on isochronous packet descriptors.

These functions always succeed when the USB_FLAGS_SLEEP flag is set, provided that they are given valid args and are not called from interrupt context.

The `usb_free_ctrl_req()`, `usb_free_bulk_req()`, `usb_free_intr_req()`, and `usb_free_isoc_req()` functions free their corresponding request. If the request's data block pointer is non-zero, the data block is also freed. For isoc requests, the array of packet descriptors is freed.

For `usb_alloc_ctrl_req()`, `usb_alloc_bulk_req()`, `usb_alloc_intr_req()` and `usb_alloc_isoc_req()`:

- **On success:** returns a pointer to the appropriate `usb_xxx_request_t`.
- **On failure:** returns `NULL`. Fails because the dip argument is invalid, USB_FLAGS_SLEEP is not set and memory is not available or because USB_FLAGS_SLEEP is set but the call was made in interrupt context.

For `usb_free_ctrl_req()`, `usb_free_bulk_req()`, `usb_free_intr_req()` and `usb_free_isoc_req()`: None.

The allocation routines can always be called from kernel and user context. They may be called from interrupt context only if USB_FLAGS_SLEEP is not specified.

The free routines may be called from kernel, user, and interrupt context.

```c
/* This allocates and initializes an asynchronous control
 * request which will pass no data. Asynchronous requests
 * are used when they cannot block the calling thread.
 */

usb_ctrl_req_t *ctrl_req;

if ((ctrl_req = usb_alloc_ctrl_req(dip, 0, 0)) == NULL) {
    return (FAILURE);
}
```
/* Now initialize. */
ctrl_req->ctrl_bmRequestType = USB_DEV_REQ_DEV_TO_HOST |
    USB_DEV_REQ_STANDARD | USB_DEV_REQ_RCPT_DEV;

ctrl_req->ctrl_bRequest = (uint8_t)USB_REQ_GET_STATUS;
...
...
ctrl_req->ctrl_callback = normal_callback;
ctrl_req->ctrl_exc_callback = exception_callback;
...
...

Attributes  See attributes(5) for descriptions of the following attributes:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ATTRIBUTE TYPE</th>
<th>ATTRIBUTE VALUE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Architecture</td>
<td>PCI-based systems</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Interface stability</td>
<td>Evolving</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Availability</td>
<td>SUNWusb</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

See Also  attributes(5), usb_get_current_frame_number(9F),
          usb_get_max_pkts_per_isoc_request(9F),
          usb_pipe_get_max_bulk_transfer_size(9F),
          usb_pipe_bulk_xfer(9F),
          usb_pipe_ctrl_xfer(9F),
          usb_pipe_intr_xfer(9F),
          usb_pipe_isoc_xfer(9F),
          usb_bulk_request(9S),
          usb_ctrl_request(9S),
          usb_intr_request(9S),
          usb_isoc_request(9S)
**Name**  
usb_client_attach, usb_client_detach – USBA framework registration of client USB drivers

**Synopsis**  
#define USBDRV_MAJOR_VER <major>  
#define USBDRV_MINOR_VER <minor>  
#include <sys/usb/usba.h>

```c
int usb_client_attach(dev_info_t *dip,  
                      uint_t version, usb_flags_t flags);

void usb_client_detach(dev_info_t *dip,  
                       usb_client_dev_data_t *dev_data);
```

**Interface Level**  
Solaris DDI specific (Solaris DDI)

**Parameters**  
For `usb_client_attach()`:

- `dip` Pointer to the device’s dev_info structure.
- `version` Must be set to USBDRV_VERSION. (See below.)
- `flags` Not used.

For `usb_client_detach()`:

- `dip` Pointer to the device’s dev_info structure.
- `dev_data` Pointer to a usb_client_dev_data_t to free. Can be NULL.

**Description**  
The `usb_client_attach()` function registers a driver with the USBA framework and must be called before any other USBA function. Usually, `usb_client_attach()` is followed by a call to `usb_get_dev_data(9F)`.

The `usb_client_detach()` function unregisters a driver with the USBA framework. The `usb_client_detach()` function releases memory for all strings, descriptors and trees set up by `usb_get_dev_data(9F)` when its dev_data argument is non-NULL. The `usb_client_detach()` function is the last USBA function a client calls before completing `detach(9E)`. It is not necessary to call `usb_client_detach()` during a suspend operation.

**VERSIONING**  
USBDRV_VERSION is a macro which creates a version number based on the USBDRV_MAJOR_VER and USBDRV_MINOR_VER definitions. It must be passed as the version argument.

For drivers version 2.0 or greater, the value of USBDRV_MAJOR_VERSION must match its corresponding USBA_MAJOR_VER value in `<sys/usb/usba.h>`, and the value of USBDRV_MINOR_VERSION must not be greater than its corresponding USBA_MINOR_VER value also in `<sys/usb/usba.h>`.
Version 0.8 drivers from previous releases are binary compatible and run on Solaris 10, but are not compilable. Version 0.8 binary compatibility will not be supported in subsequent Solaris OS releases.

Definitions of USBDRV_MAJOR_VERSION and USBDRV_MINOR_VERSION must appear in the client driver above the reference to <sys/usb/usba.h>. Note that different releases have different USBA_[MAJOR|MINOR]_VER numbers.

**Return Values**

For `usb_client_attach()`:

- **USB_SUCCESS**: Registration is successful.
- **USB_INVALID_ARGS**: `dip` is NULL.
- **USB_INVALID_CONTEXT**: Called from interrupt context. Not called from an attach routine context.
- **USB_INVALID_VERSION**: Version passed in version is invalid.
- **USB_FAILURE**: Other internal error.

For `usb_client_detach()`:

- **USB_INVALID_ARGS**: `dip` is NULL.
- **USB_INVALID_CONTEXT**: Not called from an attach routine context.

**Context**

The `usb_client_attach()` function may only be called from `attach(9E)`.

The `usb_client_detach()` function may be called only from `attach(9E)` or `detach(9E)`.

**Examples**

```c
if (usb_client_attach(dip, USBDRV_VERSION, 0) != USB_SUCCESS) {
    cmn_err (CE_WARN, "%s%d: Couldn't register USB device",
             ddi_driver_name(dip), ddi_get_instance(dip));

    return (USB_FAILURE);
}

if (usb_get_dev_data(dip, &dev_data, USB_PARSE_LVL_IF, 0) !=
    USB_SUCCESS) {
    cmn_err (CE_WARN, "%s%d: Couldn't get device descriptor data.",
             ddi_driver_name(dip), ddi_get_instance(dip));

    return (USB_FAILURE);
}
```

**Attributes**

See `attributes(5)` for descriptions of the following attributes:
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ATTRIBUTE TYPE</th>
<th>ATTRIBUTE VALUE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Architecture</td>
<td>PCI-based systems</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Interface stability</td>
<td>Evolving</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Availability</td>
<td>SUNWusb</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

See Also  attributes(5), attach(9E), detach(9E), usb_get_dev_data(9F)
**Name**    usb_clr_feature – Clear feature of USB device, interface or endpoint

**Synopsis** #include <sys/usb/usba.h>

```c
int usb_clr_feature(dev_info_t *dip,
    uint_t request_type, uint_t feature,
    uint_t which, usb_flags_t flags,
    void (*callback)(usb_pipe_handle_t pipe_handle,
        usb_opaque_t callback_arg, int rval, usb_cb_flags_t flags),
    usb_opaque_t callback_arg);
```

**Interface Level** Solaris DDI specific (Solaris DDI)

**Parameters**
- **dip**    Pointer to the device's dev_info structure.
- **pipe_handle**    Pipe handle to device, device interface or endpoint.
- **request_type**    bmRequestType to be used. One of the following:
  - USB_DEV_REQ_RCPT_DEV - Clear feature on device.
  - USB_DEV_REQ_RCPT_IF - Clear feature on interface.
- **feature**    Feature to be cleared. Can be any device-defined device-, interface-, or endpoint-specific feature, including the following which are defined in the USB 2.0 specification:
  - USB_EP_HALT - Clear a HALT on an endpoint.
  - USB_DEV_REMOTE_WAKEUP - Clear REMOTE_WAKEUP on a device.
  - USB_DEV_TEST_MODE - Clear TEST_MODE on a device.
- **which**    Device, interface or endpoint on which to clear the feature. One of:
  - Interface number, for interfaces.
  - Endpoint number, for endpoints.
  - 0 for devices.
- **flags**    USB_FLAGS_SLEEP is the only flag recognized. Wait for completion and do not call callback.
- **callback**    Callback handler to notify of asynchronous completion.
- **callback_arg**    Second argument passed to callback handler.
**Description**
The `usb_clr_feature()` function clears a specific feature of a device, interface or endpoint. This function always blocks and waits for resources if not available, regardless of the flags argument.

This call blocks for completion if USB_FLAGS_SLEEP is set in flags. It returns immediately and calls the callback upon completion if USB_FLAGS_SLEEP is not set.

**Return Values**
- **USB_SUCCESS**: Feature was successfully cleared.
- **USB_INVALID_ARGS**: `dip` argument is NULL.
- **USB_INVALID_PIPE**: `pipe_handle` argument is NULL.
- **USB_INVALID_CONTEXT**: Called from interrupt context with USB_FLAGS_SLEEP flag set.
- **USB_FAILURE**: Clearing of feature was unsuccessful.

**Context**
May always be called from user or kernel context. May be called from interrupt context only if USB_FLAGS_SLEEP is not set in flags.

If the USB_CB_ASYNC_REQ_FAILED bit is clear in usb_cb_flags_t, the callback, if supplied, can block because it is executing in kernel context. Otherwise the callback cannot block. Please see `usb_callback_flags(9S)` for more information on callbacks.

**Examples**
```c
if (usb_clr_feature(dip, pipe_handle, USB_DEV_REQ_RCPT_EP, USB_EP_HALT, data_endpoint_num, 0) == USB_FAILURE) {
    cmn_err (CE_WARN,
            "%s%d: Error clearing halt condition on data endpoint %d.",
            ddi_driver_name(dip), ddi_get_instance(dip),
            data_endpoint_num);
}
```

**Attributes**
See `attributes(5)` for descriptions of the following attributes:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ATTRIBUTE TYPE</th>
<th>ATTRIBUTE VALUE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Architecture</td>
<td>PCI-based systems</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Interface stability</td>
<td>Evolving</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Availability</td>
<td>SUNWusb</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**See Also**
`attributes(5), usb_get_status(9F), usb_pipe_reset(9F), usb_pipe_get_state(9F), usb_callback_flags(9S)`
Name  usb_create_pm_components – Create power management components for USB devices

Synopsis  #include <sys/usb/usba.h>

    int usb_create_pm_components(dev_info_t *dip, uint_t *pwrstates);

Interface Level  Solaris DDI specific (Solaris DDI)

Parameters  

    dip  Pointer to the device’s dev_info structure.

    pwrstates  Address into which a mask which lists power states capable by device is returned. This is a bitmask containing zero or more of the following values:

        USB_DEV_PWRMASK_D0  Corresponds to USB_DEV_OS_PWR_3 or full power.

        USB_DEV_PWRMASK_D1  Corresponds to USB_DEV_OS_PWR_2.

        USB_DEV_PWRMASK_D2  Corresponds to USB_DEV_OS_PWR_1.

        USB_DEV_PWRMASK_D3  Corresponds to USB_DEV_OS_PWR_0 or no power.

Description  The usb_create_pm_components() function creates pm component properties that assume the standard USB D0-D3 power levels (USB_DEV_PWR_D0 - USB_DEV_PWR_D3). See the device’s relevant USB descriptor to determine the device’s power management capabilities and account for bus-powered devices. The usb_create_pm_components() function also updates the pm-components property in the device’s dev_info structure.

    Note that these USB power levels are inverse of OS power levels. For example, USB_DEV_OS_PWR_0 and USB_DEV_PWR_D3 are equivalent levels corresponding to powered-down.

Return Values  

    USB_SUCCESS  Power management facilities in device are recognized by system.

    USB_FAILURE  An error occurred.

Context  May be called from user or kernel context.

Examples  

    uint_t *pwrstates;

    /* Hook into device’s power management. Enable remote wakeup. */
    if (usb_create_pm_components(dip, pwrstates) == USB_SUCCESS) {
        usb_handle_remote_wakeup(dip,USB_REMOTE_WAKEUP_ENABLE);
    }

Attributes  See attributes(5) for descriptions of the following attributes:
ATTRIBUTE TYPE | ATTRIBUTE VALUE
--- | ---
Architecture | PCI-based systems
Interface stability | Evolving
Availability | SUNWusb

See Also  attributes(5), usb_clr_feature(9F), usb_register_hotplug_cbs(9F), usb_get_cfg(9F), usb_get_dev_data(9F), usb_handle_remote_wakeup(9F), pm_idle_component(9F), pm_busy_component(9F), pm_raise_power(9F), pm_lower_power(9F), usb_cfg_descr(9S)
Name  usb_get_addr – Retrieve device USB address

Synopsis  
#include <sys/usb/usba.h>

    int usb_get_addr(dev_info_t *dip);

Interface Level  Solaris DDI specific (Solaris DDI)

Parameters  dip  Pointer to the device’s dev_info structure.

Description  The usb_get_addr() function returns the current USB bus address for debugging purposes. The returned address is unique for a specific USB bus, and may be replicated if multiple host controller instances are present on the system.

Return Values  On success: USB device address.

On failure: returns 0. Fails if dip is NULL.

Context  May be called from user, kernel or interrupt context.

Examples  

    int usb_addr;

    usb_addr = usb_get_addr(dip);

Attributes  See attributes(5) for descriptions of the following attributes:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ATTRIBUTE TYPE</th>
<th>ATTRIBUTE VALUE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Architecture</td>
<td>PCI-based systems</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Interface stability</td>
<td>Evolving</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Availability</td>
<td>SUNWusb</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

See Also  attributes(5), usb_pipe_open(9F)
Name  usb_get_alt_if, usb_set_alt_if, usb_get_if_number, usb_owns_device – Get and set alternate interface values

Synopsis  #include <sys/usb/usba.h>

```c
int usb_get_alt_if(dev_info_t *dip, uint_t interface_number,
                   uint_t *alternate_number, usb_flags_t flags);

int usb_set_alt_if(dev_info_t *dip, uint_t interface_number,
                   uint_t *alternate_number, usb_flags_t flags,
                   void (*callback)(usb_pipe_handle_t pipe_handle,
                                     usb_opaque_t callback_arg, int rval, usb_cb_flags_t flags),
                   usb_opaque_t callback_arg);

typedef int usb_get_if_number(dev_info_t *dip);

boolean_t usb_owns_device(dev_info_t *dip);
```

Interface Level  Solaris DDI specific (Solaris DDI)

Parameters  For `usb_get_alt_if()`:

dip       Pointer to device's dev_info structure.
interface_number       Interface of the desired alternate.
alternate_number       Address where current alternate setting is returned.
flags       No flags are recognized. Reserved for future expansion.

For `usb_set_alt_if()`:

dip       Pointer to device's dev_info structure.
interface_number       Interface of the desired alternate.
alternate_number       Alternate interface number to be set.
flags       Only USB_FLAGS_SLEEP is recognized. Wait for completion and do not call callback.
callback       Callback handler to notify of asynchronous completion.
callback_arg       Second argument passed to callback handler.

For `usb_get_if_number()`:

dip       Pointer to device's dev_info structure.
For `usb_owns_device()`:

- `dip`: Pointer to device's `dev_info` structure.

**Description**

USB devices can have multiple configurations, each with many interfaces. Within interfaces are alternate settings, and within alternate settings are endpoints.

Each interface within a configuration may be represented by the kernel as a device node. Only one set of device nodes (interfaces as determined by the configuration) can be active at one time.

Alternates to an interface represent different ways the kernel sees a device node. Only one alternate setting within an interface can be active (or selected) at one time. The functions presented in this manual page get or set interface or alternate setting information.

The `usb_get_alt_if()` function requests the device to return the current alternate setting of the given interface. This function ignores the flags argument and always blocks.

The `usb_set_alt_if()` function requests the device to set the interface and its alternate setting as specified. Because this call changes the current device's interface and sets the new interface's mode of operation as seen by the system, the driver must ensure that all pipes other than the default control pipe are closed and quiescent. To avoid contending with another driver for a different part of the device, the driver must be bound to the entire device.

If `USB_FLAGS_SLEEP` is set in flags, `usb_set_alt_if()` blocks until completed. Otherwise, `usb_set_alt_if()` returns immediately and calls the callback handler when completed.

`callback` is the asynchronous callback handler and takes the following arguments:

- `usb_pipe_handle_t pipe_handle`: Handle of the default control pipe used to perform the request.
- `usb_opaque_t callback_arg`: Callback_arg specified to `usb_set_alt_if()`.
- `int rval`: Request status.
- `usb_cb_flags_t callback_flags`: Status of the queueing operation. Can be:
  - `USB_CB_NO_INFO`: Callback was uneventful.
  - `USB_CB_ASYNC_REQ_FAILED`: Error queueing request.
  - `USB_CB_NO_RESOURCES`: Error allocating resources.

The `usb_get_if_number()` function returns the interface number, or `USB_COMBINED_NODE` or `USB_DEVICE_NODE` node indicating that the driver is bound to the entire device. (See Return Values below.)
The `usb_owns_device()` function returns `B_TRUE` if the driver of the dip argument owns the entire device, or `B_FALSE` if it owns just a particular interface.

**Return Values**

For `usb_get_alt_if()`:

- **USB_SUCCESS**: Interface’s alternate setting was successfully obtained.
- **USB_INVALID_ARGS**: Pointer to alternate_number and/or dip are NULL.
- **USB_INVALID_CONTEXT**: Called from interrupt context.
- **USB_FAILURE**: The interface number is invalid.
  
  An access error occurred.

For `usb_set_alt_if()`:

- **USB_SUCCESS**: Alternate interface was successfully set.
- **USB_INVALID_ARGS**: dip is NULL, USB_FLAGS_SLEEP is clear and callback is NULL.
- **USB_INVALID_PERM**: dip does not own the interface to be set.
- **USB_INVALID_CONTEXT**: Called from interrupt context with USB_FLAGS_SLEEP specified.
- **USB_INVALID_PIPE**: Pipe handle is NULL, invalid, or refers to a pipe that is closing or closed.
- **USB_FAILURE**: The interface number and/or alternate setting are invalid.
  
  Pipes were open.
  
  An access error occurred.

For `usb_get_if_number()`:

- **USB_COMBINED_NODE**: if the driver is responsible for the entire active device configuration. The dip doesn’t correspond to an entire physical device.
- **USB_DEVICE_NODE**: if the driver is responsible for the entire device. The dip corresponds to an entire physical device.
  
  interface number: otherwise.

For `usb_owns_device()`:

- **B_TRUE**: Driver of the dip argument owns the entire device.
- **B_FALSE**: Driver of the dip argument owns only the current interface.
The `usb_get_if_number()` and `usb_owns_device()` functions may be called from user or kernel context.

The `usb_set_alt_if()` function may always be called from user or kernel context. It may be called from interrupt context only if `USB_FLAGS_SLEEP` is not set in flags. If the `USB_CB_ASYNC_REQ_FAILED` bit is clear in `usb_cb_flags_t`, the callback, if supplied, can block because it is executing in kernel context. Otherwise the callback cannot block. Please see `usb_callback_flags(9S)` for more information on callbacks.

The `usb_get_alt_if()` function may be called from user or kernel context.

```c
/* Change alternate setting of interface 0. Wait for completion. */
if (usb_set_alt_if(
    dip, 0, new_alternate_setting_num, USB_FLAGS_SLEEP, NULL, 0) !=
    USB_SUCCESS) {
    cmn_err (CE_WARN,
        "%s%d: Error setting alternate setting on pipe",
        ddi_driver_name(dip), ddi_get_instance(dip));
    }
}
```

**Attributes**

See `attributes(5)` for descriptions of the following attributes:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ATTRIBUITE TYPE</th>
<th>ATTRIBUTE VALUE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Architecture</td>
<td>PCI-based systems</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Interface stability</td>
<td>Evolving</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Availability</td>
<td>SUNWusb</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

See Also `attributes(5), usb_pipe_ctrl_xfer(9F), usb_get_dev_data(9F), usb_get_string_descr(9F), usb_get_cfg(9F)`
usb_get_cfg, usb_set_cfg – Get and set current USB device configuration

Synopsis
#include <sys/usb/usba.h>

int usb_get_cfg(dev_info_t *dip, uint_t cfgval, usb_flags_t flags);

int usb_set_cfg(dev_info_t *dip, uint_t cfg_index, usb_flags_t flags,
                void (*callback)(usb_pipe_handle_t pipe_handle, usb_opaque_t callback_arg,
                int rval, usb_cb_flags_t flags), usb_opaque_t callback_arg);

Interface Level
Solaris DDI specific (Solaris DDI)

Parameters
For usb_get_cfg():
  *dip Pointer to device's dev_info structure.
  *cfgval Pointer to returned configuration value.
  *flags Not used. Always waits for completion.

For usb_set_cfg():
  *dip Pointer to device's dev_info structure.
  *cfg_index Desired device configuration index. Set to
      USB_DEV_DEFAULT_CONFIG_INDEX to restore default configuration.
  *flags Only USB_FLAGS_SLEEP is recognized. Wait for completion and do not
      call callback.
  *callback Callback handler to notify of asynchronous completion.
  *callback_arg Second argument passed to callback handler.

Description
The usb_get_cfg() function retrieves the current configuration. It ignores the flags argument
and always blocks while contacting the device.

The usb_set_cfg() function sets a new configuration. Because this call changes the device's
mode of operation, the device must be quiescent and have all pipes, with the exception of the
default control pipe, closed. The driver must have control over the entire device and cannot
own just a single interface on a composite device. Additionally, its device node must not be a
parent to other device nodes that can be operated by other drivers. The driver must own the
device exclusively, otherwise drivers managing other parts of the device would be affected
without their knowledge or control.

This call updates all internal USBA framework data structures, whereas issuing a raw
USB_REQ_SET_CFG device request does not. The usb_set_cfg() function is the only
supported programmatic way to change device configuration.
This call blocks if USB_FLAGS_SLEEP is set in flags. It returns immediately and calls the callback on completion if USB_FLAGS_SLEEP is not set.

Return Values

For `usb_get_cfg()`:
- **USB_SUCCESS**: New configuration is retrieved.
- **USB_INVALID_ARGS**: `cfgval` or `dip` is NULL.
- **USB_FAILURE**: Configuration cannot be retrieved.

For `usb_set_cfg()`:
- **USB_SUCCESS**: New configuration is set.
- **USB_INVALID_ARGS**: `dip` is NULL.
- **USB_FAILURE**: An illegal configuration is specified.
- **USB_FLAGS_SLEEP is clear and callback is NULL.**
- **USB_INVALID_CONTEXT**: Called from interrupt context with USB_FLAGS_SLEEP specified.
- **USB_INVALID_PERM**: Caller does not own entire device or device is a parent to child devices.
- **USB_BUSY**: One or more pipes other than the default control pipe are open on the device.
- **USB_INVALID_PIPE**: Pipe handle is NULL or invalid, or pipe is closing or closed.

Context

The `usb_get_cfg()` function may be called from user or kernel context.

The `usb_set_cfg()` function may be called from user or kernel context always. It may be called from interrupt context only if USB_FLAGS_SLEEP is not set in flags.

If the USB_CB_ASYNC_REQ_FAILED bit is clear in `usb_cb_flags_t`, the callback, if supplied, can block because it is executing in kernel context. Otherwise the callback cannot block. Please see `usb_callback_flags(9S)` for more information on callbacks.

Examples

Setting the configuration to the one at index 1 (in the array of `usb_cfg_data_t` configuration nodes as returned by `usb_get_dev_data()`), and verifying what the configuration is at that index. (See `usb_get_dev_data(9F)`).

```c
uint_t cfg_index = 1;
```
Assume all pipes other than the default control pipe are closed and make sure all requests to the default control pipe have completed.

```c
if (usb_set_cfg(dip, cfg_index, USB_FLAGS_SLEEP, NULL, 0) != USB_SUCCESS) {
    cmn_err (CE_WARN,
        "%s%d: Error setting USB device to configuration #%d",
        ddi_driver_name(dip), ddi_get_instance(dip), cfg_index);
}

if (usb_get_cfg(dip, &bConfigurationValue, 0) == USB_SUCCESS) {
    cmn_err (CE_WARN,
        "%s%d: USB device active configuration is %d",
        ddi_driver_name(dip), ddi_get_instance(dip),
        bConfigurationValue);
} else {
    ...
    ...
}
```

**Attributes**  See attributes(5) for descriptions of the following attributes:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ATTRIBUTE TYPE</th>
<th>ATTRIBUTE VALUE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Architecture</td>
<td>PCI-based systems</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Interface stability</td>
<td>Evolving</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Availability</td>
<td>SUNWusb</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**See Also** attributes(5), usb_get_alt_if(9F), usb_get_dev_data(9F), usb_get_string_descr(9F), usb_pipe_open(9F), usb_callback_flags(9S), usb_cfg_descr(9S), usb_epdescr(9S), usb_if_descr(9S)
### Name
usb_get_current_frame_number – Return current logical USB frame number

### Synopsis
```c
#include <sys/usb/usba.h>

usb_frame_number_t usb_get_current_frame_number(dev_info_t *dip);
```

### Interface Level
Solaris DDI specific (Solaris DDI)

### Parameters
- **dip**
  Pointer to the device's dev_info structure.

### Description
The `usb_get_current_frame_number()` function retrieves the current logical USB frame number.

Isochronous requests can be started on a particular numbered frame. An offset number of frames (typically between 4 and 10) can be added to the current logical frame number to specify the number of an upcoming frame to start an isochronous request.

The USB specification requires that the frame frequency (the period between start-of-frame packets) is one millisecond. The Solaris operating environment USB implementation uses a running counter of the number of milliseconds since boot as the current logical frame number.

### Return Values
On success, the `usb_get_current_frame_number()` function returns the current USB frame number. On failure it returns 0. The function fails if `dip` is NULL.

### Context
May be called from user, kernel or interrupt context.

### Examples
```c
usb_pipehandle_t handle;
usb_frame_number_t offset = 10;
usb_isoc_req_t *isoc_req;

isoc_req = usb_alloc_isoc_req(...);
...

isoc_req->isoc_frame_no = usb_get_current_frame_number(dip) + offset;
isoc_req->isoc_attributes = USB_ATTRS_ISOC_START_FRAME;
...

if (usb_pipe_isoc_xfer(handle, isoc_req, 0) != USB_SUCCESS) {
    ...
}
```

### Attributes
See `attributes(5)` for descriptions of the following attributes:
usb_get_current_frame_number(9F)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ATTRIBUTE TYPE</th>
<th>ATTRIBUTE VALUE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Architecture</td>
<td>PCI-based systems</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Interface stability</td>
<td>Evolving</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Availability</td>
<td>SUNWusb</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

See Also attributes(5), usb_alloc_isoc_req(9F), usb_get_max_pkts_per_isoc_request(9F), usb_pipe_isoc_xfer(9F), usb_pipe_get_max_bulk_transfer_size(9F), usb_isoc_request(9S)
Name  usb_get_dev_data, usb_free_dev_data, usb_free_descr_tree, usb_print_descr_tree – Retrieve device configuration information

Synopsis  #include <sys/usb/usba.h>

int usb_get_dev_data(dev_info_t *dip, usb_client_dev_data_t **dev_data,
                     usb_reg_parse_lvl_t parse_level, usb_flags_t flags);
void usb_free_dev_data(dev_info_t *dip, usb_client_dev_data_t *dev_data);
void usb_free_descr_tree(dev_info_t *dip, usb_client_dev_data_t *dev_data);
int usb_print_descr_tree(dev_info_t *dip, usb_client_dev_data_t *dev_data);

Interface Level  Solaris DDI specific (Solaris DDI)

Parameters  For usb_get_dev_data():

  dip  Pointer to device's dev_info structure.
  dev_data  Address in which pointer to info is returned.
  parse_level  Portion of device represented in the tree of parsed descriptors. See below for possible usb_reg_parse_lvl_t values and explanations.
  flags  Not used.

For usb_free_dev_data():

  dip  Pointer to device's dev_info structure.
  dev_data  Pointer to usb_client_dev_data_t to be freed.

For usb_free_descr_tree():

  dip  Pointer to device's dev_info structure.
  dev_data  Pointer to usb_client_dev_data_t containing the descriptor tree to free.

For usb_print_descr_tree():

  dip  Pointer to device's dev_info structure.
  dev_data  Pointer to usb_client_dev_data_t containing the descriptor tree to display on-screen.

Description  The usb_get_dev_data() function interrogates a device and returns its configuration information in a usb_client_dev_data_t structure. Most USBA functions require information which comes from a usb_client_dev_data_t, and all other functions in this man page operate on this structure. Please see usb_client_dev_data(9S) for a full content description. Pass the usb_client_dev_data_t structure to usb_client_detach(9F) to completely deallocate it.
A descriptor tree is included in the information returned. The `usb_reg_parse_lvl_t` type represents the extent of the device to be represented by the returned tree (2nd arg to `usb_get_dev_data`) or what is actually represented in the returned tree (dev_parse_level field of the returned `usb_client_dev_data_t`). It has the following possible values:

- **USBPARSE_LVL_NONE**: Build no tree. dev_n_cfg returns 0, dev_cfg and dev_curr_cfg are returned NULL, and the dev_curr_xxx fields are invalid.
- **USBPARSE_LVL_IF**: If configuration number and interface properties are set (as when different interfaces are viewed by the OS as different device instances), parse configured interface only. If an OS device instance is set up to represent an entire physical device, `USBPARSE_LVL_IF` works like `USBPARSE_LVL_ALL`.
- **USBPARSE_LVL_CFG**: Parse entire configuration of configured interface only. Behaves similarly to `USBPARSE_LVL_IF`, except that entire configuration is returned.
- **USBPARSE_LVL_ALL**: Parse entire device (all configurations), even when driver is bound to a single interface of a single configuration.

The `usb_free_dev_data()` function undoes what `usb_get_dev_data()` set up. It releases memory for all strings, descriptors, and trees set up by `usb_get_dev_data()`.

The `usb_free_descr_tree()` function frees the descriptor tree of its `usb_client_dev_data_t` argument, while leaving the rest of the information intact. The intent is for drivers to free memory after copying needed descriptor information from the tree. Upon return, the following `usb_client_dev_data_t` fields are modified as follows: dev_cfg is NULL, dev_n_cfg is zero and dev_parse_level is `USBPARSE_LVL_NONE`. Additionally, dev_curr_cfg is NULL and dev_curr_if is invalid.

The `usb_print_descr_tree()` function is an easy-to-use diagnostic aid which dumps the descriptor tree to the screen when the system is verbose booted (`boot -v`). Output is spaced with blank lines for readability and provides you with an on-screen look at what a device has to offer.

**Return Values**

For `usb_get_dev_data()`:

- **USB_SUCCESS**: Registration is successful.
- **USB_INVALID_ARGS**: `dip` or `dev_data` is NULL, `parse_level` is invalid.
- **USB_INVALID_CONTEXT**: Called from interrupt context.
- **USB_INVALID_VERSION**: `usb_client_attach(9F)` was not called first.
- **USB_FAILURE**: Bad descriptor info or other internal error.

For `usb_free_dev_data()`:

`None`
For `usb_free_descr_tree()`:
None, but no operation occurs if `dip` and/or `dev_data` are NULL.

For `usb_print_descr_tree()`:
- **USB_SUCCESS**: Descriptor tree dump is successful.
- **USB_INVALID_ARGS**: `dev_data` or `dip` are NULL.
- **USB_INVALID_CONTEXT**: Called from interrupt context.
- **USB_FAILURE**: Other error.

**Context**
The `usb_get_dev_data()` and `usb_print_descr_tree()` functions may be called from user or kernel context.

The `usb_free_dev_data()` and `usb_free_descr_tree()` functions may be called from user, kernel or interrupt context.

**Examples**
In this example, assume a device has the configuration shown below, and the endpoint of config 2, iface 1, alt 1 which supports intr IN transfers needs to be found. Config 2, iface 1 is the "default" config/iface for the current OS device node.

```plaintext
config 1
   iface 0
      endpt 0
config 2
   iface 0
   iface 1
      alt 0
         endpt 0
            cv 0
      alt 1
         endpt 0
         endpt 1
            cv 0
         endpt 2
      alt 2
         endpt 0
            cv 0
```

```c
usb_client_dev_data_t *dev_data;
usb_ep_descr_t *ep_descr;
usb_ep_data_t *ep_tree_node;
uint8_t interface = 1;
uint8_t alternate = 1;
uint8_t first_ep_number = 0;
```
/ * We want default config/iface, so specify USB__PARSE_LVL_IF.
 * Default config will be returned as dev_cfg[0].
 */
if (usb_get_dev_data(dip, &dev_data,
    USB_PARSE_LVL_IF, 0) != USB_SUCCESS) {
    cmn_err (CE_WARN,
        "%s%d: Couldn't get USB configuration descr tree",
        ddi_driver_name(dip), ddi_get_instance(dip));

    return (USB_FAILURE);
}
ep_tree_node = usb_lookup_ep_data(dip, dev_data, interface,
    alternate, first_ep_number, USB_EP_ATTR_INTR, USB_EP_DIR_IN);
if (ep_tree_node != NULL) {
    ep_descr = ep_tree_node->ep_descr;
} else {
    cmn_r (CE_WARN,
        "%s%d: Device is missing intr-IN endpoint",
        ddi_driver_name(dip), ddi_get_instance(dip));
    usb_free_descr_tree(dip, &dev_data);
    return (USB_FAILURE);
}

Attributes See attributes(5) for descriptions of the following attributes:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ATTRIBUTE TYPE</th>
<th>ATTRIBUTE VALUE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Architecture</td>
<td>PCI-based systems</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Interface stability</td>
<td>Evolving</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Availability</td>
<td>SUNWusb</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

See Also attributes(5), usb_client_attach(9F), usb_get_alt_if(9F), usb_get_cfg(9F),
usb_get_string_descr(9F), usb_lookup_ep_data(9F), usb_parse_data(9F),
usb_pipe_open(9F), usb_cfg_descr(9S), usb_client_dev_data(9S), usb_ep_descr(9S),
usb_ifdescr(9S), usb_string_descr(9S)
Name  
usb_get_max_pkts_per_isoc_request – Get maximum number of packets allowed per isochronous request

Synopsis  
#include <sys/usb/usba.h>

uint_t usb_get_max_pkts_per_isoc_request(dev_info_t *dip);

Interface Level  
Solaris DDI specific (Solaris DDI)

Parameters  
dip  
Pointer to the device’s dev_info structure.

Description  
The usb_get_max_pkts_per_isoc_request() function returns the maximum number of isochronous packets per request that the host control driver can support. This number can be used to determine the maximum amount of data which can be handled by a single isochronous request. That length is found by:

\[
\text{max} = \text{usb_get_max_pkts_per_isoc_request}(\text{dip}) \times \text{endpoint_max_packet_size};
\]

where endpoint_max_packet_size is the wMaxPacketSize field of the isochronous endpoint over which the transfer will take place.

Return Values  
On success, the usb_get_current_frame_number() function returns the maximum number of isochronous pkts per request. On failure it returns 0. The function fails if dip is NULL.

Context  
May be called from user, kernel or interrupt context.

Examples  
/*
* Set up to receive periodic isochronous data, requesting
* the maximum amount for each transfer.
*/

int pkt;
/* Get max packet size from endpoint descriptor. */
uint_t ep_max_pkt_size = ep_descr.wMaxPacketSize;
uint_t isoc_pkts_count = usb_get_max_pkts_per_isoc_request(dip);

/*
* Allocate an isoc request, specifying the max number of packets
* and the greatest size transfer possible.
*/
usb_isoc_req_t *isoc_req = usb_alloc_isoc_req(dip,
    isoc_pkts_count,
    isoc_pkts_count * ep_max_pkt_size,
    USB_FLAGS_SLEEP);

/* Init each packet descriptor for maximum size. */
for (pkt = 0; pkt < isoc_pkts_count; pkt++) {

"
isoc_req->isoc_pkt_descr[pkt].isoc_pkt_length = ep_max_pkt_size;
}
/* Set the length of a packet in the request too. */
isoc_req->isoc_pkts_length = ep_max_pkt_size;
/* Other isoc request initialization. */
...
...
if (usb_pipe_isoc_xfer(pipe, isoc_req, USB_FLAGS_NOSLEEP) != USB_SUCCESS) {
  ...
}

Attributes  See attributes(5) for descriptions of the following attributes:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ATTRIBUTE TYPE</th>
<th>ATTRIBUTE VALUE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Architecture</td>
<td>PCI-based systems</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Interface stability</td>
<td>Evolving</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Availability</td>
<td>SUNWUsb</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

See Also  attributes(5), usb_pipe_isoc_xfer(9F), usb_alloc_request(9F),
          usb_get_current_frame_number(9F), usb_ep_descr(9S),usb_isoc_request(9S)
Name  usb_get_status – Get status of a USB device/endpoint/interface

Synopsis  #include <sys/usb/usba.h>

int usb_get_status(dev_info_t *dip, usb_pipe_handle_t pipe_handle,
    uint_t request_type, uint_t which, uint16_t *status,
    usb_flags_t flags);

Interface Level  Solaris DDI specific (Solaris DDI)

Parameters  
  dip  Pointer to device's dev_info structure.
  pipe_handle  Default control pipe handle on which request is made.
  request_type  bmRequestType. Either:
                USB_DEV_REQ_RCPT_DEV — Get device status.
                USB_DEV_REQ_RCPT_IF — Get interface status.
                USB_DEV_REQ_RCPT_EP — Get endpoint status.
  which  Device, interface or endpoint from which to get status. Either number of
          interface or endpoint, or 0 if device status requested.
  status  Address into which the status is written.
  flags  None are recognized.

Description  The usb_get_status() function returns the status of a device, interface or endpoint. All
status requests use the default control pipe. Length of data returned is
USB_GET_STATUS_LEN bytes. Always block and wait for resources if not available,
regardless of the flags argument.

When the request_type recipient is USB_DEV_REQ_RCPT_DEV, device status is requested.
Status returned includes bits for USB_DEV_SLF_PWRD_STATUS (device is currently
self-powered) and USB_DEV_RWAKEUP_STATUS (device has remote wakeup enabled). A
set bit indicates the corresponding status.

When the request_type is USB_DEV_REQ_RCPT_EP, endpoint status is requested. Status
returned includes bits for USB_EP_HALT_STATUS (endpoint is halted). A set bit indicates
the corresponding status.

When the request_type is USB_DEV_REQ_RCPT_IF, interface status is requested and
USB_IF_STATUS (zero) is returned.
Return Values

- **USB_SUCCESS** Status returned successfully in the status argument.
- **USB_INVALID_ARGS** Status pointer and/or dip argument is NULL.
- **USB_INVALID_PIPE** Pipe handle is NULL.
- **USB_FAILURE** Status not returned successfully.

Context

May be called from user or kernel context.

Examples

```c
uint16_t status;

if (usb_get_status(
    dip, pipe_handle, USB_DEV_REQ_RCPT_DEV, 0 &status, 0) ==
    USB_SUCCESS) {
    if (status & USB_DEV_SLF_PWRD_STATUS) {
        cmn_err (CE_WARN,
            "%s%d: USB device is running on its own power.",
            ddi_driver_name(dip), ddi_get_instance(dip));
    }
}
```

Attributes

See attributes(5) for descriptions of the following attributes:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ATTRIBUTE TYPE</th>
<th>ATTRIBUTE VALUE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Architecture</td>
<td>PCI-based systems</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Interface stability</td>
<td>Evolving</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Availability</td>
<td>SUNWusb</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

See Also

attributes(5), usbclr_feature(9F), usb_get_alt_if(9F), usb_pipe_get_state(9F), usb_get_cfg(9F),
**Name**  
usb_get_string_descr – Get string descriptor from device

**Synopsis**  
#include <sys/usb/usba.h>

```c
int usb_get_string_descr(dev_info_t *dip,
    uint16_t langid, uint8_t index,
    char *buf, size_t buflen);
```

**Interface Level**  
Solaris DDI specific (Solaris DDI)

**Parameters**

- **dip**
  Pointer to the device's dev_info structure.
- **langid**
  Language ID. Currently only USB_LANG_ID (English ascii) is valid.
- **index**
  String index indicating descriptor to retrieve.
- **buf**
  Address into which the string descriptor is placed.
- **buflen**
  Size of buf in bytes.

**Description**

The `usb_get_string_descr()` function retrieves a parsed string descriptor from a device. `dip` specifies the device, while `index` indicates which descriptor to return.

String descriptors provide information about other descriptors, or information that is encoded in other descriptors, in readable form. Many descriptor types have one or more index fields which identify string descriptors. (See Sections 9.5 and 9.6 of the USB 2.0 specification.) For example, a configuration descriptor's seventh byte contains the string descriptor index describing a specific configuration.

Retrieved descriptors that do not fit into `buflen` bytes are truncated. All returned descriptors are null-terminated.

**Return Values**

- **USB_SUCCESS**
  String descriptor is returned in `buf`.
- **USB_INVALID_ARGS**
  `dip` or `buf` are NULL, or `index` or `buflen` is 0.
- **USB_FAILURE**
  Descriptor cannot be retrieved.

**Context**  
May be called from user or kernel context.

**Examples**

```c
/* Get the first string descriptor. */

    char buf[SIZE];

    if (usb_get_string_descr(
        dip, USB_LANG_ID, 0, buf, SIZE) == USB_SUCCESS) {
        cmn_err (CE_NOTE, "%s%d: %s",
            ddi_driver_name(dip), ddi_get_instance(dip), buf);
    }
```
Attributes  See attributes(5) for descriptions of the following attributes:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ATTRIBUTE TYPE</th>
<th>ATTRIBUTE VALUE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Architecture</td>
<td>PCI-based systems</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Interface stability</td>
<td>Evolving</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Availability</td>
<td>SUNWusb</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

See Also  attributes(5), usb_get_dev_data(9F), usb_stringdescr(9S)
Name  usb_handle_remote_wakeup – Enable or disable remote wakeup on USB devices

Synopsis  #include <sys/usb/usba.h>

int usb_handle_remote_wakeup(dev_info_t *dip, int cmd);

Interface Level  Solaris DDI specific (Solaris DDI)

Parameters  dip  Pointer to the device's dev_info structure.

cmd  Command. Either USB_REMOTE_WAKEUP_ENABLE or USB_REMOTE_WAKEUP_DISABLE.

Description  The usb_handle_remote_wakeup() function enables or disables remote wakeup on a USB device. This call can block.

Return Values  USB_SUCCESS  Remote wakeup is successfully enabled or disabled.

USB_FAILURE  Remote wakeup is not supported by the device. An internal error occurred.

Context  May be called from user or kernel context.

Examples  uint_t *pwrstates;

    /* Hook into device's power management. Enable remote wakeup. */
    if (usb_create_pm_components(dip, pwrstates) == USB_SUCCESS) {
        usb_handle_remote_wakeup(dip, USB_REMOTE_WAKEUP_ENABLE);
    }

Attributes  See attributes(5) for descriptions of the following attributes:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ATTRIBUTE TYPE</th>
<th>ATTRIBUTE VALUE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Architecture</td>
<td>PCI-based systems</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Interface stability</td>
<td>Evolving</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Availability</td>
<td>SUNWusb</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

See Also  attributes(5), pm_busy_component(9F), pm_idle_component(9F), pm_lower_power(9F), pm_raise_power(9F), usb_clr_feature(9F), usb_create_pm_components(9F), usb_get_cfg(9F), usb_get_dev_data(9F), usb_register_hotplug_cbs(9F), usb_cfg_descr(9S)
### Name
usb_lookup_ep_data – Lookup endpoint information

### Synopsis
```
#include <sys/usb/usba.h>

usb_ep_data_t *usb_lookup_ep_data(dev_info_t *dip,
     usb_client_dev_data_t *dev_datap, uint_t interface,
     uint_t alternate, uint_t skip, uint_t type, uint_t direction);
```

### Interface Level
Solaris DDI specific (Solaris DDI)

### Parameters
- **dip**: Pointer to the device's `dev_info` structure.
- **dev_datap**: Pointer to a `usb_client_dev_data_t` structure containing tree.
- **interface**: Number of interface in which endpoint resides.
- **alternate**: Number of interface alternate setting in which endpoint resides.
- **skip**: Number of endpoints which match the requested type and direction to skip before finding one to retrieve.
- **type**: Type of endpoint. This is one of: USB_EP_ATTR_CONTROL, USB_EP_ATTR_ISOCH, USB_EP_ATTR_BULK, or USB_EP_ATTR_INTR. Please see `usb_pipe_open(9F)` for more information.
- **direction**: Direction of endpoint, either USB_EP_DIR_OUT or USB_EP_DIR_IN. This argument is ignored for bi-directional control endpoints.

### Description
The `usb_lookup_ep_data()` function returns endpoint information from the tree embedded in client data returned from `usb_get_dev_data`. It operates on the current configuration (pointed to by the dev_curr_cfg field of the `usb_client_dev_data_t` argument). It skips the first `skip` number of endpoints it finds which match the specifications of the other arguments, and then retrieves information on the next matching endpoint it finds. Note that it does not make a copy of the data, but points to the tree itself.

### Return Values
On success: the tree node corresponding to the desired endpoint.

On failure: returns NULL. Fails if `dip` or `dev_datap` are NULL, if the desired endpoint does not exist in the tree, or no tree is present in `dev_datap`.

### Context
May be called from user, kernel or interrupt context.

### Examples
Retrieve the polling interval for the second interrupt endpoint at interface 0, alt 3:
```
uint8_t interval = 0;
usb_ep_data_t *ep_node = usb_lookup_ep_data(
     dip, dev_datap, 0, 3, 1, USB_EP_ATTR_INTR, USB_EP_DIR_IN);
if (ep_node != NULL) {
```
interval = ep_node->ep_descr.bInterval;

Retrieve the maximum packet size for the first control pipe at interface 0, alt 4:

    uint16_t maxPacketSize = 0;
    usb_ep_data_t *ep_node = usb_lookup_ep_data(
        disp, devdatap, 0, 4, 0, USB_EP_ATTR_CONTROL, 0);
    if (ep_node != NULL) {
        maxPacketSize = ep_node->ep_descr.wMaxPacketSize;
    }

Attributes  See attributes(5) for descriptions of the following attributes:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ATTRIBUTE TYPE</th>
<th>ATTRIBUTE VALUE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Architecture</td>
<td>PCI-based systems</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Interface stability</td>
<td>Evolving</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Availability</td>
<td>SUNWusb</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

See Also  attributes(5), usb_get_dev_data(9F), usb_pipe_open(9F), usb_cfg_descr(9S),
          usb_if_descr(9S), usb_ep_descr(9S)
usb_parse_data

Name
usb_parse_data – Tokenize and align the bytes of raw variable-format data

Synopsis
#include <sys/usb/usba.h>

size_t usb_parse_data(char *format, uchar_t *data,
size_t datalen, void *structure, size_t structlen);

Interface Level
Solaris DDI specific (Solaris DDI)

Parameters
format Null terminated string describing the format of the data structure for
general-purpose byte swapping. The letters “c,” “s,” “l,” and “L” represent 1, 2, 4
and 8 byte quantities, respectively. A descriptor that consists of a short and two
bytes would be described by ”scc.” A number preceding a letter serves as a
multiplier of that letter. A format equivalent to ”scc” is ”s2c.”
data Raw descriptor data to parse.
datalen Length, in bytes, of the raw descriptor data buffer.
structure Destination data buffer where parsed data is returned.
structlen Length, in bytes, of the destination data buffer. Parsed result length will not
 exceed this value.

Description
The usb_parse_data function parses data such as a variable-format class- or vendor-specific
descriptor. The function also tokenizes and aligns the bytes of raw descriptor data into fields
of a variable-format descriptor.

While the USBA framework can parse the endpoint, interface, configuration, and string
descriptors defined by the USB 2.0 specification, the format of class- or vendor-specific
descriptors cannot be explicitly defined by the specification and will be unique for each. The
format argument defines how to parse such a descriptor.

While the USB specification defines bit ordering as little-endian, this routine (like the entire
API), converts the data to the endianness of the host.

The structlen parameter defines the size of the destination data buffer. Data is truncated to this
size if the destination data buffer is too small.

Return Values
On success: Returns the size (in bytes) of the parsed data result.

On failure: Returns 0. (Same as USB_PARSE_ERROR).

Context
May be called from user, kernel or interrupt context.

Examples
/*
 * Parse raw descriptor data in buf, putting result into ret_descr.
 * ret_buf_len holds the size of ret_descr buf; routine returns
size_t size_of_returned_descr;
xxx_descr_t ret_descr;

size_of_returned_descr = usb_parse_data("ccscsc", buf, sizeof(buf), (void *)ret_descr, (sizeof)xxx_descr_t);
if (size_of_returned_descr < (sizeof (xxx_descr_t))) {
    /* Data truncated. */
}
or:

size_of_returned_descr = usb_parse_data("2cs3cs", buf, sizeof(buf), (void *)ret descr, (sizeof)xxx_descr_t);
if (size_of_returned_descr < (sizeof (xxx descr_t))) {
    /* Data truncated. */
}

Attributes See attributes(5) for descriptions of the following attributes:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ATTRIBUTE TYPE</th>
<th>ATTRIBUTE VALUE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Architecture</td>
<td>PCI-based systems</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Interface stability</td>
<td>Evolving</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Availability</td>
<td>SUNWusb</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

See Also attributes(5), usb_get_dev_data(9F), usb_get_string_descr(9F), usb_get_cfg(9F)
Name  usb_pipe_bulk_xfer – USB bulk transfer function

Synopsis  

```c
#include <sys/usb/usba.h>

int usb_pipe_bulk_xfer(usb_pipe_handle_t pipe_handle,
                        usb_bulk_req_t *request, usb_flags_t flags);
```

Interface Level  Solaris DDI specific (Solaris DDI)

Parameters  

- **pipe_handle**  
  Bulk pipe handle on which request is made.

- **request**  
  Pointer to bulk transfer request.

- **flags**  
  USB_FLAGS_SLEEP is the only flag recognized. Wait for request to complete.

Description  

The `usb_pipe_bulk_xfer()` function requests the USBA framework to perform a transfer through a USB bulk pipe. The request is passed to the host controller driver (HCD), which performs the necessary transactions to complete the request. Requests are synchronous when USB_FLAGS_SLEEP has been specified in flags. Calls for synchronous requests will not return until their transaction has completed. Asynchronous requests (made without specifying the USB_FLAGS_SLEEP flag) notify the caller of their completion via a callback function.

Requests for bulk transfers must have mblk's attached to store data. Allocate an mblk for data when a request is allocated via `usb_alloc_bulk_req(9F)` by passing a positive value for the `len` argument.

Return Values  

- **USB_SUCCESS**  
  Transfer was successful.

- **USB_INVALID_ARGS**  
  Request is NULL.

- **USB_INVALID_CONTEXT**  
  Called from interrupt context with the USB_FLAGS_SLEEP flag set.

- **USB_INVALID_REQUEST**  
  The request has been freed or otherwise invalidated.

  A set of conflicting attributes were specified. See `usb_bulk_request(9S)`.

  The normal and/or exception callback was NULL and USB_FLAGS_SLEEP was not set.

  Data space is not provided to a bulk request:

  ```c
  (bulk_data = NULL or bulk_len = 0)
  ```

- **USB_INVALID_PIPE**  
  Pipe handle is NULL or invalid.
Pipe is closing or closed.

USB PIPE ERROR
Pipe handle refers to a pipe which is in the USB_PIPE_STATE_ERROR state.

USB_NO_RESOURCES
Memory, descriptors or other resources are unavailable.

USB_HC_HARDWARE_ERROR
Host controller is in error state.

USB_FAILURE
An asynchronous transfer failed or an internal error occurred.

A bulk request requested too much data:

(length > usb_get_max_bulk_xfer size())

The pipe is in an unsuitable state (error, busy, not ready).

Additional status information may be available in the bulk_completion_reason and
bulk_cb_flags fields of the request. Please see usb_completion_reason(9S) and
usb_callback_flags(9S) for more information.

Context
May be called from kernel or user context without regard to arguments. May be called from
interrupt context only when the USB_FLAGS_SLEEP flag is clear.

Examples
/* Allocate, initialize and issue a synchronous bulk request. */

usb_bulk_req_t bulk_req;
mblk_t *mblk;

bulk_req = usb_alloc_bulk_req(dip, bp->b_count, USB_FLAGS_SLEEP);

bulk_req->bulk_attributes = USB_ATTRS_AUTOCLEARING;
mblk = bulk_req->bulk_data;
bcopy(buffer, mblk->b_wptr, bp->b_count);
mblk->b_wptr += bp->b_count;

if ((rval = usb_pipe_bulk_xfer(pipe, bulk_req, USB_FLAGS_SLEEP))
   != USB_SUCCESS) {
    cmn_err (CE_WARN, "%s%d: Error writing bulk data. ",
             ddi_driver_name(dip), ddi_get_instance(dip));
}

Attributes
See attributes(5) for descriptions of the following attributes:
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ATTRIBUTE TYPE</th>
<th>ATTRIBUTE VALUE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Architecture</td>
<td>PCI-based systems</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Interface stability</td>
<td>Evolving</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Availability</td>
<td>SUNWusb</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

See Also  
attributes(5), usb_alloc_request(9F), usb_getCfg(9F), usb_get_status(9F),usb_pipe_ctrl_xfer(9F), usb_pipe_get_state(9F), usb_pipe_intr_xfer(9F),usb_pipe_isoc_xfer(9F), usb_pipe_open(9F), usb_pipe_reset(9F),usb_bulk_request(9S), usb_callback_flags(9S), usb_completion_reason(9S),usb_ctrl_request(9S), usb_intr_request(9S), usb_isoc_request(9S)
Name  usb_pipe_close – Close and cleanup a USB device pipe

Synopsis  `#include <sys/usb/usba.h>`

```c
void usb_pipe_close(dev_info_t *dip, usb_pipe_handle_t pipe_handle,
                    usb_flags_t flags,
                    void (*callback)(usb_pipe_handle_t pipe_handle,
                                    usb_opaque_t arg, int rval,
                                    usb_cb_flags_t flags),
                    usb_opaque_t callback_arg);
```

Interface Level  Solaris DDI specific (Solaris DDI)

Parameters  
- `dip`  Pointer to the device’s dev_info structure.
- `pipe_handle`  Handle of pipe to close. Cannot be a handle to the default control pipe.
- `flags`  USB_FLAGS_SLEEP is the only flag recognized. Set it to wait for resources, for pipe to become free, and for all pending request callbacks to complete.
- `callback`  This function is called on completion if the USB_FLAGS_SLEEP flag is not specified. Mandatory if the USB_FLAGS_SLEEP flag has not been specified.
- `callback_arg`  Second argument to callback function.

Description  
The `usb_pipe_close()` function closes the pipe pointed to by `pipe_handle`, releases all related resources and then frees the pipe handle. This function stops polling if the pipe to be closed is an interrupt-IN or isochronous-IN pipe. The default control pipe cannot be closed.

Pipe cleanup includes waiting for the all pending requests in the pipe to finish, and then flushing residual requests remaining after waiting for several seconds. Exception handlers of flushed requests are called with a completion reason of USB_CR_FLUSHED.

If USB_FLAGS_SLEEP is specified in `flags`, wait for all cleanup operations to complete before calling the callback handler and returning.

If USB_FLAGS_SLEEP is not specified in `flags`, an asynchronous close (to be done in a separate thread) is requested. Return immediately. The callback handler is called after all pending operations are completed.

The `callback` parameter is the callback handler and takes the following arguments:

- `usb_pipe_handle_t pipe_handle`  Handle of the pipe to close.
- `usb_opaque_t callback_arg`  Callback_arg specified to `usb_pipe_close()`.
- `int rval`  Return value of close operation
- `usb_cb_flags_t callback_flags`  Status of queueing operation. Can be:
USB_CB_NO_INFO  Callback was uneventful.
USB_CB_ASYNC_REQ_FAILED Error starting asynchronous request.

**Return Values**  Status is returned to the caller via the callback handler’s rval argument. Possible callback handler rval argument values are:

- **USB_INVALID_PIPE**  Pipe handle specifies a pipe which is closed or closing.
- **USB_INVALID_ARGS**  dip or pipe_handle arguments are NULL.
- **USB_INVALID_CONTEXT**  Called from interrupt context.
- **USB_INVALID_PERM**  Pipe handle specifies the default control pipe.
- **USB_FAILURE**  Asynchronous resources are unavailable. In this case, USB_CB_ASYNC_REQ_FAILED is passed in as the callback_flags arg to the callback handler.

Exception handlers of any queued requests which were flushed are called with a completion reason of USB_CR_FLUSHED. Exception handlers of periodic pipe requests which were terminated are called with USB_CR_PIPE_CLOSING.

Note that messages mirroring the above errors are logged to the console logfile on error. (This provides status for calls which otherwise could provide status).

**Context**  May be called from user or kernel context regardless of arguments. May not be called from a callback executing in interrupt context. Please see **usb_callback_flags**(9S) for more information on callbacks.

If the USB_CB_ASYNC_REQ_FAILED bit is clear in usb_cb_flags_t, the callback, if supplied, can block because it is executing in kernel context. Otherwise the callback cannot block. Please see **usb_callback_flags**(9S) for more information on callbacks.

**Examples**  /* Synchronous close of pipe. */
usb_pipe_close(dip, pipe, USB_FLAGS_SLEEP, NULL, NULL);

----------

/* Template callback. */
void close_callback(usb_pipe_handle_t, usb_opaque_t, usb_cb_flags_t);

/* Asynchronous close of pipe. */
usb_pipe_close(dip, pipe, 0, close_callback, callback_arg);
Attributes  See attributes(5) for descriptions of the following attributes:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ATTRIBUTE TYPE</th>
<th>ATTRIBUTE VALUE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Architecture</td>
<td>PCI-based systems</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Interface stability</td>
<td>Evolving</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Availability</td>
<td>SUNWusb</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

See Also  attributes(5), usb_get_status(9F), usb_pipe_drain_reqs(9F), usb_pipe_get_state(9F), usb_pipe_open(9F), usb_pipe_reset(9F), usb_callback_flags(9S)
usb_pipe_ctrl_xfer(9F)

Name   usb_pipe_ctrl_xfer, usb_pipe_ctrl_xfer_wait – USB control pipe transfer functions

Synopsis  #include <sys/usb/usba.h>

int usb_pipe_ctrl_xfer(usb_pipe_handle_t pipe_handle,
                       usb_ctrl_req_t *request,
                       usb_flags_t flags);

int usb_pipe_ctrl_xfer_wait(usb_pipe_handle_t pipe_handle,
                            usb_ctrl_setup_t *setup,
                            mblk_t **data, usb_cr_t *completion_reason,
                            usb_cb_flags_t *cb_flags,
                            usb__flags_t flags);

Interface Level Solaris DDI specific (Solaris DDI)

Parameters For usb_pipe_ctrl_xfer():

pipe_handle  Control pipe handle on which request is made.
request      Pointer to control transfer request.
flags        USB_FLAGS_SLEEP is the only flag recognized. Wait for all pending request callbacks to complete.

For usb_pipe_ctrl_xfer_wait():

pipe_handle  Control pipe handle on which request is made.
setup        Pointer to setup parameters. (See below.)
data         Pointer to mblk containing data bytes to transfer with command. Ignored if NULL.
completion_reason Returns overall completion status. Ignored if NULL. Please see usb_callback_flags(9S) for more information.
callback_flags Returns flags set either during autoclearing or some other callback, which indicate recovery handling done in callback. Ignored if NULL.
flags        No flags are recognized. Reserved for future expansion.

Description The usb_pipe_ctrl_xfer() function requests the USBA framework to perform a transfer through a USB control pipe. The request is passed to the host controller driver (HCD), which performs the necessary transactions to complete the request. Requests are synchronous when USB_FLAGS_SLEEP is specified in flags; calls for synchronous requests do not return until their transaction is completed. Asynchronous requests (made without specifying the USB_FLAGS_SLEEP flag) notifies the caller of their completion via a callback function.
The `usb_pipe_ctrl_xfer_wait()` function is a wrapper around `usb_pipe_ctrl_xfer()` that performs allocation and deallocation of all required data structures, and a synchronous control-pipe transfer. It takes a `usb_ctrl_setup_t` containing most USB setup parameters as an argument:

```
uchar_t bmRequestType /* characteristics of request. */
/* (See USB 2.0 spec, section 9.3). */
/* Combine one direction of: */
/* USB_DEV_REQ_HOST_TO_DEV */
/* USB_DEV_REQ_DEV_TO_HOST */
/* with one request type of: */
/* USB_DEV_REQ_TYPE_STANDARD */
/* USB_DEV_REQ_TYPE_CLASS */
/* USB_DEV_REQ_TYPE_VENDOR */
/* with one recipient type of: */
/* USB_DEV_REQ_RCPT_DEV */
/* USB_DEV_REQ_RCPT_IF */
/* USB_DEV_REQ_RCPT_EP */
/* USB_DEV_REQ_RCPT_OTHER. */

uchar_t bRequest /* request or command. */
/* (See USB 2.0 spec, section */
/* 9.3 for standard commands.) */

uint16_t wValue /* value which varies according to */
/* the command (bRequest). */

uint16_t wIndex /* value which varies according to */
/* the command, typically used to */
/* pass an index or offset. */

uint16_t wLength /* number of data bytes to transfer */
/* with command, if any. Same as */
/* size of mblk "data" below. */

usb_req_attrs_t attrs; /* required request attributes */
```

Please see `usb_request_attributes(9S)`, or refer to Section 5.5 of the USB 2.0 specification for more information on these parameters. (The USB 2.0 specification is available at www.usb.org.)

Mblks for data are allocated optionally when a request is allocated via `usb_alloc_ctrl_req(9F)` by passing a positive value for the `len` argument. Control requests passing or receiving no supplemental data need not allocate an mblk.

**Return Values**

For `usb_pipe_ctrl_xfer()`:

- **USB_SUCCESS** Transfer was successful.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Error Code</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>USB_INVALID_ARGS</td>
<td>Request is NULL.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>USB_INVALID_CONTEXT</td>
<td>Called from interrupt context with the USB_FLAGS_SLEEP flag set.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>USB_INVALID_REQUEST</td>
<td>The request has been freed or otherwise invalidated.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
|                             | A set of conflicting attributes were specified. See `usb_request_attributes(9S)`.
|                             | The normal and/or exception callback is NULL and USB_FLAGS_SLEEP is not set.|
|                             | Data space not provided to a control request while ctrl_wLength is nonzero.|
| USB_INVALID_PIPE            | Pipe handle is NULL or invalid.                                            |
|                             | Pipe is closing or closed.                                                  |
| USB_NO_RESOURCES            | Memory, descriptors or other resources unavailable.                         |
| USB_HC_HARDWARE_ERROR       | Host controller is in error state.                                         |
| USB_FAILURE                 | An asynchronous transfer failed or an internal error occurred.             |
|                             | The pipe is in an unsuitable state (error, busy, not ready).               |

Additional status information may be available in the ctrl_completion_reason and ctrl_cb_flags fields of the request. Please see `usb_callback_flags(9S)` and `usb_completion_reason(9S)` for more information.

For `usb_pipe_ctrl_xfer_wait()`:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Error Code</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>USB_SUCCESS</td>
<td>Request was successful.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>USB_INVALID_CONTEXT</td>
<td>Called from interrupt context.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>USB_INVALID_ARGS</td>
<td>dip is NULL.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Any error code returned by `usb_pipe_ctrl_xfer()`. Additional status information may be available in the ctrl_completion_reason and ctrl_cb_flags fields of the request. Please see `usb_callback_flags(9S)` and `usb_completion_reason(9S)` for more information.
The `usb_pipe_ctrl_xfer()` function may be called from kernel or user context without regard to arguments and from the interrupt context only when the USB_FLAGS_SLEEP flag is clear.

The `usb_pipe_ctrl_xfer_wait()` function may be called from kernel or user context.

**Examples**

/* Allocate, initialize and issue a synchronous control request. */

```c
usb_ctrl_req_t ctrl_req;
void control_pipe_exception_callback(
    usb_pipe_handle_t, usb_ctrl_req_t*);

ctrl_req = usb_alloc_ctrl_req(dip, 0, USB_FLAGS_SLEEP);

ctrl_req->ctrl_bmRequestType = USB_DEV_REQ_HOST_TO_DEV |
    USB_DEV_REQ_TYPE_CLASS | USB_DEV_REQ_RCPT_OTHER;

ctrl_req->ctrl_bRequest = (uint8_t)USB_PRINTER_SOFT_RESET;
ctrl_req->ctrl_exc_cb = control_pipe_exception_callback;
...
...
if ((rval = usb_pipe_ctrl_xfer(pipe, ctrl_req, USB_FLAGS_SLEEP))
   != USB_SUCCESS) {
    cmn_err (CE_WARN, "%s%d: Error issuing USB cmd.",
             ddi_driver_name(dip), ddi_get_instance(dip));
}

---------

/*
 * Allocate, initialize and issue an asynchronous control request to
 * read a configuration descriptor.
 */

usb_ctrl_req_t *ctrl_req;
void control_pipe_normal_callback(
    usb_pipe_handle_t, usb_ctrl_req_t*);
void control_pipe_exception_callback(
    usb_pipe_handle_t, usb_ctrl_req_t*);
struct buf *bp = ...

ctrl_req =
    usb_alloc_ctrl_req(dip, sizeof(usb_cfg_descr_t), USB_FLAGS_SLEEP);

ctrl_req->ctrl_bmRequestType = USB_DEV_REQ_DEV_TO_HOST |
    USB_DEV_REQ_TYPE_STANDARD | USB_DEV_REQ_RCPT_DEV;
ctrl_req->ctrl_wLength = sizeof(usb_cfg_descr_t);
```
ctrl_req->ctrl_wValue = USB_DESCR_TYPE_SETUP_CFG | 0;
ctrl_req->ctrl_bRequest = (uint8_t)USB_REQ_GET_DESCR;
ctrl_req->ctrl_cb = control_pipe_normal_callback;
ctrl_req->ctrl_exc_cb = control_pipe_exception_callback;

/* Make buf struct available to callback handler. */
ctrl_req->ctrl_client_private = (usb_opaque_t)bp;
...
...
if ((rval = usb_pipe_ctrl_xfer(pipe, ctrl_req, USB_FLAGS_NOSLEEP))
    != USB_SUCCESS) {
    cmn_err (CE_WARN, "%s%d: Error issuing USB cmd. ",
              ddi_driver_name(dip), ddi_get_instance(dip));
}

-------

/* Call usb_pipe_ctrl_xfer_wait() to get device status. */

mblk_t *data;
usb_cr_t completion_reason;
usb_cb_flags_t callback_flags;
usb_ctrl_setup_t setup_params = {
    USB_DEV_REQ_DEV_TO_HOST | /* bmRequestType */
    USB_DEV_REQ_TYPE_STANDARD | USB_DEV_REQ_RCPT_DEV,
    USB_REQ_GET_STATUS, /* bRequest */
    0, /* wValue */
    0, /* wIndex */
    USB_GET_STATUS_LEN, /* wLength */
    0 /* attributes. */
};

if (usb_pipe_ctrl_xfer_wait(
    pipe,
    &setup_params,
    &data,
    &completion_reason,
    &callback_flags,
    0) != USB_SUCCESS) {
    cmn_err (CE_WARN, "%s%d: USB get status command failed: ",
             "reason=0x%x callback_flags=0x%x",
             ddi_driver_name(dip), ddi_get_instance(dip),
             completion_reason, callback_flags);
    return (EIO);
}
/* Check data length. Should be USB_GET_STATUS_LEN (2 bytes). */
length_returned = data->b_wptr - data->b_rptr;
if (length_returned != USB_GET_STATUS_LEN) {
    cmn_err (CE_WARN,
            "%s%d: USB get status command returned %d bytes of data.",
            ddi_driver_name(dip), ddi_get_instance(dip), length_returned);
    return (EIO);
}

/* Retrieve data in endian neutral way. */
status = (*(data->b_rptr + 1) << 8) | *(data->b_rptr);

Attributes  See attributes(5) for descriptions of the following attributes:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ATTRIBUTE TYPE</th>
<th>ATTRIBUTE VALUE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Architecture</td>
<td>PCI-based systems</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Interface stability</td>
<td>Evolving</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Availability</td>
<td>SUNWusb</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

See Also  attributes(5), usb_alloc_request(9F), usb_get_cfg(9F), usb_get_status(9F),
          usb_pipe_bulk_xfer(9F), usb_pipe_intr_xfer(9F), usb_pipe_isoc_xfer(9F),
          usb_pipe_open(9F), usb_pipe_reset(9F), usb_pipe_get_state(9F),
          usb_bulk_request(9S), usb_callback_flags(9S), usb_ctrl_request(9S),
          usb_completion_reason(9S), usb_intr_request(9S), usb_isoc_request(9S)
usb_pipe_drain_reqs(9F)

Name
usb_pipe_drain_reqs – Allow completion of pending pipe requests

Synopsis
#include <sys/usb/usba.h>

int usb_pipe_drain_reqs(dev_info_t *dip, usb_pipe_handle_t pipe_handle,
    uint_t timeout, usb_flags_t usb_flags,
    void (*callback)(usb_pipe_handle_t pipe_handle,
        usb_opaque_t callback_arg, int rval, usb_cb_flags_t flags),
    usb_opaque_t callback_arg);

Interface Level
Solaris DDI specific (Solaris DDI)

Parameters
dip Pointer to the device’s dev_info structure.
pipe_handle Handle of the pipe containing pending requests.
timeout Maximum wait time for requests to drain. Must be a non-negative value in
       seconds. Zero specifies no timeout.
flags USB_FLAGS_SLEEP is the only flag recognized. Wait for completion and do
       not call callback.
callback Callback handler to notify of asynchronous completion.
callback_arg Second argument passed to callback function.

Description
The usb_pipe_drain_reqs() function provides waits for pending requests to complete and
then provides synchronous or asynchronous notification that all pending requests on a
non-shared pipe indicated by pipe_handle have completed. For a shared pipe (such as the
default control pipe used by multiple drivers each managing one interface of a device), this
function provides notification that all pending requests on that pipe that are associated with a
given dip are completed.

The usb_pipe_drain_reqs() function can be used to notify a close procedure when the
default control pipe is clear during device closure, thereby allowing the close procedure to
continue safely. Normally, a synchronous call to usb_pipe_close(9F) allows all requests in a
pipe to finish before returning. However, a client driver cannot close the default control pipe.

If USB_FLAGS_SLEEP is set in flags, block until all pending requests are completed.
Otherwise, return immediately and call the callback handler when all pending requests are
completed.

The callback parameter accepts the asynchronous callback handler, which takes the following
arguments:

    usb_pipe_handle_t default_pipe_handle Handle of the pipe to drain.
usb_opaque_t callback_arg

callback_arg specified to
usb_pipe_drain_reqs().

int rval

Request status.

usb_cb_flags_t callback_flags

Status of the queueing operation. Can be:

USB_CB_NO_INFO Callback was uneventful.

USB_CB_ASYNC_REQ_FAILED Error starting asynchronous request.

USB_SUCCESS Request is successful.

USB_INVALID_ARGS dip argument is NULL. USB_FLAGS_SLEEP is clear and callback is NULL.

USB_INVALID_CONTEXT Called from callback context with the USB_FLAGS_SLEEP flag set.

USB_INVALID_PIPE Pipe is not open, is closing or is closed.

Return Values

USB_SUCCESS Request is successful.

USB_INVALID_ARGS dip argument is NULL. USB_FLAGS_SLEEP is clear and callback is NULL.

USB_INVALID_CONTEXT Called from callback context with the USB_FLAGS_SLEEP flag set.

USB_INVALID_PIPE Pipe is not open, is closing or is closed.

Context

May be called from user or kernel context.

If the USB_CB_ASYNC_REQ_FAILED bit is clear in usb_cb_flags_t, the callback, if supplied, can block because it is executing in kernel context. Otherwise the callback cannot block. Please see usb_callback_flags(9S) for more information on callbacks.

Examples

```c
mydev_detach(dev_info_t *dip, ddi_detach_cmd_t cmd)
{
   ...
   ...

   mydev_state->pipe_state = CLOSED;

   /* Wait for pending requests of a pipe to finish. Don’t timeout. */
   (void) usb_pipe_drain_reqs(
      dip, pipe_handle, 0, USB_FLAGS_SLEEP, NULL, 0);

   /*
      * Dismantle streams and tear down this instance,
      * now that all requests have been sent.
      */
   qprocsoff(q);
   ...
```
For pipes other than the default control pipe, it is recommended to close the pipe using a synchronous `usb_pipe_close()`. `usb_pipe_close()` with the USB_FLAGS_SLEEP flag allows any pending requests in that pipe to complete before returning.

Do not call `usb_pipe_drain_reqs()` while additional requests are being submitted by a different thread. This action can stall the calling thread of `usb_pipe_drain_reqs()` unnecessarily.

**Attributes**  See `attributes(5)` for descriptions of the following attributes:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ATTRIBUTE TYPE</th>
<th>ATTRIBUTE VALUE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Architecture</td>
<td>PCI-based systems</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Interface stability</td>
<td>Evolving</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Availability</td>
<td>SUNWusb</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**See Also**  `attributes(5), usb_pipe_close(9F), usb_pipe_reset(9F), usb_callback_flags(9S)`
**Name**  
`usb_pipe_get_max_bulk_transfer_size` – Get maximum bulk transfer size

**Synopsis**  
```c
#include <sys/usb/usba.h>

int usb_pipe_get_max_bulk_transfer_size(dev_info_t dip, size_t *size);
```

**Interface Level**  
Solaris DDI specific (Solaris DDI)

**Parameters**
- `dip`  
  Pointer to the device's `dev_info` structure.
- `size`  
  Returns the bulk transfer size.

**Description**  
The `usb_pipe_get_max_bulk_transfer_size()` function returns the maximum data transfer size in bytes that the host controller driver can support per bulk request. This information can be used to limit or break down larger requests to manageable sizes.

**Return Values**  
- `USB_SUCCESS`  
  Size is returned in `size` argument.
- `USB_INVALID_ARGS`  
  `dip` and/or `size` argument is NULL.
- `USB_FAILURE`  
  Size could not be returned. Zero is returned in `size` arg.

**Context**  
May be called from user, kernel or interrupt context.

**Examples**  
```c
int xxx_attach(dev_info_t *dip, int command)
{
    ...
    usb_pipe_get_max_bulk_transfer_size(dip, &state->max_xfer_size);
    ...
}

void xxx_minphys(struct buf bp)
{
    ...
    if (bp->b_bcount > state->max_xfer_size) {
        bp->b_bcount = state->max_xfer_size;
    }
    ...
}
```

**Attributes**  
See `attributes(5)` for descriptions of the following attributes:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Attribute Type</th>
<th>Attribute Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Architecture</td>
<td>PCI-based systems</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**See Also**  
attributes(5), usb_pipe_bulk_xfer(9F), usb_alloc_request(9F), usb_bulk_request(9S)
Name  usb_pipe_get_state – Return USB pipe state

Synopsis  #include <sys/usb/usba.h>

```c
int usb_pipe_get_state(usb_pipe_handle_t pipe_handle, usb_pipe_state_t *pipe_state, usb_flags_t usb_flags);
```

Interface Level  Solaris DDI specific (Solaris DDI)

Parameters  
- `pipe_handle` Handle of the pipe to retrieve the state.
- `pipe_state` Pointer to where pipe state is returned.
- `usb_flags` No flags are recognized. Reserved for future expansion.

Description  The `usb_pipe_get_state()` function retrieves the state of the pipe referred to by `pipe_handle` into the location pointed to by `pipe_state`.

Possible pipe states are:
- USB_PIPE_STATE_CLOSED: Pipe is closed.
- USB_PIPE_STATE_ACTIVE: Pipe is active and can send/receive data. Polling is active for isochronous and interrupt pipes.
- USB_PIPE_STATE_IDLE: Polling is stopped for isochronous and interrupt-IN pipes.
- USB_PIPE_STATE_ERROR: An error occurred. Client must call `usb_pipe_reset()`. Note that this status is not seen by a client driver if USB_ATTRS_AUTOCLEARING is set in the request attributes.
- USB_PIPE_STATE_CLOSING: Pipe is being closed. Requests are being drained from the pipe and other cleanup is in progress.

Return Values  
- USB_SUCCESS: Pipe state returned in second argument.
- USB_INVALID_ARGS: `pipe_state` argument is NULL.
- USB_INVALID_PIPE: `pipe_handle` argument is NULL.

Context  May be called from user, kernel or interrupt context.

Examples  
```c
usb_pipe_handle_t pipe;
usb_pipe_state_t state;

/* Recover if the pipe is in an error state. */
if ((usb_pipe_get_state(pipe, &state, 0) == USB_SUCCESS) &&
    (state == USB_PIPE_STATE_ERROR)) {
    cmn_err (CE_WARN, "%s%d: USB Pipe error.\n",
```
ddi_driver_name(dip), ddi_get_instance(dip));
    do_recovery();
}

**Attributes**  See attributes(5) for descriptions of the following attributes:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ATTRIBUTE TYPE</th>
<th>ATTRIBUTE VALUE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Architecture</td>
<td>PCI-based systems</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Interface stability</td>
<td>Evolving</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Availability</td>
<td>SUNWusb</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**See Also**  attributes(5), usb_clr_feature(9F), usb_get_cfg(9F), usb_get_status(9F),
              usb_pipe_close(9F), usb_pipe_ctrl_xfer(9F),usb_pipe_open(9F),usb_pipe_reset(9F)
usb_pipe_intr_xfer, usb_pipe_stop_intr_polling – USB interrupt transfer and polling functions

#include <sys/usb/usba.h>

int usb_pipe_intr_xfer(usb_pipe_handle_t pipe_handle, usb_intr_req_t *request, usb_flags_t flags);

void usb_pipe_stop_intr_polling(usb_pipe_handle_t pipe_handle, usb__flags_t flags);

Solaris DDI specific (Solaris DDI)

For usb_pipe_intr_xfer():

pipe_handle
Interrupt pipe handle on which request is made.

request
Pointer to interrupt transfer request.

flags
USB_FLAGS_SLEEP is the only flag recognized. Wait for needed resources if unavailable. For requests specifying the USB_ATTRS_ONE_XFER attribute, wait for the request to complete.

For usb_pipe_stop_intr_polling():

pipe_handle
Interrupt pipe handle on which to stop polling for data.

flags
USB_FLAGS_SLEEP is the only flag recognized. Wait for polling to stop.

The usb_pipe_intr_xfer() function requests the USBA framework to perform a transfer through a USB interrupt pipe. The request is passed to the host controller driver (HCD), which performs the necessary transactions to complete the request.

There are three categories of interrupt transfers: periodic or polled interrupt-IN, single-transfer interrupt-IN, and (single-transfer) interrupt-OUT.

Periodic or polled interrupt-IN transfers execute on input requests which do not have the USB_ATTRS_ONE_XFER attribute set. One request enables repetitive transfers at a periodic rate set by the endpoint's bInterval. There can be only one interrupt-IN request submitted at a time.

Periodic interrupt-IN transfers are always asynchronous. Client driver notification of new data is always via a callback. The USB_FLAGS_SLEEP flag is only to wait for resources to become available. Callbacks must always be in place to receive transfer completion notification. Please see usb_callback_flags(9S) for details on USB callbacks.
Calls made to `usb_pipe_intr_xfer()` for starting input polling need allocate only one request. The USBA framework allocates a new request each time polling has new data to return. (Note that each request returned must be freed via `usb_free_intr_req()`. Specify a zero length when calling `usb_alloc_intr_req()` to allocate the original request, since it will not be used to return data. Set the `intr_len` in the request to specify how much data can be returned per polling interval.

The original request passed to `usb_pipe_intr_xfer()` is used to return status when polling is terminated, or on an error condition when the `USB_ATTRS_AUTOCLEARING` attribute is set for the request. If autoclearing is not set, the current (non-original) request is returned on error. Call `usb_pipe_reset(9F)` to reset the pipe and get back the original request in this case. The `USB_CR_STOPPED_POLLING` flag is always set for callbacks where the original request is returned.

Interrupt-IN requests which have the `USB_ATTRS_ONE_XFER` attribute perform a single transfer. Such requests are synchronous when the `USB_FLAGS_SLEEP` flag is specified. Calls for synchronous requests do not return until their transaction is complete, and their callbacks are optional. The request is returned to the client through the normal or the exception completion callback to signal either normal completion or an error condition.

Interrupt-OUT requests always set up for a single transfer. However, multiple requests can be queued and execute in periodic fashion until depleted.

Interrupt-OUT transfers are synchronous when the `USB_FLAGS_SLEEP` flag is set in the request’s flags. Calls for synchronous transfers will not return until their transaction has completed. Calls for asynchronous transfers notify the client driver of transaction completion via a normal callback, or error completion via an exception callback.

The `usb_pipe_stop_intr_polling()` function terminates polling on interrupt-IN pipes and does the following:

1. Cease polling.
2. Allow any requests-in-progress to complete and be returned to the client driver through the normal callback mechanism.
3. Idle the pipe.
4. Return the original polling request to the client driver through an exception callback with a completion reason of `USB_CR_STOPPED_POLLING`.

The client driver may restart polling from an exception callback only if the callback corresponds to an original request. The callback handler checks for the following completion reasons to ensure that a callback corresponds to an original request:

```c
USB_CR_STOPPED_POLLING,
USB_CR_PIPE_RESET,
USB_CR_PIPE_CLOSING,
USB_CR_NOT_SUPPORTED
```
The callback handler also checks the request's intr_data field to mark original polling requests, when the requests are created with a zero len argument. In this case, a NULL intr_data field distinguishes a returned original request from a request allocated by the framework during polling.

Mbsts for data for interrupt-OUT requests are allocated when a request is allocated via \texttt{usb_alloc_intr_req(9F)} by passing a positive value for the \texttt{len} argument.

\textbf{Return Values} For \texttt{usb_pipe_intr_xfer()}

\texttt{USB_SUCCESS}
Transfer was successful.

\texttt{USB_INVALID_ARGS}
Request is NULL.

\texttt{USB_INVALID_CONTEXT}
Called from interrupt context with the USB_FLAGS_SLEEP flag set.

\texttt{USB_INVALID_REQUEST}
The request has been freed or otherwise invalidated.

A set of conflicting attributes was specified. See \texttt{usb_intr_request(9S)}.

The normal and/or exception callback was NULL, USB_FLAGS_SLEEP was not set and USB_ATTRS_ONE_XFER was not set.

An interrupt request was specified with a zero intr_len value.

An IN interrupt request was specified with both polling (USB_ATTRS_ONE_XFER clear in attributes) and non-zero timeout specified.

An IN interrupt request was specified with a non-NULL data argument.

An OUT interrupt request was specified with a NULL data argument.

\texttt{USB_INVALID_PIPE}
Pipe handle is NULL or invalid.

Pipe is closing or closed.

\texttt{USB_PIPE_ERROR}
Pipe handle refers to a pipe which is in the USB_PIPE_STATE_ERROR state.

\texttt{USB_NO_RESOURCES}
Memory, descriptors or other resources unavailable.

\texttt{USB_HC_HARDWARE_ERROR}
Host controller is in error state.
USB_FAILURE
An asynchronous transfer failed or an internal error occurred.

An intr polling request is made while polling is already in progress.

The pipe is in an unsuitable state (error, busy, not ready).

Additional status information may be available in the intr_completion_reason and intr_cb_flags fields of the request. Please see usb_completion_reason(9S) and usb_callback_flags(9S) for more information.

For usb_pipe_stop_intr_polling()

None, but fails if called with USB_FLAGS_SLEEP specified from interrupt context, pipe handle is invalid, NULL or pertains to a closing or closed pipe, or the pipe is in an error state. Error messages are logged to the console logfile.

Exception handlers’ queued requests which are flushed by these commands before execution are returned with completion reason of USB_CR_FLUSHED.

Context Both of these functions can be called from kernel or user context without regard to arguments, and may be called from interrupt context only when the USB_FLAGS_SLEEP flag is clear.

Examples /* Start polling on interrupt-IN pipe. */

    void intr_pipe_callback(usb_pipe_handle_t, usb_intr_req_t*);
    void intr_pipe_exception_callback(usb_pipe_handle_t, usb_intr_req_t*);
    usb_ep_descr_t *ep_descr;
    ep_descr = ...;
    intr_req = usb_alloc_intr_req(dip, 0, USB_FLAGS_SLEEP);
    ... ... intr_req->intr_attributes = USB_ATTRS_SHORT_XFER_OK;
    intr_req->intr_len = ep_descr->wMaxPacketSize;
    ... ... intr_req->intr_cb = intr_pipe_callback;
    intr_req->intr_exc_cb = intr_pipe_exception_callback;

    if ((rval = usb_pipe_intr_xfer(pipe, intr_req, USB_FLAGS_NOSLEEP))
        != USB_SUCCESS) {
        cmn_err (CE_WARN, "%s%d: Error starting interrupt pipe polling.",
            ddi_driver_name(dip), ddi_get_instance(dip));
    }

------
/* Stop polling before setting device idle. Wait for polling to stop. */

usb_pipe_stop_intr_polling(pipe, USB_FLAGS_SLEEP);
(void) pm_idle_component(dip, 0);

-------

/* Allocate, initialize and issue a synchronous intr-OUT request. */

usb_intr_req_t intr_req;
mblk_t *mblk;
usb_ep_descr_t *ep_descr;

ep_descr = ...;

intr_req =
    usb_alloc_intr_req(dip, ep_descr->wMaxPacketSize, USB_FLAGS_SLEEP);

intr_req->intr_attributes = USB_ATTRS_AUTOCLEARING;
mblk = intr_req->intr_data;
bcopy(buffer, mblk->b_wptr, ep_descr->wMaxPacketSize);
mblk->b_wptr += ep_descr->wMaxPacketSize;

if ((rval = usb_pipe_intr_xfer(pipe, intr_req, USB_FLAGS_SLEEP))
    != USB_SUCCESS) {
    cmn_err (CE_WARN,
        "%s%d: Error writing intr data.,
             ddi_driver_name(dip), ddi_get_instance(dip));
}

Attributes  See attributes(5) for descriptions of the following attributes:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ATTRIBUTE TYPE</th>
<th>ATTRIBUTE VALUE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Architecture</td>
<td>PCI-based systems</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Interface stability</td>
<td>Evolving</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Availability</td>
<td>SUNWusb</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

See Also  attributes(5), usb_alloc_request(9F), usb_get_cfg(9F), usb_get_status(9F),
usb_pipe_bulk_xfer(9F), usb_pipe_ctrl_xfer(9F), usb_pipe_get_state(9F),
usb_pipe_isoc_xfer(9F), usb_pipe_open(9F), usb_pipe_reset(9F),
usb_bulk_request(9S), usb_callback_flags(9S), usb_completion_reason(9S),
usb_ctrl_request(9S), usb_ep_descr(9S), usb_intr_request(9S), usb_isoc_request(9S),
Name  usb_pipe_isoc_xfer, usb_pipe_stop_isoc_polling – USB isochronous transfer and polling functions

Synopsis  #include <sys/usb/usba.h>

```c
int usb_pipe_isoc_xfer(usb_pipe_handle_t pipe_handle, usb_isoc_req_t *request,
                       usb_flags_t flags);

void usb_pipe_stop_isoc_polling(usb_pipe_handle_t pipe_handle, usb__flags_t flags);
```

Interface Level  Solaris DDI specific (Solaris DDI)

Parameters  For `usb_pipe_isoc_xfer()`:

- `pipe_handle`  Isochronous pipe handle on which request is made.
- `request`  Pointer to isochronous transfer request.
- `flags`  USB_FLAGS_SLEEP is the only flag recognized. Wait for needed resources if unavailable.

For `usb_pipe_stop_isoc_polling()`:

- `pipe_handle`  Isochronous pipe handle on which to stop polling for input.
- `flags`  USB_FLAGS_SLEEP is the only flag recognized. Wait for polling to stop.

Description  The `usb_pipe_isoc_xfer()` function requests the USBA framework to perform a transfer through a USB isochronous pipe. The request is passed to the host controller driver (HCD), which performs the necessary transactions to complete the request.

By their nature, isochronous transfers require several transactions for completion. Each request may contain several packet descriptors. Descriptors correspond to subtransfers to be made in different frames. A request is deemed completed once all packets of that request have been processed. It is illegal to specify the USB_ATTRS_ONE_XFER attribute in an isochronous request. The isochronous polling interval is always one millisecond, the period of a full-speed frame.

All isochronous requests are asynchronous, and will notify the caller of their completion via a callback function. All isochronous requests must specify normal and exception callback handlers.

Requests will wait for needed, unavailable resources when USB_FLAGS_SLEEP has been specified in flags. Requests made without USB_FLAGS_SLEEP set will fail if needed resources are not readily available.
No errors seen during request processing will result in aborted transfers or exception callbacks. Such errors will instead be logged in the packet descriptor’s isoc_pkt_status field. These errors can be examined when the completed request is returned through a normal callback.

Allocateroomfordatawhenallocatingisochronous-OUTrequestsvia
usb_alloc_isoc_req(9F), by passing a positive value for the len argument. The data will be divided among the request transactions, each transaction represented by a packet descriptor. (See usb_isoc_request(9F). When all of the data has been sent, regardless of any errors encountered, a normal transfer callback will be made to notify the client driver of completion.

If a request is submitted while other requests are active or queued, and the new request has its USB_ATTRS_ISOC_XFER_ASAP attribute set, the host controller driver will queue the request to start on a frame which immediately follows the last frame of the last queued request.

All isochronous-IN transfers start background polling, and require only a single (original) request. The USBA framework will allocate a new request each time polling has new data to return. Specify a zero length when calling usb_alloc_isoc_req() to allocate the original request, since it will not be used to return data. Set the isoc_pkts_length in the request to specify how much data to poll per interval (the length of one packet in the request).

The original request passed to usb_pipe_isoc_xfer() will be used to return status when polling termination is requested, or for error condition notification. There can be only one isochronous-IN request submitted at a time.

Isochronous transfer normal-completion callbacks cannot block for any reason since they are called from interrupt context. They will have USB_CB_INTR_CONTEXT set in their callback flags to note this.

Isochronous exception callbacks have the following restrictions for blocking:
1. They can block for resources (for example to allocate memory).
2. They cannot block for synchronous completion of a command (for example usb_pipe_close(9F)) done on the same pipe. Asynchronous commands can be started, when the pipe’s policy pp_max_async_reqs field is initialized to accommodate them.
3. They cannot block waiting for another callback to complete.
4. They cannot block waiting for a synchronous transfer request to complete. They can, however, make an asynchronous request (such as restarting polling with a new isochronous-IN transfer).

Please see the section on callbacks in usb_callback_flags(9S) for more information.

All isochronous transfer exception callbacks signify that polling has stopped. Polling requests are returned with the following completion reasons:
Note: There are no exception callbacks for error conditions.

The `usb_pipe_stop_isoc_polling()` function terminates polling on an isochronous-IN pipe. The `usb_pipe_stop_isoc_polling()` function does the following:

1. Cease polling.
2. Allow any requests-in-progress to complete and be returned to the client driver through the normal callback mechanism.
3. Idle the pipe.
4. Return the original polling request to the client driver through an exception callback with a completion reason of `USB_CR_STOPPED_POLLING`.

Return Values For `usb_pipe_isoc_xfer()`:

- **USB_SUCCESS**  
  Transfer was successful.
- **USB_INVALID_ARGS**  
  Request is NULL.
- **USB_INVALID_CONTEXT**  
  Called from interrupt context with the `USB_FLAGS_SLEEP` flag set.
- **USB_INVALID_REQUEST**  
  The request has been freed or otherwise invalidated. A set of conflicting attributes were specified. See `usb_isoc_request(9S)`.
  
  The normal and/or exception callback was NULL, `USB_FLAGS_SLEEP` was not set and `USB_ATTRS_ONE_XFER` was not set.
  
  An isochronous request was specified with a zeroed `isoc_pkt_descr`, a NULL `isoc_pkt_descr`, or a NULL data argument.
  
  An isochronous request was specified with `USB_ATTRS_ISOC_XFER_ASAP` and a nonzero `isoc_frame_no`.
  
  **USB_NO_FRAME_NUMBER**  
  An isochronous request was not specified with one and only one of `USB_ATTRS_ISOC_START_FRAME` or `USB_ATTRS_ISOC_XFER_ASAP` specified.
  
  An isochronous request was specified with `USB_ATTRS_ISOC_START_FRAME` and a zero `isoc_frame_no`. 
USB_INVALID_START_FRAME  An isochronous request was specified with an invalid starting frame number (less than current frame number, or zero) and USB_ATTRS_ISOC_START_FRAME specified.

USB_INVALID_PIPE  Pipe handle is NULL or invalid.

USB_PIPE_ERROR  Pipe handle refers to a pipe which is in the USB_PIPE_STATE_ERROR state.

USB_NO_RESOURCES  Memory, descriptors or other resources unavailable.

USB_HC_HARDWARE_ERROR  Host controller is in error state.

USB_FAILURE  An asynchronous transfer failed or an internal error occurred.

An isoch request requested too much data:
(length > (usb_get_max_pkts_per_isoc_request() * endpoint's wMaxPacketSize))

The pipe is in an unsuitable state (error, busy, not ready).

Additional status information may be available in the isoc_completion_reason and isoc_cb_flags fields of the request. Please see usb_completion_reason(9S) and usb_callback_flags(9S) for more information.

For usb_pipe_isoc_xfer():

None, but will fail if called with USB_FLAGS_SLEEP specified from interrupt context; the pipe handle is invalid, NULL or pertains to a closing or closed pipe; or the pipe is in an error state. Messages regarding these errors will be logged to the console logfile.

Context  Both of these functions may be called from kernel or user context without regard to arguments. May be called from interrupt context only when the USB_FLAGS_SLEEP flag is clear.

Examples  /* Start polling on an isochronous-IN pipe. */

usb_isoc_req_t isoc_req;
void isoc_pipe_callback(usb_pipe_handle_t, usb_isoc_req_t*);
void isoc_pipe_exception_callback(
    usb_pipe_handle_t, usb_isoc_req_t*);
uint_t pkt_size;
usb_ep_data_t *isoc_ep_tree_node;
usb_ep_descr_t *isoc_ep_descr = ...;  /* From usb_lookup_ep_data() */
isoc_ep_descr = &isoc_ep_tree_node->ep_descr;
pkt_size = isoc_ep_descr->wMaxPacketSize;

isoc_req = usb_alloc_isoc_req(
    dip, num_pkts, NUM_PKTS * pkt_size, USB_FLAGS_SLEEP);
...
isoc_req->isoc_attributes = USB_ATTRS_ISOC_XFER_ASAP;
...
isoc_req->isoc_cb = isoc_pipe_callback;
isoc_req->isoc_exc_cb = isoc_pipe_exception_callback;
...
isoc_req->isoc_pkts_length = pkt_size;
isoc_req->isoc_pkts_count = NUM_PKTS;
for (pkt = 0; pkt < NUM_PKTS; pkt++) {
    isoc_req->isoc_pkt_descr[pkt].isoc_pkt_length = pkt_size;
}

if ((rval = usb_pipe_isoc_xfer(pipe, isoc_req, USB_FLAGS_NOSLEEP))
    != USB_SUCCESS) {
    cmn_err (CE_WARN,
        "%s%d: Error starting isochronous pipe polling.",
        ddi_driver_name(dip), ddi_get_instance(dip));
}

/* Stop polling before powering off device. Wait for polling to stop. */

usb_pipe_stop_isoc_polling(pipe, USB_FLAGS_SLEEP);
pm_idle_component(dip, 0);

**Attributes** See attributes(5) for descriptions of the following attributes:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Attribute Type</th>
<th>Attribute Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Architecture</td>
<td>PCI-based systems</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Interface stability</td>
<td>Evolving</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Availability</td>
<td>SUNWusb</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**See Also** attributes(5), usb_alloc_request(9F), usb_get_current_frame_number(9F),
usb_get_cfg(9F), usb_get_max_pkts_per_isoc_request(9F), usb_get_status(9F),
usb_pipe_bulk_xfer(9F), usb_pipe_ctrl_xfer(9F), usb_pipe_get_state(9F),
usb_pipe_intr_xfer(9F), usb_pipe_open(9F), usb_pipe_reset(9F),

972 man pages section 9: DDI and DKI Kernel Functions • Last Revised 5 Jan 2004
usb_pipe_isoc_xfer(9F)

usb_bulk_request(9S), usb_callback_flags(9S), usb_completion_reason(9S),
usb_ctrl_request(9S), usb_ep_descr(9S), usb_intr_request(9S), usb_isoc_request(9S)
Name  usb_pipe_open – Open a USB pipe to a device

Synopsis  #include <sys/usb/usba.h>

```
int usb_pipe_open(dev_info_t *dip, usb_ep_descr_t *endpoint, usb_pipe_policy_t *pipe_policy,
                  usb_flags_t flags, usb_pipe_handle_t *pipe_handle);
```

Interface Level  Solaris DDI specific (Solaris DDI)

Parameters  
- **dip**  Pointer to the device’s dev_info structure.
- **endpoint**  Pointer to endpoint descriptor.
- **pipe_policy**  Pointer to pipe_policy. pipe_policy provides hints on pipe usage.
- **flags**  USB_FLAGS_SLEEP is only flag that is recognized. Wait for memory resources if not immediately available.
- **pipe_handle**  Address to where new pipe handle is returned. (The handle is opaque.)

Description  A pipe is a logical connection to an endpoint on a USB device. The usb_pipe_open() function creates such a logical connection and returns an initialized handle which refers to that connection.

The USB 2.0 specification defines four endpoint types, each with a corresponding type of pipe. Each of the four types of pipes uses its physical connection resource differently. They are:

- **Control pipe**  Used for bursty, non-periodic, reliable, host-initiated request/response communication, such as for command/status operations. These are guaranteed to get approximately 10% of frame time and will get more if needed and if available, but there is no guarantee on transfer promptness. Bidirectional.

- **Bulk pipe**  Used for large, reliable, non-time-critical data transfers. These get the bus on a bandwidth-available basis. Unidirectional. Sample uses include printer data.

- **Interrupt pipe**  Used for sending or receiving small amounts of reliable data infrequently but with bounded service periods, as for interrupt handling. Unidirectional.

- **Isochronous pipe**  Used for large, unreliable, time-critical data transfers. Boasts a guaranteed constant data rate as long as there is data, but there are no retries of failed transfers. Interrupt and isochronous data are together guaranteed 90% of frame time as needed. Unidirectional. Sample uses include audio.
The type of endpoint to which a pipe connects (and therefore the pipe type) is defined by the `bmAttributes` field of that pipe's endpoint descriptor. (See `usb_ep_descr(9S)`). Opens to interrupt and isochronous pipes can fail if the required bandwidth cannot be guaranteed.

The polling interval for periodic (interrupt or isochronous) pipes, carried by the endpoint argument's `bInterval` field, must be within range. Valid ranges are:

- **Full speed**: range of 1-255 maps to 1-255 ms.
- **Low speed**: range of 10-255 maps to 10-255 ms.
- **High speed**: range of 1-16 maps to \((2^{(bInterval-1)}) \times 125\) us.

Adequate bandwidth during transfers is guaranteed for all periodic pipes which are opened successfully. Interrupt and isochronous pipes have guaranteed latency times, so bandwidth for them is allocated when they are opened. (Please refer to Sections 5.7 and 5.8 of the USB 2.0 specification which address isochronous and interrupt transfers.) Opens of interrupt and isochronous pipes fail if inadequate bandwidth is available to support their guaranteed latency time. Because periodic pipe bandwidth is allocated on pipe open, open periodic pipes only when needed.

The bandwidth required by a device varies based on polling interval, the maximum packet size (`wMaxPacketSize`) and the device speed. Unallocated bandwidth remaining for new devices depends on the bandwidth already allocated for previously opened periodic pipes.

The `pipe_policy` parameter provides a hint as to pipe usage and must be specified. It is a `usb_pipe_policy_t` which contains the following fields:

```c
uchar_t pp_max_async_reqs:
    A hint indicating how many asynchronous operations requiring
    their own kernel thread will be concurrently in progress, the highest
    number of threads ever needed at one time. Allow at least one for
    synchronous callback handling and as many as are needed to accommodate the
    anticipated parallelism of asynchronous*
    calls to the following functions:
    usb_pipe_close(9F)
    usb_set_cfg(9F)
    usb_set_alt_if(9F)
    usb_clr_feature(9F)
    usb_pipe_reset(9F)
    usb_pipe_drain_reqs(9F)
    usb_pipe_stop_intr_polling(9F)
    usb_pipe_stop_isoc_polling(9F)
```
Setting to too small a value can deadlock the pipe.

* Asynchronous calls are calls made without the USB_FLAGS_SLEEP flag being passed. Note that a large number of callbacks becomes an issue mainly when blocking functions are called from callback handlers.

The control pipe to the default endpoints (endpoints for both directions with addr 0, sometimes called the default control pipe or default pipe) comes pre-opened by the hub. A client driver receives the default control pipe handle through `usb_get_dev_data(9F)`. A client driver cannot open the default control pipe manually. Note that the same control pipe may be shared among several drivers when a device has multiple interfaces and each interface is operated by its own driver.

All explicit pipe opens are exclusive; attempts to open an opened pipe fail.

On success, the `pipe_handle` argument points to an opaque handle of the opened pipe. On failure, it is set to NULL.

**Return Values**

- **USB_SUCCESS**
  - Open succeeded.

- **USB_NO_RESOURCES**
  - Insufficient resources were available.

- **USB_NO_BANDWIDTH**
  - Insufficient bandwidth available. (Isochronous and interrupt pipes).

- **USB_INVALID_CONTEXT**
  - Called from interrupt handler with `USB_FLAGS_SLEEP` set.

- **USB_INVALID_ARGS**
  - `dip` and/or `pipe_handle` is NULL. `Pipe_policy` is NULL.

- **USB_INVALID_PERM**
  - Endpoint is NULL, signifying the default control pipe.
  - A client driver cannot open the default control pipe.

- **USB_NOT_SUPPORTED**
  - Isochronous or interrupt endpoint with maximum packet size of zero is not supported.

- **USB_HC_HARDWARE_ERROR**
  - Host controller is in an error state.

- **USB_FAILURE**
  - Pipe is already open. Host controller not in an operational state. Polling interval (`ep_descr` `bInterval` field) is out of range (intr or isoc pipes).

**Context**

- May be called from user or kernel context regardless of arguments. May also be called from interrupt context if the `USB_FLAGS_SLEEP` option is not set.
usb_pipe_open(9F)

**Examples**

```c
usb_ep_data_t *ep_data;
usb_pipe_policy_t policy;
usb_pipe_handle_t pipe;
usb_client_dev_data_t *reg_data;
uint8_t interface = 1;
uint8_t alternate = 1;
uint8_t first_ep_number = 0;

/* Initialize pipe policy. */
bzero(policy, sizeof(usb_pipe_policy_t));
policy.pp_max_async_requests = 2;

/* Get tree of descriptors for device. */
if (usb_get_dev_data(
    dip, USBDRV_VERSION, &reg_data, USB_FLAGS_ALL_DESCR, 0) !=
    USB_SUCCESS) {
    ...
}

/* Get first interrupt-IN endpoint. */
ep_data = usb_lookup_ep_data(dip, reg_data, interface, alternate,
    first_ep_number, USB_EP_ATTR_INTR, USB_EP_DIR_IN);
if (ep_data == NULL) {
    ...
}

/* Open the pipe. Get handle to pipe back in 5th argument. */
if (usb_pipe_open(dip, &ep_data.ep_descr
    &policy, USB_FLAGS_SLEEP, &pipe) != USB_SUCCESS) {
    ...
}
```

**Attributes**

See attributes(5) for descriptions of the following attributes:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ATTRIBUTE TYPE</th>
<th>ATTRIBUTE VALUE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Architecture</td>
<td>PCI-based systems</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Interface stability</td>
<td>Evolving</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Availability</td>
<td>SUNWusb</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**See Also**

attributes(5), usb_get_alt_if(9F), usb_getcfg(9F), usb_get_status(9F),
usb_get_dev_data(9F), usb_pipe_bulk_xfer(9F), usb_pipe_ctrl_xfer(9F),
usb_pipe_close(9F), usb_pipe_get_state(9F), usb_pipe_intr_xfer(9F),
usb_pipe_isoc_xfer(9F), usb_pipe_reset(9F), usb_pipe_set_private(9F),
usb_ep_descr(9S), usb_callback_flags(9S)
Name  usb_pipe_reset – Abort queued requests from a USB pipe and reset the pipe

Synopsis  #include <sys/usb/usba.h>

    void usb_pipe_reset(dev_info_t *dip, 
    usb_pipe_handle_t pipe_handle, usb_flags_t usb_flags, 
    void (*callback)(usb_pipe_handle_t cb_pipe_handle, 
    usb_opaque_t arg, int rval, usb_cb_flags_t flags), 
    usb_opaque_t callback_arg);

Interface Level  Solaris DDI specific (Solaris DDI)

Parameters  

    dip  Pointer to the device’s dev_info structure.

    pipe_handle  Handle of the pipe to reset. Cannot be the handle to the default control pipe.

    usb_flags  USB_FLAGS_SLEEP is the only flag recognized. Wait for completion.

    callback  Function called on completion if the USB_FLAGS_SLEEP flag is not specified. If NULL, no notification of completion is provided.

    callback_arg  Second argument to callback function.

Description  Call usb_pipe_reset() to reset a pipe which is in an error state, or to abort a current request and clear the pipe. The usb_pipe_reset() function can be called on any pipe other than the default control pipe.

    A pipe can be reset automatically when requests sent to the pipe have the USB_ATTRS_AUTOCLEARING attribute specified. Client drivers see an exception callback with the USB_CBSTALL_CLEARED callback flag set in such cases.

    Stalls on pipes executing requests without the USB_ATTRS_AUTOCLEARING attribute set must be cleared by the client driver. The client driver is notified of the stall via an exception callback. The client driver must then call usb_pipe_reset() to clear the stall.

    The usb_pipe_reset() function resets a pipe as follows:

    1. Any polling activity is stopped if the pipe being reset is an interrupt or isochronous pipe.
    2. All pending requests are removed from the pipe. An exception callback, if specified beforehand, is executed for each aborted request.
    3. The pipe is reset to the idle state.

    Requests to reset the default control pipe are not allowed. No action is taken on a pipe which is closing.

    If USB_FLAGS_SLEEP is specified in flags, this function waits for the action to complete before calling the callback handler and returning. If not specified, this function queues the request and returns immediately, and the specified callback is called upon completion.
callback is the callback handler. It takes the following arguments:

- **usb_pipe_handle_t cb_pipe_handle**: Handle of the pipe to reset.
- **usb_opaque_t callback_arg**: Callback_arg specified to `usb_pipe_reset()`.
- **int rval**: Return value of the reset call.
- **usb_cb_flags_t callback_flags**: Status of the queueing operation. Can be:
  - USB_CB_NO_INFO — Callback was uneventful.
  - USB_CB_ASYNC_REQ_FAILED — Error starting asynchronous request.

**Return Values** Status is returned to the caller via the callback handler’s rval argument. Possible callback hander rval argument values are:

- **USB_SUCCESS**: Pipe successfully reset.
- **USB_INVALID_PIPE**: `pipe_handle` specifies a pipe which is closed or closing.
- **USB_INVALID_ARGS**: `dip` or `pipe_handle` arguments are NULL. `USB_FLAGS_SLEEP` is clear and callback is NULL.
- **USB_INVALID_CONTEXT**: Called from interrupt context with the `USB_FLAGS_SLEEP` flag set.
- **USB_INVALID_PERM**: `pipe_handle` specifies the default control pipe.
- **USB_FAILURE**: Asynchronous resources are unavailable. In this case, `USB_CB_ASYNC_REQ_FAILED` is passed in as the `callback_flags` arg to the callback handler.

Exception callback handlers of interrupt-IN and isochronous-IN requests which are terminated by these commands are called with a completion reason of **USB_CR_STOPPED_POLLING**.

Exception handlers of incomplete bulk requests are called with a completion reason of **USB_CR_FLUSHED**.

Exception handlers of unstarted requests are called with **USB_CR_PIPE_RESET**.

Note that messages mirroring the above errors are logged to the console logfile on error. This provides status for calls which could not otherwise provide status.

**Context** May be called from user or kernel context regardless of arguments. May be called from any callback with the `USB_FLAGS_SLEEP` clear. May not be called from a callback executing in interrupt context if the `USB_FLAGS_SLEEP` flag is set.
If the USB_CB_ASYNC_REQ_FAILED bit is clear in usb_cb_flags_t, the callback, if supplied, can block because it is executing in kernel context. Otherwise the callback cannot block. Please see `usb_callback_flags(9S)` for more information on callbacks.

**Examples**

```c
void post_reset_handler(
    usb_pipe_handle_t, usb_opaque_t, int, usb_cb_flags_t);

/*
 * Do an asynchronous reset on bulk_pipe.
 * Execute post_reset_handler when done.
 */
usb_pipe_reset(dip, bulk_pipe, 0, post_reset_handler, arg);

/* Do a synchronous reset on bulk_pipe. */
usb_pipe_reset(dip, bulk_pipe, USB_FLAGS_SLEEP, NULL, NULL);
```

**Attributes**

See `attributes(5)` for descriptions of the following attributes:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ATTRIBUTE TYPE</th>
<th>ATTRIBUTE VALUE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Architecture</td>
<td>PCI-based systems</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Interface stability</td>
<td>Evolving</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Availability</td>
<td>SUNWusb</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**See Also**

`attributes(5), usb_get_cfg(9F), usb_pipe_bulk_xfer(9F), usb_pipe_close(9F),
usb_get_status(9F), usb_pipe_ctrl_xfer(9F), usb_pipe_drain_reqs(9F),
usb_pipe_get_state(9F), usb_pipe_intr_xfer(9F), usb_pipe_isoc_xfer(9F),
usb_pipe_open(9F), usb_pipe_stop_intr_polling(9F),
usb_pipe_stop_isoc_polling(9F), usb_callback_flags(9S)`
Name: usb_pipe_set_private, usb_pipe_get_private – USB user-defined pipe data-field facility

Synopsis: #include <sys/usb/usba.h>

```c
int usb_pipe_set_private(usb_pipe_handle_t pipe_handle, usb_opaque_t data);
usb_opaque_t usb_pipe_get_private (usb_pipe_handle_t pipe_handle);
```

Interface Level: Solaris DDI specific (Solaris DDI)

Parameters:
For `usb_pipe_set_private()`:
- `pipe_handle` - Pipe handle into which user-defined data is placed.
- `data` - Data to store in the pipe handle.

For `usb_pipe_get_private()`:
- `pipe_handle` - Pipe handle from which user-defined data is retrieved.

Description:
The `usb_set_driver_private()` function initializes the user-private data field of the pipe referred to by `pipe_handle`, using `data`. The user-private data field is used to store any data the client desires and is not used in any way by the USBA or OS framework. Client drivers often store their soft-state here for convenient retrieval by their callback handlers.

The `usb_get_driver_private()` function retrieves the user-private data stored via `usb_set_driver_private()`, from the pipe referred to by `pipe_handle`.

Return Values:
For `usb_pipe_set_private()`:
- `USB_SUCCESS` - Private data has been successfully stored in pipe handle.
- `USB_INVALIDPIPE` - `pipe_handle` argument is NULL or invalid.
  
Pipe is closing or closed.
- `USB_INVALIDPERM` - The `pipe_handle` argument refers to the default control pipe.

For `usb_pipe_get_private()`:
On success: `usb_opaque_t` pointer to data being retrieved.
On failure: NULL. Fails if pipe handle is NULL or invalid. Fails if pipe handle is to a pipe which is closing or closed.

Context: May be called from user, kernel or interrupt context.

Examples:
```c
usb_pipe_handle_t pipe;

/* Some driver defined datatype. */
xxx_data_t *data = kmem_zalloc(...);
```
usb_pipe_set_private(pipe, data);

xxx_data_t *xxx_data_ptr = (xxx_data_t *)usb_pipe_get_private(pipe);

**Attributes**  See attributes(5) for descriptions of the following attributes:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ATTRIBUTE TYPE</th>
<th>ATTRIBUTE VALUE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Architecture</td>
<td>PCI-based systems</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Interface stability</td>
<td>Evolving</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Availability</td>
<td>SUNWusb</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**See Also**  attributes(5), usb_pipe_open(9F), usb_alloc_request(9F)
**Name**

`usb_register_hotplug_cbs, usb_unregister_hotplug_cbs` – Register/unregister for notification of device hotplug events

**Synopsis**

```c
#include <sys/usb/usba.h>

int usb_register_hotplug_cbs(dev_info_t *dip,  
   int (*disconnection_event_handler)(dev_info_t *dip, 
   int (*reconnection_event_handler)(dev_info_t *dip);

void usb_unregister_hotplug_cbs(dev_info_t *dip);
```

**Interface Level**

Solaris DDI specific (Solaris DDI)

**Parameters**

For `usb_register_hotplug_cbs()`:

- `dip`  
  Pointer to the device's `dev_info` structure.

- `disconnection_event_handler`  
  Called when device is disconnected. This handler takes a `dev_info_t` as an argument (representing the device being disconnected) and always returns `USB_SUCCESS`.

- `reconnection_event_handler`  
  Called when device is reconnected. This handler takes a `dev_info_t` as an argument (representing the device being reconnected) and always returns `USB_SUCCESS`.

For `usb_unregister_hotplug_cbs()`:

- `dip`  
  Pointer to the device's `dev_info` structure.

**Description**

The `usb_register_hotplug_cbs()` function registers callbacks to be executed when the USB device represented by `dip` is hotplugged or removed.

The `usb_unregister_hotplug_cbs()` function unregisters or disengages callbacks from executing when the USB device represented by `dip` is hotplugged or removed.

**Return Values**

For `usb_register_hotplug_cbs()`:

- `USB_SUCCESS`  
  Callbacks were successfully registered.

- `USB_FAILURE`  
  One or more arguments were NULL.

  Callbacks could not be successfully registered.

For `usb_unregister_hotplug_cbs()`: None

**Context**

The `usb_register_hotplug_cbs()` function may be called only from `attach(9E)`.

The `usb_unregister_hotplug_cbs()` function may be called only from `detach(9E)`.
Registered callback handlers requiring the use of any DDI (section 9F) function (except ddi_taskq_* functions), should launch a separate thread using ddi_taskq_* routines for processing their event, to avoid deadlocks. The new thread can then safely call any DDI function it needs to handle the event.

The registered callback handlers execute in kernel context.

Examples

```c
int remove_device(dev_info_t *)
{
    ...
    ...
    return (USB_SUCCESS);
}

int accommodate_device(dev_info_t *)
{
    ...
    ...
    return (USB_SUCCESS);
}

if (usb_register_hotplug_cbs(
    dip, remove_device, accommodate_device) == USB_FAILURE) {
    cmn_err (CE_WARN,
        "%s%d: Could not register hotplug handlers.",
        ddi_driver_name(dip), ddi_get_instance(dip));
}
```

Attributes See attributes(5) for descriptions of the following attributes:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ATTRIBUTE TYPE</th>
<th>ATTRIBUTE VALUE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Architecture</td>
<td>PCI-based systems</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Interface stability</td>
<td>Evolving</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Availability</td>
<td>SUNWusb</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

See Also attributes(5), attach(9E), detach(9E), usb_get_status(9F)
Name  uwritec – remove a character from a uio structure

Synopsis  #include <sys/uio.h>

int uwritec(uio_t *uio_p);

Interface Level  Architecture independent level 1 (DDI/DKI)

Parameters  uio_p  Pointer to the uio(9S) structure

Description  The uwritec() function returns a character from the uio structure pointed to by uio_p and updates the uio structure. See uiomove(9F).

Return Values  The next character for processing is returned on success, and -1 is returned if uio is empty or if there is an error.

Context  The uwritec() function can be called from user, interrupt, or kernel context.

See Also  uiomove(9F), ureadc(9F), iovec(9S), uio(9S)

Writing Device Drivers
va_arg, va_start, va_copy, va_end – handle variable argument list

Synopsis  #include <sys/varargs.h>

void va_start(va_list pvar, name);
(type *) va_arg(va_list pvar, type);
void va_copy(va_list dest, va_list src);
void va_end(va_list pvar);

Interface Level  Solaris DDI specific (Solaris DDI).

Parameters

va_start()  pvar  Pointer to variable argument list.
name  Identifier of rightmost parameter in the function definition.

va_arg()  pvar  Pointer to variable argument list.
type  Type name of the next argument to be returned.

va_copy()  dest  Destination variable argument list.
src  Source variable argument list.

va_end()  pvar  Pointer to variable argument list.

Description  This set of macros allows portable procedures that accept variable argument lists to be written. Routines that have variable argument lists but do not use the varargs macros are inherently non-portable, as different machines use different argument-passing conventions. Routines that accept a variable argument list can use these macros to traverse the list.

va_list is the type defined for the variable used to traverse the list of arguments.

va_start() is called to initialize pvar to the beginning of the variable argument list. va_start() must be invoked before any access to the unnamed arguments. The parameter name is the identifier of the rightmost parameter in the variable parameter list in the function definition (the one just before the ", . . ."). If this parameter is declared with the register storage class or with a function or array type, or with a type that is not compatible with the type that results after application of the default argument promotions, the behavior is undefined.

va_arg() expands to an expression that has the type and value of the next argument in the call. The parameter pvar must be initialized by va_start(). Each invocation of va_arg() modifies pvar so that the values of successive arguments are returned in turn. The parameter type is the type name of the next argument to be returned. The type name must be specified in
such a way that the type of pointer to an object that has the specified type can be obtained by postfixing a * to type. If there is no actual next argument, or if type is not compatible with the type of the actual next argument (as promoted according to the default argument promotions), the behavior is undefined.

The va_copy() macro saves the state represented by the va_list src in the va_list dest. The va_list passed as dest should not be initialized by a previous call to va_start(). It then must be passed to va_end() before being reused as a parameter to va_start() or as the dest parameter of a subsequent call to va_copy(). The behavior is undefined if any of these restrictions are not met.

The va_end() macro is used to clean up. It invalidates pvar for use (unless va_start() is invoked again).

Multiple traversals, each bracketed by a call to va_start() and va_end(), are possible.

**Examples**

**EXAMPLE 1 Creating a Variable Length Command**

The following example uses these routines to create a variable length command. This might be useful for a device that provides for a variable-length command set. ncmdbytes is the number of bytes in the command. The new command is written to cmdp.

```c
static void
xx_write_cmd(uchar_t *cmdp, int ncmdbytes, ...)
{
    va_list ap;
    int i;

    /*
    * Write variable-length command to destination
    */
    va_start(ap, ncmdbytes);
    for (i = 0; i < ncmdbytes; i++) {
        *cmdp++ = va_arg(ap, uchar_t);
    }
    va_end(ap);
}
```

**See Also** vcmn_err(9F), vsprintf(9F)

**Notes**

It is up to the calling routine to specify in some manner how many arguments there are, since it is not always possible to determine the number of arguments from the stack frame.

Specifying a second argument of char or short to va_arg makes your code non-portable, because arguments seen by the called function are not char or short. C converts char and short arguments to int before passing them to a function.
**Name**

vsprintf – format characters in memory

**Synopsis**

```c
#include <sys/varargs.h>
#include <sys/ddi.h>
#include <sys/sunddi.h>

char *vsprintf(char *buf, const char *fmt, va_list ap);
```

**Interface Level**

Solaris DDI specific (Solaris DDI).

**Parameters**

- `buf`  
  Pointer to a character string.
- `fmt`  
  Pointer to a character string.
- `ap`  
  Pointer to a variable argument list.

**Description**

`vsprintf()` builds a string in `buf` under the control of the format `fmt`. The format is a character string with either plain characters, which are simply copied into `buf`, or conversion specifications, each of which converts zero or more arguments, again copied into `buf`. The results are unpredictable if there are insufficient arguments for the format; excess arguments are simply ignored. It is the user's responsibility to ensure that enough storage is available for `buf`.

`ap` contains the list of arguments used by the conversion specifications in `fmt`. `ap` is a variable argument list and must be initialized by calling `va_start(9F)`. `va_end(9F)` is used to clean up and must be called after each traversal of the list. Multiple traversals of the argument list, each bracketed by `va_start(9F)` and `va_end(9F)`, are possible.

Each conversion specification is introduced by the `%` character, after which the following appear in sequence:

An optional decimal digit specifying a minimum field width for numeric conversion. The converted value will be right-justified and padded with leading zeroes if it has fewer characters than the minimum.

An optional `l` (`ll`) specifying that a following `d`, `D`, `o`, `X`, or `u` conversion character applies to a `long` (`long long`) integer argument. An `l` (`ll`) before any other conversion character is ignored.

A character indicating the type of conversion to be applied:

- `d`, `D`, `o`, `X`, `u`  
  The integer argument is converted to signed decimal (`d`, `D`), unsigned octal (`o`, `0`), unsigned hexadecimal (`X`, `X`) or unsigned decimal (`u`), respectively, and copied. The letters `abcdef` are used for `x` conversion. The letters `ABCDEF` are used for `X` conversion.
- `c`  
  The character value of the argument is copied.
This conversion uses two additional arguments. The first is an integer, and is converted according to the base specified in the second argument. The second argument is a character string in the form `<base>[<arg> . . . ]`. The base supplies the conversion base for the first argument as a binary value; \\'\10\' gives octal, \\'\20\' gives hexadecimal. Each subsequent <arg> is a sequence of characters, the first of which is the bit number to be tested, and subsequent characters, up to the next bit number or terminating null, supply the name of the bit.

A bit number is a binary-valued character in the range 1-32. For each bit set in the first argument, and named in the second argument, the bit names are copied, separated by commas, and bracketed by < and >. Thus, the following function call would generate `reg=3<BitTwo, BitOne>
\n` in `buf`.

```c
vsprintf(buf, "reg=%b
", 3, \"\10\2BitTwo\1BitOne\")
```

The argument is taken to be a string (character pointer), and characters from the string are copied until a null character is encountered. If the character pointer is `NULL` on SPARC, the string `<null string>` is used in its place; on x86, it is undefined.

% Copy a %; no argument is converted.

Return Values  vsprintf() returns its first parameter, `buf`.

Context   vsprintf() can be called from user, kernel, or interrupt context.

Examples  EXAMPLE1 Using vsprintf()

In this example, xxerror() accepts a pointer to a `dev_info_t` structure `dip`, an error level `level`, a format `fmt`, and a variable number of arguments. The routine uses `vsprintf()` to format the error message in `buf`. Note that `va_start(9F)` and `va_end(9F)` bracket the call to `vsprintf()`. `instance`, `level`, `name`, and `buf` are then passed to `cmn_err(9F).

```c
#include <sys/varargs.h>
#include <sys/ddi.h>
#include <sys/sunddi.h>
define MAX_MSG 256

void
xxerror(dev_info_t *dip, int level, const char *fmt, . . . )
{
    va_list ap;
    int instance;
    char  buf[MAX_MSG],
         *name;

    instance = ddi_get_instance(dip);
```
EXAMPLE 1  Using vsprintf()  (Continued)

    name = ddi_binding_name(dip);
    /* format buf using fmt and arguments contained in ap */
    va_start(ap, fmt);
    vsprintf(buf, fmt, ap);
    va_end(ap);
    /* pass formatted string to cmn_err(9F) */
    cmn_err(level, "%s%d: %s", name, instance, buf);
}

See Also  cmn_err(9F), ddi_binding_name(9F), ddi_get_instance(9F), va_arg(9F)

Writing Device Drivers
Name  WR, wr – get pointer to the write queue for this module or driver

Synopsis
#include <sys/stream.h>
#include <sys/ddi.h>

queue_t *WR(queue_t *q);

Interface Level  Architecture independent level 1 (DDI/DKI).

Parameters  q  Pointer to the read queue whose write queue is to be returned.

Description  The WR() function accepts a read queue pointer as an argument and returns a pointer to the write queue of the same module.

CAUTION: Make sure the argument to this function is a pointer to a read queue. WR() will not check for queue type, and a system panic could result if the pointer is not to a read queue.

Return Values  The pointer to the write queue.

Context  The WR() function can be called from user, interrupt, or kernel context.

Examples  EXAMPLE 1  Using WR()
In a STREAMS close(9E) routine, the driver or module is passed a pointer to the read queue. These usually are set to the address of the module-specific data structure for the minor device.

1  xxxclose(q, flag)
2       queue_t *q;
3       int flag;
4   {
5       q->q_ptr = NULL;
6       WR(q)->q_ptr = NULL;
7   }

See Also  close(9E), OTHERQ(9F), RD(9F)

Writing Device Drivers

STREAMS Programming Guide